



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

TX 445.2 .F842

Fraser, W. H.

French grammar for schools and colleges

Stanford University Libraries



3 6105 04925 4720

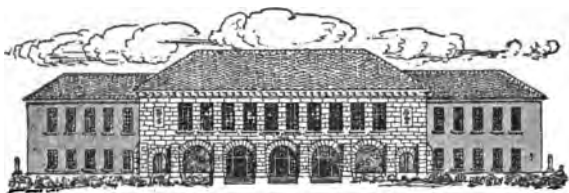
ABRIDGED
FRENCH
GRAMMAR

BK

R. W. H. Fraser

PP

FRASER AND SQUAIRE



**SCHOOL OF EDUCATION
LIBRARY**

**TEXTBOOK
COLLECTION**



**STANFORD UNIVERSITY
LIBRARIES**

Suly.	obj.
il	le
elle	la
ils	les
elles	

voici = see here
 voilà . " there

THE FRASER AND SQUAIR FRENCH GRAMMAR

Is published in the following three forms :

A French Grammar. 550 pages . . . \$1.12

The complete book, containing: Part I., Elementary Lessons; Part II., Systematic Grammar; III., French Reader; IV., Vocabularies.

Elementary French Grammar. 312 pp. .90

Containing: Part I.; the Irregular Verbs in Part II.; III., the French Reader; IV., Vocabularies.

Abridged French Grammar. 450 pages, 1.10

Containing: Part I.; Part II., with a limited number of Special Exercises on the salient facts of Grammar; IV., Vocabularies.

Heath's Modern Language Series

B
A FRENCH GRAMMAR

o
FOR SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES

Grammar
ABRIDGED EDITION

C
BY

W. H. Fraser
W. H. FRASER AND J. SQUAIR

J.
PROFESSORS OF THE ROMANCE DEPARTMENT, UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO



BOSTON, U. S. A.

D. C. HEATH & COMPANY

1903

605724.

C

COPYRIGHT, 1901 AND 1903,
By D. C. HEATH & Co.

PREFACE.

THIS book aims to provide a practical and thorough course in French grammar and elementary composition for schools and colleges. In the preparation of the work an effort has been made to bring the presentation of the subject into accord with recent advances in the methods of modern language teaching.

Having regard to the importance of securing accurate pronunciation from the very outset, care has been taken to facilitate the work of the teacher in this respect by giving a phonetic transcription of all vocabularies and paradigms, under the conviction that in no other way can distinctions in sounds be intelligibly explained. In order, however, not to confuse the beginner with too minute distinctions, "half long" vowels have not been indicated, and the same rule has been observed, for the most part, with regard to such stressed vowels as are optionally long or short.

The elementary exercises are based almost exclusively upon connected pieces of French, dealing with a variety of topics relating to every-day life, and make provision for both oral and written practice. They have been provided in abundance so as to admit of selection and variety, and to afford ample material for review. In both the elementary and advanced exercises, regard has been had to the requirements of such teachers as feel the necessity for a large amount of work of this kind in order to ensure adequate and practical knowledge on the part of the pupil.

Part I. consists of a series of lessons on the elements of grammar as an essential preparation for easy reading, while Part II. furnishes a systematic grammar of modern French for later study and general reference. To this part a series of exercises has been added dealing with the various topics treated in the text. It was thought best to group these exercises together at the end, in order not to impair the usefulness of the Grammar as a book of reference by inserting the exercises immediately after the paragraphs to which they refer. Each exercise, however, is furnished with section references which will enable the pupil to turn readily to the theory upon which the exercises are based.

March 26, 1901.

NOTE TO THE ABRIDGED EDITION.

This abridged edition has been issued in response to a demand from schools and colleges requiring a shorter course in grammar than that provided for in the original work. It differs from the unabridged edition in the following particulars: The Reader has been omitted, together with the exercises based thereon. The miscellaneous extracts for translation from English into French (pp. 382-394) have also been omitted. The exercises based upon the various chapters of Part II. have been entirely reconstructed and very considerably condensed; and, at the same time, the detached sentences of the original exercises have been replaced in large measure by continuous passages relating to everyday life, as in Part I. In their present form these exercises are intended to furnish, within limited space, a thorough course of practice on the main points of grammar, without reference to finer distinctions or rarer constructions.

August, 1903.

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
Phonetic Introduction	1
Exercise in Phonetic Transcription	12

PART I.

Elementary Lessons, I-LI	13
------------------------------------	----

PART II.

The Verb	129
The Noun	220
The Article	233
The Adjective	247
The Pronoun	262
The Adverb	302
The Numeral	314
The Preposition	321
The Conjunction	331
The Interjection	334
Abbreviations	336
Exercises on Grammar	337

VOCABULARIES :

French-English	461
English-French	512
INDEX	543

NOTE TO THE SECOND EDITION.

By a decree of the French Minister of Public Instruction, dated February 26th, 1901, certain deviations from commonly accepted rules of grammar are permitted at all examinations held under his control. In the Appendix (see last page of this volume) will be found a reference list explaining the bearing of these deviations upon the various sections of the Grammar affected thereby

FRENCH GRAMMAR.

PHONETIC INTRODUCTION.

I. General Distinctions. The pronunciation will be explained, as far as possible, by comparison with English sounds, but it must never be forgotten that the sounds of two languages rarely correspond. Important general distinctions between English and French are the following:—

1. English has strong stress (§ 7) and comparatively weak action of the organs in articulation.

2. French has weak stress, while the action of the organs in articulation is very energetic.

3. Hence, French sounds, both vowels and consonants, are almost all 'narrow,' i.e., uttered with tenseness of the organs concerned in their articulation. (To understand 'narrow' and 'wide,' compare the narrow sound of *ea* in 'seat' with the wide sound of *i* in 'sit.')

4. Tongue and lip positions for French vowels are more definite, and more promptly taken, than in English. Lip-rounding (as in 'who,' 'no,' 'law') and lip-retraction (as in 'let,' 'hat') are much more definite and energetic in forming French vowels.

5. The tongue, both for vowels and consonants, is, in general, either further advanced or further retracted than in forming English sounds requiring tongue action.

6. English long vowels (like *a* in 'fate') are diphthongal (especially as pronounced in the South of England), while French vowels, whether long or short, are uniform throughout their utterance.

7. The nasal vowels of French are entirely foreign to English. They are formed by allowing the soft palate to hang freely, as in ordinary breathing, thus causing the air to escape through both nose and mouth at once. If, for example, the *a* of 'father' be uttered with the soft palate hanging freely, the resulting sound will be approximately that of the nasal [ã] in 'tante' [tã:t]. The position of the soft

palate in forming this sound may be readily observed with a mirror. It must be carefully noted that there is absolutely no sound of *n*, *m*, or *ng*, in French nasal vowels, and hence that great care must be taken neither to raise the tongue nor close the lips until the sound is complete.

2. Sounds. The French language has thirty-seven sounds, exclusive of minor distinctions. The orthography, like that of English, is irregular and inconsistent. Hence, to avoid confusion in indicating the pronunciation, we shall employ a phonetic alphabet (that of the 'Association Phonétique Internationale'), in which each sound is represented by but one symbol, and each symbol has but one sound.

3. Table of Symbols. In the following table, the examples are in ordinary orthography, the heavy type indicates the sounds which correspond to the symbols, and the phonetic transcription is given within brackets:—

SYMBOLS.	EXAMPLES.	SYMBOLS.	EXAMPLES.
i	ni, vive [ni, vi:v].	b	beau, robe [bo, rɔb].
y	pu, muse [py, my:z].	d	dame, fade [dam, fad].
e	été [ete].	f	fort, neuf [fo:r, næf].
ø	creux, creuse [krø, krø:z].	g	gant, dogue [gã, dɔg].
ø	le [lə].	h	aha! [a(h)a].
ɛ	près, père [pre, pe:r].	k	car, roc, [kar, rɔk].
ɛ̃	fin, prince [fɛ̃, prɛ̃:s].	l	long, seul [lɔ̃, sœl].
œ	neuf, neuve [nœf, nœ:v].	m	mot, dame [mo, dam].
œ̃	un, humble [œ̃, œ̃:bl].	n	ni, âne [ni, a:n].
a	patte, part [pat, pa:r].	ɲ	agneau, digne [aɲo, diɲ].
ɑ	pas, passe [pa, pa:s].	p	pas, tape [pa, tap].
ã	tant, tante [tã, tã:t].	r	drap, par [dra, pa:r].
o	note, tort [not, to:r].	s	si, pense [si, pã:s].
õ	rond, ronde [rõ, rõ:d].	ʃ	chou, lâche [ʃu, la:ʃ].
o	sot, chose [so, ʃo:z].	t	tas, patte [ta, pat].
u	tout, tour [tu, tu:r].	v	vin, cave [vɛ̃, ka:v].
j	viande [vjã:d].	z	zone, rose [zo:n, ro:z].
ɥ	lui [li].	ʒ	je, rouge [ʒe, ru:ʒ].
w	oui [wi].	i	sigh of length.

4. The Alphabet. The letters of the alphabet, with their French names, are as follows :—

a	a [ɑ].	j	ji [ʒi].	s	esse [es].
b	bé [be].	k	ka [ka].	t	té [te].
c	cé [se].	l	elle [el].	u	u [y].
d	dé [de].	m	emme [em].	v	vé [ve].
e	é [e].	n	enne [en].	w	double vé [dubl ve].
f	effe [ef].	o	o [o].	x	iks [iks].
g	gé [ʒe].	p	pé [pe].	y	i grec [i grek].
h	ache [aʃ].	q	ku [ky].	z	zède [zed].
i	i [i].	r	erre [er].		

NOTE.—Words are commonly spelled by naming their letters, as above, together with the other orthographic signs, if any.

5. Other Orthographic Signs. In addition to the letters of the alphabet, the following signs are used :—

1. The acute accent ´, Fr. 'accent aigu' [aksõt egy], *e.g.*, l'été, l'Écosse.

2. The grave accent ` , Fr. 'accent grave' [aksõ gra:v], *e.g.*, voilà, père, où.

3. The circumflex accent ^, Fr. 'accent circonflexe' [aksõ sirkõfleks], *e.g.*, âne, tête, île, hôte, flûte.

Observe: None of the above accent marks serve to denote stress (§ 7).

4. The cedilla, Fr. 'cédille' [sedi:j], used under c to give it the sound of [s], before a, o, u (§ 17, 13), *e.g.*, façade, leçon, commençait, commençons, reçûmes, reçu.

5. The diæresis "", Fr. 'tréma' [trema], shows that the vowel bearing it is divided in pronunciation from the preceding vowel, *e.g.*, Noël, naïf.

6. The apostrophe, Fr. 'apostrophe' [apõstrõf], shows omission of final vowel before initial vowel sound, *e.g.*, l'amie (= la amie), l'ami (= le ami), l'homme (= le homme), s'il (= si il), § 19.

7. The hyphen, Fr. 'trait d'union' [trẽ d ynjõ], used as in English.

6. Syllabication.

1. A single consonant sound between vowel sounds always belongs to the following syllable.

Ex.: Ma-rie, in-di-vi-si-bi-li-té, a-che-ter.

2. Two consonants, of which the second is l or r (but not the combinations rl or lr), similarly both belong to the following syllable.

Ex.: ta-bleau, é-cri-vain.

3. Other combinations of consonants representing two or more sounds are divided.

Ex.: par-ler, per-dre, es-ca-lier.

N.B.—Great care should be taken to avoid the consonantal ending of syllables, so frequent in English. Compare French 'ci-té,' 'ta-bleau,' with English 'cit-y,' 'tab-leau.'

7. Stress.

'Stress' is the force with which a syllable is uttered as compared with other syllables in the same group. In French, the syllables are uttered with almost equal force, a very slight stress falling on the last syllable of a word of two or more syllables, or, on the last but one, if the last vowel of the word is [ə].

Ex.: Che-val, par-ler, par-lai, per-dre, cré-di-bi-li-té (compare the strong stress of English cred-i-bil-it-y).

NOTE.—In connected discourse the rule above stated varies considerably, but a full treatment of the subject would exceed the limits of an elementary work. The safest practice for the beginner is to pronounce all syllables with almost equal force. It should be remembered that accent-marks have nothing to do with stress, and that all vowels, except [ə], see § 19, whether stressed or unstressed, have their full value, never being slurred over as in English.

8. Vowel Quantity. The most important general rules are :—

1. Final vowel sounds (including nasals) are regularly short, *e.g.*, fini [fini], vie [vi], loue [lu], parlé [parle], rideau [rido], mais [me], donner [done], enfant [ɑ̃fɑ̃], parlerons [parlerɔ̃].

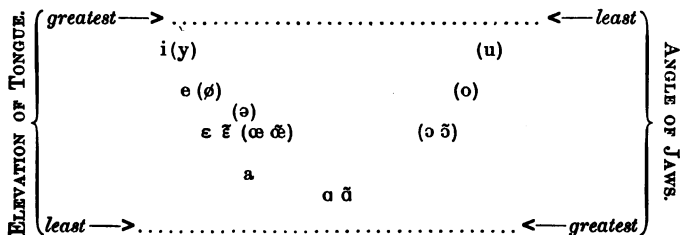
2. Stressed vowels are long before the sounds [v], [z], [s], [j], [r final], *e.g.*, rive [ri:v], ruse [ry:z], rouge [ru:s], feuille [fø:j], faire [fɛ:r].

3. Of stressed vowels standing before other consonant sounds, nasals are long, *e.g.*, prince [prɛ:s]; [o], [ø], long, *e.g.*, faute [fo:t], meule [mø:l]; [ɑ], long (almost always), *e.g.*, passe [pa:s]; [ɛ], long or short, *e.g.*, reine [rɛ:n], renne [ren]; other vowels regularly short, *e.g.*, cap [kap], poche [pɔ], koupe [kup], pipe [pip], seul [sœl], lune [lyn].

NOTE.—It is possible to distinguish also between 'long' and 'half long' vowels, but it has been thought best to omit, in an elementary work, the rules relating to this distinction, and to indicate 'long' vowels only in the transcriptions.

VOWELS.

9. Tongue Position. The relative position of the tongue for the various vowels may be seen from the following diagram, adapted from Vietor. Rounded vowels are enclosed in parentheses:—



N.B.—In the following descriptions of sounds, the word ‘like’ means, of course, only ‘resembling,’ or ‘approximately like’ (§ 1). The examples given after the word ‘also’ show the less common orthographical equivalents.

IO.

i, y.

1. i—Like **ea** in ‘**seat**’; the corners of the mouth retracted as in smiling (§ 1, 4); avoid the sound of **i** in ‘**sit**’; avoid diphthongization (§ 1, 6); narrow (§ 1, 3).

Ex.: **ni** [ni], **vive** [vi:v]; also, **fle** [i:l], **lyre** [li:r].

2. y—Has no counterpart in English. The tongue position is practically the same as for [i] above; very tense lip-rounding (§ 1, 4); avoid diphthongization (§ 1, 6); narrow (§ 1, 3). The sound may be best acquired either by prolonging [i], and at the same time effecting the rounding, or by holding the lips rounded and taking the tongue position of [i].

Ex.: **pu** [py], **muse** [my:z]; also **fût** [fy], **il eut** [il y], **nous eûmes** [nuz ym].

II.

e, ø, ə.

1. e—Like the first part of the sound of **a** in ‘**day**,’ but with the lips more retracted (§ 1, 4); avoid diphthongization (§ 1, 6); narrow (§ 1, 3).

Ex.: **été** [ete]; also, **parler** [parle], **donnai** [done].

2. ϕ —Has no counterpart in English. The tongue position is practically the same as for [e], with tense rounding of the lips (§ 1, 4); avoid diphthongization (§ 1, 6); narrow (§ 1, 3); best acquired by combining, as explained for [y] above, the lip-rounding with the [e] position.

Ex.: creux [kr ϕ], creuse [kr ϕ :z]; also, bœufs [b ϕ].

3. ϵ —Like English e in 'the man,' or a in 'Louisa,' but slightly rounded; best acquired by relaxing the tension of the organs required for the production of the [ϕ] sound.

Ex.: le [l ϵ]; also, monsieur [m ϵ sje ϕ], faisant [f ϵ z ϕ].

12.

ϵ $\tilde{\epsilon}$, ϵ , $\tilde{\epsilon}$.

1. ϵ —Like the sound of e in 'let,' with the mouth more definitely open and the lips more retracted (§ 1, 4); avoid diphthongization (§ 1, 6); narrow (§ 1, 3).

Ex.: près [pr ϵ], père [pe: ϵ]; also, fête [fe: ϵ], terre [te: ϵ], secret [s ϵ k ϵ], parlais [parl ϵ], paix [pe], reine [re: ϵ].

NOTE.—The ϵ of a stressed syllable followed by a syllable containing ϵ mute has almost always this sound (orthographically denoted by è, é, or e + double consonant), e.g., je mène [men], tête [te: ϵ], chère [ʃe: ϵ], j'appelle [apel], ancienne [$\tilde{\epsilon}$ sjen]. This principle accounts for the apparent irregularities of certain verbs and adjectives.

2. $\tilde{\epsilon}$ —The [ϵ] sound nasalized (§ 1, 7), but slightly more open.

Ex.: fin [f $\tilde{\epsilon}$], prince [pr $\tilde{\epsilon}$:s]; also, faim [f $\tilde{\epsilon}$], sainte [s $\tilde{\epsilon}$:t], Reims [r $\tilde{\epsilon}$:s], plein [pl $\tilde{\epsilon}$], simple [s $\tilde{\epsilon}$:pl], symbole [s $\tilde{\epsilon}$ bol], syntaxe [s $\tilde{\epsilon}$ taks], viendrai [vj $\tilde{\epsilon}$ dre], soin [sw $\tilde{\epsilon}$].

3. ϵ —Has no counterpart in English. It has practically the tongue position of [ϵ], combined with definite rounding of the lips; avoid diphthongization (§ 1, 6); narrow (§ 1, 3); best acquired by combining, with the [ϵ] position, the rounding described.

Ex.: neuf [nœf], neuve [nœ:v]; also, cœur [kœ:r], œil [œj], orgueil [orgœ:j].

4. $\tilde{\epsilon}$ —The [ϵ] sound nasalized (§ 1, 7), but slightly more open.

Ex.: un [œ], humble [œ:bl]; also, à jeun [a ʒœ].

13.

a, α , $\tilde{\alpha}$.

1. a—Only very slightly resembles the sound of a in 'pat,' which is nearer that of [ϵ]. The [a] sound requires much wider mouth opening than a of 'pat,' accompanied by retraction of the lips and lowering of

the tongue, though with the point still touching the lower teeth ; avoid diphthongization (§ 1, 4) ; narrow (§ 1, 3).

Ex.: patte [pat], part [pa:r] ; also, là [la], femme [fam], moi [mwa], boîte [bwa:t], parlâmes [parlam], parlât [parla].

2. *a*—Like *a* in 'father' ; the mouth well open, the tongue lying flat, and so far retracted that it no longer touches the lower teeth ; lips absolutely neutral, *i.e.*, neither rounded nor retracted ; avoid especially rounding, as of *a* in 'fall.'

Ex.: pas [pa], passe [pa:s] ; also, pâte [pa:t], roi [rwa], poêle [pwa:l].

3. *ã*—The [a] sound nasalized (§ 1, 7).

Ex.: tant [tã], tante [tã:t] ; also, lampe [lã:p], entre [ã:tr], membre [mã:br].

14.

o, õ, o.

1. *o*—Like *o* in 'not,' but with definite bell-like rounding (§ 1, 4) ; avoid diphthongization (§ 1, 6) ; narrow (§ 1, 3).

Ex.: note [not], tort [tõ:r] ; also Paul [pol], album [albom].

2. *õ*—The [o] sound nasalized (§ 1, 7), but slightly more close.

Ex.: rond [rõ], ronde [rõ:d] ; also tomber [tõbe], comte [kõ:t].

3. *o*—Like *o* in 'omen,' but with more protrusion and much tenser rounding of the lips (§ 1, 4) ; avoid diphthongization (§ 1, 6) ; narrow (§ 1, 3).

Ex.: sot [so], chose [fo:z], fosse [fois] ; also, côté [kote], côte [ko:t], faute [fo:t], beauté [bote].

15.

u.

1. *u*—Like *u* in 'rumour,' but with more protrusion and much tenser rounding of the lips (§ 1, 4) ; avoid diphthongization (§ 1, 6) ; narrow (§ 1, 3).

Ex.: tout [tu], tour [tu:r] ; also, goût [gu], août [u].

CONSONANTS.

16.

j, y, w.

When the sounds [i], [y], [u], § 10 and § 15, come before a vowel of stronger stress, they are pronounced with the tongue slightly closer to the palate, and hence assume a consonantal value, indicated by [j], [y], [w], respectively. They are sometimes called semi-vowels.

1. j—Like very brief and narrow **y** in ‘yes.’

Ex.: viande [vjɑ̃d]; also, yeux [jø], aïeul [ajœl], fille [fi:j], travailler [travaje], travail [travaj].

2. q—Has no counterpart in English; avoid very carefully the sound of **w** in ‘wall’; may be best acquired by at first substituting [y] for it, and afterward increasing the speed of the utterance and the elevation of the tongue until it can be formed exactly along with what follows.

Ex.: lui [lqi]; also, nuage [nqa:ʒ], écuelle [ekœl].

3. w—Like very brief and narrow **w** in ‘we,’ ‘west.’ It is best, however, to proceed from the sound of [u] in the manner described for [q] above.

Ex.: oui [wi]; also, poids [pwo], tramway [tramwe].

17. The remaining consonantal sounds can be sufficiently described by noting the differences between their mode of formation and that of the nearest English sounds (see § 1).

1. b—Like **b** in ‘barb.’

Ex.: beau [bo], robe [rob], abbé [abe].

2. d—Like **d** in ‘did,’ but with the tongue so far advanced that its point, or upper surface, forms a closure with the inner surface of the upper teeth and gums; or the point of the tongue may be thrust against the lower teeth, the upper surface forming a closure with the upper teeth and gums. It must be remembered that in forming English **d** (also **l**, **n**, **r**, **s**, **t**, **z**) the tongue touches at some little distance above the teeth (§ 1, 5).

Ex.: dame [dam], fade [fad], addition [adisjɔ̃].

3. f—Like **f** in ‘fat.’

Ex.: fort [fɔ:r], neuf [nœf], difficile [difisil].

4. g—Like **g** in ‘go.’

Ex.: gant [gɑ̃], dogue [dog], guerre [gɛ:r]; also, second [segɔ̃].

5. h—In orthography the letter **h** is known as ‘**h** mute’ (Fr. ‘**h** muette’), or ‘**h** aspirate’ (Fr. ‘**h** aspirée’), according as it does, or does not, cause elision (§ 19). The learner may regard it, in either case, as absolutely silent.

Ex.: l’homme [l ɔm], le héros [lə ero].

In hiatus, however, a sound resembling, but much weaker than *h* in 'hat,' is permissible, and is actually used by many Frenchmen.

Ex.: aha! [ɑhɑ], le héros [lə hero], fléau [fleho].

6. *k*—Like *k* in 'take'; avoid the slight aspiration which generally follows the English sound.

Ex.: car [kar], roc [rɔk], accorder [akorde]; also, chrétien [kretjɛ̃], cinq [sɛ̃:k], bouquet [buke], acquérir [akeri:r], kilo [kilo], maxime [maksim].

7. *l*—Like *l* in 'law,' but with the tongue advanced as for [d] above.

Ex.: long [lɔ̃], seul [sœl], aller [ale].

8. *m*—Like *m* in 'man,' 'dumb.'

Ex.: mot [mo], dame [dam], homme [ɔm].

9. *n*—Like *n* in 'not,' 'man,' but with the tongue advanced as for [d] above.

Ex.: ni [ni], âne [ɑ:n], donner [dɔne].

10. *ɲ*—Somewhat like *ny* in 'ban-yan,' except that [ɲ] is a single, not a double, sound, and is formed by pressing the middle of the tongue against the hard palate, the tip being usually thrust against the lower teeth.

Ex.: agneau [apo], digne [dip].

11. *p*—Like *p* in 'pan,' 'top'; avoid the slight aspiration which generally follows the English sound.

Ex. pas [pa], tape [tap], appliquer [aplike].

12. *r*—Has no English counterpart. It is formed by trilling the tip of the tongue against the upper gums, or even against the upper teeth. This *r* is called in French 'r linguale.' The tongue must, of course, be well advanced towards the teeth, and not retracted and turned upward, as in our *r* sound (§ 1, 5). The sound may be advantageously practised at first in combination with *d*, e.g., dry, drip, drop, drum (as in Scotch or Irish dialect), and afterwards in combinations in which it is less easily pronounced.

Ex.: drap [dra], par [pa], torrent [tɔrɔ̃], rond [rɔ̃].

NOTE.—Another *r* sound (called in French 'r uvulaire'), used especially in Paris and in the large cities and towns, is formed by withdrawing and elevating the root of the tongue so as to cause a trilling of the uvula. This *r* is usually more difficult for English-speaking people to acquire.

13. *s*—Like *s* in 'sea,' 'cease,' but with the tongue advanced as for [d] above.

Ex.: *si* [si], *pensé* [pã:s], *casser* [kose]; also *scène* [sɛ:n], *place* [plas], *façade* [fasad], *leçon* [lɛsɔ̃], *reçu* [rɛsy], *commençait* [kɔmãsɛ], *commençons* [kɔmãsɔ̃], *reçûmes* [rɛsym], *portion* [pɔrsjɔ̃], *soixante* [swasã:t].

14. *j*—Like *sh* in *shoe*, but with the tongue more advanced (§ 1, 5).

Ex.: *chou* [ʃu], *lâche* [la:ʃ], also, *schisme* [ʃism].

15. *t*—Like *t* in ‘tall,’ but with the tongue advanced as for [d] above; avoid the slight aspiration which generally follows the English sound.

Ex.: *tas* [ta], *patte* [pat].

16. *v*—Like *v* in ‘vine,’ ‘cave.’

Ex.: *vin* [vɛ̃], *cave* [ka:v]; also, *wagon* [vagɔ̃], *neuf heures* [nœv œ:r].

17. *z*—Like *z* in ‘zone,’ or *s* in ‘rose,’ but with the tongue advanced as for [d] above.

Ex.: *zone* [zo:n], *rose* [ro:z]; also, *deux heures*, [døz œ:r], *exact* [egzakt].

18. *z*—Like *z* in ‘azure’ or *s* in ‘pleasure,’ but with the tongue more advanced (§ 1, 5).

Ex.: *je* [ʒə], *rouge* [ru:ʒ]; also *mangeant* [mãʒã], *Jean* [ʒã].

18. Liaison. Final consonants are usually silent, but in oral speech, within a group of words closely connected logically, a final consonant (whether usually sounded or not) is regularly sounded, and forms a syllable with the initial vowel sound of the next word. This is called in French ‘liaison’ = ‘linking,’ ‘joining.’

Ex.: *C’est un petit homme* [sɛ-tɛ̃-pɛ-ti-tɔm].

1. A few of the consonants change their sound in *liaison*, thus, final *s* or *x* = *z*, *d* = *t*, *g* = *k*, *f* = *v*, e.g., *nos amis* [no-za-mi], *quand on parle* [kã-tɔ̃-parl].

2. The *n* of a nasal is carried on, and the nasal vowel loses its nasality in part, or even wholly, e.g., *un bon ami* [ã-bõ-na-mi, or ã-bo-na-mi].

NOTE.—The sounds carried over really belong in pronunciation to the initial syllable of the following word, but to avoid confusion they will be indicated in the transcription with the preceding word, e.g., *les hommes* [lez ɔm, more properly le zɔm].

19. Elision. The letters *a*, *e*, *i*, are entirely silent in certain cases:—

1. The *a* and *e* are silent and replaced by apostrophe in *le*, *la*, *je*, *me*, *te*, *se*, *de*, *ne*, *que* (and some of its compounds) before initial vowel or

h mute (not, however, **je**, **ce**, **le**, **la** after a verb); so also **i** of **si** before **il(s)**.

Ex.: **L'**arbre (= **le** arbre), **l'**encre (= **la** encre), **j'**ai (= **je** ai), **qu'**a-t-il (= **que** a-t-il), **jusqu'**à (= **jusque** à), **s'**il (= **si** il).

2. In prose the letter **e** is silent at the end of all words (except when **e** is itself the only vowel in the word), silent in the verbal endings **-es**, **-ent**, silent within words after a vowel sound, and in the combination **ge** or **je** [ʒ]. In verbs which have stem **g** [ʒ], **g** becomes **ge** [ʒ] before **a** or **o** of an ending, to preserve the [ʒ] sound.

Ex.: **rue** [ry], **donnée** [done], **rare** [ra:r], **place** [plas], **ai-je** [ɛ:ʒ], **table** [tabl], **sabre** [sa:br], **prendre** [prɔ:dr], **tu parles** [ty parl], **ils parlent** [il parl], **gaieté** [gete], **mangeons** [mãʒɔ̃], **Jean** [ʒã].

NOTE.—In ordinary discourse, this sound is usually slighted or wholly omitted in most cases in which consonantal combinations produced by its weakening or elision can be readily pronounced, but beginners will do well to sound it fully, except in the cases above specified. The treatment of the [ə] in poetry is beyond the scope of this work.

20. Punctuation. The same punctuation marks are used in French as in English.

1. Their French names are :

. point.	- trait d'union.	[] crochets.
, virgule.	— tiret, or tiret de	{ accolade.
; point et virgule.	séparation.	
: deux points.	... points suspensifs.	* astérisque.
? point d'interrogation.	" " guillemets.	† croix de renvoi.
! point d'exclamation.	() parenthèse.	

2. They are used as in English, but the 'tiret' commonly serves to denote a change of interlocutor.

Ex.: "Qui est là? dis-je.—Personne.—Quoi! personne!—Personne, dit-il."

21. Capitals. The principal differences between French and English in the use of capital letters (Fr. 'lettres majuscules,' 'capitales') may be seen from the following examples :

Un livre canadien écrit en français par un Canadien. Toronto, lundi, le 3 janvier. Je lui ai dit ce que je pensais.

EXERCISE IN PHONETIC TRANSCRIPTION.

[The sign (:) in unstressed syllables indicates 'half long.']

Tu aimeras le Seigneur ton Dieu de tout ton cœur, de toute
 ty ɛ:mra l seɲœ:r tɔ̃ djø d tu tɔ̃ kœ:r, də tut
 ton âme, de toute ta force, et de toute ta pensée; et ton
 tɔ̃n a:m, də tut ta fɔ:rs, e d tut ta pɔ̃sɛ; e tɔ̃
 prochain comme toi-même...
 pʁɔʃɛ̃ kɔm twa mɛ:m...

Un homme descendait de Jérusalem à Jéricho; et il est
 ɔ̃n ɔm desɑ̃:de d ʒeryzalem a ʒeriko; e il ɛ
 tombé parmi des brigands, qui l'ont dépouillé, ils l'ont chargé
 tɔ̃:be parmi de brigɑ̃, ki l ɔ̃ depuʒe, i l ɔ̃ ʃa:ʒe
 de coups, et ils sont partis, en le laissant à moitié mort. Et
 d ku, e i sɔ̃ parti, ɑ̃ l le:sɔ̃ a mwatʃe mɔ:r. e
 par hasard un prêtre descendait par ce chemin-là, et en le
 par azɑ:r ɑ̃ pʁɛ:tʁe desɑ̃:de par sɛ ʃmɛ la, e ɑ̃ l
 voyant, il a passé outre. De même aussi un lévite, arrivé
 vwɑjɑ̃, il a pɔ̃sɛ utr. də mɛ:m ɔ:si ɑ̃ levit, ariive
 dans cet endroit, il est venu, et en le voyant, il a passé outre.
 dɑ̃ st ɑ̃:drwa, il ɛ vny, e ɑ̃ l vwɑjɑ̃, il a pɔ̃sɛ utr.

Mais un Samaritain, qui voyageait, est venu là, et en le voyant,
 me ɑ̃ samaritɛ̃, ki vwajɑ:ʒe, ɛ vny la, e ɑ̃ l vwɑjɑ̃,
 il a été ému de pitié; et il s'est approché pour bander ses
 il a ɛte emy d pitʃe; e il s ɛt apʁɔʃe pur bɑ̃:de sɛ
 blessures, en y versant de l'huile et du vin; puis il l'a mis sur
 blesy:r, ɑ̃n i versɑ̃ də l ɥil e dy vɛ; pui i la mi sy
 sa propre bête pour le conduire à une auberge, et il a pris soin
 sa pʁɔpʁe bɛ:t pur le kɔ̃:dui:r a yn ɔberʒ, e il a pʁi swɛ̃
 de lui. Et le lendemain il a tiré deux deniers, et il les a
 d lɥi. e l lɑ̃:dmɛ̃ il a ti:re dɔ̃ dɔ̃nʃe, e i lɛz a
 donnés à l'aubergiste, en disant, 'prends soin de lui, et ce que
 done a l ɔberʒist, ɑ̃ di:zɑ̃, pʁɑ̃ swɛ̃ d lɥi, e s ke
 tu dépenseras de plus, moi je te le rendrai à mon retour.'
 ty depɔ̃sra d plys, mwa ʒ te l rɑ̃:dre a mɔ̃ rtu:r.

—Reprinted by kind permission of M. Paul Passy, from his "Version populaire de l'Évangile de Luc en transcription phonétique."

PART I.

LESSON I.

22. Definite Article. 1. The definite article has the following forms in the singular :

'The' = $\begin{cases} \text{le [lə], before a masculine beginning with a consonant.} \\ \text{la [la], before a feminine beginning with a consonant.} \\ \text{l' [l], before any noun beginning with a vowel or h mute.} \end{cases}$

Le père, la mère.

The father, the mother.

L'enfant (m. or f.), l'homme.

The child, the man.

2. The definite article must be repeated before each noun to which it refers :

L'oncle et la tante.

The uncle and (the) aunt.

23. Gender. 1. All French nouns are either masculine or feminine :

Le papier (m.), la plume (f.).

The paper, the pen.

2. Names of male beings are masculine, and names of female beings feminine, as in English.

24. Case. French nouns have no case endings. The direct object (accusative) is expressed by verb + noun ; the indirect object (dative) by the preposition à + noun ; the possessive (genitive) by de + noun, and these prepositions must be repeated before each noun to which they refer :

La mère aime l'enfant.

The mother loves the child.

J'ai la plume de Robert.

I have Robert's pen (the pen of Robert).

Je donne l'argent à Marie et à Jean.

I give the money to Mary and (to) John.

25. Agreements. French has the following agreements, and they are usually expressed by change of form: (1) Verb and subject, in number and person; (2) adjective and noun, in gender and number; (3) pronoun and antecedent, in gender and number.

VOCABULARY.

avec [avɛk], with.

crayon [krejɔ̃], m., pencil.

encre [ɑ̃kr], f., ink.

est [ɛ], is.

et [ɛ], and.

livre [li:vʁ], m., book.

montrez-moi [mɔ̃trɛ mwa], show me.

où? [u], where?

papier [papje], m., paper.

plume [plym], f., pen.

sur [syʁ], on, upon.

table [tabl], f., table.

voici [vwaʃi], here is, here are.

voilà [vwɔ̃la], there is, there are.

EXERCISE I.

Jabu
 ↓ A. 1. Où est le livre? 2. Voici le livre. 3. Où est la table? 4. Voilà la table. 5. Où est le papier? 6. Voici le papier. 7. Où est la plume? 8. Voici la plume. 9. Où est l'encre? 10. Voilà l'encre sur la table. 11. Où est le crayon? 12. Voilà le crayon avec la plume. 13. Voici le livre et la plume sur la table. 14. Voilà le papier avec l'encre sur la table. 15. Montrez-moi le papier, la plume et l'encre. 16. Où est le crayon? 17. Voici le crayon et la plume. 18. Voilà le papier et l'encre.

↓ B. (Oral Exercise—questions to be answered in French by the pupil.) 1. Montrez-moi la table. 2. Montrez-moi le papier. 3. Montrez-moi la plume. 4. Montrez-moi l'encre. 5. Où est la table? 6. Où est le papier? 7. Où est la plume? 8. Où est l'encre? 9. Montrez-moi le papier, la plume et l'encre. Etc., etc.

↓ C. 1. Here is the pen. 2. There is the ink. 3. Where is the paper? 4. There is the paper with the pen. 5. Here is the book. 6. Show me the paper. 7. Here is the paper on the table. 8. Where is the pen? 9. The pen is with the ink. 10. Show me the paper and ink. 11. The paper is on the table. 12. The ink is with the paper.

LESSON II.

26. Indefinite Article. It has the following forms, which must be repeated before each noun to which they refer :

'A' or 'an' = $\begin{cases} \text{un} [\text{œ}], & \text{before any masculine noun.} \\ \text{une} [\text{yn}], & \text{before any feminine noun.} \end{cases}$

Un livre et une plume. A book and (a) pen
Un homme, une école. A man, a school.

VOCABULARY.

aussi [osi], too, also.	Marie [mari], Mary.
chaise [ʃe:z], f., chair.	non [nɔ̃], no.
derrière [derʒe:r], behind.	porte [pɔrt], f., door.
devant [devɑ̃], before, in front of.	qui? [ki], who?
fenêtre [fɛnɛ:tr], f., window.	tableau [tablo], m., picture.
Jean [ʒɑ̃], John.	

j'ai [ʒa e], I have ; il a [il a], he has ; elle a [el a], she has ;
vous avez [vuz ave], you have.

EXERCISE II.

A. 1. Voici une porte et aussi une fenêtre. 2. Montrez-moi la porte. 3. Montrez-moi la fenêtre. 4. Montrez-moi une chaise et une table. 5. Voilà une chaise devant la table. 6. Voici une plume sur la table. 7. Voilà un tableau derrière la porte. 8. Qui a un crayon et une plume? 9. Jean a un crayon et Marie a une plume. 10. Non, elle a un crayon et il a une plume. 11. J'ai un crayon et vous avez un livre. 12. Où est Jean? 13. Jean est derrière la table. 14. Marie est devant la fenêtre. 15. Marie a l'encre et elle a la plume aussi. 16. Elle a le papier et vous avez l'encre. 17. Montrez-moi l'encre et aussi la plume. 18. Voici l'encre avec la plume sur la table.

B. (Oral.) 1. Montrez-moi une porte. 2. Montrez-moi une fenêtre. 3. Montrez-moi une table aussi. 4. Où est la chaise? 5. Où est la table? 6. Qui a la plume et l'encre? 7. Où est le crayon? 8. Montrez-moi une plume? 9. Montrez-moi un tableau? 10. Où est le tableau? 11. Où est Marie? 12. Où est Jean? Etc., etc.

C. 1. There is a door and here is a window. 2. Show me a chair and a picture. 3. Here is a chair behind the door. 4. There is a picture. 5. Who has a pen and a pencil? 6. John has a pen and Mary has a pencil. 7. You have a pencil. 8. No, I have a pen. 9. Who has the ink? 10. Mary has the ink. 11. She has the ink. 12. You have the pen and a pencil. 13. There is a chair in front of the window. 14. There is a book on the table. 15. The pen is with the book. 16. The chair is behind the door. 17. Where is the picture? 18. The picture is behind the door also.

LESSON III.

27. Some Possessives. Observe the following, and remember that possessive adjectives must be repeated before each noun to which they refer (for pronunciation, see § 32).

Mon (m.) livre et ma (f.) plume.	My book and (my) pen.
Ton (m.) livre et ta (f.) plume.	Thy book and (thy) pen.
Son (m.) livre et sa (f.) plume.	His or her book and pen.
Votre (m.) livre et votre (f.) plume.	Your book and (your) pen.

28. Negation. With verbs, 'not' or 'no' = **ne . . . pas**, with the verb placed between them, **ne** becoming **n'** before a vowel (§ 19, 1):

Je n'ai **pas**, vous n'avez **pas**. I have not, you have not.

29. Interrogation. In questions, the personal pronoun subject comes after the verb, as in English, and is joined to it by a hyphen, or by -t- if the verb ends in a vowel:

Avez-vous?; a-t-il?; est-elle ici? Have you?; has he?; is she here?

VOCABULARY.

autre [otr], other.

boîte [bwa:t], f., box.

cour [kuir], f., yard.

dans [dã], in, into.

frère [frɛ:r], m., brother.

ici [isi], here.

mais [mɛ], but.

ne . . . pas [nə . . . pa], not, no.

oui [wi], yes.

salle [sal], f., room (large).

sœur [sœ:r], f., sister.

l'encre de votre frère, your brother's ink.

EXERCISE III.

A. 1. Avez-vous votre crayon? 2. Oui, j'ai mon crayon, et Jean a son crayon. 3. Où est votre crayon? 4. Voici mon crayon dans ma boîte. 5. Où est votre frère? 6. Il est dans la cour avec ma sœur. 7. Où est Marie? 8. Elle n'est pas ici. 9. Elle est dans l'autre salle. 10. A-t-elle la boîte et le papier? 11. Elle n'a pas le papier, mais elle a la boîte. 12. Où est Jean? 13. A-t-il le papier et la plume? 14. Il a le papier mais il n'a pas la plume. 15. Montrez-moi votre frère et votre sœur. 16. Voici mon frère, mais ma sœur n'est pas ici. 17. Qui est dans la salle? 18. Votre frère est dans la salle. 19. Qui a l'encre de mon frère? 20. Jean a l'encre de votre frère. 21. Avez-vous un crayon? 22. J'ai un crayon.

B. (Oral.) 1. Où est Jean? 2. Est-il ici? 3. Où est Marie? 4. Est-elle ici? 5. A-t-il son livre et sa plume? 6. A-t-elle son papier et son crayon? 7. Avez-vous votre livre? 8. Avez-vous le livre de Marie? 9. Avez-vous un crayon et une plume? 10. Où est ma plume? 11. Où est mon papier? 12. Où est votre boîte? 13. Où est-elle? 14. Montrez-moi une autre boîte. 15. Montrez-moi votre frère et votre sœur. 16. Est-il ici? 17. Est-elle ici? Etc., etc.

C. 1. Has he the paper? 2. He has not the paper. 3. ✓ Where is my pencil? 4. Where is your pencil? 5. There is my pencil in the box on the table. 6. Where is your sister? 7. Is she in the other room? 8. No, she is in the yard. 9. Where is your brother? 10. Is he here? 11. He is not here. 12. He is in the yard with your brother. 13. Your sister has her pen. 14. I have her pencil. 15. Show me the picture. 16. There is the picture behind the door. 17. Where is the table? 18. Where is it? 19. The table is in the room in front of the window.

LESSON IV.

30. Some Pronoun Objects. 'Him' or 'it' = *le* (m.), and 'her' or 'it' = *la* (f.), both becoming *l'* before a vowel or *h* mute (§ 19, 1). They come next before the verb, or before **voici** and **voilà** :

Où est la plume? Je l'ai.
Où est le livre? Le voici.
Où est Marie? La voilà.

Where is the pen? I have it.
Where is the book? Here it is.
Where is Mary? There she is.

NOTE.—Voici and Voilà are derived from *voir* = 'see' + *ici* = 'here' and *voir* = 'see' + *là* = 'there' (literally, 'see here,' 'see there'), and, owing to their verbal force, govern words directly like transitive verbs.

VOCABULARY.

cahier [kaje], m., exercise-book.
école [ekol], f., school.
église [egli:z], f., church.
la [la], f., her, it.
le [lə], m., him, it.
madame [madam], f., madam,
Mrs.

mademoiselle [madmwazel], f.,
Miss.
maison [mezɔ̃], f., house.
monsieur [mɔ̃sjø], m., sir, Mr.
pardon [pardɔ̃], I beg your pardon.

EXERCISE IV.

A. 1. Montrez-moi la fenêtre. 2. La voilà. 3. Où est mon cahier? 4. Le voilà sur la table. 5. Avez-vous votre plume, mademoiselle? 6. Non, monsieur, je ne l'ai pas. 7. Marie a l'encre. 8. Non, monsieur, elle ne l'a pas. 9. A-t-il mon crayon? 10. Il ne l'a pas. 11. Où est ma sœur? 12. La voilà dans la cour derrière l'école. 13. J'ai mon crayon; Marie ne l'a pas. 14. La cour est derrière l'école; la voilà. 15. Vous avez l'encre. 16. Pardon, madame, je ne l'ai pas. 17. Montrez-moi votre maison. 18. La voilà derrière l'église. 19. A-t-elle sa plume? 20. Non, monsieur, elle ne l'a pas. 21. La voilà sur la chaise. 22. N'avez-vous pas mon cahier? 23. Non, monsieur, je ne l'ai pas.

B. (Oral.) 1. Montrez-moi la fenêtre. 2. Où est votre cahier? 3. Qui a ma plume? 4. Qui a mon crayon? 5. Avez-vous l'encre? 6. Qui a votre cahier? 7. Montrez-moi l'église? 8. Où est le papier de Jean? 9. A-t-il son papier? 10. Avez-vous votre encre? 11. N'avez-vous pas le papier aussi? 12. A-t-elle sa boîte? 13. A-t-elle son papier dans sa boîte? 14. A-t-elle sa plume aussi? 15. Où est votre frère Jean? 16. Où est votre sœur Marie? 17. Montrez-moi votre frère. 18. Montrez-moi votre sœur. Etc., etc.

C. 1. Who has my pen? 2. John has your pen, sir. 3. John, have you my exercise-book? 4. No, sir, I haven't

it; here it is on the table. 5. Who has your exercise-book? 6. Here it is, sir. 7. John, where is your pen? 8. (Another pupil has my pen.) 9. The yard is behind the school; there it is. 10. Mary, your pencil is on the chair. 11. I beg your pardon; I have it here. 12. Have you your ink, too? 13. Yes, sir, I have it. 14. Mary has her book, pen and exercise-book. 15. Where is Mr. B.? 16. Here he is. 17. He is here. 18. Where is Miss B.? 19. She is here, too. 20. There she is with her brother.

LESSON V.

31. Plural Forms. 1. The plural of a noun or an adjective is regularly formed by adding **-s** to the singular:

Le grand roi, la grande reine. The great king, the great queen.
Les grands rois, les grandes reines. The great kings, the great queens.

2. The plural of the definite article **le, la, l'** is **les**:

Les [le] livres, les [lez] enfants. The books, the children.

3. The plural of the personal pronoun **le, la, l'** is also **les**:

Je les ai. I have them (books, pens, etc.).

32. The Possessive Adjective. 1. The following are its forms in full (for agreement and repetition, see § 27):

MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	PLURAL.
mon [mō]	(ma [ma])	mes [me], my.
ton [tō]	(ta [ta])	tes [te], thy, your.
son [sō]	(sa [sa])	ses [se]; his, her, its.
notre [nōtr]	(notre [nōtr])	nos [no], our.
votre [vōtr]	(votre [vōtr])	vos [vo], your.
leur [lœ:r]	(leur [lœ:r])	leurs [kœ:r], their.

2. The forms **mon, ton, son**, are used instead of **ma, ta, sa** before feminines beginning with a vowel or **h** mute:



Mon [mōn] amie (f.). My friend.
Son [sōn] histoire (f.). His story.
Son [sōn] autre plume (f.). His other pen.


3. Since **son (sa, ses)** means 'his,' 'her,' or 'its,' it can only be known from the context which is meant.

VOCABULARY.

affaires [afei:r], f. pl., things.**aujourd'hui** [oʒurdʒi], to-day.**bon** [bɔ̃], good.**canif** [kanif], m., penknife.**élève** [ele:v], m. or f., pupil.**ils ont** [ilz ɔ̃], they have. **ils sont** [il sɔ̃], they are.**porte-plume** [portplym], m., penholder.**règle** [re:gl], f., ruler.**sous** [su], under.

EXERCISE V.

mi  A. 1. Mes livres ne sont pas sur la table ; qui les a ? 2. Les voilà sur une chaise. 3. Qui a nos bons crayons ? 4. Les voilà dans la boîte de Marie. 5. Où sont vos plumes ? 6. Voici nos plumes. 7. Où sont nos affaires ? 8. Voici vos crayons et vos plumes sur la table. 9. Leurs plumes et les plumes de leur sœur ne sont pas ici. 10. Pardon, monsieur, les voici sous la table. 11. Les élèves n'ont pas leurs livres aujourd'hui. 12. Montrez-moi la règle de l'élève. 13. La voici dans sa boîte. 14. Leurs canifs sont bons. 15. Nos canifs sont bons aussi. 16. Vos porte-plumes ne sont pas bons. 17. Où est mon encre ? 18. La voilà avec l'encre de ma sœur. 19. Où est mon autre plume ? 20. Elle est dans ma boîte. *mi* 

B. (Oral.) 1. Où sont les affaires de mon frère ? 2. Qui a le canif de ma sœur ? 3. Montrez-moi votre règle. 4. Où est la plume de Marie ? 5. Où sont nos livres aujourd'hui ? 6. Avez-vous ma boîte ? 7. Qui est dans la salle ? 8. Qui est avec Jean dans la cour ? 9. Où est la cour ? 10. Où est Marie ? 11. N'est-elle pas ici ? 12. Montrez-moi vos bons crayons. 13. Avez-vous mon encre ? 14. Qui a mon autre plume ? Etc., etc. 

C. 1. Where are your books to-day ? 2. They are here. 3. There they are on the table. 4. Where are your brother's things ? 5. There is his pen-holder and his ruler. 6. Have you my ink and my other pen ? 7. Where is your sister's ruler ? 8. Her ruler is not here to-day. 9. There is her pen-knife on the table. 10. Where is Mary's book ? 11. Her brother has her book. 12. And she has her brother's book. 13. John's ink is on the table. 14. Their books are not here. 15. Have you not my pens ? 16. No, your pens are in the

box. 17. Where are John's and Mary's books? 18. Here they are on the table. 19. Where is my sister's ruler? 20. I haven't it; there it is on the table.

LESSON VI.

33. Present Indicative of *avoir*, 'to have.'

1. Affirmative.

I have, etc.

j' ai	[ʒ e].
tu as	[ty a].
il a	[il a].
nous avons	[nuz avɔ̃].
vous avez	[vuz ave].
ils ont	[ilz ɔ̃].

we have
me - we
il - we

2. Negative.

I have not, etc.

je n'ai pas	[ʒə n e pa].
tu n'as pas	[ty n a pa].
il n'a pas	[il n a pa].
nous n'avons pas	[nu n avɔ̃ pa].
vous n'avez pas	[vu n ave pa].
ils n'ont pas	[il n ɔ̃ pa].

34. Pronouns in Address. 'You' is regularly *vous*; the form *tu* = 'thou' or 'you' is used in familiar address:

Avez-vous ma plume, monsieur? Have you my pen, sir?
As-tu ta plume, mon enfant? Have you your pen, my child?

N.B.—Translate 'you' by *vous* in the exercises, unless the use of *tu* is required by the context.

35. Contractions. *De + le* and *de + les* are always contracted into *du* and *des*; the remaining forms are not contracted, thus, *de la*, *de l'* in full:

La plume *du* [dy] frère. The brother's pen.
Les plumes *des* [de] sœurs. The sisters' pens.
But: La plume *de* l'élève, etc.

144
de + le is not contracted

36. The Partitive Noun and Pronoun. 1. 'Some' or 'any,' whether expressed or implied before a noun in English, is regularly expressed in French by *de* + the definite article:

J'ai *de* l'encre. I have (some) ink (lit., 'of the ink').
A-t-il *des* frères? Has he (any) brothers?

2. In a general negation the partitive is expressed by *de* alone:

Il n'a pas de pain.

He has no bread.

Il n'a pas d'amis.

He has no friends.

3. 'Some' or 'any' as a pronoun = **en**, which must be expressed in French, even when omitted in English :

A-t-il de l'encre?—Il **en** a.

Has he (any) ink?—He has (some).

A-t-il une plume?—Il **en** a une.

Has he a pen?—He has one.

VOCABULARY.

ami [ami], m., friend.

deux [dø], two.

encrier [ôkrie], m., inkstand.

enfant [âfô], m. or f., child, boy,
girl.

fils [fis], m., son.

là [la], there.

un, une [œ, yn], one.

il n'en a pas, he has not, he has not any, he has none.

EXERCISE VI.

A. Continue the following throughout the singular and plural : 1. J'ai des plumes, tu as des plumes, etc. 2. Je n'ai pas de plumes, etc. 3. J'ai des amis, etc. 4. Je n'ai pas d'amis, etc. 5. J'ai de l'encre, etc. 6. Je n'ai pas d'encre, etc. 7. J'en ai, etc. 8. Je n'en ai pas, etc.

B. 1. Avez-vous des plumes et des crayons ? 2. Je n'ai pas de plumes, mais j'ai des crayons. 3. Mon frère a un canif et ma sœur en a deux. 4. Où est l'encre ? 5. La voilà dans l'encrier sur la table. 6. Avez-vous du papier ? 7. Je n'en ai pas. 8. Jean est là dans la salle. 9. A-t-il de l'encre ? 10. Non, monsieur, il n'a pas d'encre. 11. A-t-il des livres ? 12. Non, monsieur, il n'en a pas. 13. As-tu du papier, mon fils ? 14. Je n'en ai pas. 15. Tu as de l'encre et des plumes, mon enfant. 16. Pardon, monsieur, je n'en ai pas. 17. Où sont les livres des élèves ? 18. Les voilà sur la table. 19. Mes sœurs n'ont pas de papier, mais elles ont de l'encre et des plumes. 20. Où est la règle du frère de Jean ? 21. Je l'ai. 22. Nous avons des livres et des plumes. 23. En avez-vous ? 24. Nous n'en avons pas.

C. (Oral.) 1. Avez-vous un cahier ? 2. Où est votre cahier ? 3. Où est le cahier de Marie ? 4. A-t-elle des crayons aussi ? 5. Qui a de l'encre ? 6. Où est son encre ? 7. Où sont vos frères et vos sœurs ? 8. Avez-vous des crayons ? 9. Avons-

nous du papier et des plumes? 10. Avez-vous des amis? 11. Où sont-ils? 12. Qui n'a pas d'amis? 13. As-tu du papier, mon enfant? 14. Qui a ton cahier, Marie? 15. As-tu la règle de ta sœur? Etc., etc.

D. 1. Where is your brother's book? 2. Here it is with our books. 3. Have you any ink? 4. I have some. 5. Show me your ruler. 6. I haven't any, but my sister has one. 7. Have you a pen-holder? 8. Yes, sir, I have one, and my brother has two. 9. Show me your pencils. 10. I haven't any, but my friend has some. 11. We have pens. 12. You have ink. 13. They have no pens. 14. He has no ink. 15. His brother's friend has no books. 16. Where are their books? 17. There are some books on the table. 18. Here are our books on the chair. 19. She has brothers and sisters. 20. Where are they? 21. They are in the yard. 22. Where are the pupils' things? 23. They are in the other room. 24. Where is your ruler, my boy? 25. Here it is. 26. Have you any ink, my son? 27. I haven't any.

LESSON VII.

37. Present Indicative of *avoir* (continued).

1. Interrogative.

Have I? etc.

ai-je?	[ɛ: ʒ].
as-tu?	[a ty].
a-t-il?	[a t il].
avons-nous?	[avɔ̃ nu].
avez-vous?	[ave vu].
ont-ils?	[ɔ̃t il].

2. Negative Interrogative.

Have I not? etc.

n'ai-je pas?	[n ɛ: ʒ pa].
n'as-tu pas?	[n a ty pa].
n'a-t-il pas?	[n a t il pa].
n'avons-nous pas?	[n avɔ̃ nu pa].
n'avez-vous pas?	[n ave vu pa].
n'ont-ils pas?	[n ɔ̃t il pa].

38. Interrogation. 1. When the subject of an interrogative sentence is a noun, the word order is noun-verb-pronoun :

L'homme est-il là?

Is the man there?

2. This form of question may be combined with an interrogative word :

Jean où est-il?

Where is John?

Jean combien de plumes a-t-il?

How many pens has John?

3. 'What?' (as direct object or predicate of a verb) = **que?**
See also § 19, 1 :

Qu'avez-vous là ?

What have you there ?

VOCABULARY.

✓ chez moi [ʃe mwa], at home.	ou [u], or.
classe [kla:s], f., class, class-room.	poche [pɔʃ], f., pocket.
combien de ? [kɔbjɛ̃ də], how many?	quatre [katr], four.
ensemble [ɑ̃sɑ̃:bl], together.	sac [sak], m., bag, satchel.
maintenant [mɑ̃tɑ̃nɑ̃], now.	salle de classe [sal də kla:s], f., class-room.
maître [mɑ:tr], m., master, teacher.	trois [trwa], three.

EXERCISE VH.

A. Continue the following: 1. Ai-je un canif?, as-tu un canif?, etc. 2. Ai-je des crayons dans une boîte?, as-tu des crayons dans une boîte?, etc. 3. N'ai-je pas un bon ami?, etc.

B. 1. Avez-vous votre crayon dans votre boîte? 2. Non, monsieur, je l'ai dans mon sac. 3. Combien de livres avez-vous? 4. J'en ai trois ou quatre dans mon sac. 5. N'avez-vous pas un canif dans votre poche? 6. Non, monsieur, je n'en ai pas dans ma poche, mais j'en ai un chez moi. 7. Où est votre frère maintenant? 8. Il est dans la cour avec les autres enfants. 9. Où sont Marie et sa sœur? 10. Les voilà ensemble dans la salle de classe. 11. Jean n'a-t-il pas mon porte-plume et mes plumes dans son sac? 12. Non, monsieur, il les a dans sa poche. 13. Où sont le maître et les élèves maintenant? 14. Ils sont dans la salle de classe. 15. Qu'as-tu dans ton sac, mon enfant? 16. J'ai deux livres et quatre plumes dans mon sac. 17. Où sont les porte-plumes? 18. En voilà un sur la table.

C. (Oral.) 1. Où est le sac de Jean? 2. Montrez-moi votre papier. 3. Jean, où est ton canif? 4. N'as-tu pas un canif et un porte-plume? 5. Où sont les enfants? 6. Qu'avez-vous dans votre poche? 7. Combien de frères avez-vous? 8. Votre frère combien de plumes a-t-il? 9. Qu'a-t-il dans son sac? 10. Où sont mes affaires? 11. Qui est dans la salle de classe maintenant? 12. Le maître où est-il? 13. Et les élèves où sont-ils? 14. Combien de plumes as-tu, mon enfant?

15. Marie, combien de plumes a-t-elle? 16. Les élèves sont-ils dans la salle? 17. Les élèves ont-ils leurs affaires dans leurs sacs? 18. Avez-vous mes bons crayons? 19. Qui a mes bons crayons? Etc., etc.

p. 1. Where are our bags? 2. There they are behind the door. 3. What have you in your pocket? 4. I have a knife and a pencil in my pocket. 5. Have you pens and pencils? 6. Yes, sir, I have two pens and three pencils. 7. Where are John and his brother? 8. They are with the other boys in the class-room. 9. Show me your books and pens. 10. I haven't any. 11. John is in the other room with his brother. 12. How many pencils have they? 13. They have four. 14. Where are your things? 15. Here they are in my bag. 16. Have we any pens? 17. Yes, sir, here are some in the box. 18. Where are John and Robert? 19. There they are together in the class-room. 20. How many knives have you? 21. I have one and my brother has two. 22. Have you ^{any} paper? 23. We haven't any, but the master has some. 24. Here is his paper.

LESSON VIII.

39. Present Indicative of *être*, 'to be.'

1. Affirmative.

I am, etc.

je suis	[ʒə sɥi].
tu es	[ty ɛ].
il est.	[il ɛ].
nous sommes	[nu sɔm].
vous êtes	[vuz ɛ:t].
ils sont	[il sɔ̃].

2. Negative.

I am not, etc.

je ne suis pas	[ʒə nə sɥi pa].
tu n'es pas	[ty n ɛ pa].
il n'est pas	[il n ɛ pa].
nous ne sommes pas	[nu nə sɔm pa].
vous n'êtes pas	[vu n ɛ:t pa].
ils ne sont pas	[il nə sɔ̃ pa].

3. Interrogative.

Am I? etc.

suis-je?	[sɥi: ʒ].
es-tu?	[ɛ ty].
est-il?	[ɛt il].
sommes-nous?	[sɔm nu].
êtes-vous?	[ɛ:t vu].
sont-ils?	[sɔ̃t il].

4. Negative Interrogative.

Am I not? etc.

ne suis-je pas?	[nə sɥi: ʒ pa].
n'es-tu pas?	[n ɛ ty pa].
n'est-il pas?	[n ɛt il pa].
ne sommes-nous pas?	[nə sɔm nu pa].
n'êtes-vous pas?	[n ɛ:t vu pa].
ne sont-ils pas?	[nə sɔ̃t il pa].

40. Observe that **il** and **elle** mean not only 'he' and 'she,' but also 'it,' since there are but two genders of nouns in French :

Où est la plume? **Elle** est ici.

Where is the pen? It is here.

Où sont les plumes? **Elles** sont ici.

Where are the pens? They are here.

VOCABULARY.

à [a], to, at, in.

commence [komā:s], begins.

difficile [difisil], difficult.

facile [fasil], easy.

leçon [lēsō], f., lesson.

malade [malad], ill, sick.

nous [nu], us.

tableau noir [tablo nwair], m., black-board.

à présent [a prezā], at present.

EXERCISE VII.

A. Continue the following: 1. Je suis à l'école, tu es, etc. 2. Je suis malade aujourd'hui, tu es, etc. 3. Je ne suis pas malade aujourd'hui, etc. 4. Suis-je malade?, etc. 5. Ne suis-je pas malade?, etc.

B. 1. Nous sommes à l'école aujourd'hui, et nos frères sont avec nous. 2. Nous sommes à présent avec les autres élèves dans la salle de classe, et le maître est ici aussi. 3. Nous avons nos affaires. 4. Nos canifs sont dans nos poches. 5. Nos plumes et nos porte-plumes sont dans nos boîtes. 6. Nos livres sont dans nos sacs. 7. L'encre est dans les encriers. 8. La leçon est sur le tableau noir. 9. Nous avons des cahiers, et les autres élèves en ont aussi. 10. La leçon commence. 11. La leçon n'est pas difficile. 12. Elle est facile.

C. (Oral.) 1. Où êtes-vous à présent? 2. Où suis-je à présent? 3. Où sommes-nous? 4. Qui est avec nous? 5. Où sont les affaires des élèves? 6. Le maître n'est-il pas avec les élèves? 7. Où sont les chaises et les tables? 8. N'avez-vous pas vos livres? 9. Montrez-moi les règles et les porte-plumes. 10. Qui est devant le tableau noir? 11. Où est la leçon? 12. Avez-vous des cahiers? 13. La leçon commence-t-elle? 14. Qui commence la leçon? 15. Ta leçon est-elle facile? 16. Tes leçons sont-elles difficiles, mon enfant? Etc., etc.

D. 1. Our brothers are not in the class-room. 2. They are in the yard with the other pupils. 3. The lesson is not on the black-board. 4. Are you not in our class? 5. Yes, I am

52116
195
576

(27)

in your class. 6. Have you your things in your bags? 7. No, our things are on the table. 8. Have you exercise-books? 9. Yes, and our brothers have some too. 10. Have you no paper? 11. No, sir, I have none. 12. Are the pencils here? 13. Yes, here they are on the table. 14. What have you in your bags? 15. We have paper, exercise-books and pen-holders. 16. Have you no ink? 17. Yes, I have some. 18. How many books have you? 19. I have four in my bag, and three at home. 20. The lesson is easy to-day; it is easy. 21. John's lessons are difficult. 22. Are your lessons difficult, John? 23. Yes, sir, they are difficult.

LESSON IX.

41. The Regular Conjugations. French verbs are conveniently divided, according to the infinitive endings -er, -ir, -re, into three conjugations :

I.

II.

III.

Donner [dɔnɛ], to give. Finir [fini:r], to finish. Vendre [vɑ:dr], to sell.

Like these are conjugated all regular verbs with corresponding infinitive endings.

42. Present Indicative of *donner*, 'to give.'

1. Affirmative.

I give, am giving, etc.

je donn e [ʒə dɔn].

tu donn es [ty dɔn].

il donn e [il dɔn].

nous donn ons [nu dɔnɔ̃].

vous donn ez [vu dɔnɛ].

ils donn ent [il dɔn].

2. Negative.

I do not give, am not giving, etc.

je ne donn e pas [ʒə nɛ dɔn pa].

tu ne donn es pas [ty nɛ dɔn pa].

il ne donn e pas [il nɛ dɔn pa].

nous ne donn ons pas [nu nɛ dɔnɔ̃ pa].

vous ne donn ez pas [vu nɛ dɔnɛ pa].

ils ne donn ent pas [il nɛ dɔn pa].

3. Interrogative.

Am I giving?, do I give?, etc.

donné-je? [dɔnɛ: ʒ].

donnes-tu? [dɔn ty].

donne-t-il? [dɔn t il].

donnons-nous? [dɔnɔ̃ nu].

donnez-vous? [dɔnɛ vu].

donnent-ils? [dɔnt il].

4. Negative Interrogative.

Am I not giving?, do I not give?, etc.

ne donné-je pas? [nɛ dɔnɛ: ʒ pa].

ne donnes-tu pas? [nɛ dɔn ty pa].

ne donne-t-il pas? [nɛ dɔn t il pa].

ne donnons-nous pas? [nɛ dɔnɔ̃ nu pa].

ne donnez-vous pas? [nɛ dɔnɛ vu pa].

ne donnent-ils pas? [nɛ dɔnt il pa].

43. Interrogation. By prefixing the words est-ce que?, literally, 'is it that?', any statement may be turned into a question :

Vous avez mon canif.

You have my penknife.

Est-ce que vous avez mon canif? Have you my penknife?

NOTE.—The first singular interrogative form (*e.g.*, *donné-je? suis-je?* etc.) is avoided in most verbs, and *must* be avoided in some, by using 'est-ce que?' In the exercises, use 'est-ce que?' everywhere in interrogations with the first singular.

44. The Demonstrative Adjective. 1. The following are its forms, and they must be repeated before each noun to which they refer :

'This,' 'that' = $\begin{cases} \text{ce [sə], before a masculine beginning with a consonant.} \\ \text{cet [sɛt], before a m. beginning with a vowel or h mute.} \\ \text{cette [sɛt], before any feminine.} \end{cases}$

'These,' 'those' = *ces [sɛ]*, before any plural.

2. To distinguish 'this' from 'that,' or for emphasis, add **-ci (= ici)** and **-là** respectively to the noun :

Ce livre, cet homme, cette amie. This (or that) book, man, friend.

Ce crayon-ci et ces plumes-là. This pencil and those pens.

VOCABULARY.

aller [alɛ], to go.

arriver [arivɛ], to arrive.

chemin [ʃəmɛ̃], m., road, way.

commencer [kɔmɑ̃sɛ], to begin.

continuer [kɔ̃tinɥɛ], to continue.

écouter [ɛkute], to listen to, hear.

en [ɑ̃], in, on.

entrer [ɑ̃trɛ] dans, to enter, go into.

histoire [istwa:r], f., story.

marcher [marʃɛ], to march, walk.

pour [pur], for, in order to.

raconter [rakɔ̃tɛ], to relate, tell.

ramasser [ramasɛ], to pick up, collect.

rencontrer [rɑ̃kɔ̃trɛ], to meet.

Robert [rɔbɛ:r], Robert.

route [rut], f., way.

rue [ry], f., street.

nous voici [nu vwa:si], here we are. en route [ɑ̃ rut], on the way.

EXERCISE IX.

A. Je ramasse mes affaires pour aller à l'école. Voici mes livres, mon cahier, mes plumes, ma règle, mon crayon. Les voilà maintenant dans mon sac. Maintenant je suis en route

pour l'école. Dans la rue je rencontre mon ami Robert. Nous marchons ensemble. Nous continuons notre chemin. Il raconte une histoire. Nous arrivons à la porte de l'école. Nous entrons dans l'école. Nous voici dans la classe. Les autres élèves arrivent aussi, et le maître commence les leçons. Ce maître donne des leçons faciles. Cette leçon n'est pas difficile. Ces élèves-ci écoutent. Ces élèves-là n'écoutent pas.

B. Continue the following: 1. Je donne du papier à l'élève, etc. 2. Est-ce que j'arrive à l'école?, etc. 3. Je ne ramasse pas mes affaires, tu ne ramasses pas tes affaires, etc. 4. Est-ce que je ne donne pas un canif à Robert?, etc.

C. (Oral.) 1. Où allons-nous? 2. Qui ramasse nos affaires? 3. Où sont nos cahiers? 4. Avez-vous vos livres? 5. Est-ce que vous avez votre crayon aussi? 6. Où sommes-nous maintenant? 7. Qui est en route pour l'école? 8. Qui rencontrons-nous? 9. Où est-ce que nous le rencontrons? 10. Qui est Robert? 11. Est-ce que Robert est en route pour l'école aussi? 12. Qui raconte une histoire? 13. Qui arrive à la porte de l'école? 14. Où entrons-nous? 15. Où sommes-nous maintenant? 16. Qui est dans la classe? 17. Est-ce que les autres élèves sont dans la classe aussi? 18. Qui commence les leçons? 19. Ce maître donne-t-il des leçons faciles? 20. Ces leçons sont-elles faciles? 21. Cet élève-là écoute-t-il? Etc., etc.

D. 1. Where are you going? 2. Are you going to school? 3. We are going to school. 4. I am collecting my things to go to school. 5. My things are in my bag now. 6. We meet our friends in the street. 7. We continue our way. 8. We arrive at the door of the school. 9. The other pupils arrive also. 10. They enter the school. 11. We enter the school too. 12. The master and the pupils are in the class-room. 13. He begins the lesson. 14. Is he beginning the lesson now? 15. He continues the lesson. 16. This lesson is not easy. 17. It is difficult. 18. These lessons are difficult. 19. The master tells a story. 20. The pupils listen. 21. Are you listening? 22. Yes, sir, I am listening now. 23. Robert, are you listening? 24. Yes, sir. 25. Are those pupils listening?

LESSON X.

45. Plural Forms. Note the following exceptions to the rule (§ 31) that the plural of nouns and adjectives is formed by adding **-s** to the singular :

1. Nouns in **-s**, **-x**, **-z**, and adjectives in **-s**, **-x**, remain unchanged in the plural, *e.g.*, **bras**, **bras**, arm(s); **voix**, **voix**, voice(s); **nez**, **nez**, nose(s); **bas**, **bas**, low; **vieux**, **vieux**, old.

2. Nouns and adjectives in **-au**, nouns in **-eu**, and a few nouns in **-ou**, add **-x** instead of **-s**, *e.g.*, **couteau**, **couteaux**, knife, knives; **beau**, **beaux**, fine; **jeu**, **jeux**, game(s); **bijou**, **bijoux**, jewel(s); **caillou**, **cailloux**, pebble(s), and a few rarer nouns in **-ou**.

3. Nouns, and the commoner adjectives, in **-al** change **-al** to **-au** and add **-x** (as above), *e.g.*, **général**, **généraux**, general(s); **rival**, **rivaux**, rival(s), except **bal**, **bals**, ball(s), and a few rarer nouns.

4. **Oeil**, **yeux**, eye(s); **ciel**, **cieux**, sky, skies, heaven(s).

46. Contractions. The forms **à + le** and **à + les** are always contracted into **au** and **aux** respectively; the remaining forms are not contracted, thus, **à la**, **à l'** in full :

Je parle **au** [o] frère.

I speak to the brother.

Aux [o] sœurs, **aux** [oz] hommes.

To the sisters, to the men.

But : Je parle **à la** sœur, **à l'**homme.

47. Use of *il y a*. 1. 'There is' and 'there are' are not only translated by **voilà**, but also by **il y a** :

Voilà des plumes sur la table.

There are some pens on the table.

Il y a [il j a] des plumes sur la table.

There are some pens on the table.

2. Observe, however, that **voilà** answers the question 'where is?', 'where are?', and makes a specific statement about an object to which attention is directed by pointing or the like, while **il y a** does not answer the question 'where is?', 'where are?', and makes a general statement.

3. **Il y a** governs nouns just like other transitive verbs :

Je donne **des plumes** à Marie.

I give (some) pens to Mary.

Il y a **des plumes** sur la table.

There are (some) pens on the table.

VOCABULARY.

aimer [ame], to love, like.
beau [bo], fine, handsome.
beaucoup [boku], much, very much.
blanc [blā], white.
bleu [blø], blue.
bord [bō:r], m., edge, shore, border.
caillou [kaju], m., pebble, stone.
cheval [jəval], m., horse.
courageux [kuraʒø], brave.
creuser [krøze], to dig.
eau [o], f., water.
fougueux [fugø], spirited, fiery.
général [ʒeneral], m., general.
grand [grō], great, large, tall.
jouer [ʒwe], to play.

lac [lak], m., lake.
l'un [l œ], the one, one.
naturel [natyrel], natural.
noir [nwa:r], black.
oeil, yeux [œj, jø], m., eye, eyes.
parce que [pars kə], because.
pourquoi? [purkwa], why?
qui [ki], indecl., who, whom,
 which.
représenter [rəprezāte], to repre-
 sent.
sable [sabl], m., sand.
si [si], so.
vieux [vjø], old.

à cheval, on horseback. chez nous, at home, at our house.

EXERCISE X.

A. Il y a deux tableaux chez nous. Nous les aimons beaucoup, parce qu'ils sont si naturels. L'un représente quatre enfants qui jouent au bord du lac. L'eau du lac est bleue (f.), et les yeux des enfants sont bleus aussi. Il y en a deux qui ramassent des cailloux, et les deux autres creusent dans le sable. L'autre tableau représente deux grands généraux à cheval. Ils sont sur deux beaux chevaux. L'un des chevaux est blanc et l'autre est noir. Les généraux sont courageux et leurs chevaux sont beaux et fougueux.

B. Continue the following: 1. Je parle aux généraux, etc. 2. Je parle à l'enfant, etc. 3. Est-ce que je ramasse des cailloux?, etc. 4. Il y a des plumes dans ma boîte, dans ta boîte, etc. 5. Il n'y en a pas dans ma boîte, ta boîte, etc. 6. Mes yeux sont bleus, tes yeux, etc. 7. J'ai deux beaux chevaux, etc. 8. J'aime ces vieux tableaux, etc.

C. (Oral.) 1. Où sont les tableaux? 2. Est-ce que vous les aimez? 3. Pourquoi est-ce que vous les aimez? 4. Y a-t-il des tableaux dans cette salle? 5. Montrez-moi ces tableaux. 6. Qui joue? 7. Où est-ce qu'ils jouent? 8. Les yeux des enfants sont-ils bleus ou noirs? 9. Vos yeux sont-ils noirs?

10. Qui ramasse des cailloux? 11. Que ramassez-vous? 12. Qui creuse dans le sable? 13. Où sont les deux grands généraux? 14. Les chevaux des généraux sont-ils blancs ou noirs? 15. Vos frères sont-ils courageux? 16. À qui est-ce que je parle? 17. À qui est-ce que vous parlez? 18. Y a-t-il des plumes dans votre boîte? 19. Combien de tableaux y a-t-il chez nous? 20. Aimez-vous ces vieux tableaux? Etc., etc.

D. 1. There are two fine pictures in our class-room. 2. The pupils like them. 3. These pictures are natural and beautiful. 4. In this picture there are four children. 5. They are playing. 6. The children's eyes are blue. 7. Three of the children are picking up pebbles on the shore of the lake. 8. The other child is digging in the sand. 9. He is talking to the other children. 10. There is the other picture. 11. In that picture there are two generals. 12. Their horses are fine and spirited. 13. The generals are brave. 14. I like these pictures very much. 15. The master is relating the story of the generals to the pupils. 16. There is a pupil who is not listening. 17. Show me the pupil who is not listening. 18. I am listening, because I like this story. 19. Now, show me the fine pictures. 20. There they are.

LESSON XI.

48. An Indefinite Pronoun. 1. 'One,' 'some one,' 'we,' 'you,' 'they,' 'people,' used indefinitely, are represented in French by **on**, with the verb always in the singular:

On [ô] parle de Jean.

We (you, they, etc.) speak of John.

2. When following a verb with a final vowel, **on** is joined to it by **-t-** (cf. § 29):

Par où commence-t-on ?

Where do we (etc.) begin ?

3. An **on** construction often corresponds to an English passive, especially when the agent is not mentioned :

Ensuite on apporte le potage.

Next the soup is brought.

49. Interrogation. Observe the frequently used interrogative phrase '**qu'est-ce que ?**' = 'what?' which is made up of **que ?** (§ 38, 3) + **est-ce que ?** (§ 43):

Qu'a-t-il ? or Qu'est-ce qu'il a ?

What has he ?

50. Present Indicative of *faire*, 'to do,' 'make' (irreg.).

I do, am doing, etc.

je fais [ʒə fɛ].

tu fais [ty fɛ].

il fait [il fɛ].

We do, are doing, etc.

nous faisons [nu fəzɔ̃].

vous faites [vu fet].

ils font [il fɔ̃].

VOCABULARY.

d'abord [d abɔ:r], first (of all).

apporter [apɔrte], to bring.

assiette [asjet], f., plate.

bientôt [bjɛto], soon.

bibliothèque [bibliotek], f., library.

bonne [bɔn], f., maid, servant.

café [kafɛ], m., coffee.

chapeau [ʃapo], m., hat.

couteau [kuto], m., knife.

cuiller [kyje:r], f., spoon.

dessert [desɛ:r], m., dessert.

ensuite [ɔ̃sqit], then, next.

escalier [ɛskalje], m., stairs.

fourchette [furjet], f., fork.

fruit [fri], m., fruit.

journal [ʒurnal], m., newspaper.

légume [legym], m., vegetable.

lire [li:r], to read.

manger [mãʒɛ], to eat.

moment [mɔmɔ̃], m., moment.

monter [mɔ̃te], to go up.

nappe [nap], f., table-cloth.

ôter [ote], to take off.

place [plas], f., place.

potage [pota:ʒ], m., soup.

prend [prɛ], 3 sg. pres. ind. *prendre*, to take.

puis [pui], then, afterwards.

remporter [rɔ̃pɔrte], to take away.

repas [rɛpo], m., meal, repast.

retourner [rɛturnɛ], to return, go back.

salle à manger [sal a mãʒɛ], f., dining-room.

sonner [sɔ̃ne], to ring.

vestibule [vestibyl], m., hall, entrance.

viande [vjã:d], f., meat.

en haut [ã o], up stairs. en bas [ã bɔ], down stairs.

EXERCISE XI.

4. Nous voici de retour de l'école. Nous entrons dans la maison. Dans le vestibule nous ôtons nos chapeaux. Ensuite nous montons l'escalier. Nous sommes en haut maintenant, et nous entrons dans la bibliothèque un moment pour lire les journaux. Bientôt on sonne, et nous allons en bas. Nous voici dans la salle à manger. La nappe est sur la table. Les assiettes, les cuillers, les couteaux et les fourchettes sont à leur place. On commence le repas. La bonne apporte le potage. Puis, elle apporte la viande et les légumes. On mange, on

raconte des histoires. La bonne remporte les assiettes. Au dessert on mange du fruit et on prend du café.

✓ *B.* Continue the following: 1. J'ôte mon chapeau, tu ôtes ton chapeau, etc. 2. Je ne suis pas en haut, etc. 3. Qu'est-ce que je fais?, etc. 4. Est-ce que je ne sonne pas?, etc. 5. Je ne monte pas l'escalier, etc. 6. On apporte mon repas, ton repas, etc. 7. Est-ce qu'on n'apporte pas mon repas?, ton repas?, etc. 8. Il n'y a pas de viande sur mon assiette, ton assiette, etc.

C. (Oral.) 1. Où est-ce que nous allons maintenant? 2. Que faisons-nous dans le vestibule? 3. Qu'est-ce que vous faites dans le vestibule? 4. Ensuite que faites-vous? 5. Pourquoi est-ce que j'entre dans la bibliothèque? 6. La bibliothèque est-elle en haut ou en bas? 7. Où est la salle à manger? 8. Qui sonne? 9. Est-ce que la bonne sonne pour le repas? 10. Qu'est-ce qu'il y a sur la table dans la salle à manger? 11. Où sont les couteaux et les fourchettes? 12. Les cuillers sont-elles sur la table? 13. Qu'est-ce qu'on apporte d'abord? 14. Ensuite, qu'est-ce qu'on apporte? 15. Qu'est-ce qu'on fait au repas? 16. Raconte-t-on des histoires aussi? 17. Qui apporte le dessert? 18. Qu'est-ce qu'on mange au dessert? Etc., etc.

D. 1. I am returning home now. 2. I enter the house. 3. First, I take off my hat in the hall. 4. You take off your hat. 5. I meet my brother in the hall. 6. We go into the library for a moment to read the newspapers. 7. Somebody rings. 8. We listen. 9. We are up stairs. 10. The dining-room is down stairs. 11. There is a cloth on the table in the dining-room. 12. There are plates, spoons, knives and forks on the table also. 13. First, the soup is brought. 14. The soup is eaten, and the maid brings the meat. 15. There is no fruit on the table now. 16. The maid brings it at (the) dessert. 17. People take coffee at dessert. 18. Then they go up stairs. 19. Then they go into the library. 20. What am I doing now? 21. What are you doing? 22. We are going into the library.

LESSON XII.

51. Feminine of Adjectives. It is regularly formed by adding *-e* to the masculine singular, but adjectives ending in *-e* remain unchanged.

Grand, m., grande, f., tall; facile, m. or f., easy.

52. Irregularities. Change of stem takes place in certain adjectives on adding *-e*. The following list shows the commoner types:

M.	F.	M.	F.
actif,	active, active.	cruel,	cruelle, cruel.
heureux,	heureuse, happy.	gentil,	gentille, nice.
flatteur,	flatteuse, flatter- ing.	ancien,	ancienne, ancient.
blanc,	blanche, white.	gros,	grosse, big.
long,	longue, long.	mu ^{et} , cher,	muette, dumb.
faux,	fausse, false.	sec,	sèche, dry.

Observe also: m. beau or bel, f. belle, fine; m. nouveau or nouvel, f. nouvelle, new; m. vieux or vieil, f. vieille, old, with two forms for the masculine, one of which gives the feminine. The masculine forms in *-l* are used before a vowel or *h* mute:

Le bel arbre, le bel homme. The fine tree, the handsome man.

But: L'arbre est beau; le beau livre; les beaux arbres; les arbres sont beaux.

53. Position. 1. An attributive adjective more usually follows its noun:

Un homme riche, une pomme mûre. A rich man, a ripe apple.

2. Adjectives from proper nouns, adjectives of physical quality, participles as adjectives, almost always follow:

La langue anglaise. The English language.

Du café chaud, une lampe cassée. Hot coffee, a broken lamp.

3. The following of very common occurrence nearly always precede:

Bon, good, mauvais, bad; beau, fine, handsome, joli, pretty, vilain, ugly; jeune, young, vieux, old; grand, tall, great, gros, big, petit, small; long, long, court, short.

54. Interrogative Adjective. 'Which?', 'what?', 'what (a)!' = *m. quel?*, *f. quelle?*, *m. pl. quels?*, *f. pl. quelles?*

Quel [kɛl] livre?

Which (what) book?

Quelle [kɛl] plume?

Which (what) pen?

Quelle belle vue! *Quels* héros!

What a fine view! What heroes!

55. 'There,' 'in that place' = *y*. It stands for a place already referred to, is put before the verb like a pronoun object, and is less emphatic than *là* = 'there':

Est-il à l'école? Il *y* [i] *est*.

Is he at school? He is (there).

VOCABULARY.

agneau [apo], *m.*, lamb.

animal [animal], *m.*, animal, beast.

arbre [arbr], *m.*, tree.

beau, belle [bo, bel], fine, handsome.

blanc, blanche [blā, blā:f], white.

bois [bwā], *m.*, wood(s).

campagne [kāpan], *f.*, country.

champ [fā], *m.*, field.

chemin de fer [fēmē də fε:r], *m.*, railway.

comme [kōm], how!

comment [kōmō], how?

cousin(e) [kuzē, kuzin], cousin.

fer [fε:r], *m.*, iron.

fleur [flœ:r], *f.*, flower.

gare [gair], *f.*, station.

heureux -se [œrø, œrø:z], happy (to, de).

joli [zoli], pretty.

oncle [ō:kl], *m.*, uncle.

par [par], by.

parents [parō], *m. pl.*, relatives.

passer [pōse], to pass.

petit [pēti], small.

regarder [rēgarde], to look at.

semaine [sēmē:n], *f.*, week.

tante [tā:t], *f.*, aunt.

tout [tu], all, everything.

travailler [travaje], to work.

trouver [truve], to find.

vache [vaʃ], *f.*, cow.

visiter [vizite], to visit.

vite [vit], quickly.

voir [vwair], to see.

voiture [vwaty:r], *f.*, carriage.

y [i], there, in that place.

à la campagne, in the country.

de nous voir, to see us.

aller { *visiter*,
 voir, } to go to see, go and visit.

en fleurs, in flower, blooming.

EXERCISE XII.

A. Nous allons visiter nos parents à la campagne. Nous y allons par le chemin de fer. Nous arrivons à la petite gare. Nous y trouvons ma tante et une de mes cousines avec leur voiture. Comme nous sommes heureux de les voir! Mon oncle et mes cousins n'y sont pas, parce qu'ils travaillent dans

les champs. Nous montons dans la voiture, et nous voilà en route. Comme la campagne est belle! Tout est en fleurs, les arbres et les champs. Nous passons devant les beaux champs et les jolies maisons blanches. Les chevaux marchent vite, et nous arrivons bientôt chez nos parents. Nous y passons deux ou trois semaines. Nous allons dans les bois et les champs. Nous y trouvons des fleurs et des fruits. Nous allons regarder les animaux, les belles vaches et les jolis agneaux.

B. Continue the following: 1. Quelle plume est-ce que je donne à l'enfant?, etc. 2. Est-ce que j'ai des fleurs blanches?, etc. 3. Mes fleurs sont belles et blanches, tes fleurs, etc. 4. Je ne suis pas heureuse, etc. 5. Je suis à la campagne; j'y suis, etc. 6. J'ai un bel arbre devant ma maison, tu as un bel arbre devant ta maison, etc.

C. (Oral.) 1. Où sont vos parents? 2. Comment allons-nous à la campagne? 3. Comment y allons-nous? 4. La gare est-elle grande ou petite? 5. Qui trouve-t-on à la gare? 6. Notre tante est-elle heureuse de nous voir? 7. Que fait votre oncle? 8. Pourquoi vos cousins ne sont-ils pas à la gare? 9. Aimez-vous la campagne? 10. Pourquoi? 11. Les chevaux de votre oncle sont-ils beaux? 12. Et sa maison est-elle belle? 13. Combien de semaines passez-vous chez vos parents? 14. Aimez-vous les fleurs blanches? 15. Quelles fleurs aimez-vous? 16. Êtes-vous heureuse d'aller voir votre tante, mademoiselle? 17. Où trouve-t-on ces belles fleurs? 18. Où sont les belles vaches et les jolis agneaux? 19. Quels animaux y a-t-il dans les champs? Etc., etc.

D. 1. I have an uncle and aunt in the country. 2. They have a fine house and a carriage. 3. There is my uncle's house. 4. We are going to visit them. 5. We are going (y) by (the) railway. 6. We find my uncle and cousins at the station. 7. My aunt is not there. 8. How beautiful the country is! 9. The flowers in (de) the fields are so pretty! 10. We go to see the animals in the fields. 11. There are pretty white lambs and fine cows in the fields. 12. We are going to pass two or three weeks with (chez) our relatives. 13. They are happy to see us. 14. We are happy to see them too. 15. I like my aunt and uncle. 16. Which uncle are you going to visit now? 17. What are you going to do in the country?

LESSON XIII.

56. Present Indicative of *donner, finir, vendre*.

I give, am giving, etc.	I finish, am finishing, etc.	I sell, am selling, etc.
donn e [dɔ̃n].	fini s [fini].	vend s [vɑ̃].
donn es [dɔ̃n].	fini s [fini].	vend s [vɑ̃].
donn e [dɔ̃n].	fini t [fini].	vend * [vɑ̃].
donn ons [dɔ̃ɔ̃].	finiss ons [finisɔ̃].	vend ons [vɑ̃dɔ̃].
donn ez [dɔ̃ne].	finiss ez [finise].	vend ez [vɑ̃de].
donn ent [dɔ̃n].	finiss ent [finis].	vend ent [vɑ̃d].

* **Vendre** is irregular in this one form. The regular verb **rompre** has **rompt**, but **vendre** is here given as being more useful for practice.

NOTE.—The pronouns **je, tu, il**, etc., have been omitted in this paradigm and in some others to economize space in printing. They should be supplied in learning or reciting the paradigms.

57. **The General Noun.** A noun used in a general sense takes the definite article in French, though not commonly in English :

L'homme est mortel.	Man is mortal.
Les hommes sont mortels.	Men are mortal.
Le miel est très doux.	Honey is very sweet.
Le cheval est un animal utile.	The horse is a useful animal.

58. **Tout.** 'All,' 'the whole,' 'every,' = **tout**, with the following forms, which precede the article, when it is present :

m. s., tout [tu]. f. s., toute [tut]. m. pl., tous [tu]. f. pl., toutes [tut].

Tout homme, toute femme.	Every man, every woman.
Tous les hommes.	All the men.
Toute la journée.	The whole day.

VOCABULARY.

août [u], m., August.	espèce [espes], f., species, kind.
bâtir [bati:r], to build.	fruitier [frütje], fruit (adj.).
bon, bonne [bɔ̃, bɔ̃n], good.	goût [gu], m., taste.
cerise [sɛri:z], f., cherry.	grimper [grêpe], to climb.
cerisier [sɛrizje], m., cherry-tree.	majorité [majɔrite], f., majority.

marchand [marʃɑ̃], m., merchant.
mois [mwa], m., month.
mûr [my:r], ripe.
mûrir [myri:r], to ripen.
poire [pwa:r], f., pear.
poirier [pwarje], m., pear-tree.
pomme [pɔm], f., apple.
pommier [pɔmje], m., apple-tree.
prune [pryn], f., plum.
prunier [prynje], m., plum-tree.

quand [kɑ̃], when.
rouge [ru:ʒ], red.
septembre [septɑ̃:br], m., September.
souvent [suvɑ̃], often.
vendre [vɑ̃:dr], to sell.
verger [verʒe], m., orchard.
vert [vɛ:r], green.
ville [vil], f., town, city.

à la maison, at home. pour en avoir, to get some. en (dans) quel mois?, in what month? au mois d'août, in the month of August.

EXERCISE XIII.

A. Chez notre oncle à la campagne il y a un verger. Dans ce verger il y a des arbres fruitiers. La majorité des arbres sont des pommiers, et ils donnent des pommes de toute espèce. Il y en a qui mûrissent au mois d'août, et il y en a qui mûrissent au mois de septembre. On ne mange pas toutes les pommes à la maison. On en vend beaucoup aux marchands des villes. Il y a aussi dans le verger des cerisiers, des pruniers et des poiriers. Les cerises sont rouges et ont un bon goût quand elles sont mûres. Les prunes et les poires sont bonnes aussi. Nous les aimons beaucoup, et souvent nous grimpons dans les arbres pour en avoir.

B. Continue the following: 1. Je vends des pommes aux marchands, etc. 2. Est-ce que je vends des pommes aux marchands?, etc. 3. Je ne vends pas de pommes, etc. 4. Je finis mes leçons, tu finis tes leçons, etc. 5. Est-ce que je bâtis une maison?, etc. 6. Je ne bâtis pas une maison, etc. 7. J'aime les pommes, etc.

C. (Oral.) 1. Où est le verger de votre oncle? 2. Quels arbres y a-t-il dans son verger? 3. Quel fruit les pommiers donnent-ils? 4. Quel fruit est-ce que le prunier donne? 5. Ces pommes sont-elles mûres ou vertes? 6. Les pommes ont-elles un bon goût quand elles sont vertes? 7. En quel mois les prunes mûrissent-elles? 8. À qui est-ce qu'on vend les cerises? 9. En quel mois est-ce que votre oncle vend ses pommes? 10. Ne vendez-vous pas toutes vos poires? 11.

Aimez-vous les poires? 12. Mange-t-on les poires quand elles sont vertes? 13. Mange-t-on toutes les poires à la maison? 14. En quel mois la pomme mûrit-elle? 15. Pourquoi grimpez-vous dans le pommier de votre oncle? 16. Allons-nous visiter le verger de votre oncle aujourd'hui? 17. Est-ce que vous finissez vos leçons maintenant? 18. Qui bâtit cette maison derrière le verger? Etc., etc.

D. 1. There is a pear-tree in our orchard. 2. There are also apple-trees, plum-trees and cherry-trees. 3. What fruit does the apple-tree bear (*donner*)? 4. What fruit do plum-trees bear? 5. The cherry-tree bears cherries. 6. Are the plums ripe now? 7. In what month do plums ripen? 8. They ripen in the month of September. 9. The apple ripens also in the month of September. 10. The pears on (*de*) these trees are green. 11. There are ripe cherries on that tree. 12. When the apples ripen they are sold. 13. We sell them to the merchants. 14. We do not eat apples when they are green. 15. They have not a good taste. 16. When we finish our lessons we go into the orchard. 17. All the apples are ripening now. 18. I climb into the pear-tree to get pears. 19. We sell the good pears. 20. We give the others to the animals.

LESSON XIV.

59. Partitives. In partitive constructions (§ 36), **de** alone is used:—

1. In a general negation (§ 36, 2):

Il n'a pas de plumes.

He has no pens.

2. When an adjective precedes the noun:

Marie a de jolies fleurs.

Mary has (some) pretty flowers.

J'ai de votre argent.

I have some of your money.

But: J'ai des pommes mûres.

I have (some) ripe apples.

3. Similarly when a noun after an adjective is understood:

De bons rois et de mauvais.

Good kings and bad (kings).

4. After words of quantity in such expressions as these:

Beaucoup de thé.

A great deal of tea (much tea).

Une livre de viande.

A pound of meat.

Assez de viande.

Enough (of) meat.

Trop de pain.

Too much bread.

60. The preposition **de** + a noun forms adjectival phrases:Une robe **de** soie.

A silk dress.

La feuille d'érable.

The maple leaf.

61. Observe the following expressions of frequent use, formed from **avoir** + an undetermined noun:avoir **besoin** [bəzwɛ] **de**, be in
need of, need.avoir **soif** [swaf], be thirsty.avoir **chaud** [ʃo], be warm/avoir **sommeil** [sɔmɛ:j], be sleepy.avoir **froid** [frwɑ], be cold.avoir **raison** [rezɔ̃], be (in the)
right.avoir **faim** [fɛ], be hungry.avoir **tort** [tɔ:r], be (in the) wrong.

VOCABULARY.

abriter [abrite], to shelter.**insecte** [ɛsɛkt], m., insect.**alors** [alɔ:r], then.**intéressant** [ɛtɛrɛsɑ̃], interesting.**brise** [bri:z], f., breeze.**mauvais** [mwɛ], bad.**canadien** [kanadjɛ], Canadian.**moins** [mwɛ̃], less.**chaud** [ʃo], m., heat.**national** [nasjɔnal], national.**chose** [ʃo:z], f., thing.**nombreux** [nɔ̃brø], numerous.**écureuil** [ekyʁœ:j], m., squirrel.**nourriture** [nuʁity:r], f., food.**emblème** [ɔ̃blɛ:m], m., emblem.**oiseau** [wazo], m., bird.**érable** [erabl], m., maple.**ombre** [ɔ̃:br], f., shade.**feuille** [føɛ:j], f., leaf.**orme** [ɔrm], m., elm.**feuillage** [føɛja:ʒ], m., foliage.**parmi** [parmi], among.**fournir** [furni:r], to furnish.**très** [trɛ], very.**hêtre** [ɛ:tr, ʰ asp., §17, 5], m., beech.**utile** [ytil], useful.**il fait chaud**, it is warm, hot (of weather or temperature).

EXERCISE XIV.

4. Quand nous sommes à la campagne nous allons souvent aux bois. On y trouve beaucoup de choses intéressantes. Il y a là de grands arbres et de petites fleurs. Les arbres abritent beaucoup de petits animaux. Les écureuils et les petits oiseaux trouvent leur nourriture dans les arbres. Les fleurs fournissent de la nourriture aux insectes nombreux. Les Canadiens aiment beaucoup l'érable. L'érable est un bel arbre et il est très utile. La feuille d'érable est l'emblème national canadien. Il y a d'autres arbres, comme le hêtre et l'orme, qui sont beaux et utiles aussi. Leur feuillage est vert et donne

de l'ombre. Quand il fait chaud nous trouvons souvent à l'ombre une bonne brise, et alors nous avons moins chaud.

B. Continue the following : 1. J'ai de jolies fleurs, etc. 2. Est-ce que j'ai des pommes mûres?, etc. 3. J'ai de bonnes pommes et de mauvaises, etc. 4. J'aime le hêtre et l'érable, etc. 5. Est-ce que je vends beaucoup de pommes?, etc. 6. J'ai raison, etc. 7. Je n'ai pas tort, etc. 8. Est-ce que j'ai chaud?, etc.

C. (Oral.) 1. Qu'est-ce qu'on trouve dans les bois? 2. Où trouve-t-on de grands arbres? 3. Y a-t-il de petites fleurs dans les bois aussi? 4. Quels animaux les arbres abritent-ils? 5. Les oiseaux ont-ils besoin de nourriture? 6. Où est-ce que les oiseaux trouvent leur nourriture? 7. Où trouvons-nous notre nourriture? 8. À quels petits animaux les fleurs fournissent-elles de la nourriture? 9. Quels arbres trouve-t-on dans les bois? 10. Quels arbres aimez-vous? 11. L'érable est-il un bel arbre? 12. Aimez-vous le hêtre et l'orme? 13. Trouve-t-on des arbres fruitiers dans les bois? 14. Où est-ce qu'on les trouve? 15. Les arbres des bois sont-ils beaux? 16. Y a-t-il de beaux arbres chez votre oncle? 17. Qu'est-ce que le feuillage des arbres donne? 18. Est-ce qu'il fait chaud aujourd'hui? 19. Avez-vous chaud? 20. Où allons nous quand il fait chaud? 21. Est-ce qu'on a soif quand il fait chaud? 22. Avez-vous soif? Etc., etc.

D. 1. To-day it is hot, and we are going to the woods. 2. There are many interesting things in the woods. 3. One finds there great trees and beautiful flowers. 4. Among the trees there are pretty little animals. 5. The leaves of the trees and the flowers shelter many little insects. 6. These trees are very beautiful and very useful also. 7. The maple is a very fine tree. 8. We like the elm and the beech because they are fine trees. 9. The beech and the elm are very useful. 10. The foliage of trees gives shade. 11. In the woods behind our house there are large trees and small ones. 12. People like the shade of trees when it is hot. 13. We go into the woods to find shade. 14. The animals in the woods have need of food. 15. The fruits of the trees furnish food to the animals. 16. Many little insects find food in the flowers. 17. When it is hot the animals are thirsty. 18. Then they need water. 19. They find it in the woods. 20. We need water when we are thirsty. 21. People need food when they are hungry.

For Monday October 24. 1904.

§§62-66]

LESSON XV.

(43) *active*
passive
groupe

LESSON XV.

62.

Past Participles.

Given.	Finished.	Sold.	Had.	Been.
donné [done].	fini [fini].	<u>vendu</u> [vōdy].	eu [y].	été [ete].

63. Compound Tenses. They are formed from the past participle along with an auxiliary (usually **avoir**, sometimes **être**), as in the following section.

64.

The Past Indefinite.

I have given, or I gave, etc.	I have finished, or I finished, etc.	I have sold, or I sold, etc.
j'ai donné [3 e done] tu as donné [ty a done], etc.	j'ai fini [3 e fini] tu as fini [ty a fini], etc.	j'ai vendu [3 e vōdy] tu as vendu [ty a vōdy], etc.
I have had, or I had, etc.	I have been, or I was, etc.	
j'ai eu [3 e y]. tu as eu [ty az y]. il a eu [il a y]. etc.	j'ai été [3 e ete]. tu as été [ty az ete]. il a été [il a ete]. etc.	

65. Word Order. The auxiliary is the verb in a compound tense, and all rules of word order apply to it:

Nous ne l'avons pas fini.	We have not finished it.
N'a-t-elle pas été ici ?	Has she not been here ?

66. Use of Past Indefinite. It denotes not only what has happened or has been happening, as in English, but also what happened (= English past tense):

J'ai fini mon ouvrage.	I have finished my work.
Elle a chanté toute la matinée.	She has been singing all the morning.
Il a été longtemps ici.	He was here for a long time.
J'ai quitté Paris l'hiver passé.	I left Paris last winter.

N.B.—The past indefinite is the ordinary past tense of French. For the past tense of narrative in the literary style, see § 148.

67. Idiomatic Present Indicative. Besides its use in general, as in English, the present indicative is used idiomatically, in certain phrases, to denote what has been and still continues to be :

Depuis quand êtes-vous ici ?
Je suis ici depuis trois jours.

How long have you been here ?
I have been here for three days
(or for three days past, or
for the last three days).

VOCABULARY.

acheter [a'te], to buy.
battre [batr], to beat, thresh.
blé [ble], m., wheat.
contre [kōtr], against, from.
couper [kupe], to cut.
depuis [dèpuj], since.
fait [fɛ], p. p. *faire*, to do.
farine [farin], f., flour.
froid [frwa], m., cold.
germer [ʒɛrme], to sprout.
grandir [grādi:r], to grow large.
grange [grā:ʒ], f., barn.

hier [je:r], yesterday.
meunier [mōnje], m., miller.
morceau [mōrso], m., piece.
neige [ne:ʒ], f., snow.
paysan [peizā], m., peasant, farmer.
plante [plā:t], f., plant.
protéger [poteʒe], to protect.
saison [sezō], f., season.
sec [sek], dry.
semmer [sème], to sow.
transporter [trāspote], to carry, bring.

en quelle saison ?, in what season ?, when ?; **au printemps** [o prētā], in spring; **en été** [ān ete], in summer; **en automne** [ān otōn], in autumn; **en hiver** [ān ive:r], in winter.

EXERCISE XV.

A. Voici l'histoire d'un morceau de pain. En automne le paysan a semé le blé, et puis le blé a germé. En hiver la neige a protégé les jeunes plantes contre le froid. Au printemps elles ont grandi. En été le blé a mûri. Les paysans l'ont coupé. Ils l'ont transporté dans la grange, et ils l'ont battu. Le meunier a acheté le blé pour faire de la farine. Il a fourni la farine au boulanger. Le boulanger a fait le pain, et ensuite il l'a vendu. Voilà un morceau de pain sur la table. Il est là depuis hier, et il est très sec.

B. (Oral.) 1. Quelle histoire est-ce que vous racontez ? 2. Qui a travaillé pour faire le pain ? 3. Qui a semé le blé ? 4. En quelle saison l'a-t-il semé ? 5. Quand le blé a-t-il germé ? 6. Qu'est-ce

que la neige a fait en hiver? 7. En quelle saison est-ce que les plantes ont grandi? 8. Quand le blé a-t-il mûri? 9. Avez-vous coupé le blé? 10. Est-ce que j'ai coupé le blé? 11. Qui a coupé le blé? 12. Où l'ont-ils transporté? 13. Et ensuite qu'est-ce qu'ils ont fait? 14. À qui l'ont-ils vendu? 15. Qu'est-ce que le meunier a fait? 16. Le boulanger qu'a-t-il acheté pour faire le pain? 17. Qui a fourni la farine au boulanger? 18. Avons-nous vendu le pain? 19. Qui l'a vendu? 20. Depuis quand ce morceau de pain est-il sur la table? 21. Pourquoi est-il sec? 22. Depuis quand êtes-vous ici? Etc., etc. ✓

C. 1. This bread is dry. 2. It has been on the table since yesterday. 3. Here is the story of a piece of bread. 4. The farmer sowed the wheat. 5. He sowed it in the autumn. 6. The wheat sprouted. 7. In the winter the snow protected the young plants from the cold. 8. When did they grow large? 9. In spring. 10. When did the wheat ripen? 11. It ripened in summer. 12. Who cut the wheat? 13. Did we bring it into the barn? 14. Did you thresh it? 15. Who bought the wheat? 16. The miller bought it, and made the flour. 17. We are the bakers; we made the bread. 18. Then we sold it to the farmers. 19. Here are two pieces of dry bread. 20. Did you make this bread? 21. Who made it? 22. Our baker made it.

LESSON XVI.

¹⁷68. **Comparatives.** Place **plus** = 'more,' **moins** = 'less,' or **aussi** = 'as,' before the adjective, and **que** = 'than' or 'as' after it, to form comparatives:

Il est plus grand que Jean.	He is taller than John.
Il est moins grand que Jean.	He is less tall than (not so t. as) John.
Il est aussi grand que Jean.	He is as tall as John.

69. **Superlatives.** 1. Place the definite article or a possessive adjective before **plus** or **moins** to form superlatives:

Marie est **la plus** jeune de toutes. Mary is the **youngest** of all.

Obs.: **La plus** jeune des deux. The younger of the two.

2. Do not omit the definite article when the superlative follows the noun:

La leçon **la plus** difficile.

The most difficult lesson.

Mes livres **les plus** utiles.

My most useful books.

70. Irregular Comparison. Observe the irregular forms:
bon [bɔ̃], good. **meilleur** [mejœ:r], better. **le meilleur** [lə mejœ:r],
 the best.

71. Comparison of Adverbs. 1. They are compared by **plus** and **moins** like adjectives, but **le** in the superlative is invariable.

2. Observe the irregular forms :

bien [bjɛ̃], well. **mieux** [mjø], better. **le mieux** [lə mjø], (the) best.
peu [pø], little. **moins** [mwɛ̃], less. **le moins** [lə mwɛ̃], (the) least.

72. Present Indicative of *aller*, 'to go' (irreg.).

I go, am going, etc.

We go, are going, etc.

je vais [ʒə ve].

nous allons [nuz alɔ̃].

tu vas [ty va].

vous allez [vuz ale].

il va [il va].

ils vont [il vɔ̃].

73. Imperative of *aller*, 'to go.'

va [va], go.

allons [alɔ̃], let us go.

allez [ale], go.

VOCABULARY.

année [ane], f., year.
avril [avril], m., April.
carotte [karot], f., carrot.
charmant [ʃarmɑ̃], charming.
chou [ʃu], m., cabbage.
chenille [ʃeni:j], f., caterpillar.
côté [kote], m., side.
couleur [kulœ:r], f., colour.
déjà [deʒa], already.
dernier, -ière [dernje, -jɛ:r], last.
encore [ɑ̃kɔ:r], yet.
entre [ɑ̃:tr], among.
graine [gre:n], f., seed.
gros, -se [gro, gro:s], big.
jardin [ʒardɛ̃], m., garden.
modeste [modest], modest.
muguet [myge], m., lily of the valley.

oignon [ɔ̃jɔ̃], m., onion.
partie [parti], f., part.
peu [pø], m., little.
peut-être [pøt ɛ:tr], perhaps.
planter [plɑ̃te], to plant.
pomme de terre [pɔ̃m de tɛ:r], f.,
 potato.
pousser [puse], to grow.
probablement [prɔ̃babləmɑ̃], prob-
 ably.
reine [re:n], f., queen.
réserve [rezɛrve], reserved.
rose [roz], f., rose.
semaine [sɛmɛ:n], f., week.
terre [tɛ:r], f., earth.
toujours [tuʒu:r], still.
tout à fait [tut a fe], quite.
tulipe [tylip], f., tulip.

aimer mieux, to like better, prefer ; **d'un côté, de l'autre côté**, on the
 one side, on the other side ; **l'année dernière**, last year.

EXERCISE XVI.

A. Nous sommes toujours à la campagne. Allons voir maintenant le jardin. D'un côté il y a des légumes, de l'autre côté il y a des fleurs. Il y a des pommes de terre, des choux, des oignons et des carottes. On a planté les pommes de terre au mois d'avril, et elles sont maintenant en fleurs. On a planté les choux la semaine dernière. Ils ont déjà poussé un peu. Ils vont être meilleurs probablement cette année que l'année dernière. L'année dernière les chenilles en ont mangé beaucoup. On a semé la graine de deux espèces de carottes : des carottes rouges et des carottes blanches. Nous aimons mieux les rouges pour le potage que les blanches. Les oignons sont d'une espèce plus grosse que les oignons de l'année dernière.

Dans la partie du jardin réservée aux fleurs nous trouvons, entre autres, des roses, des tulipes et des muguet. La rose est la reine des fleurs. Elle est peut-être la plus belle de toutes les fleurs. Les tulipes sont très jolies. Elles sont de toutes les couleurs. Le muguet est une petite fleur blanche, très modeste mais tout à fait charmante.

B. Continue the following: 1. Je suis plus grand que Robert, etc. 2. Est-ce que je suis aussi grande que Marie ?, etc. 3. Je suis le meilleur élève de la classe, etc. 4. N'ai-je pas la leçon la plus difficile ?, etc. 5. J'ai vendu mes meilleurs livres, tu a vendu tes, etc. 6. Est-ce que j'aime mieux les fleurs rouges ?, etc. 7. Est-ce que je vais voir mes parents ?, est-ce que tu vas visiter tes parents ?, etc. 8. Je n'ai pas encore été à la campagne, etc.

C. (Oral.) 1. Qu'est-ce que vous allez voir aujourd'hui ? 2. Qu'y a-t-il de ce côté ? 3. Qu'est-ce qu'il y a de l'autre côté ? 4. Dans quel mois plantez-vous vos choux ? 5. Les choux poussent-ils aussi vite que les pommes de terre ? 6. Vos pommes de terre sont-elles bonnes cette année ? 7. Sont-elles meilleures que l'année dernière ? 8. Sont-elles plus grosses ? 9. Est-ce qu'elles ont un meilleur goût ? 10. Combien d'espèces de carottes y a-t-il dans ce jardin ? 11. Aimez-vous mieux les carottes blanches que les carottes rouges ? 12. Pourquoi ? 13. Quelle est la reine des fleurs ? 14. De quelle couleur les tulipes sont-elles ? 15. De quelle couleur le muguet est-il ? 16. Est-il aussi blanc que la neige ?

17. Quelle est la fleur la plus charmante de votre jardin?
18. Quels sont vos meilleurs légumes? Etc., etc.

D. 1. I am going to see your garden. 2. Your garden is large and fine. 3. What have you planted on this side? 4. Where are the flowers? 5. I planted my potatoes in the month of April. 6. I am going to plant my cabbage this week. 7. The potato is a very useful plant. 8. It is perhaps the most useful of all the vegetables. 9. It is good for men and for animals. 10. Carrots are not so useful. 11. I like the red carrots better than the white. 12. They are better for soup. 13. The white ones are larger, but they are not so good. 14. Now let us go and see the flowers. 15. How beautiful those tulips are! 16. They are finer this year than last year. 17. The lily of the valley and the rose are not yet in flower. 18. Do you like roses better than tulips? 19. Yes, but I like the lily of the valley better than all the other flowers. 20. It is smaller than the others, but more charming. 21. I like your garden very much. 22. I am going to visit it often this summer.

LESSON XVII.

74. Agreement of Past Participle. 1. In a compound tense with **avoir** the past participle agrees in gender and number with a direct object which precedes it:

J'ai fini mes leçons.

I have finished my lessons.

Je les ai finies.

I have finished them.

Quels livres a-t-il achetés?

What books has he bought?

N.B.—Remember that the participle does not agree with **en**, e.g., 'Avez-vous des plumes? Oui, j'en ai acheté hier.' 'Have you any pens? Yes, I bought some yesterday.'

2. When used as an adjective, the past participle agrees like an adjective:

La plume achetée hier.

The pen bought yesterday.

75. Some Relatives. 1. The relative pronouns of most common use are **qui** as subject, and **que** as direct object of a verb:

La dame qui chante.

The lady who sings.

Les livres qui sont ici.

The books which are here.

Les pommes que j'ai achetées.

The apples that I have bought.



2. The relative pronoun, often omitted in English, is never omitted in French :

Le pain que j'ai acheté hier.

The bread I bought yesterday.

VOCABULARY.

banane [banan], f., banana.
car [kar], for.
cher, -ère [ʃe:r, ʃe:r], dear.
cuisinière [kɥizinjɛ:r], f., cook.
dîner [dine], m., dinner.
douzaine [duzen], f., dozen.
franc [frɑ̃], m., franc.
laitue [lɛty], f., lettuce.
marché [marʃe], m., market.
matin [matɛ̃], m., morning.
œillet [œje], m., pink.
oie [wa], f., goose.

orner [ɔrne], to decorate, adorn.
payer [peje], to pay, pay for.
plusieurs [plyzjœ:r], several.
poulet [pule], m., chicken, fowl.
préparer [prepaʁe], to prepare.
quant à [kɑ̃t a], as for, as to.
salade [salad], f., salad.
soir [swa:r], m., evening.
sou [su], m., sou, cent.
train [trɛ̃], m., train, act of, etc.
vingt [vɛ̃], twenty.
volaille [volɔ:j], f., poultry.

être en train de, to be in the act of, be busy (doing a thing).

je les ai payés vingt [vɛ̃] sous la douzaine, I paid twenty cents a dozen for them.

EXERCISE XVII.

A. Nous avons été au marché ce matin. Nous avons acheté plusieurs choses pour ce soir: des légumes, des fleurs, des fruits et de la volaille. Nous allons avoir des amis à dîner. Voici les légumes que nous avons achetés. Il y a des pommes de terre, des carottes et de la laitue. Les carottes sont pour le potage, et la laitue est pour la salade. Voilà, sur la table, les fleurs que nous avons achetées. Il y a des roses et des œillets. Nous les avons achetées pour orner la table. Quant à la volaille, nous avons acheté un poulet et une oie. La volaille n'est pas très chère, car il y en a beaucoup en cette saison. Nous avons payé le poulet vingt sous et l'oie trois francs. La cuisinière est en train de les préparer. Pour le dessert nous avons acheté des pommes et des bananes. Les bananes sont chères. Nous les avons payées vingt sous la douzaine.

B. Continue the following: 1. Voilà les pommes que j'ai achetées, etc. 2. Quelles fleurs ai-je achetées au marché?, etc.

3. J'ai vendu les pommes qu'on a achetées hier, etc. 4. Est-ce que j'ai été au marché ce matin?, etc. 5. J'ai acheté les livres qui sont sur la table, etc.

Relate the story of Part 4, using the first singular instead of the first plural.

C. (Oral.) 1. Avez-vous été au marché ce matin? 2. Qu'avez-vous acheté? 3. Pourquoi avez-vous acheté toutes ces choses? 4. Combien d'amis allez-vous avoir à dîner? 5. Montrez-moi les légumes que vous avez achetés. 6. Sont-ils très chers en cette saison? 7. Combien avez-vous payé les pommes de terre que vous avez achetées? 8. Quels autres légumes avez-vous achetés? 9. Où sont-ils? 10. Quelle belle oie! combien l'avez-vous payée? 11. Qu'est-ce que la cuisinière fait maintenant? 12. Où sont les fleurs que vous avez achetées? 13. Quelles espèces de fleurs y a-t-il là? 14. Qu'allons-nous faire de ces fleurs? 15. Les fleurs qu'on a achetées hier les avez-vous encore? 16. Quels fruits allez-vous avoir pour le dessert? 17. Les bananes sont-elles plus chères que les pommes cette année? 18. Combien avez-vous payé ces pommes? Etc., etc.

D. 1. We are going to have some friends to dinner this evening. 2. I have bought some flowers to decorate the table. 3. The cook has been at the market to buy meat and vegetables. 4. Here are the things she brought. 5. What poultry did she buy? 6. Is poultry dear at this season? 7. Here is a goose which she paid three francs for. 8. There are two chickens which she bought. 9. Chickens are not so dear as geese; they are not so large. 10. What pretty flowers! 11. Where did you buy them? 12. I bought them at the market this morning. 13. I bought some yesterday, but they are not so pretty. 14. My flowers are dearer. 15. I paid three francs a dozen for the roses. 16. Last year I bought roses for twenty cents a dozen. 17. Fruit (pl.) is dear this year. 18. How much did you pay for the bananas? 19. I paid twenty cents a dozen for them. 20. We are going to have a good dinner. 21. The cook is busy preparing it now.

LESSON XVIII.

76. Tenses with être. 1. The verb **être** + the past participle forms the compound tenses of all reflexive verbs (§ 82) and of a few intransitive verbs, of which **aller**, 'to go,' **arriver**, 'to arrive,' and **venir**, 'to come,' are of very frequent use.

2. The past participle of a verb (not reflexive) conjugated with **être** agrees with the subject, thus :

I have arrived, etc.

je suis arrivé(e) [arive].	nous sommes arrivé(e)s [arive].
tu es arrivé(e) [arive].	vous êtes arrivé(e)s [arive].
il (elle) est arrivé(e) [arive].	ils (elles) sont arrivé(e)s [arive].

VOCABULARY.

admirablement [admirabləmō], admirably.
admirer [admire], to admire.
amuser [amye], to amuse.
célèbre [sels:br], celebrated.
chanter [fôte], to sing.
concert [kōsɛ:r], m., concert.
depuis que [depɥi kə], conj., since.
dimanche [dimā:ʃ], m., Sunday.
édifice [edifis], m., edifice, building.
emplette [ōplet], f., purchase.
entendre [ōtā:dr], to hear.
hôtel de ville [otel de vil], m., town-hall.
hier soir [je:r swa:r], yesterday evening.
intention [ētōsjō], f., intention.
jour [su:r], m., day.

lundi [lœdi], m., Monday.
magasin [magazē], m., shop.
mener [mène], to lead, take.
nuit [nuɪ], f., night.
partout [partu], everywhere.
prédicateur [predikatœ:r], m., preacher.
principal [prēsipal], principal.
prochain [prōʃē], next.
public [pyblik], public.
rencontre [rākō:tr], f., meeting.
sermon [sermō], m., sermon.
songe [sō:ʒ], m., dream.
théâtre [tea:tr], m., theatre.
tour [tu:r], m., circuit.
tramway [tramwe], m., street-cars.
venu [veny], p.p. *venir*, to come.

aller à la rencontre de, to go to meet.

faire le tour de, to go around.

EXERCISE XVIII.

A. Nos parents de la campagne sont chez nous depuis quatre jours. Ils sont arrivés lundi dernier par le chemin de fer. Nous sommes allés à la gare à leur rencontre. Depuis qu'ils

sont ici nous les menons partout pour les amuser. Nous montons dans les tramways et faisons le tour de la ville. Nous entrons dans les grands magasins pour faire des emplettes. Nous avons visité les principaux édifices publics. Nous avons admiré les églises et l'hôtel de ville. Hier soir nous avons été au théâtre. On y a joué le "Songe d'une nuit d'été" de Shakespeare. Nous l'avons admiré beaucoup. Nous avons été aussi à un concert. On y a chanté admirablement. Dimanche prochain nous avons l'intention d'aller à l'église pour entendre un sermon par un des plus célèbres prédicateurs de la ville.

B. Continue the following: 1. Je suis arrivé hier, etc. 2. Je (f.) suis venue ce matin, etc. 3. Est-ce que je ne suis pas allé à la gare?, etc. 4. Est-ce que je ne suis pas allée à la rencontre de mes amies?, est-ce que tu n'es pas allée à la rencontre de tes amies?, etc. 5. Je fais le tour de la ville, etc. 6. Je suis entré dans les magasins, etc. 7. Je n'ai pas été au théâtre, etc. 8. J'ai l'intention d'aller à l'église, etc.

C. (Oral.) 1. Qui est chez vous? 2. Vos parents sont-ils toujours chez vous? 3. Depuis quand sont-ils chez vous? 4. Quand est-ce qu'ils sont arrivés? 5. Votre tante est-elle venue ce matin? 6. Qui est allé à sa rencontre? 7. L'avez-vous trouvée à la gare? 8. Que faites-vous pour amuser vos amis? 9. Comment faites-vous le tour de la ville? 10. Sont-ils entrés dans les magasins? 11. Dans quels magasins sont-ils entrés? 12. Quels sont les plus grands édifices de votre ville? 13. Votre tante a-t-elle admiré les églises? 14. Où est-elle allée hier soir? 15. Qu'est-ce qu'on va jouer au théâtre ce soir? 16. Aime-t-elle mieux aller au concert qu'au théâtre? 17. A-t-elle l'intention de retourner bientôt à la campagne? 18. Vos parents où sont-ils allés dimanche dernier? 19. Où avez-vous l'intention d'aller l'été prochain? Etc., etc.

D. 1. My uncle and aunt are at our house. 2. They arrived this morning. 3. They came by the railway. 4. My sister went to meet them at the station. 5. They came from the station in a carriage. 6. They soon arrived at our house. 7. To-day we took them into the city to amuse them. 8. First we went around the city in the street-cars. 9. Then my aunt went to one of the large shops to make purchases. 10. To-morrow we are going to visit the largest churches. 11. They

admire very much the public buildings of the city. 12. We are going to the concert this evening, perhaps. 13. We went to the theatre yesterday evening. 14. My aunt did not go (*y*); she does not like the theatre. 15. I always go (*y*) when they play Shakespeare's "Midsummer Night's Dream." 16. I admire it very much. 17. The churches of this city are very fine. 18. My aunt intends to go to church next Sunday to hear a sermon. 19. Next Monday my uncle and aunt return to the country. 20. They admire the city, but they like the country better.

LESSON XIX.

77. Pronoun Objects. 1. The personal pronoun has, for the indirect object of the third person, the following forms:

lui [lɥi], (to, for) him, (to, for) her. **leur** [lœ:r], (to, for) them.

2. **Lui** and **leur** precede the verb (§ 30), but follow **le**, **la**, **les**:

Nous lui parlons.

We speak to him (to her).

Je donne une rose à Marie.

I am giving Mary a rose.

Je la lui donne.

I give her it (it to her).

Je donne mes livres aux enfants.

I give the children my books.

Je les leur donne.

I give them (to) them.

78. Observe the following orthographical peculiarities:

1. commencer, nous commençons—stem *c* [s] becomes *ç* [s] before *o* of ending (cf. § 5, 4).

2. manger, nous mangeons—stem *g* [ʒ] becomes *ge* [ʒ] before *o* of ending (cf. § 19, 2).

3. mener, je mène [mən], tu mènes, il mène, ils mènent—stem *e* [ə] becomes *è* [ɛ] in most verbs when ending is *e* mute (cf. § 12, 1, n.).

VOCABULARY.

accompagner [akɔ̃pane], to accompany.

article [artil], m., article.

avoir [avwa:r], to have, get.

bonbon [bɔ̃bɔ̃], m., bonbon, candy.

chapelier [ʃapɛlje], m., hatter.

chaussures [ʃosy:r], f. pl., boots, shoes.

confiseur [kɔ̃fizœ:r], m., confectioner.

couru [kury], p.p. *courir*, to run (about).

demander [dēmāde], to ask (for).
 dentelle [dōtel], f., lace.
 dollar [dola:r], m., dollar.
 examiner [egzamine], to examine.
 fatigué [fatige], tired.
 faux-col [fo kōl], m., collar.
 à la fin [a la fē], at last, finally.
 manchette [mā[et], f., cuff.
 même [mē:m], same.

montrer [mōtre], to show.
 mouchoir [mu[wa:r], m., handkerchief.
 nouveauté [nuvotē], f., novelty.
 paille [pō:j], f., straw.
 paire [pe:r], f., pair.
 prix [pri], m., price.
 soulier [sulje], m., shoe.
 toilette [twalet], f., toilet.

à bon marché, cheap. magasin de nouveautés, dry-goods store.
 aller faire des emplettes, to go shopping.

EXERCISE XIX.

A. Que nous sommes fatigués ! Nous avons couru beaucoup aujourd'hui. J'ai accompagné mon cousin chez plusieurs marchands pour avoir des articles de toilette. D'abord nous sommes entrés chez le chapelier. Mon cousin a demandé un chapeau de paille. Le chapelier lui a montré un très joli chapeau à un dollar, et mon cousin l'a acheté. J'en ai acheté un aussi au même prix. Ensuite nous sommes allés chez le marchand de chaussures où nous avons examiné plusieurs paires de souliers. Mais nous n'en avons pas acheté. Puis nous sommes entrés dans un grand magasin de nouveautés. Mon cousin y a demandé des faux-cols et des manchettes. On lui en a montré à très bon marché, et il en a acheté. Nous y avons acheté aussi des mouchoirs pour mon oncle et de la dentelle pour ma tante. À la fin nous sommes entrés chez un confiseur où nous avons acheté pour mes cousines des bonbons, que nous leur avons donnés.

B. Continue the following: 1. Qu'est-ce que je lui donne?, etc. 2. Je parle à mes amis, je leur parle; tu parles à tes amis, tu leur parles, etc. 3. Voici une plume; je la lui donne, etc. 4. Voici des bonbons; je ne les leur donne pas, etc. 5. Est-ce que je ne mange pas beaucoup de bonbons?, etc. 6. Je commence mes leçons, etc. 7. Est-ce que je mène mon cousin chez le confiseur?, est-ce que tu mènes ton cousin, etc.

Relate part A, using 'ma tante' and 'elle' as subject, and changing 'cousin' to 'cousine.'

C. (Oral.) 1. Votre oncle est-il fatigué? 2. Pourquoi?
 3. Est-ce que votre frère l'a accompagné partout? 4. Où

sont-ils entrés d'abord? 5. Qu'est-ce qu'on trouve chez le chapelier? 6. Votre frère qu'a-t-il demandé chez le chapelier? 7. Quels chapeaux le chapelier lui a-t-il montrés? 8. Qui les leur a montrés? 9. Combien votre frère a-t-il payé le chapeau? 10. Où sont-ils allés ensuite? 11. Qu'est-ce que le marchand de chaussures leur a montré? 12. Les souliers de ce marchand sont-ils chers ou à bon marché? 13. Votre oncle a-t-il acheté les souliers que le marchand lui a montrés? 14. Qu'est-ce que votre tante et votre sœur ont acheté dans le magasin de nouveautés? 15. Pour qui est la dentelle que votre tante a achetée? 16. Est-ce qu'elle la lui a donnée? 17. Et pour qui sont les bonbons? 18. Quand est-ce qu'elles vont les leur donner? 19. Mangeons-nous des bonbons au dessert? 20. Où est-ce qu'on achète les bonbons? Etc., etc.

D. 1. We are going shopping again to-day. 2. My relatives are buying a great many things. 3. They always buy articles of dress when they are here. 4. I take them to all the large dry-goods stores. 5. They bought several articles yesterday. 6. First I went with my uncle to a hatter's. 7. The hatter showed him several straw hats. 8. My uncle bought one at a dollar. 9. Afterwards I went with my cousin to buy shoes. 10. The shop-keeper showed him some. 11. He bought two pairs. 12. Then the shop-keeper gave them to him, and he brought them home. 13. My aunt has been to a dry-goods store to buy handkerchiefs. 14. The shop-keeper showed her handkerchiefs at a dollar a dozen. 15. She bought some of them for my uncle. 16. Finally my aunt and my cousin (f.) went to a confectioner's. 17. The confectioner showed them several kinds of bonbons. 18. Who paid for the bonbons? 19. My cousin paid for them. 20. They are for her little sister, and she is going to give them to her after dinner.

LESSON XX.

79. Personal Pronoun Objects. The remaining forms serve both as direct and indirect object of verbs (for elision, see § 19):

me [mə], me, to (for) me.

nous [nu], us, to (for) us.

te [tə], thee, to (for) thee.

vous [vu], you, to (for) you.

se [sə], himself, herself, itself, one's self, to (for) himself, etc.

se [sə], themselves, to (for) themselves.

80. Pronominal Adverbs. They are used with verbs, and are equivalent to a preposition + a pronoun, standing usually for things:

y = à (dans, sur, etc.) + a pronoun, means 'to (at, on, in, into, etc.) it or them,' 'there.'

en = de + a pronoun, means 'of (from, etc.) it or them,' 'some of it,' 'some of them,' 'some,' 'any,' 'thence,' 'from there.'

81. Position. Personal pronoun objects and pronominal adverbs, coming before the verb, are arranged thus:

me	}	before	le	}	before	lui	}	before	y	}	before	en.
te		la	leur									
se		les										
nous												
vous												

Il me donne les plumes.

Il me les donne.

Il les leur donne.

Il nous en donne.

Il y en a.

He gives me the pens.

He gives them to me.

He gives them to them.

He gives us some of it.

There is (are) some.

82. Reflexive Verb. The compound tenses of reflexive verbs, *e.g.*, **se flatter**, to 'flatter one's self,' are formed with **être**:

PRESENT INDICATIVE.

I flatter myself, etc.

je me flatte [ʒə mə flat].

tu te flattes [ty tɛ flat].

il (elle) se flatte [il sɛ flat].

nous nous flattons [nu nu flatɔ̃]

vous vous flattez [vu vu flate].

ils (elles) se flattent [il sɛ flat].

PAST INDEFINITE.

I (have) flattered myself, etc.

je me suis } flatté(e)
tu t'es } [flate].

il (elle) s'est

nous nous sommes } flatté(e)s
vous vous êtes } [flate].
ils(elles) se sont

83. Agreement. The past participle agrees with a preceding reflexive object, unless the object be indirect:

Elles se sont flattées.

But: Ils se sont lavé les mains.

They have flattered themselves.

They have washed their hands.

84. Observe the possessive force of the article, or of the article with an indirect object, when there is no ambiguity as to the possessor :

Je vous donne la main.

La bonne leur lave les mains.

Ils se lavent les mains.

I give you my hand.

The maid is washing their hands.

They are washing their hands.

VOCABULARY.

après [apʁe], after.

armoire [armwaʁ], f., cupboard, clothes-press.

bonjour [bɔ̃ʒuʁ], m., good morning.

brosse [bʁos], f., brush.

brosser [bʁose], to brush.

chercher [ʃɛʁʃe], to seek, look for.

cheveux [ʃəvø], m. pl., hair.

déjeuner [deʒɔ̃ne], m., breakfast.

dent [dɑ̃], f., tooth.

descendre [desɑ̃dr], to descend, go down (stairs).

dire [diʁ], to say, tell.

dormir [dɔʁmiʁ], to sleep.

figure [figyʁ], f., face.

gilet [ʒile], m., vest, waistcoat.

tout de suite [tu də sɥit], at once.

à l'instant [a l ɛ̃stɑ̃], at once, instantly.

habiller [abije], to dress.

habit [abi], m., coat.

instant [ɛ̃stɑ̃], m., instant.

laver [lave], to wash.

main [mɛ̃], f., hand.

mère [mɛʁ], f., mother.

mettre [metʁ], to put, place.

peigne [pɛ:p], m., comb.

père [pɛʁ], m., father.

prêt [pʁe], ready.

se lever [ləve], to rise.

se promener [pʁɔmne], to go for a walk, drive, etc.

savon [savɔ̃], m., soap.

serviette [sɛrvjet], f., towel.

temps [tɑ̃], m., time.

donner la main à, to shake hands with.

je suis levé, I am up.

EXERCISE XX.

A. Comme nous avons bien dormi ! Il est temps de se lever maintenant. Nous nous levons tout de suite, et nous faisons notre toilette. Je vais me laver les mains et la figure, mais où sont l'eau et le savon ?—Les voici ; je vais vous les donner.—Maintenant, où est la serviette ?—La voici.—Je cherche maintenant mes brosses et mon peigne.—Les voilà sur la table de toilette.—Je me brosse les cheveux et les dents. Je vais mettre mon gilet et mon habit, mais où sont-ils ?—Les voici dans l'armoire, je vous les donne à l'instant.—Me voilà prêt. Êtes-vous prêt aussi ?—Oui, me voilà habillé.—Nous descendons

à la salle à manger. Mon père et ma mère y sont déjà. Nous allons leur dire bonjour. Après le déjeuner nous allons nous promener.

B. Continue the following: 1. Je me lève, etc. 2. Je me suis lavé les mains, etc. 3. Voilà du savon; je lui en donne, etc. 4. Je leur en ai donné, etc. 5. Me voilà prêt, te voilà prêt, etc. 6. Me voilà prête, te voilà prête, etc. 7. Je descends à la salle à manger, etc. 8. Je me suis promené hier, tu t'es, etc.

C. (Oral.) 1. Avez-vous bien dormi? 2. Est-il temps de se lever maintenant? 3. Allez-vous vous lever tout de suite? 4. Qui se lave les mains? 5. Est-ce que Jean et Robert se sont lavé les mains? 6. Allez-vous leur donner de l'eau et du savon? 7. Qui en donne aux autres enfants? 8. En donne-t-elle aussi à Marie? 9. Qu'est-ce que vous cherchez? 10. Qui est-ce qui va me donner la serviette et les brosses? 11. Où est mon gilet? 12. Qui vous a donné ce beau gilet? 13. Est-ce que les enfants sont habillés? 14. Que font-ils ensuite? 15. Qui est dans la salle à manger? 16. Les enfants donnent-ils la main à leur père? 17. Est-ce que je lui donne la main aussi? 18. Que vont faire les enfants après le déjeuner? 19. Ne sont-ils pas encore prêts? 20. Où est-ce que vous vous êtes promenés hier? Etc., etc.

D. 1. Have you slept well? 2. Yes, and it is time to rise now. 3. I rise, you rise, we rise, we are up. 4. Now I make my toilet. 5. I am washing my hands and my face. 6. You have already washed your hands and your face. 7. I give you your comb and brushes. 8. I give you them. 9. You are brushing your hair. 10. I brush my teeth. 11. Have you brushed your teeth yet? 12. You need your vest and coat now. 13. Why do you not give me them? 14. There they are in the clothes-press. 15. I am going to give you them at once. 16. We are ready now, and we are going down stairs. 17. We shake hands with our father and mother. 18. They shake hands with us. 19. We shake hands with each other. 20. They are going for a walk in the garden after breakfast. 21. We are going for a walk there too.

LESSON XXI.

85. Imperfect Indicative of *donner, finir, vendre.*

I was giving, etc.	I was finishing, etc.	I was selling, etc.
donn ais [dɔnɛ].	finiss ais [finisɛ].	vend ais [vɑ̃dɛ].
donn ais [dɔnɛ].	finiss ais [finisɛ].	vend ais [vɑ̃dɛ].
donn ait [dɔnɛ].	finiss ait [finisɛ].	vend ait [vɑ̃dɛ].
donn ions [dɔnjɔ̃].	finiss ions [finisjɔ̃].	vend ions [vɑ̃djɔ̃].
donn iez [dɔnje].	finiss iez [finisje].	vend iez [vɑ̃dje].
donn aient [dɔnɛ].	finiss aient [finisɛ].	vend aient [vɑ̃dɛ].

86. Imperfect Indicative of *avoir, être.*

I had, used to have, etc.	I was, used to be, etc.
av ais [avɛ]. av ions [avjɔ̃].	ét ais [etɛ]. ét ions [etjɔ̃].
av ais [avɛ]. av iez [avje].	ét ais [etɛ]. ét iez [etje].
av ait [avɛ]. av aient [avɛ].	ét ait [etɛ]. ét aient [etɛ].

To form the Pluperfect tense, add a past participle, see § 63.

87. Use of Imperfect. 1. It denotes what used to happen or continued to happen :

Nous parlions souvent de cela.	We often used to speak of that.
Mon oncle était très vieux.	My uncle was very old.
Il allait souvent à pied à la ville.	He would often walk to town.

2. It denotes what was happening when something else happened or was happening :

On chantait quand je suis arrivé.	They were singing when I arrived.
Il parlait pendant que nous chan- tions.	He was speaking while we sang (were singing).

88. Imperfect of *faire* (irreg.).

I was doing, etc.

je fais ais [ʒə fɛzɛ].	nous fais ions [nu fɛzjɔ̃].
tu fais ais [ty fɛzɛ].	vous fais iez [vu fɛzje].
il fais ait [il fɛzɛ].	ils fais aient [il fɛzɛ].

89. For imperfect of *commencer, manger*, cf. § 78 :

je commençais [ʒə kɔmɑ̃sɛ], etc.	je mangeais [mɑ̃ʒɛ], etc.
---	----------------------------------

EXERCISE XXI.

[The vocabularies for this and the remaining exercises will be found at the end of the volume.]

A. Nous avons été à l'église ce matin. Quand nous sommes arrivés on chantait déjà le premier cantique. Il y avait beaucoup de monde, et nous avons trouvé un banc avec difficulté. Le pasteur a lu (*read*) un chapitre des proverbes. Tout le monde écoutait attentivement pendant la lecture du chapitre. Ensuite le pasteur a prié Dieu, et on a chanté des versets d'un autre cantique. Après cela le pasteur a choisi comme texte un verset du "Sermon sur la montagne." Ce texte est comme voici : "Tout arbre qui est bon porte de bons fruits ; mais un mauvais arbre porte de mauvais fruits." Le pasteur l'a expliqué, et en a tiré de bonnes leçons. Il a comparé les hommes avec les arbres. Le mérite des hommes consiste dans leurs bonnes actions, comme le mérite des arbres dans leurs bons fruits. Ce sermon a été un encouragement à faire le bien. Le sermon fini, on a fait la quête, on a chanté encore et le pasteur a donné la bénédiction.

B. Continue the following: 1. Je chantais le premier cantique, etc. 2. J'avais déjà chanté le premier cantique, etc. 3. Le pasteur priait Dieu quand je suis arrivé, le pasteur, etc., quand tu, etc. 4. Je comparais les hommes avec les arbres, etc. 5. Est-ce que je faisais la quête?, etc. 6. Est-ce que je ne finissais pas mes leçons?, est-ce que tu...tes leçons?, etc. 7. À qui est-ce que je vendais mes pommes?, à qui est-ce que tu...tes pommes?, etc. 8. Y avait-il beaucoup de plumes dans ma boîte?, dans ta boîte, etc.

C. (Oral.) 1. Où avez-vous été ce matin? 2. Y avait-il beaucoup de monde? 3. Que faisait-on quand vous êtes entrés? 4. Qu'est-ce que le pasteur a fait après cela? 5. Est-ce que nous écoutions pendant la lecture du chapitre? 6. Votre tante écoutait-elle attentivement aussi? 7. Tout le monde écoutait-il attentivement? 8. Qu'est-ce qu'on faisait pendant que le pasteur priait Dieu? 9. Et après cela qu'est-ce que le pasteur a fait? 10. Quel était le texte qu'il a choisi? 11. Le sermon était-il intéressant? 12. Qui a expliqué le texte? 13. Quels fruits les bons arbres portent-ils? 14. Et les mauvais arbres quels fruits portent-ils? 15. Qu'est-ce qu'on a fait après le sermon? 16. Est-ce qu'on chantait pendant qu'on

faisait la quête? 17. Qui a donné la bénédiction? 18. Que faisait-on quand vous êtes arrivé chez vous? 19. Alliez-vous souvent à l'église quand vous étiez à la campagne? 20. Votre vieil oncle allait-il à l'église tous les dimanches? Etc., etc.

D. 1. I often used to go to church when I was in the country. 2. My relatives used to go (*y*) every Sunday. 3. My old uncle used to go (*y*) in his carriage. 4. I went to church last Sunday. 5. While I was at church my brother was taking a walk on the mountain. 6. There were a great many people in the little church. 7. There were people everywhere, in the seats and at the door. 8. I met one of my cousins at the door. 9. When we went in the pastor was finishing the reading of the chapter. 10. They (*on*) had already sung and prayed. 11. Then they sang two verses of another hymn, and the pastor began the sermon. 12. What was the text? 13. The text was a verse from the "Sermon on the mount." 14. While the pastor was speaking, everybody listened attentively. 15. He finished the sermon, and then the collection was taken up. 16. While they were taking up the collection, the pastor read some verses. 17. We sang again, and after the last hymn the pastor pronounced the benediction. 18. As I was going home I met my brother. 19. We were hungry when we arrived at the house. 20. My uncle had already arrived, and we had a good dinner.

LESSON XXII.

90. Future Indicative of *donner*, *finir*, *vendre*.

I shall give, etc.	I shall finish, etc.	I shall sell, etc.
donner ai [donere].	finir ai [finire].	vendr ai [vödre].
donner as [donera].	finir as [finira].	vendr as [vödra].
donner a [donera].	finir a [finira].	vendr a [vödra].
donner ons [donerō].	finir ons [finirō].	vendr ons [vödros].
donner ez [donere].	finir ez [finire].	vendr ez [vödre].
donner ont [donerō].	finir ont [finirō].	vendr ont [vödros].

91. Future Indicative of *avoir*, *être*.

I shall have, etc.	I shall be, etc.
aur ai [ore].	ser ai [sere].
aur as [ora].	ser as [sera].
aur a [ora].	ser a [sera].
aur ons [orō].	ser ons [serō].
aur ez [ore].	ser ez [sere].
aur ont [orō].	ser ont [serō].

92. Future Indicative of *aller* (irreg.), and *faire* (irreg.).

I shall go, etc.

ir **ai** [ire]. ir **ons** [irɔ̃].ir **as** [ira]. ir **ez** [ire].ir **a** [ira]. ir **ont** [irɔ̃].

I shall do, etc.

fer **ai** [fère]. fer **ons** [fèrɔ̃].fer **as** [fèra]. fer **ez** [fère].fer **a** [fèra]. fer **ont** [fèrɔ̃].**93. For the future of *lever* and *acheter*, cf. § 78, 3 :**je **lèverai** [lèvere], etc.j'**achèterai** [aʃetère], etc.

94. Use of Future. It is used in general as in English, but observe its use in a subordinate sentence, when futurity is implied, as after *quand*, *lorsque* (when), etc. :

Je lui **parlerai** quand il **arrivera**. I shall speak to him when he **comes**.

EXERCISE XXII.

A. Il est déjà tard. Maintenant nous allons nous coucher. Nous avons arrangé nos plans pour demain. Nous nous lèverons de bonne heure. Le déjeuner sera prêt quand nous nous lèverons, et nous sortirons bientôt après. S'il fait beau temps, nous irons à pied, mais s'il fait mauvais temps, nous prendrons le tramway. Nous passerons d'abord chez la modiste. Si nos chapeaux ne sont pas prêts, nous attendrons un peu. Mais ils seront prêts, parce que je les ai vus hier, et ils étaient bien avancés. Avant midi nous serons chez la couturière pour essayer nos robes. Nous y resterons probablement une heure. Alors nous irons prendre une glace au café. Ensuite nous entrerons dans un magasin de nouveautés pour acheter de la dentelle et des rubans. Puis nous monterons encore dans le tramway, et nous serons de retour de bonne heure dans l'après-midi, parce que nous attendons des amies. Si nous ne sommes pas trop fatiguées, nous irons le soir au théâtre ou au concert. Si nous nous amusons bien, nous ne serons pas chez nous avant minuit.

B. Continue the following: 1. Je vais me coucher, etc. 2. Je me lèverai de bonne heure demain, etc. 3. Est-ce que je sortirai après le déjeuner?, etc. 4. Est-ce que j'achèterai des rubans?, etc. 5. J'attendrai au café, etc. 6. Est-ce que je ne serai pas de retour de bonne heure?, etc. 7. Si je suis

fatiguée, je ne sortirai pas, si tu, etc. 8. S'il fait beau temps demain, j'irai en ville, etc.

C. (Oral.) 1. Pour quand arrangez-vous vos plans? 2. Sortirez-vous demain s'il fait beau temps? 3. Que ferez-vous s'il fait mauvais temps? 4. Vous lèverez-vous de bonne heure? 5. Le déjeuner sera-t-il prêt? 6. Qu'est-ce que vous ferez après le déjeuner? 7. Irez-vous à pied ou dans le tramway? 8. Qui va vous accompagner? 9. Où irez-vous d'abord? 10. Votre sœur ira-t-elle aussi chez la modiste? 11. Qu'est-ce que vous ferez si votre chapeau n'est pas prêt? 12. Nous attendrez-vous chez la modiste ou au café? 13. Pourquoi allez-vous chez la couturière? 14. Quand y serez-vous? 15. Irez-vous au café ensuite? 16. Qu'est-ce que vous achèterez au magasin de nouveautés? 17. Quand serez-vous de retour? 18. Vos amies seront-elles chez vous? 19. Où irez-vous le soir? 20. Quand serez-vous de retour? Etc., etc.

D. 1. After (the) dinner I shall arrange my plans for to-morrow. 2. Then I shall go to bed. 3. To-morrow I shall rise early. 4. After (the) breakfast I shall go out if it is fine. 5. My sister will go out too. 6. We shall take the street-cars if it is not fine. 7. First I shall go to the milliner's. 8. I shall wait for my sister there. 9. Our hats will probably be ready. 10. They were well advanced yesterday. 11. After that we shall go to the dressmaker's. 12. We shall remain an hour there to try on our dresses. 13. If we have (the) time we shall probably go to the café. 14. What shall you do next? 15. I shall go to the dry-goods store to buy some ribbons. 16. My sister will return home. 17. Some friends will be waiting for her there. 18. I shall go to the concert in the evening with my brother if I am not too tired. 19. My sister will stay at home with my mother. 20. They will expect us before midnight.

LESSON XXIII.

95. Disjunctive Personal Pronouns. The personal pronouns already given are used as subject or object with the verb, and are hence called 'conjunctive.' The following forms, not being immediately connected with a verb, are called 'disjunctive':

moi [mwa], I, me.	nous [nu], we, us.
toi [twa], thou, thee, you.	vous [vu], you.
lui [li], he, him.	eux [ø], they (m.), them (m.).
elle [el], she, her.	elles [el], they (f.), them (f.).

96. The following are some of their uses:—

1. Absolutely, a verb being implied, but not expressed:

Qui est là?—Moi (eux, elles). Who is there?—I (they).

2. After a preposition:

Pour elles; avec moi; sans eux. For them; with me; without them.

3. As logical subject after **ce + être**:

C'est moi, c'est toi.	It is I, it is thou (you).
C'est lui, c'est elle.	It is he, it is she.
C'est nous, c'est vous.	It is we, it is you.
Ce sont eux, ce sont elles.	It is they (m.), it is they (f.).

97. Hitherto in the exercises **il(s)**, **elle(s)**, standing before a verb as subject, have been used for 'he,' 'she,' 'it,' 'they' (§40). When the logical subject follows the verb **être**, 'he,' 'she,' 'it,' 'they' = **ce**, as representative subject, in cases like the following:

C'est Marie et sa mère.	It is Mary and her mother.
C'est nous, ce sont eux.	It is we, it is they.
C'est un homme célèbre.	He is a celebrated man.
C'est une jolie dame.	She is a pretty lady.
Ce sont des amis de Jean.	They are friends of John.
Ce sont mes meilleures amies.	They are my best friends.
C'est aujourd'hui lundi.	It is Monday to-day (to-day is, etc.).
C'est à nous qu'il parle.	It is to us that he is speaking.
C'est ici qu'il demeure.	It is here that he lives (he lives here).

EXERCISE XXIII.

[Before doing this exercise learn the present indicative of **voir**, 'to see,' p. 82, and its past participle **vu**, 'seen.']

4. Nous irons en ville à pied ce matin, n'est-ce pas?—Oh oui, il fait beau, et nous causerons en route. Qui est ce monsieur qui est là-bas de l'autre côté de la rue?—C'est un de nos anciens voisins. Il demeure à présent dans une autre

rue.—Voilà un autre monsieur qui attend le tramway ; c'est votre professeur de français, n'est-ce pas ?—Oui, c'est lui. Il va donner probablement une leçon.—Voilà maintenant le tramway qui passe. Avez-vous vu ces deux messieurs qui nous ont salués ?—Oui, je les ai vus. Ce sont les messieurs que nous avons rencontrés l'autre soir.—Voyez-vous cette dame qui monte en voiture ? C'est l'amie de votre mère, n'est-ce pas ?—Non, ce n'est pas elle. L'amie de ma mère est plus grande.—Qui est ce monsieur qui approche ? Il va nous parler, n'est-ce pas ?—Non, ce n'est pas à nous qu'il va parler, mais à ce monsieur qui est derrière nous.—Voilà encore un autre monsieur qui vous salue.—Ce n'est pas moi qu'il salue, c'est vous.—Mais non, c'est bien vous. Il m'est inconnu. C'est la première fois que je le vois.—Nous voici arrivés maintenant. C'est ici que vous alliez entrer pour acheter vos gants.

B. Continue the following : 1. Je vais donner une leçon, n'est-ce pas ?, etc. 2. C'est ici que je demeure, etc. 3. C'est moi qui vais en ville, c'est toi qui vas en ville, etc. 4. J'irai à pied, etc. 5. Je vois un monsieur qui monte en voiture, tu vois, etc. 6. Ce n'est pas moi qu'il a salué, ce n'est pas toi, etc.

C. (Oral.) 1. Où est-ce que vous allez ce matin ? 2. Allez-vous à pied ou en voiture ? 3. Qu'est-ce que nous ferons en route pour nous amuser ? 4. Qui est ce vieux monsieur là-bas ? 5. Où est-ce qu'il demeure à présent ? 6. Voilà un monsieur qui attend le tramway ; qui est-ce ? 7. Voyez-vous ces messieurs qui nous saluent ? 8. Ce sont des amis de votre père, n'est-ce pas ? 9. Qui est cette dame qui se promène en voiture ? 10. Quand est-ce que je l'ai vue ? 11. Est-ce bien elle ? 12. Ce monsieur qui approche est votre voisin, n'est-ce pas ? 13. Est-ce moi qu'il a salué ? 14. Qui est-ce que vous avez salué devant l'hôtel de ville ? 15. Est-ce un de vos anciens amis ? 16. Est-ce ici que vous allez acheter vos gants ? 17. N'est-ce pas dans cet autre magasin là-bas ? 18. Est-ce la première fois que vous allez à ce magasin ? Etc., etc.

D. 1. We are going down town on foot. 2. We are chatting on the way. 3. We see a gentleman on the other side of the street. 4. He is one of my old neighbours. 5. He lived on the other side of the street. 6. He is your old French teacher, is he not ? 7. No, he is an old merchant.

8. A carriage passes next. 9. Who are those two gentlemen in the carriage who bowed to us? 10. They are the gentlemen we met yesterday evening. 11. Was it I that they bowed to? 12. Who bowed to them, you or I? 13. I see a lady (who is) waiting for the street-cars. 14. She is a friend of your family, is she not? 15. She is a friend of my mother. 16. Do you see that gentleman who is approaching? 17. Yes, who is it? 18. He is a celebrated general who lives in this city. 19. Is it here that you buy your gloves? 20. No, it is in that large shop over yonder.

LESSON XXIV.

98. Impersonal Verbs. They are conjugated in the third person singular only, with the subject *il* = 'it,' used indefinitely and absolutely. Among such are verbs describing natural phenomena, as in English :

Quel temps fait-il ?

What kind of weather is it ?

Il fait beau temps.

It is fine (weather).

Il pleut, il pleuvait.

It is raining, it was raining.

Il a plu, il pleuvra.

It has rained, it will rain.

Il neige, il a neigé.

It is snowing, it has snowed.

Il fait chaud, il fait du vent.

It is hot, it is windy.

EXERCISE XXIV.

A. C'est mardi dernier que nous avons fait notre pique-nique. Nous nous sommes levés presque au lever du soleil. La première question a été : quel temps fera-t-il ? Le temps était couvert, et il faisait très lourd. Il y avait de gros nuages à l'ouest, et le tonnerre grondait déjà. Il a fait des éclairs, et après un grand coup de tonnerre la pluie a commencé. Il a plu pendant une heure. Ensuite le soleil s'est montré, et un bon vent a chassé les nuages. Bientôt il a fait très beau, et nous sommes partis. Le pique-nique a eu lieu dans les bois au bord du lac. Nous avions l'intention de nous promener en bateau, mais il faisait du vent, et il y avait des vagues. C'est pourquoi nous ne sommes pas allés sur l'eau. Il a fait chaud, mais nous étions à l'ombre, et un vent frais nous arrivait du lac. Vers midi nous avons mangé notre goûter. Dans l'après-

midi nous avons joué et chanté. Avant le coucher du soleil nous sommes arrivés chez nous.

B. Commit to memory :

La semaine au lundi commence,
Et mardi l'ouvrage avance,
Ensuite vient le mercredi,
Le jeudi, puis le vendredi ;
Le samedi comble nos vœux,
Et le dimanche nous prions Dieu.

C. (Oral.) 1. Aimez-vous les pique-niques? 2. Quand avez-vous fait votre pique-nique cette année? 3. Qu'est-ce qu'on demande quand on va partir? 4. Quel temps faisait-il quand vous vous êtes levés? 5. Est-ce qu'il a fait des éclairs? 6. Est-ce qu'il a plu? 7. Quand la pluie a-t-elle commencé? 8. Pendant combien de temps est-ce qu'il a plu? 9. Quel temps faisait-il quand vous êtes partis? 10. Où votre pique-nique a-t-il eu lieu? 11. Êtes-vous allés sur l'eau? 12. Pourquoi pas? 13. Y avait-il de grosses vagues? 14. Quand avez-vous mangé votre goûter? 15. Vous êtes-vous bien amusés? 16. Êtes-vous arrivés très tard chez vous? 17. Quand êtes-vous arrivés? 18. Quel jour est-ce aujourd'hui? 19. Et demain? 20. Et après-demain? 21. Quels sont les autres jours de la semaine? Etc., etc.

D. 1. I like picnics. 2. I always enjoy myself at picnics. 3. If the weather is fine, we shall have a picnic to-morrow. 4. What kind of weather is it now? 5. It is raining. 6. There will be no rain to-morrow. 7. The sun is showing itself already. 8. This afternoon it rained for (*pendant*) two hours. 9. Where will your picnic take place? 10. It will take place in the woods, at the lake shore. 11. We had a picnic there last summer too. 12. If it is not windy, we shall go for a row. 13. Last summer we did not go upon the water. 14. The waves were too large. 15. Shall you eat your lunch before noon? 16. What shall you do in the afternoon? 17. We shall sing and play. 18. When shall you reach home? 19. We shall set out before sunset, and we shall reach home early. 20. The days of the week are: Sunday, Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, Saturday.

LESSON XXV.

99. The Infinitive. Some of the commoner uses of the infinitive are :—

1. Without any preposition, after such verbs as **vouloir**, 'will,' **pouvoir**, 'can, may,' **désirer**, 'wish, desire,' **savoir**, 'know how to,' **devoir**, 'ought,' **falloir**, 'be necessary,' **aller**, 'go'; after verbs of perceiving, such as **voir**, 'see,' **écouter**, 'hear,' **regarder**, 'look at'; also after **faire**, 'make, cause to,' **laisser**, 'let':

Désire-t-il aller en ville ?

Does he wish to go down town ?

Il lui faut travailler.

He must work.

Je vais chercher des plumes.

I am going to get some pens.

Je vois venir des soldats.

I see some soldiers coming.

Je fais sonner la cloche.

I make the bell ring.

2. Preceded by **de**, after **être** impersonally + an adjective; after many verbs like **cesser**, 'cease,' **regretter**, 'regret,' **prier**, 'beg'; after nouns to form adjective phrases; and after most adjectives :

Il est facile de parler.

It is easy to talk.

Il a cessé de chanter.

He has ceased singing.

Le crime de voler.

The crime of stealing.

Vous êtes libre de partir.

You are free to go.

3. Preceded by **à**, after verbs like **réussir**, 'succeed,' **aimer**, 'like,' **enseigner**, 'teach,' etc.; and after some adjectives :

J'aime à patiner.

I like to skate (like skating).

Je m'amuse à patiner.

I amuse myself (by) skating.

Cela est facile à faire.

That is easy to do.

4. Observe that the same adjective may take **à** or **de**, according to the construction in which it is used :

Il est facile à contenter.

He is easy to satisfy.

Il est facile de le contenter.

It is easy to satisfy him.

C'est facile à faire.

That (or it) is easy to do.

5. A verb governed by a preposition must be in the infinitive, except after **en** (cf. §101):

Je l'ai fait sans penser.

I did it without thinking.

100. Present Participle of *donner, finir, vendre*, etc.

Giving.	Finishing.	Selling.
donn ant [dɔ̃ɑ̃].	finiss ant [finisɑ̃].	vend ant [vɑ̃dɑ̃].
Having.	Being.	
ay ant [ejɑ̃].	ét ant [etɑ̃].	

101. Agreement. Used as an adjective, the present participle agrees like an adjective; otherwise it is invariable:

Une scène charmante.

A charming scene.

Elle tombait souvent en **marchant**.

She often fell while walking.

102. Present Indicative of *pouvoir*, 'be able,' 'can,' 'may' (irreg.).

I can, am able, etc.

je puis *or* peux [ʒə pui, pø].

nous pouvons [nu puvø].

tu peux [ty pø].

vous pouvez [vu puve].

il peut [il pø].

ils peuvent [il pœ:v].

103. Observe the use of the impersonal *il faut* + infinitive:

Il lui faut partir.

He must (it is necessary for him to) go.

Il me faudra travailler.

I shall have to work.

Il ne faut pas voler.

We (one) must not steal.

EXERCISE XXV.

4. Bonjour mon ami; je suis charmé de vous voir. Comment vous portez-vous?—Je me porte très bien, merci.—Comme j'aime à me promener le matin! Il a gelé cette nuit, mais maintenant le soleil brille et il fait presque chaud. Malgré le froid tout est gai.—Il n'y a pas de fleurs, mais il y a de petits oiseaux qui n'ont pas encore cessé de chanter. En passant j'ai regardé le petit lac, et j'ai vu qu'il y avait de la glace. Nous pouvons bientôt patiner.—Aimez-vous à patiner?—Oui, j'aime beaucoup à patiner. Nous avons beaucoup d'amusements en hiver, n'est-ce pas?—Oh oui, il est très facile de s'amuser en hiver quand on se porte bien.—Aimez-vous à vous promener en traîneau? C'est très amusant, n'est-ce pas?—C'est surtout le soir que j'aime une promenade en traîneau. C'est si joli quand il fait clair de lune. La neige est blanche, tout le monde est gai, et les chevaux font sonner leurs grelots.—Et si on ne

désire pas sortir, on peut s'amuser à la maison. Vous aimez la lecture, n'est-ce pas ?—J'aime beaucoup à lire. Hier j'ai commencé un roman de Daudet. Quelquefois nous invitons nos amis à passer la soirée chez nous. Nous aimons à chanter et à danser. Il est facile de passer le temps quand on a des amis.

B. Continue the following : 1. Je ne peux pas partir ce matin, etc. 2. Il me faut partir ce soir, il te faut, etc. 3. Est-ce que je ne me porte pas bien ?, etc. 4. Est-ce que j'aime à patiner ?, etc. 5. Je ne cesse pas de chanter, etc. 6. Je vois une scène charmante, etc.

C. (Oral.) 1. Comment vous portez-vous ce matin ? 2. Avez-vous bien dormi ? 3. Est-ce qu'il a gelé cette nuit ? 4. En quelle saison les oiseaux cessent-ils de chanter ? 5. Quand est-ce qu'ils commencent à chanter ? 6. Est-ce qu'il y a déjà de bonne glace sur le lac ? 7. Peut-on y patiner ce soir ? 8. Aimez-vous à patiner ? 9. Qu'est-ce que vous faites en hiver pour vous amuser ? 10. Est-il facile de s'amuser en hiver ? 11. Pouvez-vous vous promener en traîneau ce soir ? 12. Ne désirez-vous pas sortir ce soir ? 13. Qu'avez-vous l'intention de faire ? 14. Allez-vous passer toute la soirée chez vous ? 15. Faut-il avoir des amis pour s'amuser ? 16. Aimez-vous à passer la soirée à lire ? 17. Quand avez-vous commencé à lire ces romans ? 18. Ce sont des romans charmants, n'est-ce pas ? 19. Vous faut-il rester à la maison ce soir ? Etc., etc.

D. 1. Good morning ; I am charmed to see you. 2. The weather is very fine for the season, is it not ? 3. Did you look at the ice on the lake in passing ? 4. Yes, the ice is good, and we can soon skate. 5. Do you like to skate ? 6. Yes, but I cannot go skating this evening. 7. I must stay at home. 8. You can amuse yourself reading. 9. I like to pass the evening at home sometimes. 10. It is easy to find amusements. 11. We often invite friends to pass the evening with us. 12. We have begun to read a novel together. 13. It is charming to go for a sleigh-ride sometimes. 14. The white snow and the moonlight make a charming scene. 15. It is so charming to hear the sleigh-bells ring. 16. We must go for a sleigh-ride to-morrow. 17. I shall go if I can. 18. We shall go too. 19. We must have some friends with us. 20. To enjoy one's self one must have friends.

LESSON XXVI.

104. Present Subjunctive of *donner, finir, vendre*.

I (may) give, etc.	I (may) finish, etc.	I (may) sell, etc.
donn e [dɔ̃n].	finiss e [finis].	vend e [vɑ̃d].
donn es [dɔ̃n].	finiss es [finis].	vend es [vɑ̃d].
donn e [dɔ̃n].	finiss e [finis].	vend e [vɑ̃d].
donn ions [dɔ̃njɔ̃].	finiss ions [finisjɔ̃].	vend ions [vɑ̃djɔ̃].
donn iez [dɔ̃nje].	finiss iez [finisje].	vend iez [vɑ̃dje].
donn ent [dɔ̃n].	finiss ent [finis].	vend ent [vɑ̃d].

N.B.—The paradigm meanings ‘I may give,’ etc., are only approximate, as will be seen from the examples below.

105. Present Subjunctive of *avoir, être*.

I (may) have, etc.	I (may) be, etc.
aie [ɛ]. ayons [ɛjɔ̃].	sois [swa]. soyons [swajɔ̃].
aies [ɛ]. ayez [ɛje].	sois [swa]. soyez [swaje].
ait [ɛ]. aient [ɛ].	soit [swa]. soient [swa].

106. Use of the Subjunctive. Some of the commoner uses of the subjunctive are:—

1. In a subordinate noun clause introduced by **que**, ‘that,’ after expressions of *willing* or *desiring* :

Je désire que vous restiez. I desire you to remain (=that you may or should remain).

2. Similarly, after expressions of *joy* or *sorrow* :

Je suis content qu’il soit ici. I am glad he is here.

3. So also after expressions of *necessity*, like **il faut** :

Il faut que vous restiez. You must remain.

Il est nécessaire que vous restiez. It is necessary for you to remain.

4. It is used in adverbial clauses after certain conjunctions, e.g., **afin que**, ‘in order that,’ **pour que**, ‘in order that,’ **avant que**, ‘before,’ **bien que**, ‘although,’ **quoique**, ‘although,’ etc.

Bien qu’il soit pauvre il est heureux. Although he is poor he is happy.

5. **Que** is never omitted, as ‘that’ often is in English :

Je suis content qu’il soit ici. I am glad (that) he is here.

107. Tense Sequence. Present or Future is regularly followed by Present Subjunctive :

PRES. Il faut	} que vous parliez.	{ You must speak.
FUT. Il faudra		

108. Present Indicative of *vouloir*, 'will,' 'wish,' etc. (irreg.).

I will, wish, etc.

je veux [ʒe vø].	nous voulons [nu vulɔ̃].
tu veux [ty vø].	vous voulez [vu vule].
il veut [il vø].	ils veulent [il vœl].

109. Present Subjunctive of *faire* (irreg.).

I (may) do, etc.

fasse [fas].	fassions [fasjɔ̃].
fasses [fas].	fassiez [fasje].
fasse [fas].	fassent [fas].

EXERCISE XXVI.

A. On frappe à la porte. Je vais voir qui c'est. C'est une de mes amies. Elle entre. Nous causons ensemble.—Qu'allez-vous faire aujourd'hui?—Ma robe n'est pas encore prête. Il faut que je sois chez la couturière avant midi. Après cela je vais porter des fleurs à une amie qui est un peu souffrante, et je désire que vous m'accompagniez, si vous pouvez. C'est assez loin, mais nous n'irons pas à pied. Je serai si contente que vous soyez avec moi. Il faut que vous fassiez connaissance avec mon amie; elle est si charmante.—Je regrette de ne pouvoir pas vous accompagner ce matin; j'ai mal aux dents depuis hier. Il y en a deux qui me font souffrir.—Que je regrette que vous ayez tant d'ennui! C'est très fâcheux. Et qu'allez-vous faire?—Il me faut aller voir le dentiste. Il arrachera une de mes dents probablement, car elle est entièrement gâtée. Mais je désire qu'il tâche de me conserver l'autre.

B. Continue the following: 1. Je suis content qu'il soit arrivé, tu es, etc. 2. Je veux qu'elle attende, tu veux, etc. 3. Il faut que je sois là avant midi, il faut que tu, etc. 4. Il désire que je le finisse, que tu, etc. 5. Il faut que je vende ma maison, que tu, etc. 6. Bien que j'aie des amis, bien que tu, etc. 7. Je suis fâché qu'elle soit souffrante, tu es, etc.

C. (Oral.) 1. Qui frappe à la porte? 2. Qu'est-ce qu'elle demande? 3. Votre robe est-elle prête? 4. Faut-il que je sois en ville avant midi? 5. Me faut-il partir tout de suite? 6. Désirez-vous que je vous accompagne? 7. Regrettez-vous que votre amie soit souffrante? 8. Êtes-vous contente qu'elle se porte mieux à présent? 9. Qu'est-ce que vous avez ce matin? 10. Désirez-vous que le dentiste arrache votre dent malade? 11. Voulez-vous qu'il vous arrache les deux dents malades? 12. Que désirez-vous? 13. Ne voulez-vous pas que je vous attende au café? 14. Désirez-vous que je sois avec vous chez le dentiste? 15. Faut-il que nous soyons de retour avant midi? 16. Êtes-vous fâchée que votre père ait vendu sa maison? 17. Désirez-vous qu'il en achète une dans cette rue? 18. Cette maison est jolie bien qu'elle soit petite, n'est-ce pas? Etc., etc.

D. 1. There is a knock at the door. 2. I do not wish you to knock at my door. 3. I wish you to ring. 4. Must you be at the dressmaker's at noon? 5. Yes, I must have my dress for this evening. 6. I am going afterwards to see my friend who is indisposed. 7. I am very sorry that she is indisposed. 8. I must bring her some flowers. 9. Do you wish me to accompany you? 10. No, I desire you to remain at home. 11. I am very sorry you have toothache. 12. Is it necessary that the dentist should extract your two teeth? 13. I must go and see him first. 14. I wish him to try and save one of the two. 15. Although this tooth is a little decayed, it is better than the other. 16. Do you wish me to be with you at the dentist's? 17. No, I wish you to buy some fruit for our dinner. 18. Although fruit is dear, I shall buy a great deal. 19. One must eat to live. 20. Everybody must eat enough.

LESSON XXVII.

110. Imperative of *donner, finir, vendre*.

Give, etc.	Finish, etc.	Sell, etc.
donn e [dɔ̃].	finis [fini].	vend s [vɑ̃].
qu'il donn e [dɔ̃].	qu'il finiss e [finis].	qu'il vend e [vɑ̃:d].
donn ons [dɔ̃ɔ̃].	finiss ons [finisɔ̃].	vend ons [vɑ̃dɔ̃].
donn ez [dɔ̃e].	finiss ez [finise].	vend ez [vɑ̃de].
qu'ils donn ent [dɔ̃].	qu'ils finiss ent [finis].	qu'ils vend ent [vɑ̃:d].

Obs.: The 3rd sing. and 3rd plur. are subjunctive forms used as imperatives.

III. Imperative of *avoir*, *être*.

Have, etc.	Be, etc.
aie [ɛ].	sois [swa].
qu'il ait [k il ɛ].	qu'il soit [swa].
ay ons [ɛjɔ̃].	soy ons [swajɔ̃].
ay ez [ɛje].	soy ez [swaje].
qu'ils aient [k ilz ɛ].	qu'ils soient [k il swa].

III. Imperative Negative.

ne donne pas. qu'il ne donne pas. ne donnons pas, etc.

III. Position of Objects. 1. Personal pronoun objects follow the positive imperative (but not the subjunctive as imperative), and are joined to it and to one another by hyphens:

Donnez-lui la plume.	Give him the pen.
Donnez-la-lui.	Give it to him.
Donnons-leur-en.	Let us give them some.
Qu'il me la donne.	Let him give it to me.

2. If the imperative be negative, the general rule of position (§81) holds good:

Ne la lui donnez pas.	Do not give it to him.
-----------------------	------------------------

3. **Moi** and **toi** are used after an imperative instead of **me** and **te** (unless before **y** and **en**, in which case apostrophe replaces hyphen):

Donnez-moi des pommes.	Give me some apples.
Donnez-m'en.	Give me some (of them).

4. When a verb has two objects, they are arranged thus after it (for slight exceptions, see Part II):

le (la, les)	before moi (toi, lui, nous, vous, leur).
me (te, lui, nous, vous, leur)	before y (en).
y	before en.

EXERCISE XXVII.

A. Nous allons étudier nos leçons. Le professeur nous a laissés ici dans cette salle afin qu'on ne nous dérange pas. Travaillons ferme. Quel est le livre que vous avez à la main? —C'est ma grammaire française.—Donnez-la-moi un moment

s'il vous plaît. Je désire chercher quelque chose.—Où est donc mon cahier? Le voyez-vous?—Oui, le voici.—Donnez-le-moi, s'il vous plaît.—Maintenant c'est ma règle que je cherche.—Je ne l'ai pas vue.—Si vous la trouvez, ne la cassez pas.—Avez-vous de l'encre?—Oui, j'en ai.—Soyez assez bon pour m'en donner. Mon petit ami n'en a pas, non plus. Donnez-lui-en un peu aussi.—En voilà. Est-ce assez?—Oui, je vous remercie infiniment.—Allons, dépêchons-nous! Il est déjà tard, et nous n'avons pas encore fait beaucoup.—Soyez tranquille, nous finirons bientôt.—“Ayez de la patience” est une bonne maxime, mais n'en abusons pas.—Avez-vous parlé de cette affaire au professeur?—Pas encore.—Eh bien, parlez-lui-en cette après-midi.—Pour vous contenter, je lui en parlerai.

B. Complete the following by adding a noun object, and then repeating the phrase with the proper pronoun: 1. Cherchez... 2. Ne cherchez pas... 3. Finissez... 4. Ne finissez pas... 5. Vendez... 6. Ne vendez pas... 7. Qu'il écoute... 8. Chante... 9. Ne chante pas... 10. Choisissez... 11. Ne choisissez pas... 12. Vends... 13. Ne vends pas... 14. Finissons... 15. Ne finissons pas... 16. Vendons... 17. Ne vendons pas...

C. 1. Go and study your lessons. 2. Study them for an hour. 3. Remain in this class-room. 4. Remain in it for an hour. 5. Do not disturb me; I wish to study. 6. Now let us work hard. 7. Show me the lesson. 8. Show me it. 9. Find me my exercise-book, if you please. 10. Find it for me. 11. I have your ruler. 12. Do not break it, please. 13. If you have any ink, give me some of it, please. 14. Give some to Robert, too; he hasn't any, either. 15. Now Robert, thank him. 16. Come, hurry up. 17. Have patience, but don't have too much of it. 18. Let us finish our lessons. 19. Let us finish them before noon. 20. Have you spoken to the master of that affair? 21. Do not speak of it to him to-day. 22. Speak to him of it to-morrow. 23. We have finished our lessons. 24. The lessons are finished now. 25. Have the kindness to bring me my hat. 26. Look for it, please. 27. Let us go for a walk. 28. Let us not take advantage of the patience of our masters. 29. Let us not take advantage of it.

LESSON XXVIII.

II4. Conditional of *donner, finir, vendre*.

I should give, etc.	I should finish, etc.	I should sell, etc.
donner ais [donəʁe].	finir ais [finire].	vendr ais [vödʁe].
donner ais [donəʁe].	finir ais [finire].	vendr ais [vödʁe].
donner ait [donəʁe].	finir ait [finire].	vendr ait [vödʁe].
donner ions [donərjɔ̃].	finir ions [finirjɔ̃].	vendr ions [vödriɔ̃].
donner iez [donərje].	finir iez [finirje].	vendr iez [vödrie].
donner aient [donəʁe].	finir aient [finire].	vendr aient [vödʁe].

115. Conditional of *avoir, être*.

I should have, etc.		I should be, etc.	
aur ais [ɔrɛ].	aur ions [ɔrjɔ̃].	ser ais [sɛrɛ].	ser ions [sɛrjɔ̃].
aur ais [ɔrɛ].	aur iez [ɔrje].	ser ais [sɛrɛ].	ser iez [sɛrje].
aur ait [ɔrɛ].	aur aient [ɔrɛ].	ser ait [sɛrɛ].	ser aient [sɛrɛ].

Obs. : In all verbs the stem of the conditional is the same as that of the future.

116. Conditional Sentences. 1. The conditional is used to express what would happen (result) in case something else were to happen (condition):

S'il avait le temps (condition),
il finirait sa leçon (result).

2. A 'result' clause in the conditional (English 'should' or 'would') regularly has the 'if' clause in the imperfect indicative, whatever be the corresponding English form :

Si j'étudiais bien (condition), le maître serait content (result).	If I studied (<i>or if I were to s., or were I to s., or should I s.</i>) well, the master would be glad.
---	--

3. A 'result' clause in the future requires the 'if' clause in the present indicative, whatever be the corresponding English form :

S'il est ici demain (condition),
je lui donnerai l'argent (result).

If he is (*or be, or will be, or should be*) here to-morrow, I shall give him the money.

117. Future and Conditional of *faire* (irreg.) and *aller* (irreg.).

ir ai [ire].	ir ais [ire].	fer ai [fère].	fer ais [fère].
ir as [ira], etc.	ir ais [ire], etc.	fer as [fèra], etc.	fer ais [fère], etc.

EXERCISE XXVIII.

A. Si j'avais mes livres, j'étudierais mes leçons. Je les ai laissés à l'école.—Cependant il n'est pas nécessaire que vous perdiez votre temps. J'ai mes livres et je puis vous les prêter, si vous désirez préparer vos leçons.—Vous êtes trop aimable, je les accepterai avec plaisir.—De quels livres avez-vous besoin?—J'ai besoin d'une arithmétique et d'une géographie. Si j'avais aussi un crayon et du papier, j'en ferais usage.—Ma bibliothèque entière est à votre disposition.—À propos, qu'allez-vous faire pendant les vacances?—Si j'avais beaucoup d'argent, j'irais bien loin. Je suis si fatigué depuis quelque temps. Et qu'est-ce que vous allez faire?—Si je n'avais pas été si souvent à la campagne, j'y serais allé encore cette année. Mais il me faut un plus grand changement s'il est possible.—Alors vous n'êtes pas encore décidé.—Pas encore, il y a tant de réflexions à faire. S'il ne fait pas trop chaud, nous resterons ici. On sera très bien ici, s'il fait frais. Mais s'il fait très chaud, nous partirons pour un endroit plus agréable.

B. Complete the following by adding a 'result' clause or an 'if' clause as the case may be: 1. Le maître sera content... 2. S'il fait chaud demain... 3. S'il ne faisait pas si chaud... 4. Je lui donnerai l'argent... 5. Je lui donnerais l'argent... 6. Si j'avais du papier et des plumes... 7. Si j'avais ma grammaire française... 8. J'irais bien loin... 9. Vendriez-vous votre maison... 10. Seriez-vous parti...

C. (Oral.) 1. Où sont vos livres? 2. Si vous les aviez, qu'est-ce que vous feriez? 3. Si je vous prêtais ma grammaire, en feriez-vous usage? 4. Qu'est-ce que vous ferez si je vous prête mes livres? 5. Le maître sera-t-il content si nous ne préparons pas nos leçons? 6. Ne sera-t-il pas content si nous étudions deux heures entières? 7. Serait-il content si je perdais mon temps? 8. Le maître est-il content si nous perdons notre temps? 9. Est-ce que je serai content si je perds mon temps? 10. Serions-nous contents si nous perdions notre temps?

11. Seriez-vous fatigué si vous travailliez toute la soirée? 12. Irez-vous à la campagne s'il fait chaud demain? 13. Qu'est-ce que nous ferons s'il fait chaud demain? 14. Si vous aviez des vacances, est-ce que vous resteriez à la maison? 15. Que feriez-vous? 16. Iriez-vous à la campagne? 17. Si vous aviez beaucoup d'argent, que feriez-vous pendant l'été? 18. Serons-nous bien ici s'il fait chaud? Etc., etc.

D. 1. I have left all my books at school. 2. If I had them, I should prepare my lessons for to-morrow. 3. If I do not prepare them, the master will not be pleased. 4. If you wish to study, I will lend you my books. 5. If you were to lend me them, I should be very glad. 6. I should study the whole evening. 7. I do not wish to lose my time. 8. I am never happy, if I am not working. 9. Should you make use of my pens and paper, if I lent you them? 10. I should accept them with pleasure, if you were kind enough to lend me them. 11. If we work the whole evening, we shall be tired. 12. By the way, what are you going to do in the holidays? 13. I shall go to the country, if it is hot. 14. I should go too, if I had not been there so often. 15. If I had a great deal of money, I should go a long way off. 16. If one has no money, one cannot go far. 17. If it is possible, I shall spend some days with my relatives. 18. It (*ce*) will be for me a great pleasure, if my cousins are at home.

LESSON XXIX.

118. Use of Article. 1. Names of continents, countries, provinces, large islands, regularly take the definite article :

La France est un beau pays.

Nous partons pour le Canada.

Il demeure aux États-Unis.

France is a beautiful country.

We are leaving for Canada.

He lives in the United States.

2. The article is omitted after the preposition **en** = 'in,' 'to;' it is also omitted after **de** in certain constructions :

Mon père est en Angleterre.

Nous allons en France.

Il vient d'Italie.

Les vins d'Espagne.

My father is in England.

We are going to France.

He comes from Italy.

Spanish wines.

119. 1. Place 'where,' 'where to,' is usually denoted by **en** before names of continents, European countries singular, and feminine countries singular outside of Europe; other countries usually take the preposition **à** + the definite article :

Il est **en** (va en) Europe.

He is in (goes to) Europe.

Il est **au** (va au) Canada.

He is in (goes to) Canada.

2. Cities, towns, etc., usually take **à**, without any article :

Il est **à** (va à) Paris.

He is in or at (goes to) Paris.

But : **À la** Nouvelle-Orléans.

At New Orleans.

120. Present Indicative of *savoir*, 'to know' (irreg.).

I know, etc.

je sais [se].

nous savons [savõ].

tu sais [se].

vous savez [save].

il sait [se].

ils savent [sa:v].

EXERCISE XXIX.

A. Savez-vous que votre ami est parti hier pour la France ?
—Oui, je le sais. Il était si content ! Il sait bien le français déjà ; dans quelques mois il le parlera comme un Français.
—Avez-vous jamais été en France ?—Non, je n'y ai jamais été, mais j'ai l'intention d'y aller l'année prochaine. Vous y avez été, n'est-ce pas ?—Oui, j'y ai passé deux années. C'est un beau pays. J'aime beaucoup la France, j'aime les Français et le français. C'est une belle langue.—Oh oui, vous, vous êtes bien avancé. Vous parlez français couramment, mais moi, je trouve cela difficile.—En commençant, c'est difficile, mais avec le temps vous l'apprendrez, surtout si vous passez une année en France.—Quelle partie de la France avez-vous habitée ?—J'ai habité Paris, mais j'ai visité d'autres grandes villes. J'ai été à Rouen et à Lyon.—Avez-vous jamais été au Bas-Canada ?—Oui, j'y ai été. J'ai été à Montréal et à Québec. Ce sont deux belles villes. J'ai été aussi à la Nouvelle-Orléans, où il y a beaucoup de Français. On y parle encore aujourd'hui français. Mais en général aux États-Unis les Français n'ont pas conservé leur langue si fidèlement que les Français du Canada.

B. Continue the following: 1. Je parle anglais, tu, etc. 2. Est-ce que je parle français?, est-ce que tu?, etc. 3. Je sais bien le français, tu, etc. 4. Ai-je été en France?, as-tu été?, etc. 5. Demain je partirai pour le Canada, tu, etc. 6. Je vais aux États-Unis, tu, etc. 7. J'habite les États-Unis, tu, etc. 8. J'irai à Paris l'année prochaine, tu, etc. 9. J'ai demeuré une année à Paris, tu as, etc.

C. (Oral.) 1. Où est la France? 2. Quelle langue les Français parlent-ils? 3. Savez-vous le français? 4. Parlez-vous français? 5. Le parlez-vous couramment? 6. Avez-vous jamais été en France? 7. Combien de temps avez-vous passé à Paris? 8. Avez-vous été aussi à Rouen et à Lyon? 9. Aimez-vous la France? 10. Aimez-vous les Français? 11. Est-ce que le français est une belle langue? 12. Quelle langue parlez-vous? 13. Est-ce que nous sommes Anglais ou Français? 14. Les habitants de la France parlent français, n'est-ce pas? 15. Y a-t-il beaucoup de Français aux États-Unis? 16. Quelle langue parle-t-on au Bas-Canada? 17. Parle-t-on aussi la langue française à la Nouvelle-Orléans? 18. Quelle langue parle-t-on à Montréal et à Québec? 19. Les Français des États-Unis ont-ils conservé fidèlement leur langue? 20. Depuis quand étudiez-vous le français? 21. Avez-vous l'intention d'aller en France l'année prochaine? 22. Dans quels pays avez-vous passé les vacances l'année dernière? Etc., etc.

D. 1. France is in Europe. 2. France is a beautiful country. 3. Its inhabitants speak French. 4. French is spoken also in Canada and in the United States. 5. It is spoken at Montreal, Quebec and New Orleans. 6. French is a fine language. 7. We like the French and the French language. 8. We have been studying French for three months. 9. I have not been in France yet. 10. I intend to go there next year. 11. I shall set out for France in the summer. 12. I shall spend a month in Paris, and some time also at Lyons and Rouen. 13. On my return, I shall remain some days at Montreal and Quebec. 14. French is a difficult language for the English. 15. We speak English. 16. You live in Canada. 17. Our relatives live in the United States. 18. They live in New Orleans. 19. They have never been in France, but they speak French like Frenchmen. 20. If you were to spend a year in France, you would speak it fluently also.

LESSON XXX.

121. The Possessive Pronouns.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
le mien [mjɛ̃], m.	les miens [mjɛ̃], m. }
la mienne [mjɛn], f.	les miennes [mjɛn], f. }
le tien [tjɛ̃], m.	les tiens [tjɛ̃], m. }
la tienne [tjɛn], f.	les tiennes [tjɛn], f. }
le sien [sjɛ̃], m.	les siens [sjɛ̃], m. }
la sienne [sjɛn], f.	les siennes [sjɛn], f. }
le nôtre [no:tr], m. }	les nôtres [no:tr], ours.
la nôtre [no:tr], f. }	
le vôtre [vo:tr], m. }	les vôtres [vo:tr], yours.
la vôtre [vo:tr], f. }	
le leur [lə:r], m. }	les leurs [lə:r], theirs.
la leur [lə:r], f. }	

122. Agreement. Possessive pronouns agree in gender and number with the object possessed, and in person with the possessor :

J'ai mes livres ; elle a **les siens**. I have my books ; she has hers.

123. Use of Possessive Pronouns. 1. After **être**, mere ownership is regularly expressed by **à** + a personal pronoun disjunctive, while the use of a possessive pronoun implies distinction of ownership :

Cette montre est **à moi**.

This watch is mine.

Cette montre est **la mienne**.

This watch is *mine*.

2. **De** and **à** + **le mien**, etc., contract as usual (cf. §§ 35, 46):
Je parle de son ami et **du mien**. I speak of his friend and of mine.

3. Since **le sien**, **la sienne**, etc., mean 'his,' 'hers,' 'its,' 'one's,' the context determines which sense is intended :

Il a ses livres ; elle a **les siens**.

He has his books ; she has hers.

4. Observe the idioms :

Un de mes amis.

A friend of mine.

Un Parisien de mes amis.

A Parisian, a friend of mine.

124. Present Indicative of *dire*, 'to say,' 'tell' (irreg.), and of *voir*, 'to see' (irreg.).

I say, etc.

je dis [di]. nous disons [dizɔ̃].
tu dis [di]. vous dites [dit].
il dit [di]. ils disent [di:z].

I see, etc.

je vois [vwa]. nous voyons [vwajɔ̃].
tu vois [vwa]. vous voyez [vwaje].
il voit [vwa]. ils voient [vwa].

EXERCISE XXX.

A. Un de mes amis, qui voyage actuellement en Europe, m'a envoyé une lettre l'autre jour. Dans cette lettre il fait les comparaisons les plus intéressantes entre les habitudes des Européens et les nôtres. Par exemple, les chemins de fer européens sont différents des nôtres. Nos voitures sont plus grandes que les leurs, et elles ont un seul compartiment, tandis que les leurs sont divisées en plusieurs. Les petits compartiments sont souvent très commodes; on peut y être seul ou avec une petite compagnie agréable. Mais il y a un inconvénient: on risque de se trouver face à face avec un compagnon de voyage très désagréable, ou même dangereux. Un jour, par exemple, mon ami se trouvait dans un compartiment avec un individu qui ne respectait pas trop la différence entre le mien et le tien. Mon ami avait une jolie montre d'or. Son compagnon la remarque. Le train approche d'une petite ville, et ralentit sa marche. L'individu tire un revolver de sa poche et dit à mon ami: "Vous avez là une belle montre, donnez-la-moi et je vous donnerai la mienne." Mon ami a peur, il donne sa montre, et le voleur saute du train.

B. Complete the following by supplying a suitable possessive pronoun form: 1. Ma montre est en or;...est en argent. 2. Mes parents sont à Paris;... sont aux États-Unis. 3. Marie va chercher mes plumes et... 4. Nous avons fini nos leçons; ils ont fini... 5. J'ai fini mes leçons, et Jean a fini... 6. Vos leçons sont faciles, mais... sont difficiles. 7. J'ai mon crayon, et Marie a... 8. Marie a ses crayons et...aussi. 9. Les Français aiment leur pays, et nous aimons... 10. Nous aimons notre langue; les Français aiment... 11. Je parle de mes amis, et vous parlez... 12. Jean donne des fleurs à ses sœurs, et Robert en donne...

C. (Oral.) 1. Qui vous a envoyé une lettre? 2. Les habitudes des Européens sont-elles les mêmes que les nôtres? 3. Nos chemins de fer sont-ils meilleurs que les leurs? 4. Leurs voitures sont-elles plus grandes que les nôtres? 5. Les nôtres sont-elles plus commodes que les leurs? 6. Avec qui votre ami se trouvait-il dans un compartiment? 7. La montre du voleur était-elle meilleure que la sienne? 8. En quoi est votre montre? 9. Voulez-vous me donner la vôtre en échange de la mienne? 10. À qui était la belle montre d'or? 11. Qu'est-ce que le voleur veut donner en échange de la montre de votre ami? 12. Qui a tiré un revolver de sa poche? 13. Votre ami a-t-il tiré le sien aussi de sa poche? 14. Auriez-vous donné au voleur votre belle montre en échange de la sienne? 15. L'auriez-vous donnée si la sienne avait été meilleure que la vôtre? 16. Qui ne respecte pas la différence entre le mien et le tien? Etc., etc.

D. 1. A friend of mine is travelling in France. 2. There is much difference between the customs of the French and ours. 3. For example, our railways and theirs are different. 4. Their railways are not so long as ours. 5. The carriages of our trains are larger than theirs. 6. But their carriages are often more comfortable than ours. 7. Ours are not divided into compartments. 8. One day I find myself in one of these compartments. 9. I draw my watch from my pocket to look at it. 10. My travelling companion is an individual who does not respect the difference between mine and thine. 11. He draws out his also from his pocket, and looks at it. 12. He looks at mine too. 13. He says to me: "Here are two watches; yours is of (*en*) gold and mine is of silver. 14. Give me yours, and I will give you mine." 15. At these words, I draw a revolver which I have in another pocket. 16. The thief does not draw his from his pocket, because he has no revolver. 17. At this moment the train arrives at a little town. 18. The thief is afraid, and jumps from the carriage, leaving me his watch. 19. I have now two watches, mine and his. 20. If he had had his revolver, and if I had not had mine, the affair would have been very different.

LESSON XXXI.

125. The Demonstrative Pronouns.

ce [sə], this, these, that, those, he, she, it, they.

ceci [səsi], this.

cela [səla], that.

celui [səli], m. }	that (one), the (one),	ceux [sø], m. }	those (ones), the
celle [sɛl]. }	he, she.	celles [sɛl], f. }	ones, they.

celui-ci [səli si], m. }	this (one),	ceux-ci [sø si], m. }	these (ones),
celle-ci [sɛl si], f. }	the latter.	celles-ci [sɛl si], f. }	the latter.

celui-là [səli la], m. }	that (one), the	ceux-là [sø la], m. }	those (ones),
celle-là [sɛl la], f. }	former.	celles-là [sɛl la], f. }	the former.

126. For the use of **ce** as distinguished from the personal pronoun **il** (elle, etc.), see § 97.

127. **Ceci** = 'this,' and **cela** = 'that,' are used to denote something pointed out or indicated, but not named. **Cela** is often contracted into **ça** in familiar language :

Cela est joli ; je préfère **ceci**. That is pretty ; I prefer this.

Pouvez-vous faire **cela** ? Can you do that ?

J'aime **ça**. I like that.

128. **Celui**, 'that (one),' 'the (one),' 'he,' is used of persons or things, and is regularly followed by a relative clause or a **de** clause :

Celui que j'attendais est arrivé. He whom I expected has arrived.

Ceux qui cherchent trouvent. Those who seek find.

Mes fleurs et **celles** de Marie. My flowers and Mary's.

Celles que vous aimez. The ones (flowers) you like.

129. 1. **Celui-ci**, 'this,' 'this one,' 'he,' and **celui-là**, 'that,' 'that one,' are used of persons or things already mentioned, to contrast the nearer and the more remote :

Voici les deux chaînes ; gardez	Here are the two chains ; keep
celle-ci et donnez-moi celle-là .	this (one) and give me that (one).

2. 'The latter' is **celui-ci**, and 'the former' is **celui-là**, the order of ideas being inverted as compared with English :

Cicéron et Virgile étaient tous	Cicero and Virgil were both cele-
deux célèbres ; celui-ci était	brated ; the former was an
poète et celui-là orateur.	orator and the latter a poet.

EXERCISE XXXI.

A. Un certain homme possédait un âne et un petit chien. À celui-ci il donnait des caresses et à celui-là des fardeaux à porter. Le chien s'amusait toute la journée. Il courait par-ci par-là. À table il mangeait avec son maître. Il donnait la patte à tout le monde, et tout le monde lui donnait des baisers. Le pauvre âne voyait tout cela, et il en était très mécontent. Un jour il se demande: "Pourquoi ne me donne-t-on pas autant de bonnes choses qu'à ce misérable petit chien? Pourquoi donne-t-on toutes les caresses à celui qui ne travaille pas, et tous les coups de bâton à celui qui travaille toujours? Je cesserai de travailler. J'entrerai dans la salle à manger de mon maître, je donnerai la patte à tous ceux qui y sont, et ils me donneront des caresses." Le pauvre âne tâche de faire cela. Il entre dans la salle à manger, il salue la compagnie. Il chante de sa belle voix. Il veut donner la patte à son maître. Mais en levant la patte il fait tomber la vaisselle. On a peur, on crie. Les valets entrent, et donnent à la pauvre bête, non des caresses, mais des coups de bâton.

B. Complete the following by supplying suitable demonstrative pronoun forms: 1. Ceci est bon, ... est mauvais. 2. Cela est grand, ... est petit. 3. Voilà deux montres d'or; ... est plus jolie que... 4. ... de mon père est plus jolie encore. 5. Voici des livres pour nous; donnez-moi..., et je vous donnerai... 6. Donnez-moi d'autres plumes, j'ai perdu... que vous m'avez prêtées. 7. Je parle de Cicéron et de Virgile; ... était poète et... était orateur. 8. ... qui volent sont des voleurs. 9. Cet homme a volé mon argent et... de mon ami.

C. 1. Give me that. 2. I do not need this. 3. There are two pens; give me this one and keep that one. 4. My watch is finer than John's. 5. My father's is still finer. 6. He who steals is a thief. 7. Those who steal are thieves. 8. I have two brothers, John and Robert: the former is taller than I, the latter smaller.

D. (Oral.) 1. Quels étaient les deux animaux que possédait cet homme? 2. Qu'est-ce qu'il donnait à celui-ci? 3. Qu'est-ce qu'il donnait à celui-là? 4. L'âne était-il content de cela? 5. Qu'est-ce que l'âne se demande? 6. Où est-ce qu'il veut

entrer? 7. Est-ce qu'il a fait cela? 8. La voix de l'âne est-elle plus belle que celle du chien? 9. À qui veut-il donner la patte? 10. Ceux qui sont dans la salle sont-ils contents? 11. Qu'est-ce que font les valets? 12. Est-ce qu'on donne toujours des coups de bâton à ceux qui les méritent? Etc., etc.

E. 1. The ass and the dog are useful animals. 2. The former carries burdens, and the latter is the faithful friend of man. 3. The ass in this story is dissatisfied. 4. He asks himself why people give good things to those who do not work. 5. His master gives caresses to the dog and blows to him who works. 6. The unhappy animal is dissatisfied with that. 7. He ceases to work, and enters the dining-room. 8. He salutes those who are there. 9. He sings with his beautiful voice. 10. That is not very agreeable to the company. 11. You know that the voice of the ass is not so pleasant as that of the dog. 12. The master is afraid. 13. All those who are present scream. 14. The servants hear this, and enter the room. 15. They give the poor ass blows with a stick. 16. People do not always give blows to those who deserve them.

LESSON XXXII.

130. The Relative Pronouns.

qui [ki], who, which, that, whom (after a preposition).

que [kə], whom, which, that.

dont [dɔ̃], whose, of whom, of which.

où [u], in which, into which, at which, to which, etc.

lequel [ləkɛl], m. s., **lesquels** [ləkɛl], m. pl.

laquelle [lakɛl], f. s., **lesquelles** [ləkɛl], f. pl. } who, whom, which, that.

quoi [kwa], what, which.

131. Agreement. A relative pronoun, whether variable or invariable in form, is of the gender, number and person of its antecedent:

Moi qui étais (vous qui étiez) là. I who was (you who were) there.

Les lettres que j'ai apportées. The letters which I have brought.

132. Use of the Relative. 1. The relative of most common use is **qui**, as subject, and **que**, as direct object, of a verb (cf. § 75).

2. **Qui** = 'whom' (of persons only) is also used after a preposition :

L'oncle chez **qui** je demeurais. The uncle with whom I lived.

3. The force of **de** + a relative is generally expressed by **dont** :

Les amis **dont** nous parlions. The friends of whom we spoke.
L'église **dont** je vois la tour. The church whose tower I see.

4. **Où** = **dans** (or some other preposition of position) + a relative :

La ville **où** (or **dans laquelle**) je demeure. The city in which I live.

5. **Lequel** is often used instead of **qui** (que, etc.), to avoid ambiguity, and must be used of things after a preposition :

Les sœurs de nos amis, **lesquelles** sont chez nous à présent. The sisters of our friends, who (i.e., the sisters) are with us now.

6. **Quoi** stands after a preposition, rarely otherwise :

Voilà **de quoi** je parlais. That is what I was speaking of.

7. The absolute 'what,' 'which,' 'that which' as subject is **ce qui**, and, as object or predicate, **ce que**; 'of what,' 'that of which,' is **ce dont** :

Je vois **ce qui** vous amuse. I see what amuses you.
Je sais **ce que** je sais. I know what I know.
Vous savez **ce que** je suis. You know what I am.
Ce dont j'ai besoin. That which I need.

8. 'He who,' 'the one who,' etc. = **celui qui** :

J'aime **ceux qui** m'aiment. I love those who love me.
Ma montre est plus jolie que celle **que** vous avez. My watch is prettier than the one you have.

9. The relative pronoun, often omitted in English, is never omitted in French :

Le tableau **que** j'ai vu hier. The picture I saw yesterday.

133. Present Indicative of *connaître*, 'to know,' 'be acquainted with,' etc. (irreg.).

I know, etc.

je connais [ʒə kɔnɛ].	nous connaissons [nu kɔnɛs].
tu connais [ty kɔnɛ].	vous connaissez [vu kɔnɛse].
il connaît [il kɔnɛ].	ils connaissent [il kɔnɛ:s].

EXERCISE XXXII.

A. C'est ma première promenade à Paris. Un Parisien de mes amis m'accompagne. Nous voilà à la place de la Concorde.—Quelle est cette église dont on voit la façade au bout de cette rue?—C'est l'église de la Madeleine dont je vous ai déjà parlé ce matin. C'est une très belle église. Je vous y mènerai un de ces jours pour assister à la messe.—Quel est cet autre édifice de l'autre côté du fleuve?—C'est le palais de la Chambre des députés. C'est là que se font les lois du pays. Je connais un député qui m'a donné des billets d'entrée pour demain. Voulez-vous m'y accompagner?—Avec plaisir. Et quel est ce grand monument tout près de nous?—C'est un obélisque égyptien qu'on a apporté en France sous Louis-Philippe. Voyez-vous aussi ces huit statues situées à différents points autour de la Place? Ce sont des statues qui représentent les villes les plus importantes de la France. Regardez surtout celle de Strasbourg qui est couverte de couronnes. C'est une société patriotique qui a fait cela pour marquer sa douleur pour la perte de cette ville dans la guerre. Regardons encore ce qui se trouve autour de nous. À droite il y a les fameux Champs-Élysées avec leurs belles promenades. Cette avenue splendide qui les traverse mène au bois de Boulogne, en passant par l'Arc de Triomphe qu'on voit là-bas à l'horizon. À gauche nous voyons les jardins des Tuileries, et plus loin le Louvre, ancien palais des rois de France. C'est là que nous irons visiter les grandes galeries de peintures. Tout ce qu'on voit d'ici est intéressant.

B. Complete the following by supplying suitable relative pronoun forms: 1. La ville... nous habitons. 2. La ville... nous demeurons. 3. L'oncle chez... je demeurerai. 4. Les amis... m'accompagnent. 5. L'église... on voit la façade là-bas. 6. Les sœurs de nos amis... sont chez nous à présent. 7. Les dames... j'ai donné les fleurs. 8. Les chiens... j'ai donné la viande. 9. Vous savez ce... il a perdu. 10. Je vois ce... vous amuse. 11. Nous aimons ceux... nous aiment. 12. Ce... j'ai besoin.

C. (Oral.) 1. Est-ce la première promenade que vous faites à Paris ? 2. Quel est l'ami qui vous accompagne ? 3. L'ami que vous accompagnez connaît-il la ville ? 4. Quel est l'endroit où vous commencez votre promenade ? 5. Quelle est l'église dont on voit la façade ? 6. Est-ce l'église dont vous m'avez parlé ce matin ? 7. Et quel est cet autre édifice dont on voit la façade de l'autre côté du fleuve ? 8. Vous dites que vous avez des billets d'entrée ; qui vous les a donnés ? 9. Est-ce le député chez qui vous étiez hier soir ? 10. Où est cet obélisque égyptien dont vous m'avez parlé ? 11. Est-ce le grand monument près duquel on voit tant de monde ? 12. Que représentent ces statues-là ? 13. Connaissez-vous celle sur laquelle on voit tant de couronnes ? 14. Voulez-vous me dire ce qu'elle représente ? 15. Cet espace qui se trouve à droite, est-ce un jardin public ? 16. Où mène cette avenue par laquelle on voit passer les voitures ? 17. Quels sont les jardins qui sont à gauche ? 18. Quel est cet édifice dont on voit d'ici les fenêtres ? 19. M'avez-vous montré tout ce qui est intéressant ? Etc., etc.

D. 1. Paris is a city of which we have often spoken. 2. To-day I take my first walk in Paris. 3. The gentleman who accompanies me knows the city well. 4. He shows me everything which is interesting. 5. The point at which we begin our walk is the "place de la Concorde." 6. From this square we see the church of the Madeleine, whose façade we admire. 7. We see also the "chambre des Députés," where the laws of the country are made. 8. A member of parliament (*député*), at whose house we were yesterday, has given us tickets of admission. 9. Near the middle of the square there is an obelisk which was brought to France in the time of (*sous*) Louis-Philippe. 10. Statues which represent the most important cities of France are situated around the square. 11. What is that statue on which I see so many wreaths ? 12. It is a statue which represents a city the loss of which caused much sorrow to France. 13. Let us look again at what is around us. 14. Where does that avenue lead, through which we see the carriages passing ? 15. And what public gardens are those on our left, to which we are going (*se rendre*) ? 16. They (*ce*) are the gardens of the Tuileries. 17. Farther off you see the Louvre, in which lived (*vivre*) the kings of France. 18. All that you have shown me is very interesting. 19. I thank you very much.

LESSON XXXIII.

134. The Interrogative Pronouns.

qui? [ki], who?, whom?

que? [kə], what?

quoi? [kwa], what?

lequel? [ləkɛl], m. s., lesquels? [ləkɛl], m. pl. } which?, which one(s)?

laquelle? [lakɛl], f. s., lesquelles? [ləkɛl], f. pl. } what one(s)?

135. Use of Interrogatives. 1. Qui? = 'who?', 'whom?', is used of persons:

Qui sonne? Qui sont-elles?

Who is ringing? Who are they?

Dites-moi qui sonne.

Tell me who is ringing.

Qui a-t-il frappé?

Whom has he struck?

De qui parlez-vous?

Of whom are you speaking?

2. 'Whose?' denoting ownership simply = à qui?, otherwise generally de qui?, but never dont:

A qui est ce livre?

Whose book is this?

De qui êtes-vous (le) fils?

Whose son are you?

3. Que? = 'what?', stands always as the object or the predicate of a verb:

Que vous a-t-il dit? Qu'est-ce? What did he tell you? What is it?

4. 'What?' as subject is usually qu'est-ce qui?, and 'what' in indirect question is usually ce qui (ce que, etc.):

Qu'est-ce qui vous a intéressé?

What has interested you?

Je ne sais pas ce qui m'a frappé.

I do not know what struck me.

Dites-moi ce que vous désirez.

Tell me what you desire.

5. Quoi? = 'what?' stands regularly after a preposition, or absolutely, the verb being understood:

À quoi pensez-vous?

What are you thinking of?

Je cherche quelque chose.—Quoi? I am looking for something.—What?

6. Lequel? (laquelle?, etc.) = 'which?', 'which or what one?', agrees in gender with the noun referred to. Both parts of lequel (le and quel) are inflected, and the usual contractions with de and à (cf. §§ 35, 46) take place:

Laquelle des dames est là?

Which of the ladies is there?

Auquel des hommes parle-t-il?

To which of the men does he speak?

EXERCISE XXXIII.

A. Mon ami et moi continuons aujourd'hui notre promenade. Nous allons voir d'autres choses intéressantes. Je demande à mon ami : "Qu'est-ce que c'est que l'île de la Cité dont vous me parlez?"—L'île de la Cité est une île dans la Seine où on trouve plusieurs des grands édifices publics de Paris. Mais vous allez voir tout de suite. Nous voici au Pont-Neuf par lequel on entre dans la Cité.—Quel est ce grand édifice dont nous approchons?—C'est le Palais de Justice.—Qu'est-ce que c'est que le Palais de Justice?—C'est l'endroit où les juges règlent les différends qui existent entre les particuliers.—Quelle est cette partie de l'édifice qui ressemble à une église?—C'est, en effet, une église qui s'appelle la Sainte-Chapelle.—Par qui a-t-elle été bâtie?—Elle a été bâtie par un roi de France qui s'appelait Saint-Louis, fils de la célèbre Blanche de Castille. Mais continuons notre chemin. En avançant nous voyons l'Hôtel-Dieu.—Qu'est-ce que c'est que l'Hôtel-Dieu?—C'est un hôpital.—Et en face de nous quelle est cette grande église?—C'est l'église de Notre-Dame dont nous avons déjà tant parlé.—Oh oui, je me rappelle. Je ne sais pas à quoi je pensais. Que je suis bête! Laquelle est la plus ancienne, l'église de Notre-Dame ou la Madeleine?—Notre-Dame est beaucoup plus ancienne; elle est parmi les plus anciennes églises de l'Europe. C'est une belle façade; admirons-la un peu. Regardez les trois portails qui sont ornés de statues.—Qu'est-ce que c'est que cette rangée de statues au-dessus des portails?—C'est ce qu'on appelle la galerie des rois.—Qu'est-ce que cela signifie?—On dit que les vingt-huit statues représentent des rois de France. Au-dessus de la galerie il y a une belle rosace, plus haut, une deuxième galerie où il n'y a pas de statues, et encore plus haut, les deux grandes tours où se trouvent les cloches.

B. Write in French one example of the correct use of each of the following interrogative forms and locutions: 1. Que? 2. Est-ce que? 3. Qu'est-ce que? 4. Quel? 5. Quelle? 6. Quels? 7. Quelles? 8. Qui? 9. Qu'est-ce que c'est que? 10. Quoi? 11. Lequel? 12. Laquelle? 13. Lesquels? 14. Lesquelles. 15. À qui? 16. De qui?

C. (Oral.) 1. Avec qui vous promenez-vous aujourd'hui? 2. Qu'est-ce que vous allez voir? 3. Qu'est-ce que c'est que

l'île de la Cité? 4. Où est-ce qu'elle est située? 5. Quels édifices s'y trouvent? 6. Comment s'appelle ce pont-là? 7. Qu'est-ce que c'est que ce grand palais? 8. J'en vois deux, lequel voulez-vous dire? 9. Voulez-vous me dire par qui la Sainte-Chapelle a été bâtie? 10. Savez-vous de qui il était le fils? 11. Savez-vous ce que c'est que l'Hôtel-Dieu? 12. Quelle est la plus ancienne de ces deux églises, Notre-Dame ou la Madeleine? 13. Quel est l'autre édifice que vous voulez visiter maintenant? 14. Auquel voulez-vous aller? 15. Où sont ces fameux portails dont vous parliez? 16. Qu'y a-t-il au-dessus des portails? 17. Qu'est-ce que c'est que la galerie des rois? 18. Voulez-vous me dire ce qu'il y a dans cette tour-là? 19. Qu'est-ce qui vous a intéressé le plus dans cet édifice? Etc., etc.

D. 1. What interesting things are you going to see to-day? 2. What is the île de la Cité? 3. What is the name of the bridge by which one enters it (*y*)? 4. Which of those buildings is the Palais de Justice? 5. What is the Palais de Justice? 6. What is a judge? 7. A judge is a man who settles disputes. 8. There is a part of the building which resembles a church; what is it? 9. Will you tell me by whom the Sainte-Chapelle was built? 10. Which of those buildings is the Hôtel-Dieu? 11. Do you know what the Hôtel-Dieu is? 12. What is the name of that large church in front of us? 13. Which is the more ancient of those two churches, Notre-Dame or la Madeleine? 14. Which of these two churches do you admire the most? 15. In which do you attend mass? 16. What is it that people call "la galerie des rois"? 17. What is there in the two high towers on the right hand and on the left? 18. What has interested you most in Notre-Dame?

LESSON XXXIV.

136. Indefinite Pronouns. The indefinite pronouns of most frequent occurrence are:—

1. **On** [ɔ̃], 'one,' 'some one,' 'we,' 'you,' 'they,' 'people,' etc. (cf. § 48).

2. **Quelqu'un** [kɛlk œ̃], m., **quelqu'une** [kɛlk yn], f., 'somebody,' 'some one,' 'any one,' plural **quelques-uns** [kɛlkœz œ̃], m., **quelques-unes** [kɛlkœz yn], f., 'some,' 'some people,' 'any,' 'a few':

Il y a quelqu'un à la porte.	There is somebody at the door.
J'ai vu quelques-unes de vos amies.	I have seen some of your friends.
Avéz-vous des cerises, madame ?	Have you any cherries, madam ?
J'en ai quelques-unes .	I have a few.

3. **Quelque chose** [kelkø ʃo:s], m., 'something,' 'anything' :

Quelque chose est tombé.	Something has fallen.
J'ai quelque chose de bon.	I have something good.

4. Along with **ne** + a verb, or when alone, a verb being understood, **personne** [pɛʁsɔ̃], m., means 'nobody,' 'not anybody,' 'no one,' and **rien** [ʁjɛ̃], m., 'nothing,' 'not anything' :

Je n'ai parlé à personne .	I did not speak to anybody.
Vous n'avez rien apporté.	You have brought nothing.
Il n'a rien dit de mauvais.	He said nothing bad.
Qu'a-t-il dit ?— Rien .	What did he say ?—Nothing.

Personne ici ! Nobody here ! *la*

137. Certain forms serve both as adjectives and as pronouns. Those of most frequent occurrence are :—

1. **Autre** [otr], 'other' (adjective); **un autre**, 'another,' **l'autre**, 'the other' (pronoun) :

Une autre fois ; d' autres causes.	Another time ; other causes.
Les autres iront aussi.	The others will go too.

2. Distinguish **un autre** from **encore un** :

Une autre plume.	Another (a different) pen.
Encore une plume.	Another (an additional) pen.

3. From **autre** are formed various locutions :

L'une et l'autre occasion.	Both occasions.
Les uns et les autres partent.	All are going away.
Donnez-le à l'un ou à l'autre.	Give it to either.
Ce n'est ni pour les uns ni pour les autres.	It is for none of them.

Elles se flattent les unes les autres .	They flatter each other.
Ils ont peur les uns des autres .	They are afraid of one another.

4. When used with **ne** + a verb, or when alone, the verb being understood, **aucun** [okœ̃], nul [nyl], **pas un** [poz œ̃], as adjectives = 'no,' 'not one,' 'not any,' and as pronouns = 'none,' 'no one,' 'not one' :

Aucun auteur ne dit cela.	No author says that.
A-t-on de l'espoir ?— Aucun .	Have they any hope ?—None.

5. **Tel** [tɛl] = 'such,' **un tel** = 'such a.' 'Such' as an adverb is **si** [si] or **tellement** [tɛlmɑ̃] :

Telles sont mes douleurs.	Such are my griefs.
Qui raconte une telle histoire ?	Who tells such a story ?
Une si belle maison.	Such a beautiful house.
Un homme tellement cruel.	Such a cruel man.

6. **Tout** [tu], m., **toute** [tut], f., **tous** [tu (as adj.)], **tus** (as pron.)], m. pl., **toutes** [tut], f. pl., = 'all,' 'every,' 'any,' 'whole,' etc.:

Tous les hommes.	All (the) men.
Toute ma vie.	All my (my whole) life.
Tous (toutes) sont arrivé(e)s.	All have come.

7. **Même** [mɛ:m], before a noun or as a pronoun = 'same'; **même**, following the noun or pronoun qualified = 'self,' 'very,' 'even,' and agrees, but has no article; as adverb **même** = 'even':

La même chose.	The same thing.
Ce sont les mêmes .	They are the same.
Dieu est la bonté même .	God is goodness itself.
Les enfants mêmes le savent.	The very children know it.
Nous- mêmes ; elles- mêmes .	We ourselves ; they themselves.
Ils nous ont même battus.	They even beat us.

EXERCISE XXXIV.

A. À Paris on peut s'amuser facilement. On y trouve des amusements pour tout le monde. On y trouve des théâtres, des cirques, des spectacles de toute espèce. Hier nous avons été à un spectacle qui nous a beaucoup amusés. Un monsieur en était le directeur, mais tous les acteurs étaient des chats et des chiens. C'était quelque chose de magnifique. On n'a jamais rien vu de plus amusant ! Personne n'avait jamais vu des animaux si intelligents ! Il y avait des chiens noirs et des chiens blancs. Il y en avait des grands et des petits. Il y en avait de toutes les races : des chiens danois, des chiens de berger, des terre-neuve, des lévriers et des caniches. Les grands chiens portaient les petits sur le dos. Quelques-uns étaient habillés en homme et en femme, et faisaient beaucoup de tours comiques. Il y en avait qui fumaient la pipe. Il y en avait d'autres qui causaient ensemble comme des personnes. D'autres promenaient des voitures d'enfant comme des bonnes. Quelques-uns se promenaient à bicyclette, quelques-uns mar-

chaient sur les pattes de derrière, et un, plus fort que les autres, marchait sur les pattes de devant. Il y en avait d'autres qui se battaient à coups de poing. Il y en avait même qui tiraient des coups de pistolet. Ils couraient, ils sautaient, et pas un ne semblait s'ennuyer. Les personnes qui assistaient au spectacle ne s'ennuyaient pas non plus. On riait, on applaudissait, on battait des mains, et personne n'a quitté la salle en mauvaise humeur.

B. Write in French one example for the use of each of the following in a sentence: 1. On. 2. Quelque chose. 3. Quelque chose de. 4. Quelqu'un. 5. Quelques-unes. 6. Ne . . . personne. 7. Ne . . . rien. 8. Autre (adj.). 9. L'une l'autre. 10. Les uns aux autres. 11. Pas une (adj.). 12. Un tel. 13. Toutes (adj.). 14. Tous (pron.). 15. Même (=self). 16. Même (=even).

C. (Oral.) 1. Est-ce qu'on s'amuse facilement à Paris? 2. Y a-t-il des amusements pour tous? 3. Quelques-uns des théâtres sont-ils très célèbres? 4. Avez-vous été à quelque spectacle hier? 5. Était-ce quelque chose d'amusant? 6. N'avez-vous jamais rien vu de plus amusant? 7. Avez-vous jamais vu un tel spectacle? 8. A-t-on vu des animaux si intelligents? 9. Quelles espèces de chiens y avait-il? 10. Qu'est-ce que les uns faisaient pendant que les autres fumaient la pipe? 11. Avez-vous dit que les uns parlaient aux autres? 12. Comment se battaient-ils? 13. Jouaient-ils tous en même temps? 14. Est-ce que tous les chiens semblaient contents? 15. Est-ce que les personnes qui y assistaient s'amusaient bien? 16. Et personne n'a quitté la salle avant la fin, n'est-ce pas? 17. Ces chiens sont-ils les mêmes que nous avons vus l'année passée? 18. Est-ce que les enfants iront les voir encore une fois? 19. Irez-vous vous-même? 20. Irez-vous même s'il fait mauvais temps? Etc., etc.

D. 1. There are amusements in Paris for all sorts of people. 2. There is something new every day. 3. One can find amusement in the promenades and public gardens for nothing. 4. You can also visit the picture galleries for nothing. 5. Some of the theatres of Paris are among the best in the world. 6. Some of its promenades are very celebrated, for example, the Champs-Élysées. 7. Yesterday evening I was at a very amusing show. 8. Two of my cousins (f.), who are at our

house, were with me. 9. Both enjoyed themselves very much. 10. I have never seen anything more amusing myself. 11. It was a kind of theatre, in which the actors were dogs and cats. 12. There were dogs of all races: shepherd's dogs, poodles, and many other kinds. 13. Several of the dogs were dressed like men and women. 14. Some were walking on their hind feet. 15. Others were smoking pipes. 16. And there were even a few that were chatting together like people in the street. 17. Nobody left the hall before the end of the show. 18. We were all very much pleased. 19. We saw the same dogs last year, but they seemed all cleverer this year. 20. I should go to see them again to-morrow if somebody accompanied me. 21. I shall go with you myself.

LESSON XXXV.

138.

Cardinal Numerals.

1. un, une [œ, yn].	21. vingt et un [vẽt e œ].
2. deux [dø].	22. vingt-deux [vẽnd dø].
3. trois [trwa].	30. trente [trã:t].
4. quatre [katr].	31. trente et un [trã:t e œ].
5. cinq [sẽ:k].	40. quarante [karã:t].
6. six [sis].	50. cinquante [sẽkã:t].
7. sept [set].	60. soixante [swasũ:t].
8. huit [qit].	70. soixante-dix [swasũ:t dis].
9. neuf [nœf].	71. soixante-onze [swasũ:t õ:z].
10. dix [dis].	80. quatre-vingts [katr vẽ].
11. onze [õ:z].	81. quatre-vingt-un [katr vẽ œ].
12. douze [du:z].	90. quatre-vingt-dix [katr vẽ dis].
13. treize [tre:z].	91. quatre-vingt-onze [katr vẽ õ:z].
14. quatorze [katorz].	100. cent [sã].
15. quinze [kẽ:z].	101. cent un [sã œ].
16. seize [se:z].	200. deux cents [dø sã].
17. dix-sept [dis set].	201. deux cent un [dø sã œ].
18. dix-huit [diz qit].	1000. mille [mil].
19. dix-neuf [diz nœf].	1001. mille un [mil œ].
20. vingt [vẽ].	2000. deux mille [dø mil].

NOUNS OF NUMBER: 1,000,000 = **un million** [œ miljɔ̃]; 2,000,000 = **deux millions** [dø miljɔ̃]; 1,000,000,000 = **un milliard** [œ milja:r].

Observe: 1. The hyphen unites together compound numerals under 100, except where **et** occurs. 2. **Et** stands regularly in 21, 31, 41, 51, 61, is optional in 70, 71, omitted in 81, and elsewhere.

NOTES ON PRONUNCIATION: 1. The final consonant of 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 17, 18, 19, is silent before initial consonant or **h** aspirate of a word multiplied by them, not elsewhere: 'Cinq livres' [sɛ̃ li:vʁ], but 'le cinq mai' [lə sɛ̃:k mɛ]. 2. No elision or liaison occurs before **huit**, **onze**: **Le huit** [lə ɥit]; **les huit livres** [lə ɥi li:vʁ]; **le onze** [lə ɔ̃z]; **les onze francs** [lə ɔ̃z frɑ̃]. 3. The **t** is sounded in **vingt** in 21, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, becomes **d** in 22, is silent from 81 to 99, is silent in **cent un**, **deux cent un**, etc.

139. Million and milliard require **de** before the object enumerated; **cent** = 'a (or one) hundred'; **mille** = 'a (or one) thousand':

Il a payé un million **de** francs.
Ceci vaut cent francs.

He has paid a million (of) francs.
This is worth a hundred francs.

140. Quatre-vingt and the multiples of **cent** take **-s** only when immediately preceding a noun, or when they themselves are used as nouns of number:

Quatre-vingts francs.

Eighty francs.

Trois cents francs.

Three hundred francs.

Les cinq cents.

The five hundreds.

But: **Trois cent un francs**; **quatre-vingt-un francs**, etc.

Obs.: They are not nouns of number in dates, or when used as ordinals.

141. Multiplicatives. 'Once' = **une fois**, 'twice' = **deux fois**, 'three times' = **trois fois**, etc.:

Dix fois dix font cent.

Ten times ten make a hundred.

142. Ordinal Numerals. They are formed from 'third' upwards by adding **-ième** to the corresponding cardinal, final **e** being dropped. **cinq** adds **u**, and **neuf** changes **f** to **v** before **-ième**:

1st	premier	[pʁemje].	7th	septième	[setjem].
2nd	second	[segʒ].	8th	huitième	[ɥitjem].
	deuxième	[døzjem].	9th	neuvième	[nœvjem].
3rd	troisième	[trwɔzjem].	10th	dixième	[dizjem].
4th	quatrième	[katriem].	11th	onzième	[ɔzjem].
5th	cinquième	[sɛkjem].	21st	vingt et unième	[vɛ̃t e ynjem].
6th	sixième	[sizjem].	22nd	vingt-deuxième	[vɛ̃d døzjem].

143. Fractions. The numerator is expressed by a cardinal, the denominator by an ordinal, as in English. 'Half' = **moitié**, f. (as noun), and **demi** (as adjective); $\frac{1}{4}$ = **un quart**, $\frac{1}{3}$ = **un tiers**. Before a noun, **demi** is invariable, and joined by a hyphen, but agrees elsewhere. Use **la moitié** (not **demi**) where 'the half of' is, or may be, used in English:

Un huitième; les trois dixièmes.	One-eighth; the three tenths.
La moitié de l'année.	(The) half (of) the year.
Une heure et demie.	An hour and a half.
Une demi-heure.	Half an hour.
Les trois quarts de cette somme.	Three-fourths of that sum.

EXERCISE XXXV.

A. En France on indique la valeur des objets par francs et centimes. Le franc vaut à peu près vingt "cents" de la monnaie américaine ou canadienne. Le centime est la centième partie du franc. On compte souvent aussi par sous pour les petites sommes. Un sou, aussi bien qu'un "cent" américain, vaut cinq centimes. Pour trouver la valeur, en monnaie américaine, d'une somme quelconque, exprimée en francs, on la divise par cinq. Par exemple, une somme de sept francs quarante centimes (7 fr. 40) vaut un dollar et quarante-huit "cents" de notre monnaie. Au contraire, pour trouver la valeur en francs d'une somme quelconque, exprimée en dollars, on la multiplie par cinq. Ainsi \$7.45 vaut, en monnaie française, trente-sept francs vingt-cinq centimes (37 fr. 25).

B. (Oral.) 1. Comptez en français jusqu'à dix; de dix à vingt; de vingt à trente. 2. Nommez les nombres 40, 41, 50, 51, 53, 60, 61, 64, 70, 71, 75, 76, 80, 81, 87, 90, 91, 92, 93, 100, 101, 102, 118, 171, 179, 200, 220, 1000, 1001, 75,000, 2,000,000, $\frac{1}{2}$, $\frac{1}{4}$, $2\frac{1}{2}$. 3. Deux fois un font deux; deux fois

deux font quatre, etc. . . continuez jusqu'à deux fois douze. 4. Trois fois un font trois, etc. 5. Combien font 2 fois 10 ; 7 fois 9 ; 9 fois 9 ; 11 fois 11, etc. 6. Donnez les nombres ordinaux jusqu'à vingtième. 7. Nommez les ordinaux 21^e, 51^e, 71^e, 89^e, 101^e, 200^e, 2000^e. 8. Comment indique-t-on la valeur des objets en France? 9. Combien vaut le franc en notre monnaie? 10. Combien de centimes y a-t-il en un franc? 11. Quelle partie du franc le centime est-il? 12. Combien vaut le sou? 13. Quelle est la valeur de cent francs en monnaie américaine? 14. Quelle est la valeur de cent dollars en monnaie française? Etc., etc.

C. Give in dollars and cents the equivalents of: 1. Cinq centimes. 2. Dix centimes. 3. Quinze centimes. 4. Vingt centimes. 5. Vingt-cinq centimes. 6. Cinquante centimes. 7. Soixante-quinze centimes. 8. Quatre-vingt-quinze centimes. 9. Un franc dix (centimes). 10. Un franc vingt-cinq. 11. Un franc soixante-quinze. 12. Un franc cinquante. 13. Dix sous. 14. Vingt sous. 15. Cinquante sous. 16. Cent francs. 17. Cent cinquante francs. 18. Deux cents francs. 19. Cinq cents francs. 20. Mille francs. 21. Deux millions de francs.

D. Give in French, in francs and centimes, the equivalents of: 1. One cent. 2. Five cents. 3. Eight cents. 4. Ten cents. 5. Fifteen cents. 6. Eighteen cents. 7. Twenty cents. 8. Twenty-five cents. 9. Thirty cents. 10. Fifty cents. 11. Seventy-five cents. 12. Ninety cents. 13. One dollar. 14. One dollar and twenty-five cents. 15. One dollar and fifty cents. 16. One dollar and seventy-five cents. 17. Two dollars. 18. Ten dollars. 19. Fifty dollars. 20. A hundred dollars. 21. A thousand dollars.

LESSON XXXVI.

144. Dates, Titles, etc. 1. The form *mil* is used in dates of the Christian era, from 1001 to 1099; from 1100 onward, dates are often expressed by hundreds, as so frequently in English:

(En) l'an mil six.

En mil neuf cent neuf.

En dix-neuf cent neuf.

(In) the year 1006.

In nineteen hundred and nine.

In 1909.

2. Days of the month and numerical titles of rulers are indicated by cardinals, except 'first' = **premier** :

Le premier mai.	Charles premier .	The first of May.	Charles the First.
Paris, le deux mai		Paris, the 2nd of May.	
Louis quatorze (XIV).		Louis XIV.	

3. Observe the following date idioms:

Quel jour du mois est-ce aujourd'hui ?	What day of the month is this?
--	--------------------------------

Quel jour du mois sommes-nous aujourd'hui ?	" " " "
---	---------

Quel quantième du mois est-ce aujourd'hui ?	" " " "
---	---------

C'est aujourd'hui le quinze.	To-day is the fifteenth.
Ce sera demain le seize.	To-morrow will be the sixteenth.
Le six janvier.	On the sixth of January.
Ils sont arrivés lundi.	They came on Monday.
D'aujourd'hui en huit.	A week from to-day (future).
Il y a quinze jours.	A fortnight ago.

4. The names of the months may be conveniently learned from the following rhyme:

Trente jours ont septembre,
 Avril, juin, novembre ;
 Trente et un ont mars et mai,
 Août, octobre, puis juillet,
 Et décembre et janvier ;
 De vingt-huit est février.

5. Observe the following idioms referring to age:

Quel âge avez-vous ?	How old are you ?
J'ai vingt ans.	I am twenty (years old).
Une fille âgée de six ans.	A girl six years old (or of age).
À l'âge de vingt-cinq ans.	At the age of twenty-five (years).

EXERCISE XXXVI.

4. Dans tous les pays il y a des jours de fête, où on ne travaille pas. En France, les jours de fête reconnus par la loi sont : les dimanches, le jour de l'An, où on se donne des étrennes ; le lundi de Pâques, qui tombe entre le 21 mars et le

26 avril, l'Ascension, qui tombe quarante jours après Pâques; le lundi de la Pentecôte, qu'on célèbre cinquante jours après Pâques en mémoire de la descente du Saint-Esprit sur les apôtres; la Fête Nationale, qu'on célèbre le 14 juillet en mémoire de la destruction de la Bastille (le 14 juillet, 1789); l'Assomption, qu'on célèbre le 15 août en mémoire de l'ascension de la sainte Vierge; la Toussaint, la fête de tous les saints, qui tombe le 1^{er} novembre; et le jour de Noël, le 25 décembre, en mémoire de la naissance de Jésus-Christ. Il y a beaucoup d'autres fêtes religieuses, comme par exemple le vendredi saint et la Fête-Dieu. Il y a aussi, en outre, plusieurs fêtes plutôt populaires que religieuses, quoiqu'ayant une origine religieuse, comme le jour des Rois et le mardi gras.

B. Parmi les rois de France les plus célèbres se trouvent ceux-ci : François I^{er}, né le 12 septembre, 1494. Il a commencé à régner en 1515, à l'âge de vingt ans. Il est mort le 31 mars, 1547. Louis XIV, né le 5 septembre, 1638. Lorsqu'il n'avait que cinq ans il a succédé à son père le 14 mai, 1643. Après un long règne de soixante-douze ans, il est mort le 1^{er} septembre, 1715. Louis XVI, né le 23 août, 1754, a succédé à son grand-père, Louis XV, le 10 mai, 1774, à l'âge de vingt ans. C'est sous son règne que la Révolution a éclaté. Il a été décapité le 21 janvier, 1793.

C. (Oral.) 1. Répétez-moi les noms des six premiers mois de l'année. 2. Quels sont les noms des six derniers mois de l'année? 3. Quels sont les mois qui n'ont que trente jours? 4. Le mois de février combien de jours a-t-il? 5. Quelle est la première fête de l'année en France? 6. Entre quelles dates le lundi de Pâques tombe-t-il? 7. Combien de jours y a-t-il entre Pâques et l'Ascension? 8. Quand est-ce qu'on célèbre la Fête Nationale? 9. En mémoire de quoi la célèbre-t-on? 10. Dites-moi la date de la fête de l'Assomption. 11. Qu'est-ce que c'est que la Toussaint? 12. Quand est-ce qu'elle se célèbre? 13. Qu'est-ce qu'on célèbre le jour de Noël? 14. Quel jour du mois sommes-nous aujourd'hui? 15. Quel jour du mois serons-nous demain? 16. Quel jour du mois serons-nous d'aujourd'hui en huit? 17. Et lundi de la semaine prochaine quel jour du mois serons-nous? 18. Quel jour de la semaine Noël tombe-t-il cette année? Etc., etc.

D. (Oral.) 1. Quel âge avez-vous? 2. Dans quel mois êtes-vous né? 3. Quel jour du mois? 4. Quand François I^{er} est-il né? 5. Quel âge avait-il quand il a commencé à régner? 6. Quand a-t-il commencé à régner? 7. Dites-moi la date de sa mort? 8. En quelle année Louis XIV est-il né? 9. Quel jour du mois? 10. Quel âge avait-il quand il a succédé à son père? 11. Combien de temps a-t-il régné? 12. Quand est-il mort? 13. À qui a succédé Louis XVI? 14. Quand a-t-il été décapité? Etc., etc.

E. 1. The months of April, June, September and November have thirty days. 2. The months of January, March, May, July, August, October and December have thirty-one days. 3. The month of February has twenty-eight, and sometimes twenty-nine days. 4. The 1st of January is New-Year's Day. 5. On (à l'occasion de) New-Year's Day in France people (*on*) give each other gifts (*étrennes*). 6. Easter Monday falls between the 21st of March and the 26th of April. 7. The Fête Nationale is celebrated on the 14th of July. 8. It is celebrated in memory of the destruction of the Bastille, in 1789. 9. The 15th of August is the date of the Feast of the Assumption. 10. All Saints' Day falls on the 1st of November. 11. The 25th of December is Christmas Day.

F. 1. Francis I., Louis XIV., and Louis XVI., are among the most celebrated kings of France. 2. Francis I. was born (*est né*) on the 12th of September, 1494. 3. He was twenty years of age when (*lorsque*) he began to reign. 4. He reigned thirty-two years, and died (*est mort*) in 1547. 5. Louis XIV. began to reign at the age of five years. 6. He was born in 1638, on the 5th of September. 7. He reigned seventy-two years. 8. The day of his death was the 1st of September, 1715. 9. In the reign of (*sous*) Louis XVI. the French Revolution broke out. 10. Louis XVI. had succeeded Louis XV. in 1774. 11. On the 21st of January, 1793, he was decapitated. 12. How old are you? 13. How old were you when you began to go to school? 14. What is the date of your birthday? 15. What day of the month is it to-day? 16. Two weeks from to-day (it) will be the 24th May.

LESSON XXXVN.

145. The Time of Day. The hours and fractions of hours are indicated as follows :

Quelle heure est-il ?	What o'clock is it ?
Il est deux heures.	It is two o'clock.
Trois heures et demie.	Half-past three.
Trois heures (et) un quart.	A quarter past three.
Quatre heures moins un quart.	A quarter to four.
Trois heures dix (minutes).	Ten minutes past three.
Quatre heures moins cinq (minutes).	Five minutes to four.
Trois heures cinquante-cinq.	Three fifty-five.
Il est midi et demi.	It is half-past twelve (noon).
Il est minuit.	It is twelve o'clock (night).
À sept heures du soir.	At seven o'clock in the evening.
À quelle heure ?	At what o'clock ?
À trois heures précises.	At three o'clock precisely.
Vers (les) trois heures.	About three o'clock.

EXERCISE XXXVN.

A. Quel jour du mois sommes-nous ? C'est le quinze, n'est-ce pas ? J'ai une lettre à écrire à mon frère pour lui raconter ce que j'ai fait aujourd'hui. C'a été une journée bien remplie. Le matin à neuf heures un quart j'arrive chez le tailleur pour essayer mon vêtement. C'est un complet en serge. Il me va très bien. Il coûtera cent dix francs. À dix heures dix je me trouve chez le chapelier. Il n'a pas de chapeaux que j'aime, et j'en commande un. Le prix sera de vingt-deux francs. J'entre chez le gantier à onze heures précises. J'achète deux paires de gants de chevreau. À onze heures et demie me voilà chez le marchand de chaussures. On prend ma mesure, et on me fera une paire de souliers. Ils seront prêts dans huit jours. À midi précis je fais ma deuxième visite au médecin. J'ai fait ma première visite il y a huit jours. Il m'a ausculté, et il a trouvé chez moi une légère faiblesse de poitrine. Il m'a fait une ordonnance, et j'irai le voir pour la troisième fois d'aujourd'hui en huit. À midi et demi je déjeune dans un restaurant rue de Rivoli. L'addition est de deux francs vingt-cinq, avec cinq sous de pourboire. À une heure

vingt-cinq me voilà dans les galeries du Louvre. J'y passe une heure et demie. À trois heures un quart j'arrive au Théâtre-Français. Je paie ma place au parterre deux francs cinquante. On joue *le Cid* de Corneille. À six heures moins vingt-cinq j'arrive ici. J'étais très fatigué, et je me repose pendant une heure avant de m'habiller pour dîner. À sept heures dix nous nous mettons à table. Nous dinons bien. Nous causons après. Et voilà maintenant huit heures et demie. Je vais écrire ma lettre.

B. 1. Relate the above, beginning at the fifth sentence, using 'mon frère' as the subject, and making the necessary changes throughout. 2. Re-write the extract, substituting a time five minutes later for each hour of the day mentioned.

C. (Oral.) 1. C'est aujourd'hui le dix, n'est-ce pas? 2. Quel jour de la semaine est-ce? 3. Quelle heure est-il à votre montre? 4. Avez-vous été en ville aujourd'hui? 5. À quelle heure êtes-vous parti ce matin? 6. Chez qui êtes-vous allé d'abord? 7. Quand êtes-vous arrivé chez lui? 8. Combien votre complet en serge coûtera-t-il? 9. À quelle heure vous êtes-vous trouvé chez le chapelier? 10. Quel sera le prix du chapeau que vous avez commandé? 11. Êtes-vous resté une demi-heure chez le gantier? 12. Où étiez-vous à onze heures et demie précises? 13. Vos souliers quand seront-ils prêts? 14. À quelle heure votre médecin se trouve-t-il chez lui? 15. Quand est-ce que vous l'avez visité l'autre fois? 16. À quelle heure avez-vous déjeuné? 17. Combien avez-vous payé? 18. À quelle heure êtes-vous arrivé au Louvre? 19. À quelle heure avez-vous dîné ce soir? 20. Quelle heure est-il à présent? Etc., etc.

D. 1. My brother has related to me what he did to-day down town. 2. He has told me the precise hour at which he was at the tailor's, the hatter's, etc. 3. He set out at half-past eight. 4. He arrived at the tailor's at half-past nine. 5. He says that his serge suit fits him well. 6. He was trying on hats at the hatter's at ten minutes after ten. 7. He bought two pairs of gloves at eleven o'clock precisely. 8. Half an hour later he was at the shoemaker's. 9. His shoes will be ready in a week. 10. At five minutes after twelve he visited his doctor for the second time. 11. He will visit him again a week from to-day. 12. At half-past twelve he lunched in a restaurant. 13. His lunch cost him two francs and fifty cen-

times. 14. At twenty-five minutes past one he went to the Louvre to see the paintings. 15. At a quarter to three he was at the door of the Théâtre-Français. 16. At ten minutes to six he left the theatre. 17. In a quarter of an hour he was at home. 18. He rested for half an hour. 19. At ten minutes after seven (the) dinner was ready. 20. All that is interesting for him, but not for me.

LESSON XXXVIII.

146. Past Definite of *donner, finir, vendre*.

I gave, etc.		I finished, etc.		I sold, etc.	
donn ai	[done].	fin is	[fini].	vend is	[vādi].
donn as	[dona].	fin is	[fini].	vend is	[vādi].
donn a	[dona].	fin it	[fini].	vend it	[vādi].
donn ames	[donam].	fin imes	[finim].	vend imes	[vādim].
donn ates	[donat].	fin ites	[finit].	vend ites	[vādit].
donn èrent	[donē:r].	fin irent	[fini:r].	vend irent	[vādi:r].

147. Past Definite of *avoir, être*.

I had, etc.		I was, etc.	
eus [y].	eûmes [ym].	fus [fy].	fûmes [fym].
eus [y].	eûtes [yt].	fus [fy].	fûtes [fyt].
eut [y].	eurent [y:r].	fut [fy].	furent [fy:r].

148. Use of the Past Definite. The past definite is used in the literary narrative style to denote what happened (completed past action), or what happened next (successive events). It never denotes, like the imperfect (§ 87), what was happening or used to happen, or continued to happen :

Les Romains brûlèrent Carthage.	The Romans burnt Carthage.
Dieu accepta les présents d'Abel,	God accepted the gifts of Abel,
qui était plus pieux que son frère ;	who was more righteous than his
mais il détourna les yeux de ceux	brother ; but he turned away his
de Caïn, parce que son cœur n' était	eyes from those of Cain, because his
pas pur.... Un jour Caïn et Abel	heart was not pure..... One day
étaient seuls dans un champ, et Caïn	Cain and Abel were alone in a field,
se jeta sur Abel, et le tua .	and Cain fell upon Abel, and slew
	him .

149. Past Definite of *faire* (irreg.).

I did, etc.

je fis [ʒə fi].

nous fîmes [nu fim].

tu fis [ty fi].

vous fîtes [vu fit].

il fit [il fi].

ils firent [il fi:r].

EXERCISE XXXVIII.

NOTE.—Up to this point the past indefinite has been used exclusively in the exercises to express completed action in past time. It was thought well to give ample practice in the past indefinite, owing to its almost exclusive use as a past tense in the language of every-day life. Since the past definite, however, is so extensively employed in narration in the literary or elevated style, and since familiarity with its forms is so necessary for the reading of books, this tense will be given prominence in the extracts and exercises which follow.

A. Un petit rouge-gorge frappa à notre fenêtre. “Ayez pitié de moi ! Ouvrez-moi, je vous prie ; la neige tombe, la bise souffle, et j’ai bien faim.”

Nous eûmes pitié du petit rouge-gorge, et j’ouvris la fenêtre. Le gentil oiseau vola dans la chambre, et ramassa les miettes de pain qui étaient tombées de la table. Bientôt même il becqueta le grain dans la main qu’on lui tendait.

Mais lorsque la neige fut fondue, le printemps revint et les haies se couvrirent de feuilles. Nous ouvrîmes la fenêtre, et notre petit hôte s’envola dans le bois voisin, où il bâtit son nid, et nous entendîmes ses joyeuses chansons.

L’hiver revint, et le rouge-gorge revint aussi, cette fois avec sa compagne. Les deux petits oiseaux entrèrent avec confiance dans la chambre, et nous nous réjouîmes beaucoup de les revoir.

B. Continue the following : 1. J’eus pitié de lui, tu eus, etc. 2. J’ouvris la fenêtre, tu, etc. 3. Je volai dans la chambre, tu, etc. 4. Je ramassai les miettes de pain, tu, etc. 5. Je me couvris la tête, tu, etc. 6. Je m’envolai dans le bois, tu, etc. 7. Je bâtis une maison de pierre, tu, etc. 8. J’entendis des chansons d’oiseau, tu, etc. 9. J’entrai dans la chambre, tu, etc. 10. Je me réjouis de les revoir, tu, etc. 11. Je fis mon devoir, tu fis ton, etc. 12. Je fus joyeux, tu, etc.

C. (Oral.) 1. De quel oiseau raconte-t-on cette histoire ? 2. Ce petit rouge-gorge où frappa-t-il ? 3. Qu’est-ce qu’il a dit ? 4. Est-ce que vous eûtes (or avez eu) pitié de lui ? 5. Qui

ouvrit la fenêtre? 6. Et alors le rouge-gorge que fit-il? 7. Qu'est-ce qu'il ramassa? 8. Qu'est-ce qu'on lui tendait souvent dans la main? 9. Quelle saison arriva enfin? 10. La neige était-elle déjà fondue? 11. Qu'est-ce que vous fîtes (or avez fait) alors? 12. Et le petit rouge-gorge où s'envola-t-il? 13. Qu'est-ce qu'il bâtit dans le bois? 14. Chantait-il souvent? 15. Ses chansons étaient-elles joyeuses ou tristes? 16. Entendîtes-vous ses chansons? 17. Quand le rouge-gorge revint-il? 18. Qui l'accompagna? 19. Qui ouvrit la fenêtre de la chambre cette fois? 20. Et les oiseaux que firent-ils? Etc., etc.

D. 1. Here is the story of a little robin. 2. The snow was falling, the north wind was blowing, and the robin was hungry. 3. He often knocked at our window. 4. At last I had pity on the poor bird, and I opened the window. 5. The pretty little robin flew into the room. 6. There were some crumbs of bread on the table, and he picked them up. 7. My sister used to hold out crumbs to him in her hand. 8. At last he pecked at them. 9. In spring the snow melted, and the hedges were covered with leaves and flowers. 10. The little robin was sad, and did not sing. 11. I opened the window, and he flew away. 12. He built his nest in a neighbouring wood. 13. We heard his joyful song again. 14. The robin returned (*revint*) with the winter. 15. Another robin accompanied him this time. 16. We rejoiced very much at this. 17. We opened our windows, and the two birds flew into the room. 18. They passed a second winter with us, and flew away again in spring.

LESSON XXXIX.

150. Imperfect Subjunctive of *donner*, *finir*, *vendre*.

(That) I gave, might give, etc. (That) I finished, might finish, etc. (That) I sold, might sell, etc.

donn asse	[dɔnas].	fin isse	[finis].	vend isse	[vɑdis].
donn asses	[dɔnas].	fin isses	[finis].	vend isses	[vɑdis].
donn ât	[dɔna].	fin ît	[fini].	vend ît	[vɑdi].
donn assions	[dɔnasjɔ̃].	fin issions	[finisjɔ̃].	vend issions	[vɑdisjɔ̃].
donn assiez	[dɔnasje].	fin issiez	[finisje].	vend issiez	[vɑdisje].
donn assent	[dɔnas].	fin issent	[finis].	vend issent	[vɑdis].

151. Imperfect Subjunctive of *avoir*, *être*.

(That) I had, might have.

(That) I was, were, might be, etc.

eusse [ys].	eussions [ysjɔ].	fusse [fys].	fussions [fysjɔ̃].
eusses [ys].	eussiez [ysje].	fusses [fys].	fussiez [fysje].
eût [y].	eussent [ys].	fût [fy].	fussent [fys].

152. Tense Sequence. Any other tense than the present or future (§ 107) in the governing clause regularly requires the imperfect subjunctive in the governed clause ; so also for compound subjunctive tenses, the auxiliary being considered as the verb :

IMPF. Je désirais	} qu'il restât.	I was desiring him to remain.
P. DEF. Je désirai		I desired him to remain.
CONDL. Je désirerais		I should desire him to remain.
PLUFF. J'avais désiré		I had desired him to remain.

EXERCISE XXXIX.

A. L'éducation d'Henri IV, roi de France, fut dirigée par son grand-père Henri d'Albret, roi de Navarre, qui ne voulut pas qu'on élevât le jeune prince avec la délicatesse qu'on a d'ordinaire pour les gens de cette qualité, sachant bien que dans un corps mou et tendre n'habite ordinairement qu'une âme molle et faible. Il défendit aussi qu'on l'habillât richement, qu'on lui donnât des babioles, et qu'on le flattât, parce que toutes ces choses élèvent le cœur des enfants plutôt dans l'orgueil que dans les sentiments de la générosité. Mais il ordonna qu'on habillât et qu'on nourrit son petit-fils comme les autres enfants du pays, et même qu'il fût accoutumé à courir et à grimper sur les rochers, pour l'habituer à la fatigue.

NOTE.—The imperfect subjunctive is of very limited use in the language of everyday life, being rarely employed except in the literary or elevated style. A knowledge of its forms and their use is, however, necessary for reading purposes.

B. Continue the following: 1. Mon père ne voulait pas que je partis hier, que tu partisses, etc. 2. Le maître défendit que je parlasse à Henri, que tu, etc. 3. Notre voisin désirait que je lui vendisse des pommes, que tu, etc. 4. Un bon roi désirerait que je fusse heureux, que tu, etc. 5. Un tel roi regretterait que j'eusse besoin de rien, que tu, etc.

Turn the governing verbs in the extract into the present indicative, and make the necessary changes in the subjunctive forms.

C. (Oral.) 1. Qui était le grand-père d'Henri IV? 2. Par qui l'éducation d'Henri IV fut-elle dirigée? 3. Le jeune prince fut-il élevé avec délicatesse ou avec sévérité? 4. Est-ce qu'on a ordinairement beaucoup de délicatesse pour les jeunes princes? 5. Le vieux roi voulait-il qu'on élevât le prince avec délicatesse? 6. Quelle âme trouve-t-on souvent dans un corps mou et tendre? 7. Henri d'Albret désirait-il que son petit-fils eût une telle âme? 8. Les gens de la cour aiment-ils à flatter les jeunes princes? 9. Le grand-père aimait-il qu'on flattât ce jeune prince? 10. Permettait-il que les gens de la cour flattassent son petit-fils? 11. Votre père permettait-il que vous vous habillassiez richement quand vous étiez jeune? 12. Henri d'Albret ordonna-t-il que son petit-fils eût une nourriture riche? 13. Comment voulut-il qu'on le nourrit? 14. Pourquoi ordonna-t-il que le jeune prince fût accoutumé à courir et à grimper? 15. Désiriez-vous que je fusse accoutumé à courir et à grimper? 16. Pourquoi le désiriez-vous? 17. Désiriez-vous que j'eusse des sentiments de générosité? Etc., etc.

D. 1. Henry d'Albret was the grandfather of Henry IV. of France. 2. His grandfather directed his education. 3. Here is what the old king said to the people of the court. 4. "I desire my grandson to have a strong mind (*âme*). 5. Knowing that a weak mind usually dwells in a weak body, I desire his body to be strong. 6. I desire that nobody should flatter him." 7. So you see that the king did not wish the prince to be brought up with delicacy. 8. He did not wish his grandson to have a soft and weak mind. 9. He wished his body to be strong in order that his mind might not be weak. 10. He did not like the people of the court to flatter him. 11. He forbade them to flatter him. 12. He did not permit them even to give him trinkets. 13. He ordered the prince to be dressed like the other children of the country. 14. He allowed him to play with the other children and to climb the rocks. 15. He wished him to be fed like the other children too. 16. All this he did because he wished his grandson to be a good king. 17. Our parents wish us to be strong and good. 18. They would not wish us to be weak and bad.

EXERCISE XL.

A. Un matelot, à bord d'un vaisseau, ayant¹ eu la maladresse de laisser tomber par-dessus le bord une théière d'argent, alla² trouver le capitaine et lui dit³: "Peut-on⁴ dire⁵ d'une chose, qu'elle est⁶ perdue⁶, lorsqu'on sait⁷ où elle est⁶?—Non, mon ami.—En ce cas, vous n'avez¹ rien à craindre⁸ pour votre théière; car je sais⁷ qu'elle est⁵ au fond de la mer."

¹ § 154.² § 193.³ § 154.⁴ § 232.⁵ § 190.⁶ § 160.⁶ § 221.⁷ § 210.

(The sections indicated give the forms of the irregular verbs.)

B. Complete the following by conjugating the tense in full, repeating also the remainder of the expression along with the verb: 1. Il alla trouver le capitaine. 2. Il lui dit. 3. Peut-il dire? 4. Il sait où il est. 5. Elle est perdue. 6. Vous n'avez rien à craindre.

C. (Oral.) 1. De quelles personnes parle-t-on dans cette histoire? 2. Où étaient ces personnes? 3. Qu'avait fait le matelot? 4. Qu'est-ce que c'est qu'une théière? 5. En quoi était cette théière? 6. À qui était-elle? 7. Où était-elle tombée? 8. Savait-on où elle était? 9. Était-elle alors vraiment perdue? 10. Mais quel était l'argument du matelot? Etc., etc.

D. 1. The sailor was so clumsy as to let the tea-pot fall. 2. If you let a silver tea-pot fall into the sea, it is lost. 3. Go to the captain. 4. I went to the captain. 5. Tell him that the tea-pot is not lost. 6. The captain will say: "My good fellow, did you drop my silver tea-pot into the sea?" 7. When we are on board of a ship we do not let tea-pots fall into the sea. 8. Where is the tea-pot? 9. I do not know where it is. 10. No one finds tea-pots at the bottom of the sea.

under. E. A sailor dropped the captain's silver tea-pot into the sea. The captain went to the sailor and said to him: "You let my tea-pot fall into the sea, did you not? It is lost." "No, no," said the sailor, "I know where it is. It is at the bottom of the sea."

EXERCISE XLI.

A. Un Arabe, égaré dans le désert, n'avait¹ pas mangé² depuis deux jours, et se voyait³ menacé⁴ de mourir⁵ de faim. En passant près d'un de ces puits où les caravanes viennent⁶ abreuver leurs chameaux, il voit⁷ sur le sable un petit sac de cuir. Il le ramasse et le tâte. "Allah soit⁷ béni⁸ ! dit-il⁹; ce sont,⁷ je crois,¹⁰ des dattes ou des noisettes." Plein de cette douce espérance, il se hâte d'ouvrir¹¹ le sac; mais, à la vue de ce qu'il contient¹²: "Hélas! s'écrie-t-il douloureusement, ce ne sont⁷ que des perles!"

¹ § 154.

⁴ § 156.

⁷ § 154.

⁹ § 193.

¹¹ § 176.

² § 156.

⁵ § 174.

⁸ § 163.

¹⁰ § 191.

¹² § 177.

³ § 224.

⁶ § 178.

B. Complete the following, as in the preceding exercise:

1. Il n'avait pas mangé. 2. Il se voyait menacé. 3. Ils viennent. 4. Il voit son sac. 5. Il le tâte. 6. Qu'il soit béni! 7. Je le crois. 8. Il se hâte d'ouvrir le sac. 9. Il s'écria.

Relate the story in the first person singular, thus: "Égaré dans le désert, je n'avais pas, etc."

C. (Oral.) 1. Où demeurent les Arabes? 2. Où est l'Arabie? 3. Où s'était égaré l'Arabe? 4. Est-ce qu'il y a beaucoup de déserts dans ce pays? 5. Dans quel état se trouvait l'Arabe? 6. Par où passait-il? 7. Qu'est-ce qu'il a vu? 8. Qu'est-ce qu'il y avait dans le sac? 9. Était-il content de trouver les perles? 10. Est-ce que les perles ne sont pas des choses précieuses? 11. Qu'est-ce qu'il espérait trouver dans le sac? 12. Pourquoi préférerait-il des noisettes à des perles? 13. Lesquelles préféreriez-vous maintenant? Etc., etc.

D. 1. The Arab has lost his way. 2. If we had not eaten for two days, we should be hungry. 3. We saw ourselves threatened with starvation. 4. The caravans will come to water their camels at the well. 5. We shall water our camels. 6. If I saw pearls on the sand, I should pick them up. 7. He felt the dates in the bag. 8. If there had been hazel-nuts in the leathern bag, he would have hastened to open it. 9. But

the bag did not contain nuts, it contained only pearls. 10. At the sight of that he exclaimed: "I shall die of hunger."

E. An Arab had lost his way in the desert. Not having eaten for two days he saw that he would soon starve. As he was passing near a well where the caravans came to water their camels, he saw there on the sand a leathern bag which he hoped to find full of dates or hazel-nuts. He picked it up, felt it, and opened it. Alas, it contained only pearls!

EXERCISE XLII.

A. Un paysan accompagné de son fils, le petit Auguste alla¹ un jour visiter ses champs pour voir² dans quel état était³ son blé. Ils arrivèrent à un champ où certains épis se tenaient⁴ droits tandis que d'autres étaient⁵ lourdement inclinés vers la terre. Auguste s'écria: "Quel dommage que ces épis soient⁶ si courbés! Combien je préfère⁷ ceux-là qui sont⁸ vigoureux et droits." Le père prit⁹ deux des épis, les roula entre ses doigts pour faire⁷ sortir⁸ le grain, et répondit⁹: "Regarde un peu mon enfant; ces épis courbés sont³ pleins du meilleur blé, car c'est³ le poids qui fait⁷ pencher leur tête, tandis que ceux qui la relèvent¹⁰ si fièrement sont³ vides et ne valent¹¹ rien."

¹ § 160.⁴ § 177.⁵ § 202.⁶ § 166.¹⁰ § 158.² § 224.⁸ § 158.⁷ § 195.⁹ § 210.¹¹ § 223.³ § 154.

B. Complete the following, as above: 1. Il alla visiter ses champs. 2. Ils arrivèrent à un champ. 3. Ils se tenaient droits. 4. Il s'écria. 5. Quel dommage qu'ils soient si courbés! 6. Je préfère ceux-là. 7. Il en prit deux. 8. Il fait pencher leur tête. 9. Ils ne valent rien.

Give the present indicative in full of: 1. Alla. 2. Se tenaient. 3. Prit. 4. Fait. 5. Valent.

Relate the story, substituting the past indefinite for the past definite, thus: "Un paysan... est allé visiter," etc.

C. (Oral.) 1. Qu'est-ce que c'est qu'un paysan? 2. Où ce paysan est-il allé? 3. Est-ce qu'il était seul? 4. Qui est allé avec lui? 5. Pourquoi sont-ils allés aux champs? 6. Comment se tenaient certains épis dans les champs qu'ils ont

visités? 7. Tous les épis se tenaient-ils droits? 8. Comment les autres se tenaient-ils? 9. Quels épis préférait le petit Auguste? 10. Qu'est-ce qu'il s'est écrié? 11. Lesquels préférez-vous? 12. Pourquoi les préférez-vous? 13. Lesquels des épis étaient courbés? 14. Qu'est-ce qui leur faisait pencher la tête? 15. Pourquoi les autres se tenaient-ils si droits? 16. Lesquels valent le plus? 17. Comment le père a-t-il démontré cela à son fils? 18. Les personnes fières valent-elles ordinairement grand'chose? 19. Préférez-vous les personnes modestes? Etc., etc.

D. 1. I am going to see the fields. 2. If you were to go and visit the fields, in what condition would you find the wheat? 3. Hold yourself upright. 4. Take two ears of wheat. 5. Rub the grain out. 6. The best wheat is not in the upright ears. 7. The full ears are bent, whilst the empty ears are upright. 8. Just look, my boy, the upright ears are empty. 9. Full heads are worth a great deal, but empty heads are worth nothing.

Use either the past definite or the past indefinite for the narrative tenses of the following:

E. Little Augustus went one day to the fields. He went with his father, who was going to see whether his wheat was ripe. They arrived at a wheat-field. Augustus observed that certain ears of wheat were bent down towards the earth. He observed also that others held themselves upright. He said to his father: "Look at those ears of wheat. What a pity they are so bent down! I prefer those which hold themselves upright." His father wished to teach him a lesson. He took two of the ears of wheat, and rolled them between his fingers. The one was empty and was worth nothing. The other was full of good wheat. Then he said: "Look, my boy, this ear which raised its head so proudly was almost empty. On the contrary, this other which was so bent down was full of the best grain. We observe the same thing amongst men. Those who are proud have an (the) empty head. They are worth nothing. On the contrary, those who are modest and humble are generally the best."

EXERCISE XLIII. ✓

A. Un laboureur étant sur le point de mourir¹, et voulant² donner à ses enfants une dernière preuve de sa tendresse, les fit³ venir⁴ auprès de lui, et leur dit⁵: "Mes enfants, après moi vous aurez le champ que mon père a possédé⁶, le champ qui m'a servi⁷ à élever⁸ et à nourrir ma famille. Cherchez bien dans ce champ, et vous trouverez un trésor."

Les enfants, après la mort de leur père, se mirent⁹ à retourner le champ en tous sens, bêchant, labourant la terre. Ils n'y trouvèrent ni or ni argent; mais la terre bien remuée, bien labourée, produisit¹⁰ une moisson abondante. Le sage vieillard ne les avait pas trompés; il leur avait enseigné que le travail est un trésor.

¹ § 174.² § 195.³ § 193.⁴ § 166.⁵ § 198.⁶ § 225.⁷ § 178.⁸ § 158.⁹ § 158.¹⁰ § 185.

B. Complete the following, as above: 1. Il les fit venir auprès de lui. 2. Ils se mirent à retourner le champ. 3. Il produisit une moisson. 4. Il ne les avait pas trompés.

Give the future and the past definite in full of: 1. Mourir. 2. Voulant. 3. Fit. 4. Venir. 5. Dit. 6. Servir.

C. (Oral.) 1. De quelles personnes parle l'histoire? 2. Qu'est-ce que c'est qu'un laboureur? 3. Ce laboureur-ci était-il un jeune homme? 4. Dans quel état se trouvait-il? 5. Qu'est-ce qu'il allait laisser à ses enfants? 6. Avait-il acheté ce champ? 7. Était-ce un bon champ? 8. Quel conseil le laboureur a-t-il donné à ses enfants? 9. Ont-ils bien cherché? 10. Est-ce qu'ils y ont trouvé de l'or? 11. Leur père les avait-il trompés, alors? 12. Quel trésor ont-ils trouvé? 13. Quelle est la morale de l'histoire? Etc., etc.

D. 1. The father gave his children a proof of his love. 2. He called his children into his presence. 3. The children will own the field after the father. 4. The children delved and ploughed the field. 5. Stir the land, and it will produce a harvest. 6. If you plough this field, you will find a treasure. 7. It will not be silver or gold, but it will be a good harvest. 8. Your father is not deceiving you, he is teaching you a good lesson.

✓ *E.* A husbandman, who was at the point of death, wished to teach his children that labour is a treasure. Calling his children into his presence, he told them that they would have the field which his father had owned. It was a good field, and it had fed his father and his father's family. If they would seek in it, they would find a treasure there. After the old man's death, the children dug everywhere in the field, but they found no treasure. There was no gold or silver, but they stirred the land so well that they had an abundant harvest. They had not been deceived. Their father had taught them a good lesson.

EXERCISE XLIV.

A. Louis XIV, traversant avec sa cour la galerie de Versailles, aperçoit¹ Jean Bart fumant sa pipe dans l'embrasure d'une fenêtre ouverte²; il le fait³ appeler⁴, et lui dit⁵ d'un ton affectueux: "Jean Bart, je viens⁶ de vous nommer chef d'escadre.—Vous avez bien fait³, sire, répondit⁷ le marin en continuant de fumer tranquillement sa pipe." Cette brusque réponse ayant excité parmi les sots courtisans un grand éclat de rire: "Vous vous trompez, messieurs,—leur dit⁵ gravement le roi,—cette réponse est celle d'un homme qui sent⁸ ce qu'il vaut⁹, et qui compte m'en donner bientôt de nouvelles preuves. Sans doute, Jean Bart ne parle pas comme vous; mais qui de vous peut¹⁰ faire⁸ ce que fait³ Jean Bart?"

¹ § 213.² § 195.³ § 193.⁴ § 210.⁵ § 223.² § 176.⁴ § 158.⁶ § 178.⁸ § 166.¹⁰ § 221.

B. Complete the following, as above: 1. Il aperçoit Jean Bart. 2. Il le fait appeler. 3. Je viens de le nommer. 4. Vous avez bien fait. 5. Vous vous trompez. 6. Il sent ce qu'il vaut. 7. Il ne parle pas comme les autres.

Give the imperfect indicative and the imperfect subjunctive of: 1. Aperçoit. 2. Fait. 3. Dit. 4. Viens. 5. Sent.

C. (Oral.) 1. Qui était Louis XIV? 2. Où est Versailles? 3. Qu'est-ce que c'était autrefois? 4. Quel est l'autre personnage de notre histoire? 5. Quelle était sa profession? 6. Était-il, ce jour-là, à bord de son vaisseau? 7. Qu'est-ce qu'il faisait qui montrait qu'il n'était pas courtisan? 8. De quelle façon le roi a-t-il montré qu'il n'en était pas mécontent? 9. Quelle

sorte de réponse Jean Bart a-t-il faite au roi? 10. Quelle impression a-t-elle faite sur les courtisans? 11. Quelle en était l'opinion du roi? 12. Pourquoi était-il permis à Jean Bart, et non pas aux courtisans, de faire une brusque réponse? Etc., etc.

D. 1. The king sends for Jean Bart. 2. I shall call him. 3. We have just called Jean Bart. 4. The king had just appointed him rear-admiral. 5. A great outburst of laughter was excited by Jean Bart's blunt answer. 6. The king did not appoint the stupid courtiers rear-admirals. 7. We are mistaken; it is not a blunt answer. 8. Do not make a mistake. 9. The stupid courtiers did not make blunt answers, because they did not feel their own worth. 10. Jean Bart hopes soon to give the king new proofs of his worth. 11. We can not do what Jean Bart did.

E. Jean Bart was coolly smoking his pipe in the embrasure of a window in the palace (*château*) of Versailles, as the king, accompanied by his courtiers, was passing through the great gallery. The king sent for the brave sailor, and told him that he had just been appointed rear-admiral. The sailor's blunt reply: "You have done well, sire," caused a burst of laughter among those who were with the king. But Louis knew that it was the reply of a man who would soon give proofs of his worth. Jean Bart did not talk like a courtier, but he did what courtiers could not do.

EXERCISE XLV.

A. J'ai vu¹ une petite fourmi qui allait² ça et là cherchant fortune. Elle a rencontré sur son chemin un brin d'herbe qu'elle voudrait³ bien emporter; mais comment faire⁴? Il est si gros, et elle est si faible. Alors elle est montée sur un caillou, du haut duquel elle regarde la campagne, comme du haut d'une tour. Elle regarde, elle regarde; enfin elle a aperçu⁵ deux de ses compagnes qui passent par là, et elle court⁶ à elles. Elle se frotte le nez contre leur nez pour leur dire⁷: "Venez⁸ vite avec moi; il y a par là quelque chose de bon!" Les trois fourmis se précipitent vers le brin d'herbe et le saisissent. Ce que l'une ne pouvait⁹ faire⁴, les trois le font⁴ aisément, et elles emportent en triomphe le brin devenu¹⁰ léger pour elles.

¹ § 224.² § 225.³ § 213.⁴ § 193.⁵ § 221.⁶ § 190.⁷ § 196.⁸ § 164.⁹ § 173.¹⁰ § 173.

B. Complete the following, as above : 1. Elle allait ça et là. 2. Elle voudrait bien l'emporter. 3. Elle est montée. 4. Elle court à elles. 5. Elle se frotte le nez. 6. Venez. 7. Elles se précipitent. 8. Elles le saisissent. 9. Elle ne pouvait pas le faire. 10. Elles le font aisément.

Give in full the past definite of : 1. Vu. 2. Rencontré. 3. Regardé. 4. Aperçu. 5. Court. 6. Se précipitent. 7. Font.

Beginning at the second sentence, relate the story in the past definite, thus : "Elle rencontra, etc."

C. (Oral.) 1. De quel insecte parle-t-on ici ? 2. Qu'est-ce qu'elle faisait ? 3. Qu'est-ce qu'elle a rencontré sur son chemin ? 4. Le brin d'herbe était-il gros ou petit ? 5. Et la fourmi était-elle forte ou faible ? 6. Qu'est-ce que la fourmi aurait voulu faire ? 7. Est-ce qu'elle pouvait le faire toute seule ? 8. Où est-elle montée ? 9. Qu'est-ce qu'elle a regardé du haut du caillou ? 10. Pour la fourmi le caillou était comme une tour, n'est-ce pas ? 11. Qu'est-ce qu'elle aperçoit enfin ? 12. Que faisaient les deux compagnes de la fourmi ? 13. Et la fourmi qu'est-ce qu'elle a fait ? 14. Est-ce qu'elle leur a parlé ? 15. Comment leur a-t-elle parlé ? 16. Qu'est-ce qu'elle leur a dit ? 17. Quelle est la première chose qu'ont faite les trois fourmis ? 18. Et ensuite qu'ont-elles fait ? 19. Une fourmi pouvait-elle emporter le brin d'herbe ? 20. Les trois fourmis ensemble pouvaient-elles le faire aisément ? 21. Pourquoi le brin d'herbe est-il devenu léger ? Etc., etc.

D. A little ant was going hither and thither one day. She found a blade of grass on the road. "This blade of grass is very big," thought the ant. "I am too weak to carry it off alone. I know what I shall do. I shall climb upon a pebble. From the top of the pebble I shall look around. The pebble will be for me like a tall tower." She did so. She looked about her a long time. At last she saw two of her companions. They were passing along (*par*) the same road. She called them, and they ran to her. She said to them : "Come here, for I have found something good." She said this by rubbing her nose against theirs. Ants, as you know, cannot speak like men. After that the three ants rushed towards the blade of grass. They seized it quickly. It had been very heavy for the one ant. But the three together carried it off easily.

EXERCISE XLVI.

A. Un homme descendit¹ de Jérusalem à Jérico, et tomba parmi des brigands, qui le dépouillèrent. Après l'avoir blessé de plusieurs coups, ils s'en allèrent², le laissant à demi mort.³ Un prêtre, qui par hasard descendait¹ par ce chemin-là, l'ayant vu⁴, passa outre. Un lévite, venant⁵ aussi dans le même endroit, et le voyant⁴, passa outre. Mais un Samaritain, qui voyageait⁶, vint⁵ vers cet homme, et le voyant⁴, fut touché de compassion. S'approchant de lui, il banda ses plaies, et il y versa de l'huile et du vin; puis il le mit⁷ sur sa monture, le mena⁸ à une auberge, et prit⁹ soin de lui. Le lendemain, en partant¹⁰, il tira de sa poche deux deniers d'argent, et les donnant à l'aubergiste, lui dit¹¹: "Aie soin de lui, et tout ce que tu dépenseras de plus je te le rendrai¹ à mon retour."

¹ § 210.⁴ § 224.⁶ § 156.⁸ § 158.¹⁰ § 166.² § 160.⁵ § 178.⁷ § 198.⁹ § 202.¹¹ § 193.³ § 174.

B. Complete the following, as above: 1. Il descendit. 2. Ils le dépouillèrent. 3. Ils s'en allèrent. 4. Il descendit par ce chemin. 5. Il passa outre. 6. Il vint vers cet homme. 7. Il y versa de l'huile. 8. Il le mit sur sa monture. 9. Il prit soin de lui.

Give the present indicative and present subjunctive of:
1. S'en allèrent. 2. Mort. 3. Venant. 4. Voyant. 5. Mit.

C. (Oral.) 1. D'où a-t-on tiré cette histoire? 2. Comment s'appelle l'histoire? 3. Où sont Jérusalem et Jérico? 4. Est-ce que la terre sainte est un grand ou un petit pays? 5. Qu'ont fait les brigands au voyageur? 6. En quel état se trouvait-il après leur départ? 7. Quelles personnes sont venues ensuite? 8. Qu'est-ce qu'elles ont fait? 9. Qui est venu après le prêtre et le lévite? 10. Est-ce que les Samaritains étaient bien aimés des Juifs? 11. Est-ce que cela a empêché le Samaritain de faire le bien? 12. Qu'est-ce qu'il a fait au Juif? 13. Après l'avoir soigné qu'a-t-il fait? 14. Qu'a-t-il donné à l'aubergiste? 15. En quittant l'auberge, qu'a-t-il dit? Etc., etc.

D. 1. If we fall among thieves, they will strip us. 2. After having wounded us they will depart. 3. If you should see a

poor traveller half dead, would you pass by on the other side? 4. If the priest had been touched with compassion, he would have bound up the wounds. 5. Let us pour oil and wine into his wounds. 6. Let us put the poor man on our own beast. 7. Let us take him to the inn. 8. Let us take care of him there. 9. The next day we shall give money to the innkeeper. 10. On our return we shall give him back whatever he shall have spent for our friend.

E. A man, who was going down from Jerusalem to Jericho, fell among thieves. They stripped him and wounded him, and left him half dead. Then a priest and a Levite came by chance to the same place, and they saw him and passed by on the other side. But a Samaritan, who was going down by that road, saw him, and was touched with compassion. Then, after having bound up his wounds, he put him on his beast and took him to an inn. On the morrow he gave money to the innkeeper, and said that on his return he would give the innkeeper whatever he should spend if he took care of the poor man.

EXERCISE XLVII.

A. Lorsque M. Laffitte, le fameux banquier, vint¹ à Paris, en 1788, à l'âge de 21 ans, toute son ambition se bornait à obtenir² une petite place dans une maison de banque. Il se présenta chez un riche banquier. "Impossible de vous admettre³ chez moi, du moins pour le moment, lui dit⁴ le banquier: mes bureaux sont au complet." Le jeune homme salua et se retira. En traversant la cour, il aperçoit⁵ à terre une épingle, et la ramassa. Debout devant la fenêtre de son cabinet le riche banquier avait suivi⁶ des yeux la retraite du jeune homme. Il lui vit⁷ ramasser l'épingle et ce trait lui fit⁸ plaisir. Le soir même le jeune homme reçut⁹ un billet du banquier, qui lui disait⁴: "Vous avez une place dans mes bureaux; vous pouvez⁹ venir¹ l'occuper dès demain." Le jeune homme devint¹ bientôt caissier, puis associé, puis maître de la première maison de banque de Paris, et enfin homme d'État très influent sous Louis-Philippe.

* § 178.

* § 198.

* § 213.

* § 224.

* § 221.

* § 177.

* § 138.

* § 206.

* § 196.

B. Complete the following, as above: 1. Il vint à Paris. 2. Elle se bornait à cela. 3. Il se présenta chez le banquier. 4. Il se retire. 5. Il aperçoit à terre une épingle. 6. Il l'avait suivi des yeux. 7. Il vit ramasser l'épingle. 8. Il reçut un billet. 9. Il lui disait. 10. Vous pouvez venir. 11. Il devint maître.

Give in full the future and conditional of: 1. Tenir. 2. Admettre. 3. Aperçoit. 4. Suivi. 5. Vit.

C. (Oral.) 1. Quel âge avait M. Laffitte à son arrivée à Paris? 2. Qu'est-ce qu'il cherchait? 3. Réussit-il d'abord à trouver une place? 4. Où se présenta-t-il? 5. Que lui a-t-on dit? 6. En se retirant où va-t-il? 7. Qu'est-ce qu'il trouve? 8. Qui l'a vu? 9. En était-il content? 10. De quelle façon a-t-il montré son contentement? 11. Qu'est devenu le jeune homme par la suite? 12. Quelle est la morale de l'histoire? Etc., etc.

D. 1. If your ambition is only to get a humble position, you will get it. 2. Present yourself at the office of the rich banker. 3. He will admit you into his employ. 4. His offices are not full. 5. Do you see that pin on the ground? 6. Pick it up. 7. There is the rich banker standing at his office window. 8. The banker is watching the young man as he retires. 9. If we see him pick up a pin, it (*cela*) will please us. 10. Did you receive a note from the banker? 11. You shall have a position in his banking-house. 12. You will soon become his partner, will you not? 13. Those who pick up pins may become statesmen.

E. When M. Laffitte was twenty-one years of age he came to Paris. He wished to get a humble position with a rich banker. But when he presented himself, the rich banker told him that his offices were full, and that he could not admit him. He withdrew. The rich banker watched him from his office window, and saw him pick up a pin which he noticed on the ground as he was crossing the yard. This action pleased the banker. That very evening he sent a note to the young man, which said that he could have a position in his offices the very next day. The young man became head of a great banking-house, and at last an influential statesman.

EXERCISE XLVIII.

A. Benjamin Franklin raconte l'anecdote suivante¹: "Quand j'étais un enfant de cinq ou six ans, mes amis, un jour de fête, remplirent ma petite poche de sous. Je partis² tout de suite pour une boutique où l'on vendait³ des jouets. Chemin faisant⁴, je vis⁵ dans les mains d'un autre petit garçon un sifflet, dont le son me charma. Je lui donnai en échange tout mon argent. Revenu⁶ chez moi, fort content de mon achat, sifflant par toute la maison, je fatiguai les oreilles de toute la famille. Mes frères et mes sœurs apprenant⁷ que j'avais tout donné pour un mauvais instrument, me dirent⁸ que je l'avais payé⁹ dix fois plus cher qu'il ne valait¹⁰. Alors ils énumérèrent¹¹ toutes les jolies choses que j'aurais pu¹² acheter¹¹ avec mon argent si j'avais été plus prudent. Ils me tournèrent tellement en ridicule que j'en pleurai. Cependant, cet accident fut de quelque utilité pour moi. Lorsque plus tard j'étais tenté d'acheter¹¹ quelque chose qui ne m'était pas nécessaire, je disais⁸ en moi-même: *Ne donnons pas trop pour le sifflet*, et j'épargnais mon argent."

¹ § 206.⁴ § 195.⁷ § 202.⁹ § 157.¹¹ § 158.² § 166.⁵ § 224.⁸ § 193.¹⁰ § 223.¹² § 221.³ § 210.⁶ § 178.

B. Complete the following, as above: 1. Quand j'étais un enfant. 2. Ils remplirent ma poche. 3. Je partis tout de suite. 4. Je vis un sifflet. 5. Je fatiguai tous mes amis. 6. Je remplis mes poches, tu remplis tes poches, etc. 7. Ils me dirent, ils te dirent, etc. 8. Je disais en moi-même, tu disais en toi-même, etc.

C. (Oral.) 1. Qui était Benjamin Franklin? 2. À quelle époque vivait-il? 3. Quel âge avait-il à l'époque de l'anecdote? 4. Qu'est-ce qu'il avait dans sa poche? 5. Qui le lui avait donné? 6. Pour quel endroit est-il parti ensuite? 7. Y est-il jamais arrivé? 8. Quel était l'obstacle? 9. Qu'est-ce qu'il a fait de son argent? 10. À son retour chez lui, qu'est-ce qu'il a fait? 11. A-t-il charmé ses frères et ses sœurs? 12. Est-ce qu'il avait payé assez cher son sifflet? 13. Est-ce que la famille était contente de son achat? 14. De quelle façon la famille a-t-elle fait voir son mécontentement? 15. Le pauvre

Franklin était-il content à la fin? 16. Quelle leçon Franklin a-t-il reçue par cet accident? Etc., etc.

D. 1. You have paid twice as much for that apple as it is worth. 2. If you pay ten cents for that pencil, that will be three times as much as it is worth. 3. Never pay more for things than they are worth. 4. We could have bought many pretty things with our money, if we had been prudent. 5. If our friend had been less prudent, he could not have bought so many pretty things. 6. That accident will be of some use to our friends. 7. When we are (fut.) tempted to buy something which is not necessary for us, we shall say to ourselves: "We are not going to give too much for the whistle."

E. When Benjamin Franklin was five years old, his brother, on a holiday, filled his pockets with coppers. Starting off at once for a shop where toys were sold, he met on the way another little boy who had a whistle. The sound of the instrument charmed him, and he gave all his money to have it. He was much pleased with his purchase, but he whistled so much all over the house that he tired the whole family. His brothers and sisters asked him where he had bought his whistle and how much he had paid for it. He told them he had given all his money to the little boy. Then they told him he had paid too much for it. They said too that if he had been more prudent, he could have bought ten times as many pretty things, and he cried on account of it. But the affair was of some use to him later on. Whenever he was tempted to buy things which he did not need, he would always say to himself: "I will not give too much for the whistle."

EXERCISE XLIX.

A. Henri IV, dans une chasse, s'étant écarté, suivant¹ sa coutume, de ses gardes et de sa cour, rencontra un paysan assis² sous un arbre. "Que fais-tu³ là? lui dit⁴ le prince.—J'étais venu⁵ ici dès le point du jour, pour voir⁶ passer le roi, répondit⁷ le paysan; sans ce désir, je serais à labourer mon champ, qui n'est pas fort éloigné.—Si tu veux⁸ monter sur la croupe de mon cheval, lui répliqua Henri, je te conduirai⁹ où est le roi, et tu le verras⁶ à ton aise."

Le paysan, enchanté, profite de la rencontre, monte à côté du roi, et demande, chemin faisant³, comment il pourra¹⁰ recon-

naître¹¹ le roi. "Tu n'auras qu'à regarder celui qui sera couvert¹² pendant que tous les autres auront la tête nue."

Enfin le moment arrive où le roi rejoint¹³ une partie de sa cour et se trouve parmi ses courtisans; tous se découvrent¹², excepté lui. Alors il demande au paysan: "Eh bien, quel est le roi? — Ma foi, monsieur, lui répondit-il¹, c'est vous ou moi, car il n'y a que nous deux qui ayons le chapeau sur la tête."

1 § 206.

4 § 193.

7 § 210.

10 § 221.

12 § 176.

2 § 215.

5 § 178.

8 § 225.

11 § 188.

13 § 190.

3 § 195.

6 § 224.

9 § 185.

B. Complete the following, as above: 1. J'étais venu. 2. Tu veux voir le roi. 3. Tu le verras à ton aise. 4. Il pourra reconnaître le roi. 5. Il sera couvert. 6. Il rejoint les courtisans. 7. Ils se découvrent. 8. Il n'y a que nous qui ayons.

C. (Oral.) 1. Qui était Henri IV? 2. À quelle époque vivait-il? 3. Quelle était sa coutume quand il était à la chasse? 4. Qui a-t-il rencontré un jour? 5. Qu'est-ce que c'est qu'un paysan? 6. Que faisait le paysan? 7. Depuis combien de temps y était-il? 8. Pourquoi y était-il venu? 9. S'il n'était pas venu où aurait-il été? 10. Qu'est-ce que le roi a proposé au paysan? 11. Le paysan a-t-il accepté? 12. Qu'est-ce que le paysan a demandé au roi en chemin? 13. Quel était le signe par lequel on reconnaîtrait le roi? 14. Le roi et le paysan où arrivent-ils bientôt? 15. Qu'est-ce que les courtisans ont fait à leur approche? 16. Combien de personnes restaient couvertes? 17. Et combien de rois y avait-il dans la compagnie? Etc., etc.

D. 1. We have wandered from the court. 2. If the king had not wandered from the court, he would not have met the peasant. 3. We came here at the very peep of day. 4. I have not seen the king go by. 5. The peasants are busy ploughing the field. 6. If you get up beside me, you will see the king. 7. As they went along, the peasant said to the king: "Take me where the king is." 8. Everybody had his hat on, and we could not recognize the king. 9. If the courtiers had taken off their hats, we could have recognized the king.

bygone E. One day Henry IV. had wandered from his courtiers. Meeting a peasant who was sitting under a tree, he asked the latter what he was doing there. The peasant replied that he had been there since daybreak, and that he wished to see the king, and that if he had not come, he would be busy ploughing his field. The king said to him: "Get up behind me, and I will take you where you can see the king." The peasant was delighted, and got up beside the king. As they went along, he asked how he should recognize the king, and the king told him to look at the one who should have his hat on, whilst the others should be bareheaded. When they arrived where the courtiers were, the latter took off their hats. Then the king asked the peasant which was the king. He replied: "We two have our hats on, the others are bare-headed: it is you or I."

EXERCISE L.

A. Un paysan traversait la campagne avec son fils Thomas. "Regarde! lui dit-il¹ en chemin, voilà par terre un fer à cheval perdu², ramasse-le!"

"Bah! répondit³ Thomas, il ne vaut³ pas la peine de se baisser pour si peu de chose!" Le père ne dit¹ rien, ramassa le fer et le mit⁴ dans sa poche. Arrivé au village voisin, il le vendit² pour quelques centimes au maréchal ferrant, et acheta⁵ des cerises avec cet argent.

Cela fait⁶, ils se remirent⁴ en route. Le soleil était brûlant. Thomas mourait⁷ de soif, et avait de la peine à poursuivre⁸ son chemin. Le père, qui marchait le premier, laissa, comme par hasard, tomber une cerise. Thomas la ramassa avec empressement, et la mangea⁹. Quelques pas plus loin, une seconde cerise s'échappa des mains du père, et Thomas la saisit avec le même empressement. Le père fit⁶ de même avec toutes les cerises. Lorsque l'enfant eut porté à la bouche la dernière cerise, le père se retourna et lui dit¹: "Vois¹⁰, mon ami, tu n'as pas voulu¹¹ te baisser une fois pour ramasser le fer à cheval, et tu as été obligé¹² de te baisser plus de vingt fois pour ramasser les cerises."

¹ § 193.⁴ § 198.⁷ § 174.⁹ § 156.¹¹ § 225.² § 210.⁵ § 158.⁸ § 206.¹⁰ § 224.¹² § 156.³ § 223.⁶ § 195.

B. Complete the following, as above: 1. Il ne dit rien. 2. Il le mit dans sa poche. 3. Il vendit le fer. 4. Il acheta des cerises. 5. Il mourait de soif. 6. Il mangea une cerise. 7. Il la saisit. 8. Il fit de même. 9. Ils se remirent en route. 10. Il s'échappa de ses mains. 11. Il se retourna. 12. Tu t'es baissé.

C. (Oral.) 1. De quelles personnes parle-t-on dans cette histoire? 2. Qu'est-ce que c'est qu'un paysan? 3. Était-il seul? 4. Qu'est-ce qu'ils ont vu en chemin? 5. Qu'est-ce que c'est qu'un fer à cheval? 6. Qu'est-ce que le père a dit au fils? 7. Qu'est-ce que le fils a répondu? 8. Lequel des deux était le plus prudent? 9. Par quelle action a-t-il montré sa prudence? 10. À qui a-t-on vendu le fer à cheval? 11. Pourquoi l'a-t-on vendu à un maréchal ferrant? 12. Qu'est-ce qu'on a acheté avec l'argent? 13. Quel temps faisait-il? 14. Quel était l'effet de la chaleur sur le petit Thomas? 15. Est-ce que le père n'avait rien pour la soif? 16. Est-ce que les cerises sont bonnes pour la soif? 17. Qu'est-ce que le père a fait des cerises? 18. Et qu'est-ce que son fils en a fait? 19. Combien en a-t-il mangées? 20. Pourquoi aurait-il mieux fait de se baisser pour le fer à cheval? Etc., etc.

D. 1. It was not worth the trouble. 2. It will not be worth the trouble. 3. If it is worth the trouble, we shall pick up the horse-shoe. 4. Put the horse-shoe into your pocket and buy cherries. 5. We shall set out again on our journey. 6. If the sun is hot, they will not set out again. 7. I am very thirsty (dying with thirst); give me some cherries. 8. We have difficulty in picking up the cherries. 9. If you are dying with thirst, I shall drop a cherry. 10. The cherries are on the ground; pick them up. 11. If you walk ahead, will you pick up the cherries? 12. A few steps farther on, I stooped to pick up the horse-shoe. 13. Why did you seize the horse-shoe so eagerly? 14. We did not seize it eagerly. 15. If you had been willing to turn round, we should have given you the cherries. 16. Stoop, if you wish to pick up. 17. He who is not willing to stoop once, will perhaps stoop more than twenty times.

E. As a peasant and his son were crossing the country, they saw a horse-shoe on the ground. The father told his son

le
to pick it up and put it into his pocket. The son replied that it was not worth while to stoop for a horse-shoe. Then the father stooped and picked it up. They sold it to the blacksmith of the neighboring village, and bought some cherries, which the father put into his pocket. They pursued their way, the father walking ahead. The sun was hot and Thomas was very thirsty, and, as if by chance, a cherry fell from his father's pocket. The son seizing it, ate it, and also a second one, which slipped from his father's pocket. Soon the last cherry was carried to his mouth, and his father, turning round, told him that if he had been willing to stoop once for the horse-shoe, he would not have been obliged to stoop twenty times for the cherries. *ant*

EXERCISE LI.

A. Un jour Frédéric le Grand, roi de Prusse, ayant sonné sans que personne répondît¹ à cet appel, ouvrit² la porte de son antichambre et trouva son page endormi³ sur une chaise. Au moment où il allait⁴ le réveiller, il aperçut⁵ un papier écrit⁶ sortant⁷ de la poche du page. La curiosité du roi fut excitée, il prit⁸ le papier et le lut⁹. C'était une lettre de la mère du jeune homme, dans laquelle elle remerciait son fils de ce qu'il lui envoyait¹⁰ une partie de ses gages pour la soulager¹¹ dans sa misère. Le roi, ayant lu⁹ la lettre, prit⁸ un rouleau de ducats et le glissa avec la lettre dans la poche du page. Un instant après il sonna si fort que le page se réveilla et accourut¹² auprès de lui. "Vous avez dormi³," lui dit¹³ le roi. Le jeune homme, ayant honte, tâcha de s'excuser. Dans son embarras il mit¹⁴ la main dans sa poche, et y trouva le rouleau de ducats. Il le prit⁸, pâlit, trembla, et ne put¹⁵ articuler un seul mot. "Qu'avez-vous? dit¹³ le roi.—Hélas! sire, dit¹³ le page, quel-qu'un veut¹⁶ me perdre¹; je ne sais¹⁷ pas d'où m'est venu¹⁸ cet or.—La fortune ne vient-elle¹⁸ pas souvent en dormant³? reprit⁸ Frédéric. Envoie¹⁰ cette somme à ta mère, en lui faisant¹⁹ mes compliments et assure-la bien que j'aurai soin d'elle et de toi."

¹ § 210.⁶ § 213.⁹ § 197.¹³ § 193.¹⁷ § 222.² § 176.⁶ § 194.¹⁰ § 157.¹⁴ § 198.¹⁸ § 178.³ § 166.⁷ § 166.¹¹ § 156.¹⁵ § 221.¹⁹ § 195.⁴ § 160.⁸ § 202.¹² § 164.¹⁶ § 225.

B. Complete the following, as above : 1. Sans qu'il répondît. 2. Il ouvrit la porte. 3. Il lut le billet. 4. Il allait le réveiller. 5. Il aperçut un papier. 6. Il remerciait le roi. 7. Il envoyait l'argent. 8. Il prit le rouleau. 9. Il se réveilla. 10. Il accourut auprès du roi. 11. Il ne put dire un mot. 12. Il veut me perdre. 13. Je sais d'où c'est venu. 14. Envoie cette somme.

Re-write the anecdote, substituting the past indefinite for the past definite.

C. (Oral.) 1. Quel est le sujet de cette anecdote ? 2. À quelle époque vivait Frédéric le Grand ? 3. Où est la Prusse ? 4. Qu'est-ce que c'est qu'un page ? 5. Où était le page dont parle l'histoire ? 6. Qu'est-ce qu'il y faisait ? 7. Qu'est-ce que les pages devaient faire dans les antichambres des rois ? 8. Est-ce que le roi s'est mis en colère contre le page ? 9. Qu'est-ce qu'il a fait ? 10. En lisant la lettre qu'est-ce que le roi a découvert ? 11. Est-ce que la mère du page était riche ? 12. Qu'est-ce que le page faisait pour elle ? 13. Le roi en était-il content ? 14. De quelle façon a-t-il montré son contentement ? 15. Comment le jeune homme a-t-il découvert ce que le roi avait fait ? 16. Qu'est-ce que c'est qu'un ducat ? 17. Que pensait-il en sentant les ducats dans sa poche ? 18. De quelle façon le roi a-t-il calmé le jeune homme ? 19. Est-ce que le proverbe est toujours vrai : "La fortune nous vient en dormant ?" 20. Qu'est-ce que cette histoire nous apprend ? Etc., etc.

D. 1. He rings without anyone answering him. 2. If we open the door, we shall find the page. 3. I am going to wake him. 4. He will waken. 5. The paper was sticking out of his pocket. 6. She thanked her son for sending her a part of his wages. 7. She sent a letter in which she thanked her son. 8. We have been asleep. 9. We had been asleep. 10. The king asked : "What is the matter with him ?" 11. Somebody will ruin me. 12. He took care of him and her.

E. One day Frederick the Great rang, and nobody answered him. Opening the door of the antechamber, he finds his page asleep. A letter, which was sticking out of the page's pocket, aroused the king's curiosity. The young man used to send his mother a part of his wages, and in this letter she was thanking

him for it. The king read the letter, and, taking a roll of ducats, slipped it, with the letter, into the young man's pocket. Then ringing very loud, he waked the page, who hastened into his presence. He asked the young man if he had been asleep. The young man was ashamed, and tried to excuse himself. Putting his hand into his pocket he finds the ducats. He trembles, and cannot utter a word. The king asked him what was the matter with him, and he replied that somebody wished to ruin him, for he did not know where the ducats came from. The king replies that good luck comes to us often while we sleep. He tells the page that he will take care of his mother and him.

PART II.

THE VERB.

REGULAR VERBS.

153. Regular Conjugations. Regular verbs are conveniently divided into three classes or conjugations, according as the present infinitive ends in **-er**, **-ir**, **-re**, and are inflected in their simple tenses as follows:—

I.

II.

III.

Infinitive Mood.

PRESENT.

donn **er**, *to give*.

PRESENT.

fin **ir**, *to finish*.

PRESENT.

romp **re**, *to break*.

Participles.

PRESENT.

donn **ant**, *giving*.

PRESENT.

fin **iss ant**, *finishing*.

PRESENT.

romp **ant**, *breaking*.

PAST.

donn **é**, *given*.

PAST.

fin **i**, *finished*.

PAST.

romp **u**, *broken*.

Indicative Mood.

PRESENT.

I give, am giving,
etc.

je donn **e**.

tu donn **es**.

il donn **e**.

nous donn **ons**.

vous donn **ez**.

ils donn **ent**.

PRESENT.

I finish, am finishing,
etc.

je fin **i s**.

tu fin **i s**.

il fin **i t**.

nous fin **iss ons**.

vous fin **iss ez**.

ils fin **iss ent**.

PRESENT.

I break, am breaking,
etc.

je romp **s**.

tu romp **s**.

il romp **t**.

nous romp **ons**.

vous romp **ez**.

ils romp **ent**.

IMPERFECT.

*I was giving, used
to give, etc.*

je donn **ais**.
tu donn **ais**.
il donn **ait**.
nous donn **ions**.
vous donn **iez**.
ils donn **aient**.

IMPERFECT.

*I was finishing, used
to finish, etc.*

je fin **iss ais**.
tu fin **iss ais**.
il fin **iss ait**.
nous fin **iss ions**.
vous fin **iss iez**.
ils fin **iss aient**.

IMPERFECT.

*I was breaking, used
to break, etc.*

je romp **ais**.
tu romp **ais**.
il romp **ait**.
nous romp **ions**.
vous romp **iez**.
ils romp **aient**.

PAST DEFINITE.

I gave, etc.

je donn **ai**.
tu donn **as**.
il donn **a**.
nous donn **âmes**.
vous donn **âtes**.
ils donn **èrent**.

PAST DEFINITE.

I finished, etc.

je fin **is**.
tu fin **is**.
il fin **it**.
nous fin **îmes**.
vous fin **îtes**.
ils fin **irent**.

PAST DEFINITE.

I broke, etc.

je romp **is**.
tu romp **is**.
il romp **it**.
nous romp **îmes**.
vous romp **îtes**.
ils romp **irent**.

FUTURE.

I shall give, etc.

je donner **ai**.
tu donner **as**.
il donner **a**.
nous donner **ons**.
vous donner **ez**.
ils donner **ont**.

FUTURE.

I shall finish, etc.

je finir **ai**.
tu finir **as**.
il finir **a**.
nous finir **ons**.
vous finir **ez**.
ils finir **ont**.

FUTURE.

I shall break, etc.

je rompr **ai**.
tu rompr **as**.
il rompr **a**.
nous rompr **ons**.
vous rompr **ez**.
ils rompr **ont**.

CONDITIONAL.

I should give, etc.

je donner **ais**.
tu donner **ais**.
il donner **ait**.
nous donner **ions**.
vous donner **iez**.
ils donner **aient**.

CONDITIONAL.

I should finish, etc.

je finir **ais**.
tu finir **ais**.
il finir **ait**.
nous finir **ions**.
vous finir **iez**.
ils finir **aient**.

CONDITIONAL.

I should break, etc.

je rompr **ais**.
tu rompr **ais**.
il rompr **ait**.
nous rompr **ions**.
vous rompr **iez**.
ils rompr **aient**.

Imperative Mood.

PRESENT.	PRESENT.	PRESENT.
<i>Give, etc.</i>	<i>Finish, etc.</i>	<i>Break, etc.</i>
donn e. *	fin is.	romp s.
(qu'il donn e.)	(qu'il fin iss e.)	(qu'il romp e.)
donn ons.	fin iss ons.	romp ons.
donn ez.	fin iss ez.	romp ez.
(qu'ils donn ent.)	(qu'ils fin iss ent.)	(qu'ils romp ent.)

*This form becomes 'donn **es**' when followed by -y or -en (cf. § 370, 3, obs. 3, 4).

Subjunctive Mood.

PRESENT.	PRESENT.	PRESENT.
<i>(That) I (may) give, etc.</i>	<i>(That) I (may) finish, etc.</i>	<i>(That) I (may) break, etc.</i>
(que) je donn e.	(que) je fin iss e.	(que) je romp e.
(que) tu donn es.	(que) tu fin iss es.	(que) tu romp es.
(qu') il donn e.	(qu') il fin iss e.	(qu') il romp e.
(que) nous donn ions.	(que) nous fin iss ions.	(que) nous romp ions.
(que) vous donn iez.	(que) vous fin iss iez.	(que) vous romp iez.
(qu') ils donn ent.	(qu') ils fin iss ent.	(qu') ils romp ent.
IMPERFECT.	IMPERFECT.	IMPERFECT.
<i>(That) I (might) give, etc.</i>	<i>(That) I (might) finish, etc.</i>	<i>(That) I (might) break, etc.</i>
(que) je donn asse.	(que) je fin isse.	(que) je romp isse.
(que) tu donn asses.	(que) tu fin isses.	(que) tu romp isses.
(qu') il donn ât.	(qu') il fin ît.	(qu') il romp ît.
(que) nous donn assions.	(que) nous fin issions.	(que) nous romp issions.
(que) vous donn assiez.	(que) vous fin issiez.	(que) vous romp issiez.
(qu') ils donn assent.	(qu') ils fin issent.	(qu') ils romp issent.

AUXILIARY VERBS.

154. The auxiliary verbs **avoir**, 'to have,' and **être**, 'to be,' are conjugated in their simple tenses as follows:—

Infinitive.

PRES. avoir, *to have.*

PRES. être, *to be.*

Participles.

PRES. ayant, *having*.PAST. eu, *had*.PRES. étant, *being*.PAST. été, *been*.

Indicative.

PRESENT.

I have, am having, etc.

j'ai. nous avons.

tu as. vous avez.

il a. ils ont.

IMPERFECT.

I had, was having, etc.

j'avais. nous avions.

tu avais. vous aviez.

il avait. ils avaient.

PAST DEFINITE.

I had, etc.

j'eus. nous eûmes.

tu eus. vous eûtes.

il eut. ils eurent.

FUTURE.

I shall have, etc.

j'aurai. nous aurons.

tu auras. vous aurez.

il aura. ils auront.

CONDITIONAL.

I should have, etc.

j'aurais. nous aurions.

tu aurais. vous auriez.

il aurait. ils auraient.

PRESENT.

I am, am being, etc.

je suis. nous sommes.

tu es. vous êtes.

il est. ils sont.

IMPERFECT.

I was, was being, etc.

j'étais. nous étions.

tu étais. vous étiez.

il était. ils étaient.

PAST DEFINITE.

I was, etc.

je fus. nous fûmes.

tu fus. vous fûtes.

il fut. ils furent.

FUTURE.

I shall be, etc.

je serai. nous serons.

tu seras. vous serez.

il sera. ils seront.

CONDITIONAL.

I should be, etc.

je serais. nous serions.

tu serais. vous seriez.

il serait. ils seraient.

Imperative.

PRESENT.

Have, etc.

ayons.

ayez.

(qu'il ait.)

(qu'ils aient.)

PRESENT.

Be, etc.

soyons.

soyez.

(qu'il soit.)

(qu'ils soient.)

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.

(That) I (may) have, etc.

(que) j'aie. (que) nous ayons.
 (que) tu aies. (que) vous ayez.
 (qu') il ait. (qu') ils aient.

IMPERFECT.

(That) I (might) have, etc.

(que) j'eusse. (que) nous eussions.
 (que) tu eusses. (que) vous eussiez.
 (qu') il eût. (qu') ils eussent.

PRESENT.

(That) I (may) be, etc.

(que) je sois. (que) nous soyons.
 (que) tu sois. (que) vous soyez.
 (qu') il soit. (qu') ils soient.

IMPERFECT.

(That) I (might) be, etc.

(que) je fusse. (que) nous fussions.
 (que) tu fusses. (que) vous fussiez.
 (qu') il fût. (qu') ils fussent.

COMPOUND TENSES.

155. Formation. Compound tenses are formed from the past participle of the principal verb along with an auxiliary verb (usually **avoir**, sometimes **être**), see §§ 227-229.

Avoir.

PERFECT.

To have given.
 avoir donné.

PERFECT.

Having given.
 ayant donné.

Infinitive.

Être.

PERFECT.

To have arrived.
 être arrivé(e)(s).

PERFECT.

Having arrived.
 étant arrivé(e)(s).

Participle.

Indicative.

PAST INDEFINITE.

I have given, etc.
 j'ai donné.
 tu as donné.
 etc.

PLUPERFECT.

I had given, etc.
 j'avais donné.
 etc.

PAST INDEFINITE.

I have arrived, etc.
 je suis arrivé(e).
 tu es arrivé(e).
 etc.

PLUPERFECT.

I had arrived, etc.
 j'étais arrivé(e).
 etc.

PAST ANTERIOR.

I had given, etc.

j'eus donné.

etc.

PAST ANTERIOR.

I had arrived, etc.

je fus arrivé(e).

etc.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

I shall have given, etc.

j'aurai donné.

etc.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

I shall have arrived, etc.

je serai arrivé(e).

etc.

CONDITIONAL ANTERIOR.

I should have given, etc.

j'aurais donné.

etc.

CONDITIONAL ANTERIOR.

I should have arrived, etc.

je serais arrivé(e).

etc.

Subjunctive.

PERFECT.

(That) I (may) have given, etc.

(que) j'aie donné.

etc.

PERFECT.

(That) I (may) have arrived, etc.

(que) je sois arrivé(e).

etc.

PLUPERFECT.

(That) I (might) have given, etc.

(que) j'eusse donné.

etc.

PLUPERFECT.

(That) I (might) have arrived, etc.

(que) je fusse arrivé(e).

etc.

ORTHOGRAPHICAL PECULIARITIES.

156.

Verbs in *-cer* and *-ger*.

1. Verbs in *-cer*, e.g., **avancer** [avüse], 'to advance,' require the [s] sound of c throughout their conjugation, and hence c becomes ç before a or o of an ending (§ 5, 4), but not elsewhere :

<i>Pres. Part.</i>	<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Impf. Indic.</i>	<i>Past Def.</i>	<i>Impf. Subj.</i>
avançant.	avance.	avançais.	avançai.	avançasse.
	avances.	avançais.	avanças.	avançasses.
	avance.	avançait.	avança.	avançât.
	avançons.	avancions.	avançâmes.	avançassions.
	avancez.	avanciez.	avançâtes.	avançassiez.
	avancent.	avançaient.	avancèrent.	avançassent.

2. Verbs in **-ger**, *e.g.*, **manger** [mãʒe], 'to eat,' require the [ʒ] sound of **g** throughout their conjugation, and hence **g** becomes **ge** before **a** or **o** (§ 19, 2), but not elsewhere :

<i>Pres. Part.</i>	<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Impf. Indic.</i>	<i>Past Def.</i>	<i>Impf. Subj.</i>
mangeant.	mange.	mangeais.	mangeai.	mangeasse.
	manges.	mangeais.	mangeas.	mangeasses.
	mange.	mangeait.	mangea.	mangeât.
	mangeons	mangions.	mangeâmes.	mangeassions.
	mangez.	mangiez.	mangeâtes.	mangeassiez.
	mangent.	mangeaient.	mangèrent.	mangeassent.

157.

Verbs in **-yer**.

Verbs in **-oyer** and **-uyer** change **y** to **i** whenever it comes before [ə] in conjugation, but not elsewhere ; verbs in **-ayer** and **-eyer** may either retain **y** throughout, or change it to **i** before [ə] :

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Fut.</i>	<i>Condl.</i>	<i>Pres. Subj.</i>
nettoie, etc.	nettoierai, etc.	nettoierais, etc.	nettoie, etc.
paye, } etc.	payerai, } etc.	payerais, } etc.	paye, } etc.
paie, } etc.	paierai, } etc.	paierais, } etc.	paie, } etc.

158.

Verbs with Stem-vowel **e** or **é**.

Verbs with stem-vowel **e** require the [ɛ] sound of **e** (§ 12, 1) whenever, in conjugation, the next syllable contains [ə] ; so also verbs with the stem-vowel **é**, shown orthographically as follows :—

1. By changing **e** or **é** to **è** (§ 12, 1), *e.g.*, **mener**, 'to lead,' **céder**, 'to yield' :

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	<i>Fut.</i>	<i>Condl.</i>
mène.	mène.	mènerai.	mènerais.
mènes.	mènes.	mèneras.	mènerais.
mène.	mène.	mènera.	mènerait.
menons.	menions.	mènerons.	mènerions.
menez.	meniez.	mèneriez.	mèneriez.
mènent.	mènent.	mèneront.	mèneraient.

But **céder** with the stem-vowel **é** :

cède, etc. **cède, etc.** **céderai** [sedəre], *etc.* **cèderais** [sedəre], *etc.*

Obs. : In **mené-je**? [mənɛːʒ], **e** of the ending is not mute, and hence the stem-vowel **e** is unchanged.

Like **mener** : Verbs with stem-vowel **e** (for exceptions in **-eler** and **-eter**, see below).

Like **céder**: Verbs with stem-vowel *é* + consonant, *e.g.*, **régner**, 'reign,' etc.

NOTE.—Verbs like **créer**, *create*, with stem-vowel followed by a vowel, are regular: *Je crée*, etc.

2. Most verbs in **-eler**, **-eter**, however, indicate the [s] sound by doubling *l* or *t* (§ 12, 1), *e.g.*, **appeler**, 'to call,' **jeter**, 'to throw':

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	<i>Fut.</i>	<i>Cond.</i>
appelle.	appelle.	appellerai.	appellerais.
appelles.	appelles.	appelleras.	appellerais.
appelle.	appelle.	appellera.	appellerait.
appelons.	appelions.	appellerons.	appellerions.
appelez.	appelez.	appellerez.	appelleriez.
appellent.	appellent.	appelleront.	appelleraient.

So also, **jeter**:

jette, etc.	jette, etc.	jetterai, etc.	jetterais, etc.
-------------	-------------	----------------	-----------------

A few verbs in **-eler**, **-eter** take the grave accent precisely like **mener**, *e.g.*, **acheter**, 'to buy':

achète, etc.	achète, etc.	achèterai, etc.	achèterais, etc.
--------------	--------------	-----------------	------------------

Exceptions like **acheter**:

agneler, <i>lamb.</i>	*épousseter, <i>dust.</i>	modeler, <i>model.</i>
becqueter, <i>peck.</i>	étiqueter, <i>label.</i>	peler, <i>peel.</i>
bourreler, <i>goad.</i>	geler, <i>freeze.</i>	rapéceter, <i>piece.</i>
démanteler, <i>dismantle.</i>	harceler, <i>harass.</i>	trompeter, <i>trumpet.</i>
écarteler, <i>quarter.</i>	marteler, <i>hammer.</i>	

**Fut. épousseterai* according to the 'Dictionnaire de l'Académie.

Exceptions like **appeler** or **acheter**:

botteler, <i>bale (hay, etc.).</i>	caqueter, <i>cackle.</i>	crocheter, <i>pick (a lock).</i>
canneler, <i>groove.</i>	ciseler, <i>chisel.</i>	

FORMATION OF TENSES.

159. Principal Parts. By the following rules, the various tenses of all regular verbs and of most irregular verbs may be known from five forms of the verb, called principal parts or primary tenses:—

1. The *Infinitive* gives the *Future* by adding **-ai**, **-as**, **-a**, **-ons**, **-ez**, **-ont**, and the *Conditional* by adding **-ais**, **-ais**, **-ait**, **-ions**, **-iez**,

-aient—dropping the final infinitive **-e** of the third conjugation for both tenses.

2. The *Present Participle* gives the *Imperfect Indicative* by changing **-ant** into **-ais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient**, and the *Present Subjunctive* by changing **-ant** into **-e, -es, -e, -ions, -iez, -ent**.

3. The *Past Participle* gives the *Compound Tenses*, with the auxiliary **avoir** (§227) or **être** (§228), and the *Passive*, with the auxiliary **être** (§239).

4. The *Present Indicative* gives the *Imperative* by dropping the pronoun subject of the second singular and first and second plural, the **-s** of the first conjugation second singular being also dropped, except before **y** and **en** (cf. §370, 3, *obs.* 3, 4).

5. The *Past Definite* gives the *Imperfect Subjunctive* by changing the final letter of the first singular (**-i** or **-s**) into **-sse, -sses, -t, -ssions, -ssiez, -ssent**, and putting a circumflex accent over the last vowel of the third singular.

Obs.: The tenses, except the future and conditional, are not really *derived* from the principal parts, as is sometimes said in grammars; the method is merely an aid to memory.

IRREGULAR VERBS IN -ER.

160.

Aller, 'to go.'

1. *Infinitive*. **aller**; *fut.* ***irai, iras, ira, etc.**; *condl.* **irais, etc.**

2. *Pres. Part.* **allant**; *impf. indic.* **allais, etc.**; *pres. subj.* **aille [a:j], ailles, aille, allions, alliez, aillent.**

3. *Past Part.* **allé**; *past indef.* **je suis allé, etc.**

4. *Pres. Indic.* **vais [ve], vas, va, allons, allez, vont**; *impve.* **va, allons, allez.**

5. *Past Def.* **allai, allas, alla, allâmes, allâtes, allèrent**; *impf. subj.* **allasse, allasses, allât, allassions, allassiez, allassent.**

* The stem of the future is from the Latin infinitive **ire**.

Like **aller** :

s'en aller, go away.

161.

Envoyer, 'to send.'

1. *Infinitive*. **envoyer**; *fut.* **enverrai, etc.**; *condl.* **enverrais, etc.**

2. *Pres. Part.* **envoyant**; *impf. indic.* **envoyais, envoyais, envoyait, envoyions [ävwa:jə], envoyiez, envoyaient**; *pres. subj.* **envoie, envoies, envoie, envoyions [ävwa:jə], envoyiez, envoient.**

3. *Past Part.* **envoyé** ; *past indef.* j'ai envoyé, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **envoie**, envoies, envoie, envoyons, envoyez, envoient ; *impv.* envoie, envoyons, envoyez.

5. *Past Def.* **envoyai**, envoyas, envoya, envoyâmes, envoyâtes, envoyèrent ; *impf. subj.* envoyasse, envoyasses, envoyât, envoyassions, envoyassiez, envoyassent.

Like **envoyer** :

renvoyer, *send away, dismiss.*

IRREGULAR VERBS IN -ir.

162.

Acquérir, 'to acquire.'

1. *Infinitive.* **acquérir** ; *fut.* acquerrai, acquerras, etc. ; *condl.* acquerrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **acquérant** ; *impf. indic.* acquérais, etc. ; *pres. subj.* acquière, acquières, acquière, acquérions, acquériez, acquièrent.

3. *Past Part.* **acquis** ; *past indef.* j'ai acquis, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **acquiers**, acquiers, acquiert, acquérons, acquérez, acquièrent ; *impv.* acquiers, acquérons, acquérez.

5. *Past Def.* **acquis**, acquis, acquit, acquîmes, acquîtes, acquirent ; *impf. subj.* acquisse, acquisses, acquît, acquissions, acquissiez, acquissent.

Like **acquérir** :

conquérir, *conquer.*

*querir or quérir, *seek.*

requérir, *require, claim.*

s'enquérir, *inquire.*

reconquérir, *reconquer.*

* Has only the infinitive.

163.

Bénir, 'to bless.'

Is regular, but has also an irregular past participle **bénit**, used only as adjective :

De l'eau bénite ; du pain bénit. Holy water ; consecrated bread.

164.

Courir, 'to run.'

1. *Infinitive.* **courir** ; *fut.* courrai, courras, etc. ; *condl.* courrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **courant** ; *impf. indic.* courais, etc. ; *pres. subj.* coure, coures, coure, courions, couriez, courent.

3. *Past Part.* **couru** ; *past indef.* j'ai couru, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **cours**, cours, court, courons, courez, courent ; *impv.* cours, courons, courez.

5. *Past Def.* **courus**, courus, courut, courûmes, courûtes, coururent; *impf. subj.* courusse, courusses, courût, courussions, courussiez, courussent.

Like **courir** are its compounds :

accourir, <i>run up, hasten.</i>	discourir, <i>discourse.</i>	recourir, <i>run again, apply.</i>
concourir, <i>co-operate, con-</i>	encourir, <i>incur.</i>	secourir, <i>succor, help.</i>
cur, <i>compete.</i>	parcourir, <i>run over.</i>	

NOTE.—**Courre**, *chase* (a hunting term), sometimes replaces **courir** in the infinitive.

165.

Cueillir, 'to gather,' 'pick.'

1. *Infinitive.* **cueillir**; *fut.* cueilleraï, etc.; *condl.* cueillerais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* **cueillant**; *impf. indic.* cueillais, etc.; *pres. subj.* cueille, cueilles, cueille, cueillions, cueilliez, cueillent.
3. *Past Part.* **cueilli**; *past indef.* j'ai cueilli, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* **cueille**, cueilles, cueille, cueillions, cueillez, cueillent; *impve.* cueille, cueillions, cueillez.
5. *Past Def.* **cueillis**, cueillis, cueillit, cueillîmes, cueillîtes, cueillirent; *impf. subj.* cueillisse, cueillisses, cueillît, cueillissions, cueillissiez, cueillissent.

Obs.: The present indicative, future, and conditional are like those of **donner**.

Like **cueillir** :

accueillir, <i>welcome.</i>	* assaillir, <i>assail.</i>	tressaillir, <i>start.</i>
recueillir, <i>gather, collect.</i>	† saillir, <i>jut out.</i>	

* Regular in future and conditional : **assaillirai**, etc.

† **Saillir**, *gush out, rush forth*, is regular, like **finir**.

166.

Dormir, 'to sleep.'

1. *Infinitive.* **dormir**; *fut.* dormirai, etc.; *condl.* dormirais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* **dormant**; *impf. indic.* dormais, etc.; *pres. subj.* dorme, dormes, dorme, dormions, dormiez, dorment.
3. *Past Part.* **dormi**; *past indef.* j'ai dormi, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* **dors**, dors, dort, dormons, dormez, dorment; *impve.* dors, dormons, dormez.
5. *Past Def.* **dormis**, dormis, dormit, dormîmes, dormîtes, dormirent; *impf. subj.* dormisse, dormisses, dormît, dormissions, dormissiez, dormissent.

Like **dormir** :

endormir, <i>put to sleep.</i>	se rendormir, <i>go to sleep again.</i>	mentir, <i>lie.</i>
s'endormir, <i>fall asleep.</i>		démentir, <i>contradict, belie.</i>
redormir, <i>sleep again.</i>	bouillir, <i>boil.</i>	partir, <i>set out.</i>
rendormir, <i>put to sleep again.</i>	ébouillir, <i>boil away.</i>	départir, <i>distribute.</i>
	rebouillir, <i>boil again.</i>	se départir, <i>desist.</i>

repartir, *set out again,*
reply.

se repentir, *repent.*

sentir, *feel.*

consentir, *consent.*

pressentir, *forebode.*

ressentir, *resent.*

servir, *serve.*

se servir, *make use.*

desservir, *clear the table.*

sortir, *go out.*

ressortir, *go out again.*

NOTE.—**Asservir**, *enslave*, **assortir**, *sort, match*, **ressortir**, *depend (on, à)*, **répartir**, *distribute*, are like **finir**.

Observe the Present Indicative of the following types, which are represented in the above list :

bouillir : bous, bous, bout, bouillons, bouillez, bouillent.

mentir : mens, mens, ment, mentons, mentez, mentent.

partir : pars, pars, part, partons, partez, partent.

se repentir : repens, repens, repent, repentons, repentez, repentent.

sentir : sens, sens, sent, sentons, sentez, sentent.

servir : sers, sers, sert, servons, servez, servent.

sortir : sors, sors, sort, sortons, sortez, sortent.

167.

Faillir, 'to fail.'

1. *Infinitive*. **faillir** ; *fut.* **faudrai**, **faudras**, etc. ; *condl.* **faudrais**, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **faillant** ; *impf. indic.* **faillais**, etc. ; *pres. subj.* **faille**.
failles, **faille**, **faillions**, **failliez**, **faillent**.

3. *Past Part.* **failli** ; *past indef.* **j'ai failli**, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **faux**, **faux**, **faut**, **faillions**, **failliez**, **faillent** ; *impv.*

5. *Past Def.* **faillis**, **faillis**, **faillit**, **faillimes**, **faillîtes**, **faillirent** ; *impf. subj.* **faillisse**, **faillisses**, **faillit**, **faillissions**, **faillissiez**, **faillissent**.

Like **faillir** :

* **défaillir**, *faint, fail*.

* *Pres. indic.* usually **défaus**, **défaus**, **défaut**.

NOTE.—**Faillir**, *fail in business*, is usually like **finir**.

168.

Féris, 'to strike.'

Used only in 'Sans coup **féris**,' 'Without striking a blow,' and in the *past part.* **féru**, *wounded* (a veterinary term).

169.

Fleurir, 'to flourish,' etc.

Pres. Part. **florissant** ; *impf. indic.* **florissais**, etc., when used of persons or a collection of persons, or **flourissais**, etc., when used of things ; otherwise like **finir**.

NOTE.—**Fleurir**, *blossom, bloom* (in a literal sense) is like **finir**.

170. Fuir, 'to flee,' 'fly.'

1. *Infinitive.* fuir ; *fut.* fuirai, etc. ; *condl.* fuirais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* fuyant ; *impf. indic.* fuyais, etc. ; *pres. subj.* fuie, fuies, fuie, fuyions, fuyiez, fuient.
3. *Past Part.* fui ; *past indef.* j'ai fui, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* fuis, fuis, fuit, fuyons, fuyez, fuient ; *impve.* fuis, fuyons, fuyez.
5. *Past Def.* fuis, fuis, fuit, fuîmes, fuîtes, fuirent ; *impf. subj.* fuisse, fuisses, fuît, fuissions, fuissiez, fuissent.

Like fuir :

s'enfuir, flee, escape.

171. Gésir, 'to lie,' 'lie buried.'

1. *Infinitive.* gésir ; *fut.* — ; *condl.* —.
2. *Pres. Part.* gisant ; *impf. indic.* gisais, etc. ; *pres. subj.* —.
3. *Past Part.* —.
4. *Pres. Indic.* —, —, git, gisons, gisez, gisent ; *impve.* —, —, —.
5. *Past Def.* — ; *impf. subj.* —.

NOTE.—Its most frequent use is in epitaphs : 'Ci-git,' 'Here lies,' 'Ci-gisent,' 'Here lie.'

172. Haïr, 'to hate.'

1. *Infinitive.* haïr ; *fut.* haïrai, etc. ; *condl.* haïrais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* haïssant ; *impf. indic.* haïssais, etc. ; *pres. subj.* haïsse, haïsses, haïsse, haïssions, haïssiez, haïssent.
3. *Past Part.* haï ; *past indef.* j'ai haï, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* hais, hais, hait, haïssons, haïssez, haïssent ; *impve.* hais, haïssons, haïssez.
5. *Past Def.* haïs, haïs, haît, haîmes, haîtes, haïrent ; *impf. subj.* haïsse, haïsses, haît, haïssions, haïssiez, haïssent.

Obs. : Haïr loses its diæresis in the present indicative and imperative singular, and takes no circumflex accent ; otherwise like finir.

173. Issir, 'to spring (from, de),' etc.

Used only in the *past part.* issu ; *past indef.* je suis issu, etc.

174. Mourir, 'to die.'

1. *Infinitive.* mourir ; *fut.* mourrai, mourras, etc. ; *condl.* mourrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* mourant; *impf. indic.* mourais, etc.; *pres. subj.* meure, meures, meure, mourions, mouriez, meurent.

3. *Past Part.* mort; *past indef.* je suis mort, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* meurs, meurs, meurt, mourons, mourez, meurent; *impv.* meurs, mourons, mourez.

5. *Past Def.* mourus, mourus, mourut, mourûmes, mourûtes, moururent; *impf. subj.* mourusse, mourusses, mourût, mourussions, mourussiez, mourussent.

Obs. : The stem-vowel becomes eu wherever it bears the stress.

Like mourir :

se mourir, *be dying* (used only in *inf.*, *pres. indic.*, *impf. indic.*).

175.

Oûir, 'to hear.'

Is hardly used beyond the infinitive and past participle : 'J'ai ouï dire.' 'I have heard said,' etc.

176.

Ouvrir, 'to open.'

1. *Infinitive.* ouvrir; *fut.* ouvrirai, etc.; *condl.* ouvrirais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* ouvrant; *impf. indic.* ouvrais, etc.; *pres. subj.* ouvre, ouvre, ouvre, ouvrons, ouvriez, ouvrent.

3. *Past Part.* ouvert; *past indef.* j'ai ouvert, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* ouvre, ouvre, ouvre, ouvrons, ouvrez, ouvrent; *impv.* ouvre, ouvrons, ouvrez.

5. *Past Def.* ouverts, ouverts, ouvrit, ouvrîmes, ouvrîtes, ouvrirent; *impf. subj.* ouvrisse, ouvrisses, ouvrit, ouvrissions, ouvrissiez, ouvrissent.

Obs. : The present indicative is like that of donner.

Like ouvrir .

entr'ouvrir, *open slightly.*

rouvrir, *open again.*

couvrir, *cover.*

découvrir, *discover.*

recouvrir, *cover again.*

offrir, *offer.*

souffrir, *suffer.*

177.

Tenir, 'to hold.'

1. *Infinitive.* tenir; *fut.* tiendrai, tiendras, etc.; *condl.* tiendrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* tenant; *impf. indic.* tenais, etc.; *pres. subj.* tienne, tiennes, tienne, tenions, teniez, tiennent.

3. *Past Part.* tenu; *past indef.* j'ai tenu, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* tiens, tiens, tient, tenons, tenez, tiennent; *impv.* tiens, tenons, tenez.

5. *Past Def.* tins, tins, tint, tîmes [tɛ:m], tintes [tɛ:t], tinrent [tɛ:r]; *impf. subj.* tinsse, [tɛ:s], tinsses, tint, tinssions, tinssiez, tinssent.

Obs.: The stem-vowel becomes **ie** wherever it bears the stress.

Like **tenir** are its compounds :

s'abstenir, *abstain.*

détenir, *detain.*

obtenir, *obtain.*

appartenir, *belong.*

entretenir, *entertain.*

retenir, *retain.*

contenir, *contain.*

maintenir, *maintain.*

soutenir, *sustain.*

178.

Venir, 'to come.'

1. *Infinitive.* venir; *fut.* viendrai, viendras, etc.; *condl.* viendrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* venant; *impf. indic.* venais, etc.; *pres. subj.* vienne, viennes, vienne, venions, venez, viennent.

3. *Past Part.* venu; *past indef.* je suis venu, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* viens, viens, vient, venons, venez, viennent; *impv.* viens, venons, venez.

5. *Past Def.* vins, vins, vint, vîmes [vɛ:m], vîntes [vɛ:t], vinrent [vɛ:r]; *impf. subj.* vinsse [vɛ:s], vinsses, vint, vinssions, vinssiez, vinssent.

Obs.: 1. The stem-vowel becomes **ie** wherever it bears the stress. 2. **Venir** is precisely like **tenir** in its irregularities, but owing to its difficulty it is given in full.

Like **venir** are its compounds :

avenir, *happen* (3 sg. only). disconvenir, *be discordant.*

redevenir, *become again.*

advenir, *happen* (3 sg. only). intervenir, *intervene.*

se souvenir, *recollect.*

convenir, *agree, suit.*

parvenir, *attain.*

subvenir, *aid.*

contrevénir, *violate.*

prévenir, *prevent.*

survenir, *occur.*

circonvenir, *circumvent.*

provenir, *proceed* (from, de).

se ressouvenir, *recollect.*

devenir, *become.*

revenir, *come back.*

179.

Vêtir, 'to clothe.'

1. *Infinitive.* vêtir; *fut.* vêtirai, etc.; *condl.* vêtirais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* vêtant; *impf. indic.* vêtais, etc.; *pres. subj.* vête, vêtes, vête, vêtions, vêtiez, vêtent.

3. *Past Part.* vêtu; *past indef.* j'ai vêtu, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* vêts, vêts, vêt, vêtons, vêtez, vêtent; *impv.* vêts, vêtons, vêtez.

5. *Past Def.* vêtis, vêtis, vêtit, vêtîmes, vêtîtes, vêtirent; *impf. subj.* vêtisse, vêtisses, vêtît, vêtissions, vêtissiez, vêtissent.

Like **vêtir** :

dévêtir, *divest.*

revêtir, *clothe, invest.*

se revêtir, *put on clothing.*

se dévêtir, *takes off clothing.*

IRREGULAR VERBS IN -re.

180. Battre, 'to beat.'

Loses one t in the present indicative singular: **Bats, bats, bat**; otherwise like **rompre**.

Like **battre** :

abattre, *fell*.

débattre, *debate*.

rabattre, *beat down*.

combattre, *fight, oppose*.

se débattre, *struggle*.

181. Boire, 'to drink.'

1. *Infinitive*. boire; *fut.* boirai, etc.; *condl.* boirais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* buvant; *impf. indic.* buvais, etc.; *pres. subj.* boive, boives, boive, buvions, buviez, boivent.
3. *Past Part.* bu; *past indef.* j'ai bu, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* bois, bois, boit, buvons, buvez, boivent; *impve.* bois, buvons, buvez.
5. *Past Def.* bus, bus, but, bûmes, bûtes, burent; *impf. subj.* busse, bussés, bût, bussions, bussiez, bussent.

Like **boire** :

emboire, *coat (in painting)*.

imboire, *imbibe, imbue*.

* s'emboire, *become dull*.

reboire, *drink again*.

* used in third person.

182. Bruire, 'to murmur,' 'rustle.'

1. *Infinitive*. bruire; *fut.* bruirai, etc.; *condl.* bruirais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* bruyant; *impf. indic.* bruyais, etc.; *pres. subj.* —.
3. *Past Part.* bruit; *past indef.* j'ai bruit, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* bruiss, bruiss, bruit, —, —, —; *impve.* —.
5. *Past Def.* —; *impf. subj.* —.

NOTES.—1. The *pres. part.* **bruyant**, *noisy*, is used as adjective only. 2. The forms **bruissant**, **bruissais**, etc., **bruiss**, etc., are also in use.

183. Clore, 'to close,' 'enclose.'

1. *Infinitive*. clore; *fut.* clorai, etc.; *condl.* clorais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* —; *impf. indic.* —; *pres. subj.* close, closes, close, closions, closiez, closent.
3. *Past Part.* clos; *past indef.* j'ai clos, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* clos, clos, clôt, —, —, —; *impve.* —.
5. *Past Def.* —; *impf. subj.* —.

Like **clore** :déclore, *throw open*.† enclore, *inclose*.* éclore, *hatch, open* (of flowers).†† forclore, *foreclose, debar*.

* Has also *pres. plur. éclosions*, etc.; *impf. indic. éclosais*, etc. Its future and conditional have circumflex, *éclôrai*, etc.

† Has also *pres. plur. enclosions*, etc.; *pres. part. enclosant*; *impf. indic. enclosais*, etc.

†† Hardly used beyond the infinitive, past participle, and compound tenses.

184.

Conclure, 'to conclude.'

1. *Infinitive. conclure*; *fut. conclurai*, etc.; *condl. conclurais*, etc.

2. *Pres. Part. concluant*; *impf. indic. concluais*, etc.; *pres. subj. conclue, conclues, conclue, concluions, concluez, concluent*.

3. *Past Part. conclu*; *past indef. j'ai conclu*, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic. conclus, conclus, conclut, concluons, concluez, concluent*; *impve. conclus, concluons, concluez*.

5. *Past Def. conclus, conclus, conclut, conclûmes, conclûtes, conclurent*; *impf. subj. conclusse, conclusses, conclût, conclusions, conclussiez, conclussent*.

Like **conclure** :exclure, *exclude*.* inclure, *inclose*.† reclure, *shut up*.* *Past Part. inclus*.

† Used only in *infin.*, *past part.*, and *comp. tenses*. *Past part. reclus*.

185.

Conduire, 'to conduct,' etc.

1. *Infinitive. conduire*; *fut. conduirai*, etc.; *condl. conduirais*, etc.

2. *Pres. Part. conduisant*; *impf. indic. conduisais*, etc.; *pres. subj. conduise, conduises, conduise, conduisions, conduisiez, conduisent*.

3. *Past Part. conduit*; *past indef. j'ai conduit*, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic. conduis, conduis, conduit, conduisons, conduisez, conduisent*; *impve. conduis, conduisons, conduisez*.

5. *Past Def. conduisis, conduisis, conduisit, conduisîmes, conduisîtes, conduisirent*; *impf. subj. conduisisse, conduisisses, conduisît, conduisissions, conduisissiez, conduisissent*.

Like **conduire** :se conduire, *conduct one's self*.déduire, *deduct*.réduire, *reduce*.éconduire, *show out, dismiss*.enduire, *coat (with plaster)*.reproduire, *reproduce*.reconduire, *lead back*.induire, *induce*.séduire, *seducer*.*duire, *please, suit*.introduire, *introduce*.traduire, *translate*.produire, *produce*.construire, *construct*.

démonstruire, *take apart*.détruire, *destroy*.† luire, *shine*.instruire, *instruct*.cuire, *cook*.† reluire, *glisten*.reconstruire, *reconstruct*.recuire, *cook again*.† nuire, *injure*.

* Only in third sing. and plu. pres. indic. and third sing. impf. indic. Obsolete.

† Past part. lui and relui respectively. No past def. or impf. subj.

† Past part. nul.

186.

Être, 'to be.'

See § 154 for the full conjugation.

187.

Confire, 'to preserve,' etc.

1. *Infinitive*. confire; *fut.* confirai, etc.; *condl.* confirais, etc.2. *Pres. Part.* confisant; *impf. indic.* confisais, etc.; *pres. subj.* confise, confises, confise, confisions, confisiez, confisent.3. *Past Part.* confit; *past indef.* j'ai confit, etc.4. *Pres. Indic.* confis, confis, confit, confisons, confisez, confisent; *impv.* confis, confisons, confisez.5. *Past Def.* confis, confis, confit, confimes, confites, confirent; *impf. subj.* confisse, confisses, confit, confissions, confissiez, confissent.

Like confire :

déconfire, *disconfit*. circoncire (p.p. -cis), *circumcise*. suffire (p.p. suffi), *suffice*.

188.

Connaître, 'to know,' etc.

1. *Infinitive*. connaître; *fut.* connaîtrai, etc.; *condl.* connaîtrais, etc.2. *Pres. Part.* connaissant; *impf. indic.* connaissais, etc.; *pres. subj.* connaisse, connaises, connaisse, connaisons, connaissiez, connaissent.3. *Past Part.* connu; j'ai connu, etc.4. *Pres. Indic.* connais, connais, connaît, connaissons, connaissez, connaissent; *impv.* connais, connaissons, connaissez.5. *Past Def.* connus, connus, connu, connus, connus, connus; *impf. subj.* connusse, connusses, connût, connussions, connussiez, connussent.

Obs. : Stem-vowel i has circumflex (î) everywhere before t.

Like connaître :

méconnaître, *not to know*.comparaître, *appear* (law term).*pâtre, *graze*.reconnaître, *recognize*.disparaître, *disappear*.repâtre, *feed, feast*.paraître, *appear*.reparaître, *reappear*.se repâtre, *feed, feast*.apparaître, *appear*.

* Lacks the past part., past def., and impf. subj.

NOTE.—Apparoître (also used in third singular il appert, 'it appears') and comparoître, are infinitive archaic variants of apparaître and comparaître.

189. Coudre, 'to sew.'

1. *Infinitive.* **coudre**; *fut.* coudrai, etc.; *condl.* coudrais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* **cousant**; *impf. indic.* cousais, etc.; *pres. subj.* couse, couses, couse, cousions, cousiez, cousent.
3. *Past Part.* **cousu**; *past indef.* j'ai cousu, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* **couds**, couds, coud, cousons, cousez, cousent; *impv.* couds, cousons, cousez.
5. *Past Def.* **cousis**, cousis, cousit, cousîmes, cousîtes, cousirent; *impf. subj.* cousisse, cousisses, cousît, cousissions, cousissiez, cousissent.

Like **coudre** :

découdre, *rip, unsew.*

recoudre, *sew again.*

190. Craindre, 'to fear.'

1. *Infinitive.* **craindre**; *fut.* craindrai, etc.; *condl.* craindrais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* **craignant**; *impf. indic.* craignais, etc.; *pres. subj.* craigne, craignes, craigne, craignons, craigniez, craignent.
3. *Past Part.* **craint**; *past indef.* j'ai craint, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* **crains**, crains, craint, craignons, craignez, craignent; *impv.* crains, craignons, craignez.
5. *Past Def.* **craignis**, craignis, craignit, craignîmes, craignîtes, craignirent; *impf. subj.* craignisse, craignisses, craignît, craignissions, craignissiez, craignissent.

Like **craindre** :

in **-aindre** :
contraindre, *constrain.*
plaindre, *pity.*

se plaindre, *complain.*

in **-eindre** :

astreindre, *abstract.*

atteindre, *attain.*

ceindre, *enclose, gird, gird on (a sword, etc.).*

dépeindre, *depict.*

empreindre, *imprint.*

enceindre, *gird.*

enfreindre, *infringe.*
épreindre, *squeeze out.*

éteindre, *extinguish.*

étreindre, *draw tight.*

feindre, *feign.*

geindre, *groan.*

peindre, *paint.*

ratteindre, *overtake.*

repeindre, *paint again.*

restreindre, *restrain.*

teindre, *dye.*

déteindre, *fade.*

reteindre, *dye again.*

in **-oindre** :

joindre, *join.*

adjoindre, *adjoin.*

conjoindre, *conjoin.*

déjoindre, *disjoin.*

disjoindre, *disjoin.*

enjoindre, *enjoin.*

rejoindre, *rejoin.*

oindre, *anoint.*

* **poindre**, *dawn.*

* Hardly used beyond the infinitive and future.

191. Croire, 'to believe.'

1. *Infinitive.* **croire**; *fut.* croirai, etc.; *condl.* croirais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* **croyant**; *impf. indic.* croyais, etc.; *pres. subj.* croie, croies, croie, croyions, croyiez, croient.

3. *Past Part.* **cru** ; *past indef.* j'ai cru, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **crois**, crois, croit, croyons, croyez, croient ; *impv.* crois, croyons, croyez.

5. *Past Def.* **crus**, crus, crut, eûmes, crûtes, crurent ; *impf. subj.* crusse, crusses, crût, crussions, crussiez, crussent.

Like **croire** :

* *accroire*, believe (an untruth).

† *décroire*, disbelieve.

* Found only in **faire accroire**, to cause to believe (an untruth).

† Used only in 'je ne crois ni ne **décrois**,' 'I neither believe nor disbelieve.'

192.

Croître, 'to grow.'

1. *Infinitive.* **croître** ; *fut.* croîtrai, etc. ; *condl.* croitrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **croissant** ; *impf. indic.* croissais, etc. ; *pres. subj.* croisse, croisses, croisse, croissions, croissiez, croissent.

3. *Past Part.* **crû** (f. crue) ; *past indef.* j'ai crû, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **crois**, crois, croît, croissons, croissez, croissent ; *impv.* crois, croissons, croissez.

5. *Past Def.* **crûs**, crûs, crût, eûmes, crûtes, crurent ; *impf. subj.* crûsse, crûsses, crût, crûssions, crûssiez, crûssent.

Obs.: The circumflex accent distinguishes otherwise like forms of **croître** and **croûre**, but is optional in the imperfect subjunctive (except the third singular).

Like **croître** :

* *accroître*, increase.
décroître, decrease.

* *recroître*, grow again.

* *surcroître*, overgrow.

* No circumflex in past participle, past definite third singular and third plural.

193.

Dire, 'to say,' 'tell.'

1. *Infinitive.* **dire** ; *fut.* dirai, etc. ; *condl.* dirais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **disant** ; *impf. indic.* disais, etc. ; *pres. subj.* dise, dises, dise, disions, disiez, disent.

3. *Past Part.* **dit** ; *past indef.* j'ai dit, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **dis**, dis, dit, disons, dites, disent ; *impv.* dis, disons, dites.

5. *Past Def.* **dis**, dis, dit, dîmes, dîtes, dirent ; *impf. subj.* disse, disses, dît, dissions, dissiez, dissent.

Like **dire** :

* *contredire*, contradict.

* *interdire*, interdict.

* *prédire*, predict.

* *dédire*, retract, deny.

* *médire* (de), slander.

redire, say again.

* The 2d plur. pres. indic. and impv. is: **Contredisez**, **dédisez**, **interdisez**, etc.

NOTE.—**Maudire** is like **dire** only in infinitive, past participle (**maudit**), future and conditional ; otherwise like **finir**.

194.

Écrire, 'to write.'

x f

1. *Infinitive*. écrire ; *fut.* écrirai, etc., *condl.* écrirais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* écrivant ; *impf. indic.* écrivais, etc., *pres. subj.* écrive, écrives, écrive, écrivions, écriviez, écrivent.
3. *Past Part.* écrit ; *past indef.* j'ai écrit, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* écris, écris, écrit, écrivons, écrivez, écrivent ; *impv.* écris, écrivons, écrivez.
5. *Past Def.* écrivis, écrivis, écrivit, écrivîmes, écrivîtes, écrivirent ; *impf. subj.* écrivisse, écrivisses, écrivît, écrivissions, écrivissiez, écrivissent.

Like écrire are all verbs in -(s)crire :

circonscrire, circumscrire.	prescrire, prescribe.	souscrire, subscribe.
décrire, describe.	proscrire, proscribe.	transcrire, transcribe.
inscrire, inscribe.	récrire, rewrite.	

195.

Faire, 'to do,' 'make.'

1. *Infinitive*. faire ; *fut.* ferai [fœre], etc., *condl.* ferais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* faisant [fœzō] ; *impf. indic.* faisais [fœzε], etc., *pres. subj.* fasse, fasses, fasse, fassions, fassiez, fassent.
3. *Past Part.* fait ; *past indef.* j'ai fait, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* fais, fais, fait, faisons [fœzō], faites, font ; *impv.* fais, faisons, faites.
5. *Past Def.* fis, fis, fit, fîmes, fîtes, firent ; *impf. subj.* fisse, fisses, fît, fissions, fissiez, fissent.

Like faire :

contrefaire, imitate.	méfaire, harm.	refaire, do again.
défaire, undo.	parfaire, complete.	satisfaire, satisfy.
fortfaire, forfeit.	redéfaire, undo again.	surfaire, overcharge.
*malfaire, do ill.		

* Used in infinitive only.

196.

Frire, 'to fry' (intr.).

1. *Infinitive*. frire ; *fut.* frirai, etc., *condl.* frirais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* — ; *impf. indic.* — ; *pres. subj.* —.
3. *Past Part.* frit ; *past indef.* j'ai frit, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* fris, fris, frit, —, —, — ; *impv.* fris, —, —.
5. *Past Def.* — ; *impf. subj.* —.

197.

Lire, 'to read.'

1. *Infinitive.* lire ; *fut.* lirai, etc. ; *condl.* lirais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* lisant ; *impf. indic.* lisais, etc. ; *pres. subj.* lise, lises, lise, lisions, lisiez, lisent.
3. *Past Part.* lu ; *past indef.* j'ai lu, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* lis, lis, lit, lisons, lisez, lisent ; *impv.* lis, lisons, lisez.
5. *Past Def.* lus, lus, lut, lûmes, lûtes, lurent ; *impf. subj.* lusse, lusses, lût, lussions, lussiez, lussent.

Like lire :

élire, *elect.*réélire, *re-elect.*relire, *read again.*

198.

Mettre, 'to place,' 'put.'

- Infinitive.* mettre ; *fut.* mettrai, etc. ; *condl.* mettrais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* mettant ; *impf. indic.* mettais, etc. ; *pres. subj.* mette, mettes, mette, mettions, mettiez, mettent.
 3. *Past Part.* mis ; *past indef.* j'ai mis, etc.
 4. *Pres. Indic.* mets, mets, met, mettons, mettez, mettent ; *impv.* mets, mettons, mettez.
 5. *Past Def.* mis, mis, mit, mîmes, mîtes, mirent ; *impf. subj.* misse, misses, mît, missions, missiez, missent.

Like mettre :

se mettre, *begin.*admettre, *admit.*commettre, *commit.*compromettre, *compromise.*démettre, *dismiss.*émettre, *emit.*s'entremettre, *interpose.*omettre, *omit.*permettre, *permit.*promettre, *promise.*remettre, *put back, hand to.*repromettre, *promise again.*soumettre, *submit.*transmettre, *transmit.*

199.

Moudre, 'to grind.'

1. *Infinitive.* moudre ; *fut.* moudrai, etc. ; *condl.* moudrais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* moulant ; *impf. indic.* moulais, etc. ; *pres. subj.* moule, moules, moule, moulions, mouliez, moulent.
3. *Past Part.* moulu ; *past indef.* j'ai moulu, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* mouds, mouds, moud, moulons, moulez, moulent ; *impv.* mouds, moulons, moulez.
5. *Past Def.* moulus, moulus, moulut, moulûmes, moulûtes, moulurent ; *impf. subj.* moulusse, moulusses, moulût, moulussions, moulussiez, moulussent.

Like moudre :

émoudre, *whet.*remoudre, *grind again.*rémoudre, *sharpen.*

200. Naître, 'to be born,' etc.

1. *Infinitive.* naître; *fut.* naîtrai, etc.; *condl.* naîtrais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* naissant; *impf. indic.* naissais, etc.; *pres. subj.* naisse, naisses, naisse, naissions, naissiez, naissent.
3. *Past Part.* né; *past indef.* je suis né, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* nais, nais, naît, naissions, naissez, naissent; *impve.* nais, naissions, naissez.
5. *Past Def.* naquis, naquit, naquîmes, naquîtes, naquirent; *impf. subj.* naquisse, naquisses, naquît, naquissions, naquissiez, naquissent.

Obs.: Stem-vowel *i* has the circumflex (*î*) everywhere before *t*.

Like *naître* :

renaître, *revive*.

201. Plaire, 'to please.'

1. *Infinitive.* plaire; *fut.* plairai, etc.; *condl.* plairais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* plaisant; *impf. indic.* plaisais, etc.; *pres. subj.* plaise, plaisses, plaise, plaissions, plaissiez, plaisent.
3. *Past Part.* plu; *past indef.* j'ai plu, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* plais, plais, plaît, plaissions, plaisez, plaisent; *impve.* plais, plaissions, plaisez.
5. *Past Def.* plus, plus, plut, plûmes, plûtes, plurent; *impf. subj.* plusse, plusses, plût, plussions, plussiez, plussent.

Like *plaire* :

complaire, *humour*.

déplaire, *displease*.

*taire, *say nothing about*.

**Il tait* has no circumflex.

202. Prendre, 'to take.'

1. *Infinitive.* prendre; *fut.* prendrai, etc.; *condl.* prendrais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* prenant; *impf. indic.* prenais, etc.; *pres. subj.* prenne, prennnes, prenne, prennions, preniez, prennent.
3. *Past Part.* pris; *past indef.* j'ai pris, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* prends, prends, prend, prenons, prenez, prennent; *impve.* prends, prenons, prenez.
5. *Past Def.* pris, pris, prit, primes, prîtes, prirent; *impf. subj.* prisse, prisses, prit, prissions, prissiez, prissent.

Like *prendre* are its compounds :

apprendre, *learn*.

entreprendre, *undertake*.

rapprendre, *learn again*.

déprendre, *part*.

s'éprendre, *be taken*.

reprendre, *take back*.

désapprendre, *unlearn*.

se méprendre, *be mistaken*.

surprendre, *surprise*.

comprendre, *understand*.

203.

Résoudre, 'to resolve.'

1. *Infinitive*. résoudre; *fut.* résoudrai, etc.; *condl.* résoudrais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* résolvant; *impf. indic.* résolvais, etc.; *pres. subj.* résolve, résolves, résolve, résolvions, résolviez, résolvent.
3. *Past Part.* résolu and résous; *past indef.* j'ai résolu, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* résous, résous, résout, résolvons, résolvez, résolvent; *impve.* résous, résolvons, résolvez.
5. *Past Def.* résolu, résolu, résolut, résolûmes, résolûtes, résolurent; *impf. subj.* résolusse, résolusses, résolut, résolussions, résolussiez, résolussent.

Like résoudre :

* absoudre, absolve.

* dissoudre, dissolve.

* *Past part.* absous (f. absoute), dissous (f. dissoute), respectively, lack the past definite and imperfect subjunctive.

204.

Rire, 'to laugh.'

1. *Infinitive*. rire; *fut.* rirai, etc.; *condl.* rirais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* riant; *impf. indic.* riaais, etc.; *pres. subj.* rie, ries, rie, riions, riez, rient.
3. *Past Part.* ri; *past indef.* j'ai ri, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* ris, ris, rit, rions, riez, rient; *impve.* ris, rions, riez.
5. *Past Def.* ris, ris, rit, rîmes, rîtes, rirent; *impf. subj.* risse, risses, rit, rissions, rissiez, rissent.

Like rire :

se rire, make sport (of, de).

sourire, smile.

205.

Sourdre, 'to rise,' etc.

1. *Infinitive*. sourdre; *fut.* il sourdra; *condl.* il sourdrait.
2. *Pres. Part.* sourdant; *impf. indic.* il sourdait; *pres. subj.* il sourde.
3. *Past Part.* —; *past indef.* —.
4. *Pres. Indic.* —, —, sourd, —, —, sourdent; *impve.* —.
5. *Past Def.* il sourdit; *impf. subj.* il sourdit.

NOTE.—Little used beyond the infin. and third sing. pres. indic.

206.

Suivre, 'to follow.'

1. *Infinitive*. suivre; *fut.* suivrai, etc.; *condl.* suivrais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* suivant; *impf. indic.* suivais, etc.; *pres. subj.* suive, suives, suive, suivions, suiviez, suivent.

3. *Past Part.* **suivi** ; *past indef.* j'ai suivi, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **suis**, suis, suit, suivons, suivez, suivent ; *impv.* suis, suivons, suivez.

5. *Past Def.* **suivis**, suivis, suivit, suivîmes, suivîtes, suivirent ; *impf. subj.* suivisse, suivisses, suivît, suivissions, suivissiez, suivissent.

Like **suivre** :

s'ensuivre (impers.), *it follows*.

poursuivre, *pursue*.

207. Tistre, 'to weave.'

Used only in the *past part.* **tissu**, and compound tenses.

208. Traire, 'to milk.'

1. *Infinitive.* **traire** ; *fut.* trairai, etc. ; *condl.* trairais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **trayant** ; *impf. indic.* trayais, etc. ; *pres. subj.* traie, traies, traie, trayions, trayiez, traient.

3. *Past Part.* **trait** ; *past indef.* j'ai trait, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **trais**, trais, trait, trayons, trayez, traient ; *impv.* trais, trayons, trayez.

5. *Past Def.* — ; *impf. subj.* —.

Like **traire** :

abstraire, *abstract*.

extraire, *extract*.

soustraire, *subtract*.

attirer, *attract* (infin. only). *retraire*, *darn*.

* *braire*, *bray*.

distraindre, *distract*.

retraire, *redeem* (legal).

* Commonly used only in the infin. and the third pers. pres. indic. fut. and condl.

209. Vaincre, 'to conquer.'

1. *Infinitive.* **vaincre** ; *fut.* vaincrai, etc. ; *condl.* vaincrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **vainquant** ; *impf. indic.* vainquais, etc. ; *pres. subj.* vainque, vainques, vainque, vainquions, vainquiez, vainquent.

3. *Past Part.* **vaincu** ; *past indef.* j'ai vaincu, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **vaincs** [vɛ̃], vaincs, vainc, vainquons, vainquez, vainquent ; *impv.* vaincs, vainquons, vainquez.

5. *Past Def.* **vainquis**, vainquis, vainquit, vainquîmes, vainquîtes, vainquirent ; *impf. subj.* vainquisse, vainquisses, vainquît, vainquissions, vainquissiez, vainquissent.

Obs. : Stem **c** [k] becomes **qu** [k] before any vowel except **u**.

Like **vaincre** :

convaincre, *convince*.

210.

Vendre, 'to sell.'

Irregular only in third singular present indicative: Il **vend** (t omitted).

Like **vendre** :

All verbs in **-andre, -endre*, -ordre, -ondre, -ordre**.

* Except **prendre, reprendre, surprendre**, etc.

211.

Vivre, 'to live.'

1. *Infinitive*. **vivre** ; *fut.* vivrai, etc. ; *condl.* vivrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **vivant** ; *impf. indic.* vivais, etc. ; *pres. subj.*, vive, vives, vive, vivions, vivez, vivent.

3. *Past Part.* **vécu** ; *past indef.* j'ai vécu, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **vis**, vis, vit, vivons, vivez, vivent ; *impve.*, vis, vivons, vivez.

5. *Past Def.* **vécus**, vécus, vécu, vécûmes, vécûtes, vécurent ; *impf. subj.* vécusse, vécusses, vécût, vécussions, vécussiez, vécussent.

Like **vivre** :

revivre, revive.

survivre, survive.

IRREGULAR VERBS IN **-oir**.

NOTE.—The few verbs in **-oir**, which are all irregular, form, in some grammars, a separate conjugation, the third, verbs in **-re** being the fourth.

212.

Avoir, 'to have.'

See §154 for the full conjugation of this verb.

Like **avoir** :

* **ravoir**, have again.

* Used only in the infinitive.

213.

Recevoir, 'to receive.'

1. *Infinitive*. **recevoir** ; *fut.* recevrai, etc. ; *condl.* recevrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **recevant** ; *impf. indic.* recevais, etc. ; *pres. subj.* reçoive, reçoives, reçoive, recevions, receviez, reçoivent.

3. *Past Part.* **reçu** ; *past indef.* j'ai reçu, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **reçois**, reçois, reçoit, recevons, recevez, reçoivent ; *impve.* reçois, recevons, recevez.

5. *Past def.* reçus, reçus, reçut, reçûmes, reçûtes, reçurent; *impf. subj.* reçusse, reçusses, reçût, reçussions, reçussiez, reçussent.

Obs.: 1. Stem-vowel becomes *oi* wherever it bears the stress. 2. Stem *c* [s] is written *ç* [s] before *o* or *u* (§ 5, 4).

Like *recevoir* :

apercevoir, perceive.
concevoir, conceive.

décevoir, deceive.

percevoir, collect taxes.

214.

Devoir, 'to owe.'

1. *Infinitive.* *devoir*; *fut.* devrai, etc.; *condl.* devrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* *devant*; *impf. indic.* devais, etc.; *pres. subj.* doive, doives, doive, devions, deviez, doivent.

3. *Past Part.* dû (f. due, pl. du(e)s); *past indef.* j'ai dû, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* dois, dois, doit, devons, devez, doivent; *impv.* —.

5. *Past Def.* dus, dus, dut, dûmes, dûtes, durent; *impf. subj.* dusse, dusses, dût, dussions, dussiez, dussent.

NOTE.—*Devoir* follows the *recevoir* model, but, as its forms present some difficulty, they have been given in full.

Like *devoir* :

redevoir, still owe.

215.

Asseoir, 'to seat.'

1. *Infinitive.* *asseoir*; *fut.* assierai, etc., or *asseyerai*, etc., or *assoirai*, etc.; *condl.* assierais, etc., or *asseyerai*, etc., or *assoirai*, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* *asseyant* or *assoissant*; *impf. indic.* asseyais, etc., or *assoissais*, etc.; *pres. subj.* asseye, asseyes, asseye, asseyions, asseyiez, asseyent, or *assoie*, *assoies*, *assoie*, *assoissions*, *assoissiez*, *assoissent*.

3. *Past Part.* assis; *past indef.* j'ai assis, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* assieds, assieds, assied, asseyons, asseyez, asseyent, or *assois*, *assois*, *assoit*, *assoions*, *assoiez*, *assoient*; *impv.* assieds, asseyons, asseyez, or *assois*, *assoions*, *assoiez*.

5. *Past Def.* assis, assis, assit, assîmes, assîtes, assirent; *impf. subj.* assisse, assisses, assît, assissions, assissiez, assissent.

Like *asseoir* :

s'asseoir, sit down.

se rasseoir, sit down again.

** messeoir, fit badly.*

rasseoir, reseal, calm.

** seoir, be becoming.*

† surseoir, suspend, reprieve.

* Used in third person of the following: *Pres. indic.* sied, siént (messied, messiéent); *impf. indic.* seyait, seyaient (messeyait, messeyaient); *pres. subj.* siée, siéent (messiée, messiéent); *fut.* siéra, siéront (messiéra, messiéront); *condl.* siérait, siéraient (messiérait, messiéaient).

† Like the forms in *oi* (*oy*) of *asseoir*, but *fut.* and *condl.* surseoirai(s).

216. Déchoir, 'to decline,' etc.

1. *Infinitive.* **déchoir** ; *fut.* décherrai, etc. ; *condl.* décherrais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* — ; *impf. indic.* — ; *pres. subj.* déchoie, déchoies, déchoie, déchoyions, déchoyez, déchoient.
3. *Past Part.* déchu ; *past indef.* j'ai déchu or je suis déchu, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* **déchois**, déchois, déchoit, déchoyons, déchoyez, déchoient ; *impve.* déchois, déchoyons, déchoyez.
5. *Past Def.* **déchus**, déchus, déchut, déchûmes, déchûtes, déchurent ; *impf. subj.* déchusse, déchusses, déchût, déchussions, déchussiez, déchussent.

Like **déchoir** :

*choir, *fall*.

*rechoir, *fall again*.

*Hardly used beyond the infin. and comp. tenses.

217. Échoir, 'fall due,' etc.

1. *Infinitive.* **échoir** ; *fut.* il *écherra ; *condl.* il *écherrait.
2. *Pres. Part.* **échéant** ; *impf. indic.* il échoyait ; *pres. subj.* il échoie.
3. *Past Part.* échu ; *past indef.* je suis échu, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* —, —, échoit or échet, —, —, échoient or échéent ; *impve.* —.
5. *Past Def.* —, —, il échut ; —, —, ils échurent ; *impf. subj.* il échût.

* Or regular : il **échoira**(it).

218. Falloir, 'must,' etc. (impers.).

1. *Infinitive.* **falloir** ; *fut.* il faudra ; *condl.* il faudrait.
2. *Pres. Part.* — ; *impf. indic.* il fallait ; *pres. subj.* il faille.
3. *Past Part.* fallu ; *past indef.* il a fallu.
4. *Pres. Indic.* il faut ; *impve.* —.
5. *Past Def.* il fallut ; *impf. subj.* il fallût.

219. Mouvoir, 'to move.'

1. *Infinitive.* **mouvoir** ; *fut.* mouvrai, etc. ; *condl.* mouvrais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* **mouvant** ; *impf. indic.* mouvais, etc. ; *pres. subj.* meuve, meuves, meuve, mouvions, moviez, meuvent.
3. *Past Part.* mû (f. mue, pl. mu(e)s) ; *past indef.* j'ai mû, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* **meus**, meus, meut, mouvons, mouvez, meuvent ; *impve.* meus, mouvons, mouvez.

5. *Past Def.* mus, mus, mut, mûmes, mûtes, murent; *impf. subj.* musse, musses, mût, mussions, mussiez, mussent.

Obs.: Stem-vowel becomes **eu** wherever stressed.

Like **mouvoir** :

*émouvoir, *arouse*.

*promouvoir, *promote*.

* *Past participle has no circumflex accent.*

220. Pleuvoir, 'to rain' (impers.).

1. *Infinitive.* pleuvoir; *fut.* il pleuvra; *condl.* il pleuvrait.

2. *Pres. Part.* pleuvant; *impf. indic.* il pleuvait; *pres. subj.* il pleuve.

3. *Past Part.* plu; *past indef.* il a plu.

4. *Pres. Indic.* il pleut; *impv.* —.

5. *Past Def.* il plut; *impf. subj.* il plût.

221. Pouvoir, 'to be able,' etc.

1. *Infinitive.* pouvoir; *fut.* pourrai, etc.; *condl.* pourrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* pouvant; *impf. indic.* pouvais, etc.; *pres. subj.* puisse, puisses, puisse, puissions, puissiez, pussent.

3. *Past Part.* pu; *past indef.* j'ai pu.

4. *Pres. Indic.* puis or peux, peux, peut, pouvons, pouvez, peuvent; *impv.* —.

5. *Past Def.* pus, pus, put, pûmes, pûtes, purent; *impf. subj.* pusse, pussés, pût, pussions, pussiez, pussent.

Obs.: The first sing. pres. indic. in negation is usually 'Je ne peux pas,' or 'je ne puis'; in questions, only 'puis-je?'; otherwise 'puis' or 'peux.'

222. Savoir, 'to know,' etc.

1. *Infinitive.* savoir; *fut.* saurai, etc.; *condl.* saurais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* sachant; *impf. indic.* savais, etc.; *pres. subj.* sache, saches, sache, sachions, sachiez, sachent.

3. *Past Part.* su; *past indef.* j'ai su, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* sais [se], suis, sait, savons, savez, savent; *impv.* sache, sachons, sachez.

5. *Past Def.* sus, sus, sut, sûmes, sûtes, surent; *impf. subj.* susse, susses, sût, sussions, sussiez, sussent.

223. Valoir, 'to be worth.'

1. *Infinitive.* valoir; *fut.* vaudrai, etc.; *condl.* vaudrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* valant; *impf. indic.* valais, etc.; *pres. subj.* vaille, vailles, vaille, valions, valiez, vaillent.

3. *Past Part.* **valu** ; *past indef.* j'ai valu, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **vaux**, vaux, vaut, valons, valez, valent ; *impv.* vaux, valons, valez.

5. *Past Def.* **valus**, valus, valut, valûmes, valûtes, valurent ; *impf. subj.* valusse, valusses, valût, valussions, valussiez, valussent.

Like **valoir** :

équivaloir, *be equivalent.*

* *prévaloir, prevail.*

† *chaloir.*

revaloir, *pay back, return*

like for like.

* *Pres. subj. prévale, etc.*

† *Hardly used beyond, 'Il ne me chaut de,' 'I care not for.'*

224.

Voir, 'to see.'

1. *Infinitive.* **voir** ; *fut.* verrai, etc. ; *condl.* verrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **voyant** ; *impf. indic.* voyais, etc. ; *pres. subj.* voie, voies, voie, voyions, voyiez, voient.

3. *Past Part.* **vu** ; *past indef.* j'ai vu, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **vois**, vois, voit, voyons, voyez, voient ; *impv.* vois, voyons, voyez.

5. *Past Def.* **vis**, vis, vit, vimes, vîtes, virent ; *impf. subj.* visse, visses, vît, vissions, vissiez, vissent.

Like **voir** :

entrevoir, *catch sight of.*

* *pourvoir, provide.*

† *prévoir, foresee.*

revoir, *see again.*

* *dépourvoir, strip, leave destitute.*

* *Past def. -vus, etc. ; impf. subj. -vusse, etc. ; fut. and condl. -voirai(s), regular.*

† *Fut. and condl. -voirai(s), etc., regular.*

225.

Vouloir, 'to will,' etc.

1. *Inf.* **vouloir** ; *fut.* voudrai, etc. ; *condl.* voudrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **voulant** ; *impf. indic.* voulais, etc. ; *pres. subj.* veuille, veuilles, veuillez, voulions, vouliez, veulent.

3. *Past Part.* **voulu** ; *past indef.* j'ai voulu, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **veux**, veux, veut, voulons, voulez, ent ; *impv.* veux, voulons, voulez.

5. *Past Def.* **voulus**, voulus, voulut, voulûmes, voulûtes, voulurent ; *impf. subj.* voulusse, voulusses, voulût, voulussions, voulussiez, voulussent.

Obs. : Stem-vowel becomes **eu** whenever it is stressed.

NOTE.—The regular *impv.* **veux**, **voulons**, **voulez** is rare ; **veuillez**='have the kindness to' generally serves as second plural imperative.

226. Reference List of Irregular Verbs.

NOTE.—Each verb in the list is referred to the section in which its irregularity is explained. For verbs in *-cer*, *-ger*, see §156; for verbs in *-yer*, §157; for verbs with stem-vowel *e* or *é*, §158; for verbs in *-andre*, *-endre*, *-erdre*, *-ondre*, *-ordre*, §210.

A.		C.		courir.....\$164	
abattre.....	\$180	ceindre.....	\$190	courre.....	164
absoudre.....	203	chaloir.....	223	couvrir.....	176
abstenir.....	177	choir.....	216	craindre.....	190
abstraire.....	208	circoncire.....	187	croire.....	191
accourir.....	164	circonscire.....	194	croître.....	192
accroire.....	191	circonvenir.....	178	cueillir.....	165
accroître.....	192	clore.....	183	cuire.....	185
accueillir.....	165	combattre.....	180	D.	
acquérir.....	162	commettre.....	198	débattre.....	180
adjoindre.....	190	comparaître.....	188	décevoir.....	213
admettre.....	198	comparoir.....	188	déchoir.....	216
advenir.....	178	complaître.....	201	déclore.....	183
aller.....	160	comprendre.....	202	déconfire.....	187
apercevoir.....	213	compromettre.....	198	déconstruire.....	185
apparaître.....	188	concevoir.....	213	découdre.....	189
apparaître.....	188	conclure.....	184	découvrir.....	176
appartenir.....	177	concourir.....	164	décrire.....	194
apprendre.....	202	conduire.....	185	décroire.....	191
assaillir.....	165	confire.....	187	décroître.....	192
asseoir.....	215	conjoindre.....	190	dédire.....	193
astreindre.....	190	connaître.....	188	déduire.....	185
atteindre.....	190	conquérir.....	162	défaillir.....	167
attirer.....	208	consentir.....	166	défaire.....	195
avenir.....	178	construire.....	185	déjoindre.....	190
avoir.....	154	contenir.....	177	démentir.....	166
B.		contraindre.....	190	démettre.....	198
battre.....	180	contredire.....	193	départir.....	166
bénir.....	163	contrefaire.....	195	dépeindre.....	190
boire.....	181	contrevenir.....	178	déplaire.....	201
bouillir.....	166	convaincre.....	209	dépourvoir.....	224
braire.....	208	convenir.....	178	déprendre.....	202
bruire.....	182	coudre.....	189	désapprendre.....	202

desservir.....	\$166
déteindre.....	190
détenir.....	177
détruire.....	185
devenir.....	178
dévêtir.....	179
devoir.....	214
dire.....	193
disconvenir.....	178
discourir.....	164
disjoindre.....	190
disparaître.....	188
dissoudre.....	203
distraindre.....	208
dormir.....	166
duire.....	185

E.

ébouillir.....	166
échoir.....	217
éclore.....	183
éconduire.....	185
écrire.....	194
élire.....	197
emboire.....	181
émettre.....	198
émoudre.....	199
émouvoir.....	219
empeindre.....	190
enceindre.....	190
enclore.....	183
encourir.....	164
endormir.....	166
enduire.....	185
enfreindre.....	190
enfuir.....	170
enjoindre.....	190
enquérir.....	162
ensuivre.....	206
entremettre.....	198
entreprendre.....	202

entretenir.....	\$177
entrevoir.....	224
entr'ouvrir.....	176
envoyer.....	161
épreindre.....	190
éprendre.....	202
équivaloir.....	223
éteindre.....	190
être.....	154
êtreindre.....	190
exclure.....	184
extraire.....	208

F.

faillir.....	167
faire.....	195
falloir.....	218
feindre.....	190
férir.....	168
fleurir.....	169
forclore.....	183
forfaire.....	195
frir.....	196
fuir.....	170

G.

geindre.....	190
gésir.....	171

H.

haïr.....	172
-----------	-----

I.

imboire.....	181
inclure.....	184
induire.....	185
inscrire.....	194
instruire.....	185
interdire.....	193
intervenir.....	178
introduire.....	185
issir.....	173

J.

joindre.....	190
--------------	-----

L.

lire.....	\$197
luire.....	185

M.

maintenir.....	177
malfaire.....	195
maudire.....	193
méconnaître.....	188
médire.....	193
méfaire.....	195
mentir.....	166
méprendre.....	202
messeoir.....	215
mettre.....	198
moudre.....	199
mourir.....	174
mouvoir.....	219

N.

naître.....	200
nuire.....	185

O.

obtenir.....	177
offrir.....	176
oindre.....	190
omettre.....	198
ouïr.....	175
ouvrir.....	176

P.

paître.....	188
paraître.....	188
parcourir.....	164
parfaire.....	195
partir.....	166
parvenir.....	178
peindre.....	190
percevoir.....	213
permettre.....	198
plaindre.....	190
plaire.....	201
pleuvoir.....	220

poindre.....	§190	redevoir.....	§214	savoir.....	§222
poursuivre.....	206	redire.....	193	secourir.....	164
pourvoir.....	224	redormir.....	166	séduire.....	185
pouvoir.....	221	réduire.....	185	sentir.....	166
prédire.....	193	rélire.....	197	seoir.....	215
prendre.....	202	refaire.....	195	servir.....	166
prescrire.....	194	rejoindre.....	190	sortir.....	166
pressentir.....	166	relire.....	197	souffrir.....	176
prévaloir.....	223	reluire.....	185	soumettre.....	198
prévenir.....	178	remettre.....	198	sourdre.....	205
prévoir.....	224	remoudre.....	199	sourire.....	204
produire.....	185	rémoudre.....	199	souscrire.....	194
promettre.....	198	renaître.....	200	soustraire.....	208
promouvoir.....	219	rendormir.....	166	soutenir.....	177
proscrire.....	194	rentraire.....	208	souvenir.....	178
provenir.....	178	renvoyer.....	161	subvenir.....	178
Q.		repaitre.....	188	suffire.....	187
querir.....	162	reparaître.....	188	suivre.....	206
quéir.....		repartir.....	166	surcroître.....	192
R.		repeindre.....	190	surfaire.....	195
rabattre.....	180	repentir.....	166	surprendre.....	202
rapprendre.....	202	reprandre.....	202	surseoir.....	215
rasseoir.....	215	reproduire.....	185	survenir.....	178
ratteindre.....	190	repromettre.....	198	survivre.....	211
ravoir.....	212	requérir.....	162	T.	
reboire.....	181	résoudre.....	203	taire.....	201
rebouillir.....	166	ressentir.....	166	teindre.....	190
recevoir.....	213	ressortir.....	166	tenir.....	177
rechoir.....	216	ressouvenir.....	178	tistre.....	207
reclure.....	184	restreindre.....	190	traduire.....	185
reconduire.....	185	reteindre.....	190	traire.....	208
reconnaître.....	188	retenir.....	177	transcrire.....	194
reconquérir.....	162	retraire.....	208	transmettre.....	198
reconstruire.....	185	revaloir.....	223	tressaillir.....	165
recoudre.....	189	revenir.....	178	V.	
recourir.....	164	revêtir.....	179	vaincre.....	209
recouvrir.....	176	revivre.....	211	valoir.....	223
récrire.....	194	revoir.....	224	vendre.....	210
recroître.....	192	rire.....	204	venir.....	178
recueillir.....	165	rouvrir.....	176	vêtir.....	179
recuire.....	185	S.		vivre.....	211
redéfaire.....	195	saillir.....	165	voir.....	224
redevenir.....	178	satisfaire.....	195	vouloir.....	225

USE OF AUXILIARY VERBS.

227. Avoir + the past participle forms the compound tenses of all transitive and of most intransitive verbs (cf. § 155).

228. Être + the past participle forms the compound tenses of all reflexive verbs (§ 242), and of the following intransitives denoting motion or change of condition (cf. § 155):

aller, *go*.
arriver, *arrive*.
choir, *fall*.
décéder, *die*.

échoir, *fall due*.
éclore, *hatch out*.
entrer, *enter, go (come) in*.

mourir, *die*.
naître, *be born*.
venir, *come*.

So also, the following compounds of **venir**:

devenir, *become*.
redevenir, *become again*.
intervenir, *intervene*.

parvenir, *attain*.
provenir, *proceed*.
revenir, *come back*.

survenir, *supervene*.

229. 1. Avoir or **être** + the past participle forms the compound tenses of a number of intransitive verbs, the general distinction being that **avoir**, when so used, denotes action, while **être** denotes state or condition resulting from action:

La pluie a passé par la fenêtre:

The rain came through the window.

La pluie est passée.

The rain is past.

Elle a grandi bien vite.

She grew up very fast.

Elle est grandie.

She is grown up.

2. Reference list of verbs with **avoir** or **être**:

aborder, *land*.
accourir, *run to*.
accroître, *increase*.
apparaître, *appear*.
baisser, *fall, decline*.
cesser, *cease*.
changer, *change*.
croître, *grow*.
déborder, *overflow*.
déchoir, *decay*.
décroître, *decrease*.
dégénérer, *degenerate*.
demeurer, *remain*.

*descendre, *descend*.
disparaître, *disappear*.
échapper, *escape*.
échouer, *be stranded, fail*.
embellir, *grow handsomer*.
émigrer, *emigrate*.
empirer, *grow worse*.
expirer, *expire*.
grandir, *grow up*.
*monter, *go up*.
*partir, *set out*.
passer, *pass*.
réchapper, *escape again*.

*redescendre, *come down again*.
*remonter, *go up again*.
*rentrer, *go in again*.
repasser, *pass again*.
*ressortir, *go out again*.
ressusciter, *revive*.
rester, *remain*.
*retomber, *fall again*.
*retourner, *go back*.
sonner, *strike, toll*.
*sortir, *go out*.
*tomber, *fall*.
vieillir, *grow old*.

*Almost always with **être**, and placed by some grammarians among verbs taking **être** exclusively.

a. Any verb in the list, used transitively, must, of course, take **avoir** (§227):

Il m'a **passé** la plume.

He handed me the pen.

Avez-vous rentré votre blé?

Have you hauled in your wheat?

Ils **ont** descendu le tableau.

They have taken down the picture.

b. The meaning also determines the auxiliary in a few other cases:

Avoir.

convenir, *suit, become.*

disconvenir, *not to suit, be discordant.*

repartir, *reply.*

Nous **sommes** convenus du prix.

Le prix ne m'a pas convenu.

Être.

convenir, *agree.*

disconvenir, *deny.*

repartir, *go away again.*

We agreed on the price.

The price did not suit me.

USE OF VERB PHRASES.

230. Auxiliary Function. Several verbs, when followed by an infinitive, have a sort of auxiliary function, and serve to form verb phrases of various values, modal, temporal, etc.:

1. **Vouloir** = 'will,' 'wish to,' 'want to,' 'desire to,' etc.:

Je ne veux pas rester.

I will not remain.

Il voudrait (bien) le savoir.

He would like to know it.

Elle n'a pas voulu m'écouter.

She would not listen to me.

Il aurait voulu le faire.

He would have liked to do so.

Veuillez le faire.

Be so good as to do so.

a. Distinguish from 'will' of simple futurity:

Elle vous écoutera.

She will listen to you.

2. **Devoir** = 'ought,' 'should,' 'must,' 'be to,' 'have to,' 'be obliged to,' 'intend to,' etc., varies in force in different tenses:

Present: je **dois** rester.

I am to (have to, intend to, must) remain.

Imperfect: je **devais** parler.

I was to (had to, etc.) speak.

Future: je **devrai** revenir.

I shall have to (be obliged to) come back.

Conditional: je **devrais** écrire.

I ought to (should) write.

Past Indefinite: j'**ai dû** m'arrêter.

I have had to (been obliged to) stop, must have stopped.

Past Definite : Je dus revenir.	I had to come back.
Conditional Anterior : j' aurais dû savoir.	I ought to have (should have) known.

3. **Pouvoir** = 'can,' 'be able to,' 'be permitted to,' 'may,' etc.:

Il ne pouvait pas porter le sac.	He could not carry the sack.
Puis-je aller à la ville ?	May I go to town ?
Ils auraient pu le faire.	They could (might) have done it.
Je pourrais le faire, si je voulais.	I could do it, if I would.
Pourraient-ils en trouver ?	Could they find any ?
Pourrais-je vous demander ?	Might I ask you ?

4. **Savoir** = 'know how to,' 'can,' etc.:

Elle sait chanter et danser.	She can sing and dance.
------------------------------	-------------------------

a. Distinguish **savoir** in this sense from **pouvoir** :

Elle est enrôlée et ne peut pas chanter ce soir.	She is hoarse and cannot sing this evening.
--	---

b. The conditional with **ne** has peculiar idiomatic force :

Je ne saurais le croire.	I cannot believe it.
--------------------------	----------------------

5. **Oser** = 'dare' :

Je n'ose pas le lui dire.	I dare not tell him so.
---------------------------	-------------------------

NOTE.—The above five verbs are sometimes called 'modal auxiliaries.'

6. **Faire** = 'make,' 'cause to,' 'cause to be,' 'have,' 'order,' 'order to be,' etc.:

J'ai fait étudier les enfants.	I have made the children study.
Il les fera écouter.	He will make them listen.
Il s'est fait faire un habit.	He had a coat made for himself.
Faites chercher un médecin.	Send for a doctor.

a. A governed substantive follows the infinitive, but a governed conjunctive personal pronoun (not reflexive) goes with **faire** :

Faites venir le domestique.	Have the servant come.
Faites-le venir.	Have him come.

b. If the infinitive with **faire** have a direct object, the personal object of **faire** must be indirect (cf. § 293, 2, a) :

Je fis écrire mon fils.	I had my son write.
Je fis écrire un devoir à mon fils.	I made my son write an exercise.
Faites-le-lui écrire.	Make him write it.
Je le leur fis voir.	I showed them it.

c. Possible ambiguity is sometimes avoided by **par** :

Il fit porter le sac **par** le guide. He had the sack carried by the guide.

d. Note the passive force of a transitive infinitive after **faire** :

Je ferai écrire une lettre. I shall have a letter written.

7. **Laisser** = 'let,' has usually the same constructions as **faire** :

Laissez écrire les enfants. Let the children write.

Laissez-leur (or -les) écrire un devoir. Let them write an exercise.

8. The present and imperfect of **aller** + an infinitive give a kind of immediate future, as also in English :

Il va l'acheter. He is going to (is about to) buy it.

Nous allons nous arrêter. We were about to stop.

Il allait se noyer. He was on the point of drowning.

9. Similarly the present and imperfect of **venir de** + an infinitive give a kind of immediate past :

Je viens de le voir. I have just seen him.

Il venait de l'entendre. He had just heard it.

AGREEMENT OF VERB AND SUBJECT.

231. General Rule. The verb agrees with its subject in number and person :

Les hommes sont mortels. Men are mortal.

Tout le monde est ici. Everybody is here.

Toi et moi (nous) ne faisons qu'un. You and I are but one.

232. Simple Subject. Special rules for the agreement of a verb with one subject are :—

1. A collective subject singular, when not followed by **de**, or when followed by **de** + the singular, has a singular verb :

Le peuple français est brave. The French people are brave.

Le sénat l'a décidé. The senate has (or have) decided it.

La plupart du monde le croit. Most people believe it.

2. A collective subject singular + **de** + a plural takes a plural verb, unless the sense of the collective be dominant :

Une nuée de sauvages l'attaquèrent.	A cloud of savages attacked him.
Une nuée de traits l'obscurcit.	A cloud of arrows hid him.
Une partie des soldats restent.	A part of the soldiers remain.
Une partie des bourgeois protesta.	A part of the citizens protested.
Cette sorte de poires est chère.	This sort of pears is dear.

a. When so used, adverbs of quantity, *e.g.* **beaucoup**, **peu**, etc., the nouns **nombre**, **quantité**, without article, and **la plupart**, are regularly plural in sense; so also, **force**:

Beaucoup de gens pensent ainsi.	Many people think so.
Peu de gens le savent.	Few people know it.
Que d'ennemis m'attaquent !	How many enemies attack me !
Nombre d'Athéniens avaient fui.	A number of Athenians had fled.
La plupart des soldats périrent.	Most of the soldiers perished.
Force sots le tenteront.	Many a fool will try it.

b. **Beaucoup**, **peu**, **combien**, used absolutely, are singular or plural according to the sense of the **de** clause implied; **la plupart** when so used is always plural:

Beaucoup (<i>sc.</i> de gens) le croient.	Many (<i>sc.</i> people) believe it.
Peu (<i>sc.</i> de ceci) me suffira.	Little (<i>sc.</i> of this) will suffice me.
La plupart votèrent contre.	The majority voted nay.

c. **Plus d'un** is singular, unless reciprocal or repeated, and **moins de deux** is plural:

Plus d'un témoin a déposé.	More than one witness has sworn.
Moins de deux ne valent rien.	Less than two is no use.
Plus d'un fripon se dupent (l'un l'autre).	More rogues than one cheat each other.
Plus d'un officier, plus d'un général furent tués.	More than one officer, more than one general was killed.

3. **Ce** requires a plural verb only when the predicate is a plural noun, a plural pronoun of the third person, or when **ce** refers to a preceding plural:

Sont-ce vos amis?—Ce sont eux.	Is it your friends? It is they.
Ce doivent être les siens.	Those must be his.
Ce sont nos semblables.	They are our fellow-creatures.
Ses désirs, ce sont sa loi.	His desires are his law.
But: C'est moi ; c'est toi ; c'est lui ; c'est nous ; c'est vous.	

a. The third singular is often used for the third plural in this construction, more especially in familiar language or to avoid harsh locutions:

Est-ce les Anglais que je crains ?	Is it the English that I fear ?
C'est eux qui l'ont fait.	It is they who did it.
C'est des bêtises.	That is stupidity.
Ne fût-ce que quelques lignes.	If it were only a few lines.

b. The verb with **ce** is singular when the predicate is a numeral + a noun of collective force :

C'est dix heures qu'il sonne.	It is ten o'clock that is striking.
-------------------------------	-------------------------------------

c. **Si ce n'est** is always singular :

Qui, si ce n'est nos parents ?	Who, if it is not our parents ?
--------------------------------	---------------------------------

4. **Il** (impers.) always has a singular verb, whatever be the logical subject :

Il est arrivé bien des choses.	Many things have happened.
Il en reste trois livres.	Three pounds of it remain.

a. **Importer** is construed personally or impersonally :

Qu'importe (important) les dépens ?	What matters the cost ?
-------------------------------------	-------------------------

233. Composite Subject. A verb common to two or more subjects is regularly plural ; when the subjects differ in person, the verb agrees with the first person, if one subject is of the first person, otherwise with the second :

Toi et moi (nous) ne faisons qu'un.	You and I are but one.
Sa sœur et lui sont là.	His sister and he are there.

a. With subjects of different person, pleonastic **nous, vous**, is generally used :

Vous et lui (vous) l'avez vu.	You and he have seen it.
-------------------------------	--------------------------

b. With **ou = 'or,' ni...ni = 'neither...nor,'** the verb is singular if the sense is clearly alternative, i.e., the one subject excluding the other, otherwise generally plural ; **l'un ou l'autre** is always singular :

Sa vie ou sa mort en dépend.	His life or death depends on it.
Ni lui ni votre frère n'aura ce poste.	Neither he nor your brother will have that post.
Ni l'un ni l'autre ne sont bons.	Neither is good.
L'une ou l'autre viendra.	The one or the other will come.
L'un ou l'autre jour me convient.	Either day suits me.

c. If the subjects (generally without **et**) are synonymous, or nearly so, or form a climax, the verb may be singular :

Sa dignité, sa noblesse frappa
tout le monde.

L'heure, le lieu, le bras se choisit
aujourd'hui.

Une excuse, un mot le désarme.

His dignity, his nobility struck
everybody.

The hour, the place, the arm are
chosen to-day.

An excuse, a word disarms him.

d. When the subjects are recapitulated by a word in the singular, *e.g.*, **tout, rien**, etc., the verb is singular agreeing with it :

Remords, crainte, périls, rien ne
m'a retenue.

Remorse, fear, dangers, nothing de-
terred me.

e. With an intervening clause, *e.g.*, **ainsi que, plus que**, etc., the subject is usually only apparently composite :

La vertu, plus que le savoir, élève
l'homme.

Virtue, more than knowledge, ele-
vates man.

f. Even with **et** the sense is occasionally singular, or distributive, or alternative, and a singular verb is required :

Le bien et le mal est en ta main.

Good and ill are in thy hand.

L'un et l'autre peut se dire.

Both may be said.

L'été est revenu et le soleil.

Summer has returned and the sun.

Tombe Argos et ses murs.

Down falls Argos and its walls.

234. Relative Subject. The verb agrees with the relative pronoun subject, which is itself of the number and person of the antecedent (see also Relative Pronoun) :

C'est nous qui l'avons fait.

It is we who have done it.

Dieux (vous) qui m'exaucez !

(Ye) Gods who hear me !

POSITION OF SUBJECT.

235. General Rule. The subject usually precedes the verb. Exceptions to this rule are noted in the following sections.

236. Interrogative Word Order. Direct interrogation is expressed as follows :—

1. A personal pronoun subject (also **ce** or **on**) follows the verb, and is joined to it by a hyphen :

Parlez-vous français ?

Do you speak French ?

Est-ce lui ?

Is it he ?

a. The letter -t- is inserted after a third singular with final vowel before a pronoun with initial vowel :

Parla-t-elle ? Parle-t-on ? Did she speak ? Do they speak ?

b. A final e of the first singular takes acute accent, but with the sound of [ɛ] :

Donné-je ? [dɔneɪʒ]. Do I give ?

2. A noun subject precedes the verb, and is repeated after it by a pleonastic pronoun ; so also, possessive, demonstrative and indefinite pronouns :

Cet homme parle-t-il anglais ? Does that man speak English ?

Cela est-il vrai ? Is that true ?

Les miens ne sont-ils pas bons ? Are mine not good ?

3. Questions are also asked by interrogative words (adjectives, pronouns, adverbs) :

Quel poète a écrit cela ? What poet wrote that ?

À quelle heure partira son ami ? At what o'clock will his friend go ?

Qui est là ? Qu'y a-t-il ? Who is there ? What is the matter ?

Lequel des deux est parti ? Which of the two has gone ?

Combien coûte cela ? } How much does that cost ?

Combien cela coûte-t-il ? }

a. The word order of either of the last two examples is commonly permissible for noun subject under this rule.

b. The word order of the last example is obligatory when the verb has a direct object (not reflexive), or a prepositional complement, or when ambiguity might arise ; this arrangement is preferable with *pourquoi*?, or when a compound tense is used :

Où le roi tient-il sa cour ? Where does the king hold his court ?

De quoi le roi parle-t-il ? Of what is the king speaking ?

Quel prix le roi payait-il ? What price did the king pay ?

Jean qui aime-t-il ? Whom does John love ?

Pourquoi mon ami part-il ? Why does my friend go ?

Quand ce roi a-t-il été décapité ? When was this king beheaded ?

4. By prefixing *est-ce que*? a statement becomes a question without change in its word order :

Est-ce que vous partez ? Are you going away ?

Quand est-ce que vous partez ? When are you going away ?

a. The use of **est-ce que?** is permissible with all forms of the verb, but is obligatory with a monosyllabic first singular (except *ai-je ?*, *suis-je ?*, *dis-je ?*, *dois-je ?*, *fais-je ?*, *puis-je ?*, *sais-je ?*, *vais-je ?*, *vois-je ?*), and is preferable to avoid forms like *donné-je ?* :

Est-ce que je sers, moi ?

Do I serve ?

Est-ce que je parle de lui ?

Do I speak of him ?

5. Interrogation is also expressed by mere inflection of the voice, without change in word order :

Vous partez déjà ?

You are going already ?

237. Rhetorical Inversions. Owing to rhetorical considerations the noun subject not uncommonly follows the verb, or the sentence assumes interrogative form, though not interrogative, as follows :—

1. In interjected remarks explanatory of direct quotation, as in English :

Fais comme tu voudras, dit-il.

Do as you please, said he.

Que veux-tu ? demanda la mère.

What do you wish ? asked the mother.

2. In optative clauses when **que** is omitted, and also after the rare omission of **si**, 'if' :

Vive le roi ! Périsset le tyran !

(Long) live the king ! Perish the tyrant !

Voulait-il de l'argent, son père lui en donnait toujours.

If he wished money, his father always gave him some.

Ne fût-ce que pour cela.

If it were only for that.

3. Very commonly after certain adverbs and adverbial locutions :

Du moins devrait-il attendre.

He should at least wait.

À peine le jour fut-il arrivé.

Hardly had the day arrived.

Such are :

à peine, *hardly*.

* peut-être, *perhaps*.

toutefois, *although*.

aussi, *hence*.

encore, *besides*.

en vain, *in vain*.

aussi bien, *moreover*.

toujours, *however*.

rarement, *rarely*.

au moins, *at least*.

tout au plus, *at most*.

probablement, *probably*.

du moins, *at least*.

d'autant plus, *the more*.

etc.

* **Peut-être que** does not cause inversion : ' **Peut-être qu'il le fera,** ' ' **Perhaps he will do so.** '

4. Sometimes in exclamatory sentences :

Avons-nous crié !

Didn't we shout !

5. When a predicate adjective heads the phrase :

Telle fut la fin de Carthage.

Such was the end of Carthage.

Quelque riche que soit cet homme.

However rich that man is.

NOTE.—All the above inversions may take place whatever be the nature of the subject, but the following rules do not usually hold good for personal pronoun subject.

6. Very commonly in a relative clause, especially when a second relative clause qualifies its subject :

Il fera ce que peut faire un
homme qui se respecte.

He will do what a man can who
respects himself.

Dites-moi ce qu'a fait votre ami.

Tell me what your friend did.

Dis-moi où est ton ami.

Tell me where your friend is.

NOTE.—The relative is unstressed (proclitic), and naturally stands next the verb which governs it.

7. Commonly after **c'est que**, and in the second member of a comparative sentence :

C'est en vous qu'espèrent tous.

It is in you that all hope.

J'en ai plus que n'en a mon ami.

I have more of it than my friend has.

8. Commonly when an adverb, other than those mentioned in (3) above, *e.g.*, **ainsi**, **bientôt**, **ici**, **là**, etc., or an adverbial phrase heads the sentence :

Ainsi va le monde.

So goes the world.

Bientôt viendra le printemps.

Spring will soon come.

À la tête de l'armée fut porté
l'étendard sacré.

At the head of the army was carried
the sacred standard.

9. Quite exceptionally, when the verb comes first :

Viendra un autre.

(Along) will come another.

NOTE.—No inversion of noun subject usually occurs if the verb has a direct object or a prepositional complement.

238. Indirect Interrogation. It has no special rules of word order apart from those of the clause in which it occurs :

Dis-moi ce qu'il a dit.

Tell me what he said.

THE PASSIVE VOICE.

239. Formation. The passive voice of a transitive verb is formed from the auxiliary **être** + the past participle, which agrees with the subject of the verb in gender and number :

PRES. INFIN. Être loué(e) or loué(e)s, *to be praised.*

PERF. INFIN. Avoir été loué(e) or loué(e)s, *to have been praised.*

PRES. PART. Étant loué(e) or loué(e)s, *being praised.*

PERF. PART. Ayant été loué(e) or loué(e)s, *having been praised.,*

PRESENT INDICATIVE.

I am (I am being) praised, etc.

je suis	} loué(e).
tu es	
il (elle) est	} loué(e)s.
nous sommes	
vous êtes.	
ils (elles) sont.	

PAST INDEFINITE INDICATIVE.

I have been (I was) praised etc.

j'ai été	} loué(e).
tu as été	
il (elle) a été	} loué(e)s.
nous avons été	
vous avez été	
ils (elles) ont été	

etc., etc., throughout.

Obs.: 1. The past participle **été** is always invariable. 2. The past participle after **vous** agrees with the sense : 'Madame, vous serez méprisée de tous,' 'Madam, you will be despised by all.'

240. The Agent. The person by whom the action is done is usually denoted by **par**, when a specific intention or definite volition is implied, and by **de** when the action is habitual, usual, or indefinite :

Elle fut saisie **par** le voleur.

She was seized by the thief.

Le général fut suivi de près **par** l'ennemi.

The general was closely followed by the enemy.

La reine fut suivie **de** ses dames.

The queen was followed by her ladies.

Ils sont aimés **de** tous.

They are loved by everybody.

241. Remarks. 1. Only transitive verbs regularly have the passive voice, but the intransitives **obéir**, **désobéir**, **pardonner**, may also be made passive :

Vous êtes **pardonnés** tous.

You are all pardoned.

Elle est toujours **obéie**.

She is always obeyed.

2. The passive is much less used than in English, especially if the agent be not specified, or if the corresponding French

verb is intransitive, or if an indirect object be present. Substitutes are :

a. A verb with the indefinite pronoun **on** :

On m'a trompé.	I have been deceived.
On se doute de moi.	I am suspected.
On a répondu à ma question.	My question has been answered.
On lui a rendu l'argent.	The money has been given back to him.

b. A reflexive construction :

Ce livre se publie à Paris.	This book is published in Paris.
La guerre se continua.	The war was continued.
Voilà ce qui se dit.	This is what is being said.

3. A transitive infinitive has passive force after verbs of perceiving (**voir**, etc.), after **faire**, **laisser**, and when **à** + an infinitive is used adjectivally (cf. § 284)

Le ferez-vous vendre ?	Will you have it sold ?
Je la vis battre.	I saw her beaten.
Une faute à éviter.	A mistake to be avoided.

THE REFLEXIVE VERB.

242. Compound Tenses. The auxiliary **être** + the past participle forms the compound tenses of all reflexive verbs, as follows :—

PRES. INFIN.	Se flatter, <i>to flatter one's self.</i>
PERF. INFIN.	S'être flatté(e) or flatté(e)s, <i>to have flattered one's self.</i>
PRES. PART.	Se flattant, <i>flattering one's self.</i>
PERF. PART.	S'étant flatté(e) or flatté(e)s, <i>having flattered one's self.</i>

Indicative.

PRESENT.	PAST INDEFINITE.
<i>I flatter myself, etc.</i>	<i>I (have) flattered myself, etc.</i>
je me flatte.	je me suis
tu te flattes.	tu t'es
il (elle) se flatte.	il (elle) s'est
nous nous flattons.	nous nous sommes
vous vous flattez.	vous vous êtes
ils (elles) se flattent.	ils (elles) se sont
	etc., etc.

Imperative.

Flatter thyself, etc.

flatte-toi.

(qu'il se flatte.)

flattons-nous.

flattez-vous.

(qu'ils se flattent.)

Do not flatter thyself, etc.

ne te flatte pas.

(qu'il ne se flatte pas.)

ne nous flattons pas.

ne vous flattez pas.

(qu'ils ne se flattent pas.)

NOTES.—1. **Se flatter, se flattant**, etc., are the infinitive and participial forms found in dictionaries, but **se** must be replaced by **me, te**, etc., according to the sense.

2. Except in the use of **être** as auxiliary, reflexive verbs have no peculiarities of conjugation on account of being reflexive.

243. Reflexive or Reciprocal. A reflexive verb often has reciprocal force, especially in the plural. Ambiguity is generally avoided by some modifying expression :

Elles **se flattent**.

{ They flatter themselves.

{ They flatter each other.

Elles **se flattent l'une l'autre**.

They flatter one another.

On **se dupe mutuellement**.

They cheat each other.

244. Agreement of Past Participle. 1. In compound tenses, the past participle of a reflexive agrees in gender and number with the reflexive object, unless that object be indirect :

Elle **s'est écriée**.

She cried out.

Elle **s'est dit** à elle-même.

She said to herself.

Ils **se sont écrit**.

They wrote to each other.

Elles **se sont achetée** des robes.

They bought themselves dresses.

2. Besides the reflexive object, a direct object may precede the verb, and with this object the participle agrees :

Les plumes qu'ils **se sont achetées**. The pens they bought themselves.

NOTES.—1. The auxiliary **être** is considered as replacing **avoir**, and the above agreements are explained by the general principle (§ 291).

2. The agreement with **vous** is according to the sense : 'Vous **vous** êtes trompée, madame,' 'You were mistaken, madam.'

245. Omission of Reflexive Object. 1. It is always omitted with the past participle used as attributive adjective :

Le temps **écoulé**. The time past.

2. The infinitives of certain verbs, such as **s'asseoir**, **se souvenir**, **se taire**, regularly omit **se** when preceded by **faire** :

Faites asseoir vos amis.
Je vous en ferai souvenir.

Make your friends sit down.
I shall remind you of it.

a. A similar omission of **se** sometimes occurs after **laisser**, **entendre**, **voir**, etc.

246. Remarks. The reflexive construction is much commoner in French than in English :—

1. It often translates the English passive, especially when the agent is not specified :

La bourse s'est trouvée.
Cela se raconte partout.

The purse has been found.
That is being told everywhere.

2. Or it is expressed by an English non-reflexive verb, generally intransitive :

S'arrêter ; s'écrier ; se porter.
S'asseoir ; se hâter ; se tromper.

Stop ; exclaim ; be (of health).
Sit down ; hasten ; be mistaken.

3. Or the French reflexive + a preposition has the value of an English transitive :

S'approcher de ; se douter de.
S'attendre à ; se fier à.
Se passer de ; se souvenir de.

Approach ; suspect.
Expect ; trust.
Do without ; recollect.

247. S'en Aller. The conjugation of **s'en aller**, 'to go away,' presents special difficulty :

PRESENT INDICATIVE.

I go away, etc.
je m'en vais.
tu t'en vas.
il s'en va.
nous nous en allons.
vous vous en allez.
ils s'en vont.

PAST INDEFINITE INDICATIVE.

I have gone (I went) away, etc.
je m'en suis
tu t'en es } allé(e).
il (elle) s'en est
nous nous en sommes
vous vous en êtes } allé(e)s.
ils (elles) s'en sont

IMPERATIVE*Go away, etc.**va-t'en.**(qu'il s'en aille.)**allons-nous-en.**allez-vous-en.**(qu'ils s'en aillent.)*

Further examples :

*Est-ce que je m'en vais ?**Vous en allez-vous ?**S'en sont-elles allées ?***IMPERATIVE NEGATIVE***Do not go away, etc.**ne t'en va pas.**(qu'il ne s'en aille pas.)**ne nous en allons pas.**ne vous en allez pas.**(qu'ils ne s'en aillent pas.)**Ils ne s'en sont pas allés.**Ne nous en sommes-nous pas al-**lées ?***IMPERSONAL VERBS.**

248. Conjugation. An impersonal verb, or a verb used as such, is one conjugated, in the third singular only, with the subject *il* = 'it,' 'there,' used indefinitely and absolutely, *e.g.*, **tonner**, 'to thunder':

Indicative.**PRES.** *Il tonne, it thunders.***PAST IND.** *Il a tonné, it has thundered.***IMPF.** *Il tonnait, it thundered.***PLUPF.** *Il avait tonné, it had thundered.***PAST DEF.** *Il tonna, it thundered.***PAST ANT.** *Il eut tonné, it had thundered.**etc., etc., like the third singular of donner.*

NOTE.—Apart from being limited to the third singular, their conjugation does not differ from that of ordinary verbs. Some are regular, others irregular.

249. Use of Impersonals. 1. Verbs denoting natural phenomena and time are impersonal, as in English :

*Il tonne ; il a plu ; il pleuvra.**It thunders ; it rained ; it will rain.**Il a gelé hier ; il dégele.**It froze yesterday ; it is thawing.**Il est une heure ; il est tard.**It is one o'clock ; it is late.*

Such verbs are :

*pleuvoir, rain.**grêler, hail.**geler, freeze.**neiger, snow.**éclairer, lighten.**dégeler, thaw.*

2. **Faire** = 'make,' is also much used impersonally to describe weather, temperature, etc. :

Quel temps fait-il ?	What kind of weather is it ?
Il fait beau (temps) ce matin.	It is fine (weather) this morning.
Il a fait bien froid hier.	It was very cold yesterday.
Il faisait du vent aussi.	It was windy too.
Est-ce qu'il fera obscur ce soir ?	Will it be dark this evening ?

Obs. : Distinguish these from constructions with a personal subject : 'Le temps **est** beau,' 'The weather is fine' ; 'L'eau **est** froide,' 'The water is cold.'

250. Impersonal avoir and être. 1. The verb **avoir**, preceded by **y**, used impersonally = 'there is,' 'there are,' 'there was,' 'there were,' etc. :

Il y a.	Il y a eu.	Y a-t-il ?	There is. There has been. Is there ?
Il n'y a pas.	Il n'y a pas eu.		There is not. There has not been.
Y a-t-il eu ?	N'y a-t-il pas eu ?		Has there been ? Has there not been ?
Y aura-t-il ?	Il peut y avoir.		Will there be ? There may be.

2. **Il est** (était, etc.) is sometimes used for **il y a** in this sense :

Il est des hommes qui le croient. There are men who think so.

3. **Il y a** = 'there is,' 'there are,' is distinguished from **voilà** = 'there is,' 'there are.' **Voilà** answers the question 'where is?,' 'where are?,' and makes a specific statement about an object to which attention is directed by pointing or the like, while **il y a** does not answer the question 'where is?,' 'where are?,' and makes a general statement.

Il y a des plumes sur la table.	There are pens on the table.
Voilà les plumes sur la table.	There are the pens on the table.

4. **Y avoir** also forms idiomatic expressions of time, reckoned backwards, and of distance :

Ils sont arrivés il y a trois jours.	They came three days ago.
Il y avait trois jours que j'étais là.	I had been there three days.
Combien y a-t-il d'ici à la ville ?	How far is it to the city ?
Il y a dix milles d'ici à la ville.	It is ten miles from here to the city.

251. Falloir = 'be necessary,' expresses the various meanings of 'must,' 'be obliged to,' 'have to,' 'need,' as follows :

1. 'Must' + infinitive = **falloir** + **que** and subjunctive :

Il faut que je parte.	I must go.
Il faudra que vous restiez.	You will have to (be obliged to) stay.

2. Or the subject of 'must,' etc., if a personal pronoun, may become indirect object of **falloir** + an infinitive :

Il me faudrait rester.	I should be obliged to remain.
Il leur faut faire cela.	They must do that.
Il lui a fallu parler.	He was forced (obliged) to speak.

3. The infinitive construction without indirect object is used in general or indefinite statement :

Il faut faire son devoir.	One must do one's duty.
Il ne faut pas voler.	We must not steal.

4. **Falloir** + an indirect object and a substantive signifies 'lack,' 'need' :

Il faut une ardoise à Jean.	John needs a slate.
Il leur faudra cent francs.	They will need a hundred francs.

5. **S'en falloir** = 'lack' :

Il s'en faut de beaucoup que l'un vaille l'autre.	The one is not nearly so good as the other.
---	---

252. Other Impersonals. 1. Besides **faire** and **avoir**, already noted, many other verbs take a special meaning as impersonals :

De quoi s'agit-il ?	What is the matter ?
Il est souvent arrivé que, etc.	It has often happened that, etc.
Il vaudra mieux ne rien dire.	It will be better to say nothing.
Il y va de ses jours.	His life is at stake.
Il se peut que je me trompe.	It may be that I am mistaken.

Obs. : Compare the literal meanings : **Agir**, *act*, **arriver**, *arrive*, **valoir**, *be worth*, **aller**, *go*, **pouvoir**, *be able*.

2. Many verbs may stand in the third singular with impersonal **il** representing a logical subject, singular or plural, following the verb :

Il viendra un meilleur temps.	There will come a happier time.
Il en reste trois livres.	There remain three pounds of it.
Il est arrivé des messagers.	Messengers have arrived.

253. Omission of *il*. *Il* is understood in certain phrases, such as :

Reste à savoir.

It remains to be seen.

N'importe.

No matter (it matters not).

Mieux vaut tard que jamais.

Better late than never.

THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

254. Use of Indicative. The indicative is the mood of direct or indirect assertion, and of direct or indirect interrogation. It stands both in principal and in subordinate clauses, both affirmative and negative :

Dieu créa le monde.

God created the world.

Moïse dit que Dieu créa le monde. Moses says that God created the world.

Où allez-vous ?

Where are you going ?

Dites-moi où vous allez.

Tell me where you are going.

Je le ferais, si je pouvais.

I should do so, if I could.

Norms.—1. It should be noted especially that the indicative is regularly the mood of indirect discourse and of 'if' clauses.

2. When the verb of a subordinate clause is subjunctive, the mood is determined by the context, and not simply by the fact that the clause is subordinate.

TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE.

255. Periphrastic Forms. Such forms, so common in English, are not used in French :

Je parle.

I speak (am speaking, do speak).

Il a écrit.

He has written (has been writing).

Il disait.

He was saying (used to say, etc.).

256. Elliptical Forms. Ellipsis of part of a verb form is common in English ; in French the form is either fully given or entirely avoided :

J'irai.—Moi, je n'irai pas.

I shall go.—I shall not (go).

Il a promis de venir, mais il n'est pas venu.

He promised to come, but he did not (come).

Il est venu.—Vraiment !
 Vous viendrez, n'est-ce pas ?
 Il était sorti, n'est-ce pas ?

He has come.—Has he ! (Indeed !)
 You will come, will you not ?
 He had gone out, had he not ?

257. Present Indicative. The present tense is used :—

1. To denote what is happening, including the habitual and the universally true :

Je crois qu'il pleut. I think it is raining.
 Il se lève toujours de bon matin. He always rises early.
 L'homme propose et Dieu dispose. Man proposes and God disposes.

2. To denote what has happened and still continues, after **il y a ... que, voici (voilà) ... que, depuis, depuis quand ?, depuis ... que :**

Depuis quand attendez-vous ? How long have you been waiting ?
 Il y a (or voici, voilà) trois jours I have waited (I have been waiting)
 que j'attends, or j'attends de- for three days.
 puis trois jours.

3. Instead of a past tense in animated narrative :

La nuit approche, l'instant arrive, Night draws on, the moment comes,
 César se présente, etc. Cæsar appears, etc.

a. This use is much commoner than in English, especially side by side with past tenses.

b. **C'est ... que + a past tense = 'was ... that' :**

C'est là que je l'ai vu. It was there that I saw him.

4. Instead of a future in familiar style :

Nous partons demain matin. We go to-morrow morning.

5. As a virtual future after **si = 'if' :**

Je serai content, si vous venez. I shall be glad, if you (will) come.

258. Imperfect Indicative. The action or state denoted by the imperfect is in general viewed as being in progress, *i.e.*, as contemporaneous customary, continued, etc., and it is employed as follows :—

1. To denote what was happening, when something else happened or was happening :

Il était nuit, quand je sortis. It was night, when I went out.
 Il parlait, pendant que je chantais. He was talking, while I sang.

2. To denote what used to happen :

Il se levait de bon matin. He used to rise early.
 Je parlais souvent de cela. I often spoke (used to speak, would speak) of that.
 Les Romains brûlaient leurs morts. The Romans were accustomed to burn their dead.

3. To denote what continued to happen :

Son père était négociant et de- His father was a merchant and
 meurait dans cette rue. lived in this street.

4. To denote what had happened and still continued, after
 il y a ... que, voici (voilà) ... que, depuis, depuis quand ?,
 depuis ... que (cf. § 257, 2) :

Je le disais depuis longtemps. I had long been saying so.
 Voilà un an que je le disais. I had been saying so for a year.

5. In indirect discourse, after a past tense, instead of the
 present :

Je croyais qu'il revenait. I thought he was coming back.
 Je demandai où il était. I asked where he was.
 But : 'Où est-il?', demandai-je. 'Where is he?', I asked.

6. Regularly in an 'if' clause when the 'result' clause is
 conditional :

S'il venait, je serais content. If he came, I should be glad.

7. Occasionally, instead of the pluperfect and the condi-
 tional anterior in conditional sentences :

Si je ne l'arrêtais pas (=avais Had I not stopped him he would
 pas arrêté), il tombait (=serait have fallen from the train.
 tombé) du train.

8. Sometimes instead of the past definite (§ 260) :

La lecture finie, le père Alphée se The reading concluded, Father Al-
 dressait, marchait à grands pas, pheus rose, walked about with
 voilà s'écriait-il, etc. great strides, there cried he, etc.

259. Past Indefinite. The past indefinite is used :—

1. To denote what has happened or has been happening, equivalent to an English tense with 'have,' reference to the present being implied :

J'ai fini mon ouvrage.	I have finished my work.
L'avez-vous vu dernièrement ?	Have you seen him lately ?
Je l'ai souvent rencontré.	I have often met him.
J'ai chanté toute la matinée.	I have been singing all morning.

2. In familiar style, spoken or written, to denote a past event, without implied reference to the present, or a succession of such past events as mark the progress of a narrative, answering the question 'what happened?' or 'what happened next?' For narrative in the literary style, see §260 :

Ils sont arrivés ce soir.	They arrived this evening.
Je l'ai vu il y a dix ans.	I saw him ten years ago.
De quoi est-il mort ?	What did he die of ?
J'ai quitté Rome le dix. Puis je suis allé voir des amis à Lyon, j'ai passé quelques jours à Paris, et je suis revenu à Londres hier.	I left Rome on the tenth. Then I visited some friends at Lyons, I spent some days in Paris, and I came back to London yesterday.

3. Occasionally instead of a future anterior :

Attendez, j'ai bientôt fini.	Wait, I shall have finished soon.
------------------------------	-----------------------------------

260. Past Definite. The past definite denotes a past event, or a succession of such past events as mark the progress of the narrative, answering the question 'what happened?', or 'what happened next?' Its use is confined to literary or "book" French, and formal public address. It is hardly ever used in conversation or in easy correspondence :

Dieu créa le monde.	God created the world.
La guerre dura sept ans.	The war lasted seven years.
On força le palais, les scélérats n'osèrent pas résister longtemps et ne songèrent qu'à fuir. Astarbé voulut se sauver dans la foule, mais un soldat la reconnut ; elle fut prise.	They broke into the palace, the villains did not dare to resist long, and only thought of fleeing. As- tarbé tried to escape in the crowd, but a soldier recognized her ; she was captured.

a. Some verbs have a special force in the past definite :

Avoir ; j'eus.	To have ; I received.
Savoir ; je sus.	To know ; I found out (learned).
Connaître ; je connus.	To know ; I realized.

261. Examples of Narrative. 1. The following examples illustrate the principal uses of the past definite, imperfect, past indefinite, and historical present, in the literary narrative style :

Les Turcs, qui cependant **entouraient** cette maison tout embrasée, **voyaient** avec une admiration mêlée d'épouvante que les Suédois n'en **sortaient** point ; mais leur étonnement fut encore plus grand lorsqu'ils **virent** ouvrir les portes, et le roi et les siens fondre sur eux en désespérés. Charles et ses principaux officiers **étaient** armés d'épées et de pistolets : chacun **tira** deux coups à la fois à l'instant que la porte **s'ouvrit** ; et dans le même clin d'œil, jetant leurs pistolets et s'armant de leurs épées, ils **firent** reculer les Turcs plus de cinquante pas ; mais le moment d'après cette petite troupe fut entourée : le roi, qui **était** en bottes selon sa coutume, **s'embarrassa** dans ses éperons, et **tomba** ; vingt et un janissaires se **jettent** aussitôt sur lui : il **jette** en l'air son épée pour s'épargner la douleur de la rendre ; les Turcs **l'emmenent** au quartier du bacha. — *Voltaire.*

Stanislas se **déroba** un jour à dix heures du soir de l'armée suédoise qu'il **commandait** en Poméranie, et **partit** avec le baron Sparre, qui **a été** depuis ambassadeur en Angleterre et en France, et avec un autre colonel : il **prend** le nom d'un Français, nommé Haran, alors major au service de Suède, et qui **est mort** depuis commandant de Dantzick. — *Voltaire.*

2. So nearly identical is the force of the past definite and the past indefinite, as narrative tenses, that they are often used interchangeably, as in the following extract, taken from a newspaper :

LONDRES, 5 août.—Hier soir, à onze heures et demie, un incendie **a éclaté** dans l'atelier de composition de la *National Press Agency*.

Plusieurs pompes à vapeur **arrivèrent** immédiatement sur le lieu du sinistre, et l'incendie **s'étendit** avec une telle rapidité, que toute la maison **a été** complètement détruite. — *Le Matin.*

262. Pluperfect and Past Anterior. 1. Both denote what had happened, like the English pluperfect :

Lorsque je l'avais (eus) fini. When I had finished it.

2. The pluperfect is of much commoner occurrence than the past anterior, and can alone be used after **si** = 'if,' or when custom, continuance, etc., is implied (cf. 258) :

Si je l'avais vu, je l'aurais dit. Had I seen it, I should have said so.
J'avais toujours fini avant midi. I always had finished before noon.

3. The past anterior denotes what had happened immediately before another event. It is rarely used except after conjunctions of time, such as **lorsque, quand, après que, aussitôt que, ne ... pas plus tôt ... que**, etc. :

Après qu'il eut dîné, il partit. After he had dined, he set out.

263. Future. The future is used :—

1. To denote what will happen :

Ils viendront demain. They will come to-morrow.
Je les verrai bientôt. I shall see them soon.
Je ne sais pas s'il viendra. I know not whether he will come.

a. Distinguish English 'will' of futurity from 'will' of volition, and from 'will' of habitual action :

Il ne **restera** pas. He will not stay.
Il ne **veut** pas **rester**. He will not stay.
Ce chasseur **reste** souvent au bois That hunter will often remain whole
pendant des mois entiers. months in the woods.

b. Observe the following commonly occurring forms :

Ne voulez-vous pas rester ? Will you not stay ?
Voulez-vous que je reste. Shall I stay ?
Je ne resterai pas. I shall not stay.

2. Regularly in a subordinate clause of implied futurity :

Payez-le **quand** il viendra. Pay him when he comes.
Faites comme vous **voudrez**. Do as you please.
Tant que je **vivrai**. As long as I live.

3. To denote probability, conjecture, or possibility, etc. :

Il sera malade.	I suppose (no doubt) he is ill.
Cela ne sera jamais vrai.	That cannot possibly be true.

4. Sometimes with imperative force :

Tu ne tueras point.	Thou shalt not kill.
Vous voudrez m'écouter.	Be good enough to hear me.

a. This use is common in official style (edicts, etc.).

264. Future Anterior. The future anterior is used :—

1. To denote what will have happened :

Il aura bientôt fini.	He will soon have done.
-----------------------	-------------------------

2. To denote implied futurity (cf. § 263, 2), probability, conjecture, or possibility, etc. (cf. § 263, 3) :

Quand vous serez rentré je sortirai.	When you have come home, I shall go out.
Je me serai trompé.	I must have made a mistake.

265. Conditional. 1. The main use of the conditional is to denote result dependent on condition, *i.e.*, what would happen in case something else were to happen :

Je serais content, s'il venait.	I should be glad, if he came.
---------------------------------	-------------------------------

a. The condition on which the result would depend is often merely implied, but not formally stated :

Hésiter serait une faiblesse.	To hesitate would be weakness.
-------------------------------	--------------------------------

b. Distinguish English 'should' of duty, etc., 'would' of volition, and 'would' of past habit, from conditional 'should' and 'would' :

Je devrais partir.	I should (ought to) set out.
Il ne voulait pas écouter.	He would not listen.
J'allais souvent le voir.	I would often go to see him.

2. It corresponds to an English past in a subordinate clause of implied futurity (cf. § 263, 2) :

Je prendrais ce qui resterait.	I should take what remained.
--------------------------------	------------------------------

3. In indirect discourse, it denotes what was once future and is now regarded as past, *i.e.*, the original future of the

assertion or question becomes a conditional when in a clause subordinate to a verb in a past tense :

Je croyais qu'il pleuvrait.	I thought it would rain.
A-t-il dit s'il le ferait ?	Did he say whether he would do so ?
But : 'Je le ferai,' dit-il.	'I shall do so,' said he.

4. It is used in statement or request expressed with deference or reserve :

Je le croirais au moins.	I should think so at least.
Auriez-vous la bonté d'y aller ?	Would you have the kindness to go ?
Cela ne serait jamais vrai.	That never could (can) be true.
Je ne saurais vous le dire.	I cannot tell you.

5. It sometimes denotes probability, conjecture, or possibility, etc., in exclamations and questions (cf. § 263, 3) :

Serait-il vrai qu'il l'a dit ?	Can it be true that he said so ?
Serait-il possible ?	Can (could) it be possible ?

6. It sometimes denotes concession after **quand, quand même, or with que** :

Quand (même) il me tuerait, etc.	Even if he should kill me, etc.
Vous me le jureriez que je ne vous croirais pas.	Even if you swore it to me, I should not believe you.

7. It is used to give the substance of hearsay information :
À ce qu'on dit, le roi serait malade. By what they say, the king is ill.

266. Conditional Anterior. Its uses are precisely parallel with those of the conditional (§ 265) ; it denotes what would have happened, etc., etc. :

Je serais parti, s'il était venu.	I should have gone, had he come.
Je partirais dès que je l'aurais vu.	I should go when I had seen him.
Selon les journaux, la guerre se serait déclarée hier soir.	According to the newspapers, war was declared last evening.

267. Imperative Mood. It is used in general as in English :

Lisez-le. Ne le lisez pas.	Read it. Do not read it.
Allons-nous-en à présent.	Let us go away now.
Veuillez m'écouter.	Be good enough to hear me.

a. The first plural sometimes serves instead of the lacking first singular :

Soyons digne de ma naissance.

Let me be worthy of my birth.

Réfléchissons un moment.

Let me think a moment.

b. The imperatives *va*, *allons*, *allez*, *voyons*, often have special idiomatic force :

Allons donc ! Allons, du courage !

Nonsense ! Come, courage !

J'en suis content, **allez** !

I am glad of it, I can assure you?

Voyons, que pensez-vous ?

Come now, what do you think ?

c. An imperative perfect is rare :

Ayez fini votre tâche ce soir.

Have your task done to-night.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

268. General Function. The subjunctive denotes, in general, what is viewed as being desirable or undesirable, uncertain, contingent, or the like, and usually stands in a subordinate clause.

269. Subjunctive in Noun Clause. The subjunctive is used in a clause introduced by *que* and serving as logical subject or as object of a verb :—

1. After expressions of desiring (including willing, wishing, preferring) and avoiding :

Je désire (veux) qu'il parte.

I desire (wish) him to go.

Voulez-vous que je reste ?

Do you wish me to (shall I) stay ?

Je souhaite qu'il ait du succès.

I wish that he may have success.

Il préfère que vous restiez.

He prefers that you should stay.

Évitez qu'il ne vous voie.

Avoid his seeing you.

Such are :

aimer, *like*.

éviter, *avoid*.

souhaiter, *wish*.

aimer mieux, *prefer*.

préférer, *prefer*.

il me tarde, *I long*.

avoir envie, *be desirous*.

prendre garde, *take*

vouloir, *will, wish*.

désirer, *desire, wish*.

care (lest).

etc.

a. **Prendre garde** requires *ne* in the subjunctive clause ; so also, **éviter** generally.

Prends garde que cela *ne* se fasse. Take care lest that happen.

2. After expressions of commanding (including requesting, exhorting), forbidding, consenting :

Vous ordonnez que je m'en aille.	You order me to go.
Je demande que vous me payiez.	I ask that you should pay me.
Dis-leur qu'ils soient prêts.	Tell them to be ready.
Le médecin défend que je sorte.	The doctor forbids me to go out.
Je consens que cela se fasse.	I consent that that be done.

Such are :

admettre, <i>admit.</i>	demander, <i>ask.</i>	permettre, <i>permit.</i>
agréer, <i>permit.</i>	empêcher, <i>hinder.</i>	prier, <i>beg, ask.</i>
avoir soin, <i>take care.</i>	exhorter, <i>exhort.</i>	souffrir, <i>suffer.</i>
conjurér, <i>implore.</i>	exiger, <i>exact.</i>	supplier, <i>beg, pray.</i>
consentir, <i>consent.</i>	laisser, <i>allow.</i>	trouver naturel, <i>find natural.</i>
convenir, <i>agree.</i>	s'opposer, <i>oppose.</i>	veiller, <i>take care.</i>
détendre, <i>forbid.</i>	ordonner, <i>order.</i>	etc.

So also, **dire**, *tell*, **écrire**, *write*, **entendre**, *mean*, **prétendre**, *intend*, when denoting command.

a. The future or conditional often stands after **arrêter**, **commander**, **décider**, **décréter**, etc., especially when the subject is a word denoting final authority, such as **cour**, **roi**, etc. :

Le roi décrète qu'il sera pendu. The king decrees that he shall be hanged.

b. The subjunctive after **empêcher** usually has **ne** :

Empêchez qu'il ne sorte. Prevent his going out.

3. After expressions of judgment or opinion involving approval or disapproval :

J'approuve qu'il revienne.	I approve of his coming back.
Il mérite qu'on le craigne.	He deserves to be feared.
Il vaut mieux que vous restiez.	It is better for you to stay.
Il faudra qu'il parte demain.	He will have to go to-morrow.

Such are :

approuver, <i>approve.</i>	être indigne, <i>be unworthy.</i>	trouver mauvais, <i>disapprove.</i>
avoir intérêt, <i>be interested.</i>	juger à propos, <i>think fit.</i>	trouver juste, <i>think just.</i>
blâmer, <i>blame.</i>	louer, <i>praise.</i>	trouver injuste, <i>think unjust.</i>
désapprouver, <i>disapprove.</i>	mériter, <i>deserve.</i>	valoir, <i>be worthy.</i>
être d'avis, <i>be of opinion.</i>	tenir (à ce que), <i>insist.</i>	etc.
être digne, <i>be worthy.</i>	trouver bon, <i>approve.</i>	

So also, a large number of impersonals of like force :

il convient, <i>it is fitting.</i>	+ facile, <i>easy.</i>	+ temps, <i>time.</i>
c'est assez, <i>it is enough.</i>	+ important, <i>important.</i>	il faut, <i>it is necessary, must.</i>
il est, <i>it is . . .</i>	+ indispensable, <i>indispensable.</i>	il importe, <i>it is important.</i>
+ à propos, <i>proper.</i>		il peut se faire, <i>it may be.</i>
+ bien, <i>well.</i>	+ juste, <i>just.</i>	il suffit, <i>it suffices.</i>
+ bon, <i>good.</i>	+ naturel, <i>natural.</i>	il vaut mieux, <i>it is better.</i>
+ convenable, <i>fitting.</i>	+ nécessaire, <i>necessary.</i>	etc., and their opposites.
+ essentiel, <i>essential.</i>	+ à souhaiter, <i>to be wished.</i>	
+ à désirer, <i>to be desired.</i>	+ (tout) simple, <i>(quite) simple.</i>	

4. After expressions of emotion or sentiment, such as joy, sorrow, anger, shame, wonder, fear :

Êtes-vous content qu'il soit ici ?	Are you glad he is here ?
Je regrette qu'il soit parti.	I regret that he has gone.
Il est fâché que vous le blâmiez.	He is angry at your blaming him.
Il a honte que vous le sachiez.	He is ashamed that you know it.
Je m'étonne qu'il n'ait pas honte.	I wonder he is not ashamed.
J'ai peur qu'il n'ait trop dit.	I fear he has said too much.

Such are :

admirer, <i>be astonished.</i>	+ étonnant, <i>astonishing.</i>	+ joyeux, <i>glad.</i>
s'affliger, <i>grieve.</i>	+ fâcheux, <i>annoying.</i>	+ mécontent, <i>displeased.</i>
avoir honte, <i>be ashamed.</i>	+ heureux, <i>fortunate.</i>	+ satisfait, <i>satisfied.</i>
avoir crainte, <i>fear.</i>	enrager, <i>be enraged.</i>	+ surpris, <i>surprised.</i>
avoir peur, <i>fear.</i>	s'étonner, <i>be astonished.</i>	+ triste, <i>sad.</i>
craindre, <i>fear.</i>	être, <i>be . . .</i>	se fâcher, <i>be sorry, angry.</i>
déplorer, <i>deplore.</i>	+ affligé, <i>grieved.</i>	se plaindre, <i>complain.</i>
c'est, <i>it is . . .</i>	+ bien aise, <i>very glad.</i>	redouter, <i>fear.</i>
+ un bonheur, <i>fortunate.</i>	+ charmé, <i>delighted.</i>	regretter, <i>regret.</i>
+ dommage, <i>a pity.</i>	+ content, <i>glad.</i>	se réjouir, <i>rejoice.</i>
+ une honte, <i>a shame.</i>	+ désolé, <i>very sorry.</i>	se repentir, <i>repent.</i>
+ honteux, <i>a shame.</i>	+ étonné, <i>astonished.</i>	rougir, <i>blush.</i>
+ pitié, <i>a pity.</i>	+ fâché, <i>sorry, angry.</i>	soupirer, <i>sigh.</i>
il est, <i>it is . . .</i>	+ heureux, <i>happy.</i>	trembler, <i>tremble.</i>
+ curieux, <i>strange.</i>	+ indigné, <i>indignant.</i>	etc.

a. When it is feared something will happen the subjunctive has **ne** ; when it is feared something will not happen the subjunctive has **ne . . . pas** ; when the expression of fearing is negative, or interrogative, or conditional, **ne** is usually omitted ; with double negation **ne . . . pas** stands in both :

Je crains qu'il ne vienne.	I fear he will come.
Je crains qu'il ne vienne pas.	I fear he will not come.
Je ne crains pas qu'il vienne.	I do not fear he will come.
Craignez-vous qu'il vienne ?	Do you fear he will come ?

Ne craignez-vous pas qu'il ne vienne? Do you not fear he will come?
 Si je craignais qu'il vînt. If I feared he would come.
 Je ne crains pas qu'il ne vienne pas. I do not fear he will not come.

b. After expressions of emotion or sentiment (except fear), which admit *de* after them, *de ce que* + indicative may be used:

J'ai honte de ce qu'il a échoué. I am ashamed that he failed.

5. After expressions of doubt, denial, despair, ignorance or very slight probability:

Il doute que je sois loyal. He doubts that (whether) I am honest.
 Je nie que cela soit vrai. I deny that that is true.
 Il est rare que vous ayez tort. You are rarely in the wrong.

Such are:

contester, <i>dispute</i> .	+ faux, <i>false</i> .	de (à) quoi sert-il?, <i>of what use is it?</i>
désespérer, <i>despair</i> .	+ impossible, <i>impossible</i> .	il ne sert de (à) rien, <i>it is of no use</i> .
disconvenir, <i>deny</i> .	+ possible, <i>possible</i> .	il se peut, <i>it may be</i> .
dissimuler, <i>not confess</i> .	+ rare, <i>rare</i> .	il ne se peut pas; <i>it cannot be</i> .
se dissimuler, <i>be hidden</i> .	il s'en faut, <i>there is wanting</i> .	il semble, <i>it seems</i> .
douter, <i>doubt</i> .	ignorer, <i>not know</i> .	etc.
il est, <i>it is...</i>	nier, <i>deny</i> .	
+ douteux, <i>doubtful</i> .		

a. Douter si (= 'if,' 'whether') requires the indicative:

Il doute si je suis loyal. He doubts if (whether) I am honest.

b. Il semble regularly has the subjunctive, since it indicates slight probability as distinguished from *il paraît* = 'it appears,' 'is evident,' and *il me semble* = 'it appears to me' (personal conviction):

Il semble que vous me craigniez. It seems that you fear me.
 Il me semble (il paraît) que vous me craignez. It seems to me (it appears) that you fear me.

c. Verbs of doubt and denial used negatively or interrogatively regularly require *ne* in the subjunctive clause:

Je ne nie pas que je ne le sois. I do not deny that I am such.

d. Ignorer + negative = 'know well,' and hence takes indicative:

Je n'ignore pas qu'il a menti. I know well he has lied.

NOTE.—*Peut-être que*, *perhaps*, and *sans doute que*, *doubtless*, require the indicative.

6. After expressions of perceiving, thinking, knowing, declaring, resulting, but only when uncertainty or doubt is

implied by negation, interrogation, or condition; otherwise the indicative:

Verra-t-on que j'aie pleuré?
Je ne crois pas que ce soit lui.
Espérez-vous qu'il réussisse?
Je ne suis pas sûr qu'il vienne.
Si je prétendais qu'il eût tort.
But: Je crois que c'est lui.
J'espère qu'il réussira.

Will they see that I have wept?
I do not think that that is he.
Do you hope he will succeed?
I am not sure he will come.
If I claimed that he was wrong.
I think it is he.
I hope he will succeed.

Such are:

affirmer, *affirm*.
s'apercevoir, *perceive*.
apprendre, *learn, hear*.
assurer, *assure*.
s'attendre, *expect*.
avertir, *warn*.
avouer, *declare*.
conclure, *conclude*.
connaître, *recognize*.
croire, *believe, think*.
déclarer, *declare*.
deviner, *guess*.
dire, *say, tell*.
se douter, *suspect*.
écrire, *write*.
entendre dire, *hear said*.

espérer, *hope*.
être certain, *be certain*.
être persuadé, *be persuaded*.
être sûr, *be sure*.
se figurer, *imagine*.
se flatter, *flatter one's self*.
imaginer, *imagine*.
s'imaginer, *imagine*.
juger, *judge, think*.
jurer, *declare*.
oublier, *forget*.
penser, *think*.
persuader, *persuade*.
pressentir, *forebode*.
prétendre, *assert, claim*.
prévenir, *forewarn*.

prévoir, *foresee*.
promettre, *promise*.
se rappeler, *recollect*.
reconnaître, *acknowledge*.
remarquer, *remark*.
répéter, *repeat*.
répondre, *answer*.
savoir, *know*.
sentir, *feel, notice*.
soutenir, *maintain*.
se souvenir, *recollect*.
supposer, *suppose*.
trouver, *find, think*.
voir, *see*.
etc.

So also, a number of impersonals of like force:

il s'ensuit, *it follows*.
il est avéré, *it is stated*.
il est, *it is*...
+ certain, *certain*.
+ clair, *clear*.

+ évident, *evident*.
+ démontré, *demonstrated*.
+ incontestable, *indisputable*.
+ probable, *probable*.

+ sûr, *sure*.
+ vraisemblable, *probable*.
il résulte, *it follows*.
il me semble, *it seems to me*.

a. Negative question usually implies affirmation; hence the indicative:
Ne trouves-tu pas qu'il est beau? Don't you think he is handsome?

b. When what the speaker regards as fact follows the negative or conditional clause, or when a person is questioned as to his knowledge of what is regarded as fact, the indicative stands:

Il ne croit pas que je suis ici.
S'il savait que tu es ici.
Savez-vous qu'il est arrivé?

He does not believe I am here.
If he knew you were here.
Do you know that he has come?

c. **Il me semble** + negation has subjunctive ; with interrogation + negation the indicative :

Il ne me semble pas qu'il soit fou. It does not seem to me he is mad.
Ne vous semble-t-il pas qu'il est fou? Does it not seem to you he is mad?

d. A preceding dependent clause with this class of verbs always has the subjunctive :

Qu'il ait échoué, je le sais. That he has failed, I know.

NOTE.—For the choice between **que** clause and infinitive see § 283.

270. Subjunctive in Adjectival Clause. The subjunctive is used as follows in clauses introduced by a relative pronoun :—

1. When purpose regarding the antecedent, or unattained result is implied :

Montrez-moi un chemin qui conduise à la science. Show me a way which leads to knowledge.

Je cherche un endroit où je sois en paix. I seek a place where I may be in peace.

a. The indicative, however, is used to express what is regarded as fact or certain result :

Montrez-moi le chemin qui conduit à la ville. Show me the road which leads to the town.

J'irai où je serai libre. I shall go where I shall be free.

2. When the principal clause contains general negation, interrogation implying negative answer, or condition (all of which imply non-existence of the antecedent) :

Il n'a pas de raison qui vaille. He has no reason worth anything.

As-tu un seul ami qui soit fidèle? Have you one friend who is true?

Si j'ai un ami qui soit fidèle c'est lui. If I have one friend who is true, it is he.

a. General negation is sometimes merely implied :

Il y a peu de gens qui le sachent. There are few people who know it.

b. When the negation is not general, or when the interrogation does not imply negative answer, the indicative stands :

Ce n'est pas vous que je crains. It is not you that I fear.

N'est-ce point un songe que je vois ! Is it not a dream that I see !

c. In a negative relative clause *ne*, not 'ne... pas,' is used when the principal clause is negative or implies negation :

En est-il un seul qui *ne* tremble? Is there one who does not tremble?

3. When the antecedent is qualified by a superlative, or by *seul*, *unique*, *premier*, *dernier* (all with superlative force) :

C'est le meilleur ami que j'aie. He is the best friend that I have.

C'est le seul ami que j'aie. He is the only friend I have.

a. What is stated unreservedly as fact requires the indicative :

C'est la seule chose qu'il a dite. It is the only thing he said.

4. With concessive force in compound relative and indefinite clauses (= 'whoever,' 'whatever,' etc.) :

Quoi que vous fassiez. Whatever you do.

Qui qu'on y puisse élire. Whosoever may be elected to it.

Qui que tu sois, parle. Whoever you are, speak!

Quelles que soient vos raisons. Whatever be your reasons.

271. Subjunctive in Adverbial Clause. The subjunctive is used in clauses of adverbial force, as follows :—

1. After conjunctions of time before which or up to which (*avant que*, *en attendant que*, *jusqu'à ce que*) :

Dis-le-lui, *avant qu'il parte*. Tell it to him, before he goes.

Asseyez-vous, *en attendant qu'il revienne*. Sit down until he comes back.

Persévérez *jusqu'à ce que vous ayez réussi*. Persevere till you have succeeded.

a. *Jusqu'à ce que* may have the indicative, when referring to completed past event :

Il resta *jusqu'à ce que j'y fus*. He remained till I was there.

2. After conjunctions of purpose or result (*afin que*, *pour que*, *de crainte que*, *de peur que*) :

J'écris ceci *afin que (pour que) vous sachiez la vérité*. I write this in order that you may know the truth.

Je le tins *de crainte qu'il ne tombât*. I held him for fear he should fall.

a. So also, *de sorte que, en sorte que, de telle sorte que, de façon que, de manière que, tel . . . que, tellement . . . que*, when denoting purpose, but not result :

Agis de sorte que tu réussisses. Act in such a way as to succeed.

But: J'agis de sorte que j'ai réussi. I acted so that I succeeded.

3. After conjunctions of condition (*en cas que, au cas que, à moins que . . . ne, pourvu que, supposé que, en supposant que*) :

Je viendrai au cas que je sois libre demain, ou à moins que je ne sois retenu. I shall come in case I am free to-morrow, or unless I am detained.

a. After *si* = 'if,' the pluperfect subjunctive stands exceptionally (§275, b).

b. The present subjunctive sometimes expresses condition :

Vienne l'ennemi, il s'enfuit. If the enemy comes, he flees.

c. *À (la) condition que* takes indicative, conditional, or subjunctive :

Je lui donne l'argent à (la) condition qu'il partira (or parte). I give him the money on condition that he will go.

NOTE.—*Dans le cas où, au cas où* usually have conditional: '*Au cas où cela serait vrai,*' 'In case that should be true.'

4. After conjunctions of concession (*quoique, bien que, encore que, nonobstant que, soit que . . . soit que or ou que, pour (si) peu que, si tant est que, malgré que*) :

Bien qu'il soit malade, il sortira. Although he is ill, he will go out.

Pour peu qu'il fût malade, il se croyait mourant. If he were ever so little ill, he thought himself dying.

a. The present subjunctive with *que* sometimes has concessive force :
Qu'il perde ou gagne, il partira. Though he lose or win, he will go.

b. The use of a subjunctive after adverbial *quelque (tout, si, etc.) + que* = 'however' depends on the same principle :

Quelque grand que vous soyez. However great you may be.

Si brave qu'il se croie. However brave he thinks himself.

c. *Quand (même)* used concessively sometimes takes the pluperfect subjunctive for the conditional anterior (cf. §265, 6) :

Quand (même) il m'eût dit cela. Even if he had told me that.



5. After conjunctions of negative force (**non que, non pas que, loin que, sans que**):

Il partit sans que je le susse. He went away without my knowing it.

6. After **que** replacing any conjunction requiring the subjunctive, and also after **que** replacing **si** = 'if':

Venez **que** (= afin que, pour que) Come, that I may see you.
je vous voie.

Si je vais et **que** je le voie. If I go, and if I see him.

272. Subjunctive in Principal Clause. The subjunctive is sometimes used in principal clauses, as follows:—

1. Either with or without **que** to denote what is desired, etc.:

Ainsi soit-il !	Vive le roi !	So be it ! (Long) live the king !
Plût à Dieu qu'il en fût ainsi !		Would to God it were so !
Qu'il parte tout de suite.		Let him go at once.
Je meure, si je mens !		May I die, if I am lying !
Le croie qui voudra !		Let him believe it who will

a. **Que** followed by the third person present subjunctive regularly serves as an imperative; so also, sometimes, the first singular:

Qu'il parte.	Let him go.
Que je vous entende.	Let me hear you.

NOTE.—This construction, as also those without **que**, may be explained by ellipsis of some expression of desire, command, etc. (§ 269, 1, 2).

2. The present subjunctive first singular of **savoir** is sometimes used to denote modified assertion:

Je ne sache rien de plus beau. I know nothing finer.

3. The pluperfect subjunctive stands exceptionally for conditional anterior in a 'result' clause (cf. § 275, b):

S'il eût (or avait) su cela, il ne If he had known that, he would not
l'eût (or aurait) pas dit. have said it.

273. Tense Sequence. The tense of the subjunctive is usually determined by the tense of the finite verb in the governing clause, as follows:—

1. A present (including present subjunctive and imperative) or a future, in the governing clause, requires the present subjunctive in the governed clause :

Je doute	} qu'il vienne.	I doubt that (whether) he will come.
Quoique je doute		Though I doubt that he will come.
Doutez		Doubt that he will come.
Je douterai		I shall doubt that he will come.

2. Any other tense than the above (*i.e.*, an imperfect, past definite, conditional, etc.) requires the imperfect subjunctive :

Je doutais	} qu'il vînt.	I doubted that (whether) he would come.
Quoique je doutasse		Though I doubted that he would come.
Je doutai		I doubted that he would come
Je douterais		I should doubt that he would come.

3. Compound tenses follow the same rules, the auxiliary being reckoned as the verb :

J'ai douté (quoique j'aie douté, j'aurai douté) qu'il vienne or soit venu.	I have doubted (though I have doubted, I shall have doubted) that he will come or has come.
J'avais douté (j'eus douté, quoique j'eusse douté, j'aurais douté) qu'il vînt or fût venu.	I had doubted (I had doubted, though I had doubted, I should have doubted) that he would come or had come.

Obs. : As appears from the above, the subjunctive simple tenses express uncompleted event, and the compound tenses completed event, with reference to the time of the governing verb.

4. The following exceptional cases depend mainly on the sense of the context :

a. The sequence after the past indefinite depends upon its value as a present past or as a past (§259, 1, 2) :

J'ai douté qu'il vienne (soit v.).	I have doubted that he will (has) c.
J'ai douté qu'il vînt (fût venu).	I doubted that he would (had) come.

b. Exceptionally after verbs of saying, etc., a governing present may take a past subjunctive and *vice versa* :

Je ne dis pas qu'il fût à blâmer.	I do not say he was to blame.
Il ne croyait pas qu'il y ait un Dieu.	He did not believe there is a God.

c. In a relative clause a past indefinite may stand for a pluperfect :

Il portait cet habit la seule fois He was wearing that coat the only
que je l'aie vu. time that I saw him.

d. The conditional of modified assertion (§265, 4), being virtually a present, is commonly followed by the present subjunctive :

Je désirerais que vous veniez. I should like you to come.
Il faudrait qu'il s'en aille. He would have to go.

e. The imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive, with the force of an English conditional, may follow any tense :

Il n'y a pas de rang qu'elle ne pût There is no rank she could not hold.
tenir.

Je doute qu'il jouât (eût joué), I doubt that he would play (would
s'il avait (avait eu) de l'argent. have played), if he had (had had)
money.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

274. Typical Form. A conditional sentence consists regularly of two parts : the condition, introduced by **si** = 'if,' and the result :

Si j'avais le temps, j'irais à B. If I had time, I should go to B.

a. The condition may, of course, either precede or follow the result :

Irez-vous à B., s'il pleut ? Will you go to B., if it rains ?
S'il ne fait pas beau, je n'irai pas. If it is not fine, I shall not go.

b. The condition is often disguised or implied, or the result understood :

Hésiter serait une faiblesse. To hesitate would be weakness.
Je n'irais pas (si j'étais de lui). I should not go (if I were he).
Ah ! si j'étais à sa place. Ah, if I were in his place !

275. Mood and Tense. A 'result' clause in the present indicative, imperative, or future, regularly requires the 'if' clause in the present indicative ; a 'result' clause in the conditional regularly requires the 'if' clause in the imperfect indicative :

S'il a le temps, il y va. If he has time, he goes.
S'il a le temps, dites-lui d'y aller. If he has (have, will have, should
have) time, tell him to go.

S'il a le temps, il ira la voir.	If he has (have, will have, should have) time, he will go to see her.
S'il avait le temps, il irait la voir.	If he had (had he, were he to have, if he should have, should he have) time, he would go to see her.

Obs. : The condition is regularly expressed by the indicative present or imperfect, whatever be the corresponding English form.

a. The above rules hold good for compound tenses, the auxiliary being considered as the verb :

S'il l'a dit, il le fera.	If he has said it, he will do it.
S'il est venu, faites-le-moi savoir.	If he has come, let me know.
S'il a eu le temps, il sera venu.	If he has had time, he will have come.
Si j'avais eu le temps, je serais allé à Londres.	If I had had time, I should have gone to London.
S'il était brave, il aurait fait cela.	If he were brave, he would have done that.

b. Sometimes the pluperfect subjunctive stands in the 'if' clause, or in the 'result' clause, or in both :

S'il eût (or avait) su cela il ne l'eût (or aurait) pas dit.	Had he known that, he would not have said so.
--	---

c. Occasionally the imperfect indicative stands in the 'if' clause instead of the pluperfect, and in the 'result' clause instead of the conditional anterior :

Si Stanislas demeurerait (=avait demeuré), il était (=aurait été) perdu.	If Stanislas had remained, he would have been lost.
--	---

d. Occasionally the condition is expressed by inversion, without *si* :

N'était-ce la crainte de cela.	If it were not for fear of that.
Eût-il été moins riche.	If he had been poorer.

e. A virtual condition (concession) is sometimes expressed by various locutions :

Quiconque le fera.	Whoever (if any one) does it.
Il le dirait, le ferait-il ?	Even if he said it, would he do it ?
Quand même il ne l'aurait pas dit.	Even though he had not said so.
Il le dirait que je ne le croirais pas.	Even if he said it, I should not believe it.

f. The **past definite** is found in the 'if' clause only in the expression **s'il en fut** :

Riche, s'il en fut (jamais), mais Rich, if any one ever was, but corrupt.
corrompu.

g. **Si** = 'whether' may take the future or conditional :

Dis-moi si tu iras (irais) chez elle. Tell me whether (if) you will (would)
go to her house.

THE INFINITIVE MOOD.

276. Function. The infinitive is a verbal noun. As a verb it governs, and as a noun it serves as subject, object, etc. :

Vous devriez lui parler.	You ought to speak to him.
Voir c'est croire.	Seeing is believing.
Il lit sans comprendre.	He reads without understanding.

277. Use of Infinitive. The chief difficulty in the use of the infinitive is to determine, (1) when it should stand without any preposition, (2) when it should be preceded by **à**, (3) when it should be preceded by **de**.

278. Infinitive without Preposition. The infinitive without any preposition is used :—

1. As subject, or in apposition :

Mentir est honteux.	To lie (lying) is base.
À quoi sert parler ?	Of what use is it to talk ?
Vivre c'est souffrir.	To live is to suffer.

2. As predicate after a few verbs (see list below) :

Vous semblez hésiter.	You seem to hesitate.
Il est censé l'avoir fait.	He is supposed to have done it.

3. As logical subject after a few impersonals (see list below) :

Il vaudrait mieux se taire.	It would be better to keep quiet.
Il fait cher vivre à Paris.	Living is dear in Paris.

4. As object or complement after the so-called modal auxiliaries (§230), after most verbs of motion and causation of motion, after verbs of desiring and preferring, after verbs of

perceiving, after verbs of thinking and intending, after verbs of saying and declaring, and after certain verbs of lacking and failing (see list below) :

Voulez-vous dîner chez nous ?	Will you dine with us ?
Faites-lui apprendre sa leçon.	Make him learn his lesson.
Envoyez chercher le médecin.	Send for the doctor.
Je désirerais lui parler.	I should like to speak to him.
Je les vois venir.	I see them come (coming).
Quand comptez-vous revenir ?	When do you expect to come back ?
Il prétend avoir raison.	He claims to be in the right.
J'avais beau crier.	It was in vain that I shouted.

5. Sometimes, in elliptical expressions, as an imperative, as a direct or indirect interrogative, or absolutely :

Voir les affiches.	See the posters.
Que faire ? Où me cacher ?	What (am I) to do ? Where hide ?
Je ne sais que faire.	I know not what to do.
Penser qu'il a dit cela !	To think that he said that

6. Reference list of verbs requiring direct infinitive :

accourir, <i>hasten.</i>	envoyer, <i>send.</i>	préférer ¹ , <i>prefer.</i>
affirmer, <i>affirm.</i>	espérer ¹ , <i>hope.</i>	prétendre ² , <i>assert.</i>
aimer (condl.), ³ <i>should like.</i>	être, <i>be.</i>	se rappeler ¹ , <i>recollect.</i>
aimer autant, <i>like as well.</i>	être censé, <i>be supposed.</i>	reconnaître, <i>acknowledge.</i>
aimer mieux, <i>prefer.</i>	faillir ² , <i>be on the point of.</i>	regarder, <i>look at.</i>
aller, <i>go.</i>	faire, <i>make, cause.</i>	rentrer, <i>go in again.</i>
apercevoir, <i>perceive.</i>	il fait (impers.), <i>it is.</i>	retourner, <i>go back.</i>
assurer, <i>assure.</i>	falloir, <i>be necessary.</i>	revenir, <i>come back.</i>
avoir beau, <i>be in vain.</i>	se figurer, <i>imagine.</i>	savoir, <i>know how to, can.</i>
avouer, <i>avow.</i>	s'imaginer, <i>fancy.</i>	sembler, <i>seem.</i>
compter ¹ , <i>intend.</i>	juger, <i>consider.</i>	sentir, <i>hear, feel.</i>
confesser, <i>confess.</i>	jurer ⁴ , <i>swear, attest by oath.</i>	souhaiter ¹ , <i>wish.</i>
courir, <i>run.</i>	justifier, <i>justify.</i>	soutenir, <i>maintain.</i>
croire, <i>think.</i>	laisser ³ , ⁴ , <i>let, allow.</i>	supposer, <i>suppose.</i>
daigner, <i>deign.</i>	mener, <i>lead, bring.</i>	être supposé, <i>be supposed.</i>
déclarer, <i>declare.</i>	mettre, <i>set, put at.</i>	témoigner, <i>testify.</i>
déposer, <i>testify.</i>	monter, <i>go up.</i>	se trouver, <i>be.</i>
descendre ³ , <i>come (go) down.</i>	nier ¹ , <i>deny.</i>	valoir autant, <i>be as good.</i>
désirer ¹ , <i>desire, wish.</i>	oser, <i>dare.</i>	valoir mieux, <i>be better.</i>
devoir, <i>ought, to be, etc.</i>	ouïr, <i>hear.</i>	venir ² , ⁴ , <i>come.</i>
dire ⁴ , <i>say.</i>	paraître, <i>appear.</i>	voir, <i>see.</i>
écouter, <i>listen to.</i>	penser ³ , <i>intend, be near.</i>	voler, <i>fly.</i>
entendre, <i>hear, intend.</i>	pouvoir, <i>can, may.</i>	vouloir, <i>will, wish.</i>

¹ Sometimes takes *de*.

² Sometimes takes *à* or *de*.

³ See also list of verbs requiring *à* (§ 279, 6).

⁴ See also list of verbs requiring *de* (§ 280, 6).

a. **Devoir** = 'owe,' 'be indebted' with indirect object takes **de** :

Je lui dois d'être encore en vie. I owe to him that I am still alive.

b. **Faire** takes **de** in **ne faire que de** :

Il ne fait que de sortir. He has just gone out.

c. **Ne pas laisser** = 'not to cease,' etc., takes **de** :

Il ne laisse pas de le dire. He is always saying so (says so for all that).

279. Infinitive with the Preposition à. The infinitive preceded by **à** = 'to,' 'in,' 'at,' 'by,' etc., is used :—

1. As direct object of a few transitives (see list below):

J'aime à chanter.	I like to sing.
Continuez à lire.	Continue to read.
Il m'enseigne à chanter.	He teaches me to sing (singing).
J'ai à étudier demain.	I have to study to-morrow.
Il n'y a pas à se plaindre	There is nothing to complain of.

2. As a complement, after many verbs, to denote the object to which the action tends (answering the question 'to do what?') or the object in, at, on, about which the action takes place (answering the question 'in doing what?' 'at doing what?' etc.):

Il aspire à devenir riche.	He aspires to become rich.
Poussez-les à agir.	Urge them to act.
Je les ai invités à venir.	I have invited them to come.
Aidez-moi à porter cette malle.	Help me to carry this trunk.
Il réussit à me trouver.	He succeeded in finding me.
Je suis à écrire une lettre.	I am (busy) writing a letter.
Il s'amuse à me taquiner.	He amuses himself teasing me.
J'ai gagné à vendre ma maison.	I gained by selling my house.
Il joue à faire le malade.	He plays at being ill.

3. As the complement of certain adjectives (cf. § 280, 2) and nouns denoting fitness, tendency, purpose, etc.:

Ceci est bon à manger.	This is good to eat.
Je suis prêt à vous écouter.	I am ready to hear you.
Quelque chose d'utile à savoir.	Something useful to know.
Cela est facile à faire.	That is easy to do.

La tendance à se croire grand. The tendency to think one's self great.

Une bonne à tout faire. A maid of all work.

α. So also, **le premier, le dernier, le seul :**

Il n'est pas le seul à le dire. He is not the only one to say so.

4. To form adjectival phrases denoting use, fitness, quality, etc. :

Une salle à manger.	A dining-room.
Une chose à voir.	A thing worth seeing.
Des contes à dormir debout.	Very tiresome stories.
Un spectacle à faire peur.	A terrible sight.
De manière à réussir.	In such a way as to succeed.
Vous êtes à plaindre.	You are to be pitied.
C'est à en mourir.	It is enough to kill one.

5. To form adverbial phrases :

Elle chante à ravir.	She sings charmingly.
Elle pleurait à faire pitié.	She wept pitifully.
À vrai dire, je le plains.	To tell the truth, I pity him.
Elle est laide à faire peur.	She is frightfully ugly.

6. Reference list of verbs requiring infinitive with à :

s'abaisser, stoop.	s'arrêter, stop.	condamner (se), condemn.
abandonner (s'), give up.	aspirer, aspire.	condescendre, condescend.
aboutir, end (in), tend.	assujettir (s'), subject.	conduire, lead.
s'abuser, be mistaken (in).	astreindre, compel.	consacrer (se), devote.
s'accorder ² , agree (in).	s'astreindre, bind o. s.	consentir ² , consent.
être d'accord, agree (in).	attacher, attach.	consister, consist (in).
accoutumer (s') ² , accustom.	s'attacher, be intent (on).	conspirer, conspire.
s'acharner, be bent (on).	attendre (s'), ex, ect.	consumer (se), consume (in).
admettre, admit.	autoriser, authorize.	continuer ¹ , continue.
s'adonner, addict o. s.	s'avilir, stoop.	contraindre ¹ , constrain.
aguerrir (s'), inure.	avoir, have, must.	contribuer, contribute.
aider, help.	avoir (de la) peine, have difficulty (in).	convier ² , invite.
aimer ² , ⁴ , like.	balancer, hesitate.	coûter, cost.
amener, lead.	se borner, limit o. s.	décider ³ , induce.
amuser (s'), amuse (in, by).	chercher, seek, try.	se décider, resolve.
animer (s'), excite.	commencer ² , begin.	défier ³ , challenge, incite.
appeler, call.	se complaire, take pleasure (in).	demander ¹ , ask.
appliquer (s'), apply.	concourir, co-operate (in).	demeurer, remain.
apprendre, learn, teach.		dépenser, spend (in).
apprêter (s'), get ready.		désapprendre, forget.

descendre ⁴ , <i>stoop, abase</i> o. s.	finir (neg.) ³ , <i>have done</i> .	porter, <i>induce</i> .
destiner, <i>destine</i> .	forcer ¹ , <i>force</i> .	pousser, <i>urge, incite</i> .
déterminer ³ , <i>induce</i> .	gagner, <i>gain (by)</i> .	prendre garde ³ , <i>take care</i> .
se déterminer, <i>resolve</i> .	habituer ² , <i>accustom</i> .	prendre plaisir, <i>delight (in)</i> .
dévouer (se), <i>devote</i> .	s'habituer, <i>accustom</i> o. s.	se prendre, <i>begin</i> .
différer ² , <i>delay</i> .	haïr, <i>hate</i> .	préparer (se), <i>prepare</i> .
disposer (se), <i>dispose</i> .	se hasarder ² , <i>venture</i> .	prétendre ⁴ , <i>aspire</i> .
divertir (se), <i>amuse</i> .	hésiter ² , <i>hesitate</i> .	prier ³ , <i>invite (formally)</i> .
donner, <i>give</i> .	inciter, <i>incite</i> .	procéder, <i>proceed</i> .
dresser, <i>train</i> .	incliner, <i>incline</i> .	provoquer, <i>incite</i> .
s'efforcer ¹ , <i>try</i> .	induire, <i>induce</i> .	recommencer ¹ , <i>begin again</i> .
s'égayer, <i>divert</i> o. s. (by).	instruire, <i>instruct</i> .	réduire, <i>reduce</i> .
employer (s'), <i>employ (in)</i> .	intéresser (s'), <i>interest (in)</i> .	se réduire, <i>confine</i> o. s.
s'empreser ¹ , ³ , <i>be eager</i> .	inviter, <i>invite</i> .	se refuser ³ , <i>refuse to give</i> .
encourager, <i>encourage</i> .	jouer, <i>play (at)</i> .	se refuser, <i>refuse</i> .
engager (s') ² , <i>engage, advise</i> .	laisser ³ , ⁴ , <i>leave</i> .	renoncer, <i>renounce</i> .
enhardir ² , <i>embolden</i> .	se laisser ³ , <i>tire</i> o. s. (in).	répugner, <i>be reluctant</i> .
s'enhardir ² , <i>venture</i> .	manquer ³ , <i>be remiss (in)</i> .	se résigner, <i>resign</i> o. s.
s'ennuyer ² , ³ , <i>tire</i> o. s. (in).	mettre, <i>put, set</i> .	se résoudre ³ , <i>induce</i> .
enseigner, <i>teach</i> .	se mettre, <i>set about</i> .	se résoudre, <i>resolve</i> .
s'entendre, <i>know well how</i> .	montrer, <i>show how</i> .	rester, <i>remain</i> .
entraîner, <i>allure</i> .	obliger ¹ , ² , <i>oblige, force</i> .	réussir, <i>succeed (in)</i> .
essayer ¹ , <i>try</i> .	s'obliger ² , <i>bind</i> o. s.	servir, <i>serve</i> .
s'essayer, <i>try</i> o. s. (in).	s'obstiner, <i>persist (in)</i> .	songer, <i>think (of)</i> .
être ¹ , <i>to be occupied (in,</i>	occuper (s') ³ , <i>employ (in)</i> .	souffrir ¹ , <i>suffer</i> .
<i>at)</i> .	s'offrir ² , <i>offer</i> .	suffire, <i>suffice</i> .
être à ³ , <i>be one's turn</i> .	s'opiniâtrer, <i>persist (in)</i> .	surprendre, <i>discover</i> .
s'étudier, <i>apply</i> o. s.	parvenir, <i>succeed (in)</i> .	tarder, <i>be long, delay (in)</i> .
s'évertuer, <i>exert</i> o. s., <i>try</i> .	passer, <i>spend (in)</i> .	tendre, <i>tend</i> .
exceller, <i>excel (in)</i> .	pencher, <i>incline</i> .	tenir, <i>be anxious</i> .
exciter (s'), <i>excite</i> .	penser ⁴ , <i>think (of)</i> .	travailler, <i>work</i> .
exercer (s'), <i>exercise (in)</i> .	perdre, <i>lose (in, by)</i> .	trembler ³ , <i>tremble (at, on)</i> .
exhorter, <i>exhort</i> .	persévérer, <i>persevere (in)</i> .	trouver, <i>find</i> .
exposer (s'), <i>expose</i> .	persister, <i>persist (in)</i> .	venir ³ , ⁴ , <i>happen</i> .
se fatiguer ³ , <i>tire</i> o. s. (in,	se plaire, <i>delight (in)</i> .	viser, <i>aim</i> .
<i>at)</i> .	se plier, <i>submit</i> .	vouer (se), <i>devote</i> .

¹ Or *de*.² Sometimes takes *de*.³ See also list of verbs requiring *de* (§ 280, 6).⁴ See also list of verbs requiring direct infinitive (§ 278, 6).a. Suffire sometimes takes *pour* :

Cela suffira pour l'amuser. That will suffice to amuse him.

b. The infinitive after *être à* often has passive force :

Cet ouvrage est à refaire. That work is to be done again.

c. Haïr may take *de* when negative :

Il ne hait pas à (d') être endetté. He does not dislike being in debt.

280. Infinitive with the Preposition *de*. The infinitive preceded by **de** = 'to,' 'of,' 'from,' 'for,' 'at,' etc., is used :—

1. As logical subject of an impersonal verb (for rare exceptions see § 278, 3) :

Il est facile de faire cela.	It is easy to do that.
Il importe d'arriver à temps.	It is important to arrive in time.
Bien vous sied de vous taire.	It well becomes you to be silent.

a. Similarly as subject in inverted sentences :

C'est une folie (que) d'aller là.	It is madness to go there.
-----------------------------------	----------------------------

2. As complement of most adjectives and nouns (cf. § 279, 3) :

Le désir de partir.	The desire of going.
La nécessité de rester.	The necessity of remaining.
Il n'est pas digne de vivre.	He is not worthy to live.
J'ai envie de pleurer.	I feel like crying.

a. So also, many expressions, like the last example, made from verb + noun, *e.g.*, **avoir besoin** (*honte, peur, raison, soin, tort*, etc.), **faire envie** (*plaisir, semblant*, etc.), **courir risque**, etc., etc.

3. After verbs as object or complement, usually to denote the source or occasion of action (answering 'whence?', 'concerning what?'), or to denote separation or cessation from (answering 'from what?'). See list below :

Je me réjouis de le voir.	I rejoice to see it.
Elle se pique d'être la première.	She prides herself on being first.
Prenez garde de tomber.	Take care not to fall.
Il s'excuse d'y aller.	He excuses himself from going.
Promettez de ne pas le dire.	Promise not to tell it.

4. As historical infinitive (= a past definite) :

Et l'ennemi de s'enfuir.	And the enemy fled.
--------------------------	---------------------

5. After **que** in the second member of a comparison, unless the sentence be very short :

Il vaudra mieux rester que de partir si tard.	It will be better to stay than to go so late.
But : Mieux vaut savoir qu'avoir.	Better wisdom than wealth.

6. Reference list of verbs requiring infinitive with *de* :

s'absenter, <i>absent o.s. (from)</i> .	se défendre, <i>forbear, excuse o.s.</i>	féliciter (se), <i>congratulate (on)</i> .
s'absoudre, <i>absolve o.s. (from)</i> .	défier ² , <i>defy</i> .	finir ² , <i>finish</i> .
s'abstenir, <i>abstain (from)</i> .	se défier, <i>distrust</i> .	se flatter, <i>flatter o.s.</i>
accorder, <i>grant</i> .	dégouter, <i>disgust (with)</i> .	forcer ¹ , <i>force</i> .
avoir accoutumé, <i>be accustomed</i> .	délibérer, <i>deliberate (about)</i> .	frémir, <i>shudder</i> .
accuser (s'), <i>accuse (of)</i> .	demander ¹ , <i>ask</i> .	gager, <i>wager</i> .
achever, <i>finish</i> .	se dépêcher, <i>make haste</i> .	garder (se), <i>forbear</i> .
admirer, <i>wonder (at)</i> .	désaccoutumer (se), <i>disaccustom (from)</i> .	gémir, <i>groan</i> .
affecter, <i>affect</i> .	désespérer, <i>despair (of)</i> .	gêner, <i>incommode</i> .
s'affiger, <i>grieve (at, over)</i> .	déshabituer (se), <i>disaccustom (from)</i> .	se glorifier, <i>boast (of)</i> .
ambitionner, <i>aspire</i> .	déterminer ² , <i>resolve</i> .	gronder, <i>scold (for)</i> .
s'apercevoir, <i>perceive</i> .	détester, <i>detest</i> .	hasarder, <i>venture</i> .
s'applaudir, <i>congratulate o.s. (on)</i> .	détourner, <i>dissuade (from)</i> .	se hâter, <i>hasten</i> .
appréhender, <i>fear</i> .	dire ⁴ , <i>bid</i> .	imaginer, <i>imagine</i> .
arrêter, <i>prevent (from), determine</i> .	discontinuer, <i>cease</i> .	s'impacienter, <i>be impatient</i> .
s'attrister, <i>become sad (at)</i> .	disconvenir, <i>deny</i> .	imputer, <i>impute</i> .
avertir, <i>notify, warn</i> .	se disculper, <i>excuse o.s. (for)</i> .	s'indigner, <i>be indignant</i> .
s'aviser, <i>think (of)</i> .	dispenser, <i>dispense (from)</i> .	s'ingérer, <i>meddle (with)</i> .
blâmer, <i>blame (for)</i> .	dissuader, <i>dissuade (from)</i> .	inspirer, <i>inspire</i> .
brûler, <i>long</i> .	douter, <i>hesitate</i> .	interdire, <i>interdict (from)</i> .
censurer, <i>censure (for)</i> .	se douter, <i>suspect</i> .	jouer, <i>enjoy</i> .
cesser, <i>cease</i> .	écrire, <i>write</i> .	juger bon, <i>think fit</i> .
se chagriner, <i>grieve (at, over)</i> .	s'efforcer ¹ , <i>try</i> .	jurer ⁴ , <i>promise (on oath)</i> .
charger, <i>charge</i> .	s'effrayer, <i>be afraid</i> .	ne pas laisser ² , ⁴ , <i>not to cease</i> .
se charger, <i>undertake</i> .	empêcher, <i>prevent</i> .	se lasser ² , <i>be weary (of)</i> .
choisir, <i>choose</i> .	s'empêcher, <i>abstain (from)</i> .	louer, <i>praise (for)</i> .
commander, <i>command</i> .	s'empreser ² , <i>hasten</i> .	mander, <i>bid</i> .
commencer ¹ , <i>begin</i> .	s'empreser ¹ , <i>be eager</i> .	manquer ² , <i>fail, be on point of</i> .
conjurier, <i>beseech</i> .	enjoindre, <i>enjoin</i> .	méditer, <i>meditate</i> .
conseiller, <i>advise</i> .	s'ennuyer ² , ³ , <i>be tired (of)</i> .	se mêler, <i>meddle (with)</i> .
consoler, <i>console (for)</i> .	s'enorgueillir, <i>be proud</i> .	menacer, <i>threaten</i> .
se contenter, <i>be satisfied</i> .	enrager, <i>be enraged (at)</i> .	mériter, <i>deserve</i> .
continuer ¹ , <i>continue</i> .	entreprendre, <i>undertake</i> .	se moquer, <i>make sport (of)</i> .
contraindre ¹ , <i>constrain</i> .	épargner, <i>spare</i> .	mourir, <i>die, long</i> .
convaincre, <i>convict (of)</i> .	essayer ¹ , <i>try</i> .	négliger, <i>neglect</i> .
convenir, <i>agree</i> .	s'étonner, <i>be astonished</i> .	notifier, <i>notify</i> .
craindre, <i>fear</i> .	être à ² , ³ , <i>be duty (or office) (of)</i> .	obliger ¹ , <i>oblige, force</i> .
crier, <i>cry</i> .	éviter, <i>avoid</i> .	obliger ² , <i>do favour</i> .
décider ² , <i>decide, resolve</i> .	excuser (s') <i>excuse (from)</i> .	obtenir, <i>obtain</i> .
décourager (se), <i>discourage (from)</i> .	exempter, <i>exempt (from)</i> .	s'occuper ² , <i>be intent (on)</i> .
désigner, <i>disdain</i> .	faire bien, <i>do well</i> .	offrir, <i>offer</i> .
défendre, <i>forbid</i> .	se fatiguer ² , <i>be tired (of)</i> .	omettre, <i>omit</i> .
	feindre, <i>feign</i> .	ordonner, <i>order</i> .
		oublier ² , <i>forget</i> .
		pardonner, <i>forgive</i> .

parier, <i>bet</i> .	promettre (se), <i>promise</i> .	se ressouvenir, <i>remember</i> .
parler, <i>speak</i> .	proposer, <i>propose</i> .	rire (se), <i>laugh</i> .
se passer, <i>do without</i> .	se proposer, <i>intend</i> .	risquer, <i>risk</i> .
permettre (se), <i>permit</i> .	protester, <i>protest</i> .	rougir, <i>blush</i> .
persuader, <i>persuade</i> .	punir, <i>punish (for)</i> .	sommer, <i>summon</i> .
se piquer, <i>pride o. s. (on)</i> .	recommander, <i>recommend</i> .	se soucier, <i>care</i> .
plaindre, <i>pity</i> .	recommencer ¹ , <i>begin again</i> .	souffrir ¹ , <i>suffer</i> .
se plaindre, <i>complain (of)</i> .	refuser ² , <i>refuse</i> .	soupçonner, <i>suspect</i> .
prendre garde ³ , <i>take care not, beware (of)</i> .	regretter, <i>regret</i> .	sourire, <i>smile</i> .
prendre soin, <i>take care</i> .	se réjouir, <i>rejoice</i> .	se souvenir, <i>recollect</i> .
prescrire, <i>prescribe</i> .	remercier, <i>thank (for)</i> .	suggérer, <i>suggest</i> .
presser, <i>urge</i> .	se repentir, <i>repent (of)</i> .	supplier, <i>beseech</i> .
se presser, <i>hasten</i> .	reprendre, <i>reprove (for)</i> .	tâcher ² , <i>try</i> .
présumer, <i>presume</i> .	réprimander, <i>reprimand (for)</i> .	tenter ² , <i>attempt</i> .
prier ² , <i>beg, pray</i> .	reprocher (se), <i>reproach (with)</i> .	trembler ³ , <i>tremble, fear</i> .
priver (se), <i>deprive (of)</i> .	résoudre ³ , <i>resolve</i> .	trouver bon, <i>think fit</i> .
projeter, <i>intend</i> .		se vanter, <i>boast (of)</i> .
		venir ² , ⁴ , <i>have just</i> .

¹ Or à.² Sometimes à.³ See also list of verbs requiring à (§ 279, 6).⁴ See also list of verbs requiring direct infinitive (§ 278, 6).

281. Distinctions. As appears from the list, the same verb sometimes requires **à**, **de**, or the direct infinitive. The following are examples of cases in which the sense varies with the construction:—

1. Aimer :

J'aimerais bien le connaître.	I should like to know him.
J'aime mieux vous dire tout.	I prefer to tell you all.
Aimez-vous à demeurer ici ?	Do you like to live here ?

2. Décider :

Il m'a décidé à entrer.	He induced me to go in.
Nous décidâmes de partir.	We decided to set out.

3. Défier :

On le défia à boire.	They challenged him to drink.
Je vous défie de prouver cela.	I defy you to prove that.

4. Descendre :

Descends chercher ton chapeau.	Go down and get your hat.
Il a descendu même à voler.	He even descended to theft.

5. **Déterminer :**

Je l'ai déterminé à rester.

I induced him to stay.

Il avait déterminé de s'en aller.

He had determined to go.

6. **Dire :**

Il dit l'avoir vu.

He says he saw it.

Je lui ai dit de venir.

I told him to come.

7. **S'empreser :**

Il s'empresait à lui plaire.

He was eager to please her.

Il s'empresait de répondre.

He hastened to reply.

8. **Être :**

Je suis à écrire des lettres.

I am (busy) writing letters.

C'est à vous de parler.

It is your place to speak.

C'est à vous à parler.

It is your turn to speak.

9. **Se fatiguer :**

Il se fatigua à jouer au billard.

He fatigued himself playing billiards.

Il est fatigué de jouer.

He is tired playing.

10. **Finir :**

Il ne finit pas à me le dire.

He was never done telling me so.

J'ai fini de travailler.

I have finished working.

11. **Jurer :**

Je jure l'avoir vu.

I swear I saw it.

Je jure de le faire.

I swear I will do it.

12. **Laisser :**

Je l'ai laissé dire.

I let him talk.

Je vous laisse à penser.

I leave you to think.

Il ne laissa pas de parler.

He did not stop talking.

13. **Se lasser :**

Il s'est lassé à courir.

He tired himself out (by) running.

Il se lasse de courir.

He is tired of running.

14. **Manquer :**

Je manquai de tomber.

I was on the point of falling.

Il a manqué à faire son devoir.

He has failed to do his duty.

15. **Obliger :**

Je l'ai obligé à (de) le faire.

I obliged him to do it.

Je suis obligé de partir.

I am obliged to go.

Obligez-moi de le faire.

Oblige me by doing it.

16. **S'occuper :**

Il s'occupe à rien faire.

He is busy doing nothing.

Il s'occupe de tout voir.

He is intent on seeing everything.

17. **Penser :**

Que pensez-vous faire ?

What do you intend to do ?

Je pensai tomber.

I nearly fell.

Je pense à répliquer à cela.

I think of replying to that.

18. **Prendre garde :**

Prenez garde à le faire.

Take care to do it.

Prenez garde à ne pas le faire.

Take care not to do it.

Prenez garde de le faire.

Take care not to do it.

19. **Prétendre :**

Il prétend vous connaître.

He asserts that he knows you.

Il prétend à devenir savant.

He aspires to become learned.

20. **Prier :**

Il m'a prié à dîner.

He invited me to dine.

Je vous prie de m'aider.

I pray (ask) you to help me.

21. **Refuser :**

Me refusez-vous à manger ?

Do you refuse to give me food ?

Je refuserai d'y aller.

I shall refuse to go.

22. **Résoudre :**

Il m'a résolu à l'acheter.

He induced me to buy it.

Je suis résolu de l'acheter.

I am determined to buy it.

23. **Trembler :**

Il tremble à me voir.

He trembles when he sees me.

Il tremble de me rencontrer.

He fears to meet me.

24. **Venir :**

Venez nous voir.

Come to see us.

Si vous venez à le voir.

If you happen to see him.

Je viens de le voir.

I have just seen him.

282. Infinitive with other Prepositions. The infinitive stands also after **par, pour, sans, après, entre,** and after locutions ending in **de** or **à**, such as **afin de, afin que de, jusqu'à**, etc. :—

1. **Par** = 'by,' usually only after **commencer** and **finir**:

Il finit par m'insulter.

He ended by insulting me (*or* He finally insulted me).

2. **Pour** usually translates 'in order to,' 'for the purpose of'; sometimes also 'for,' 'from,' 'because,' 'though,' etc., and 'to' after **assez**, **trop**, etc.:

Il faut manger pour vivre.

We must eat (in order) to live.

Il est mort pour avoir trop bu.

He died from over-drinking.

Il fut puni pour avoir ri.

He was punished for laughing.

Pour être pauvre, il n'est pas larron.

Though poor, he is no thief.

Il est trop franc pour se taire.

He is too frank to keep quiet.

a. **Pour** after a verb of motion (§ 278, 4) emphasizes the purpose:

J'irai pour le voir.

I shall go to see him.

3. **Sans** = 'without':

N'allez pas sans manger.

Do not go without eating.

4. **Après** = 'after' requires the perfect infinitive:

Après avoir dîné, je partis.

After having dined, I set out.

283. Infinitive for Subordinate Clause. 1. An infinitive construction usually replaces a **que** clause of which the subject is the same with that of the subject or object (direct or indirect) of the principal clause:

Il croit vous avoir vu.

He thinks that he has seen you.

Dites-leur de s'en aller.

Tell them to be gone.

2. Similarly **afin de**, **à moins de**, **après**, **avant de**, **de crainte de**, **de peur de**, **de façon à**, **de manière à**, **pour**, **sans**, etc. + the infinitive stand for **afin que**, etc. + the subjunctive, but only when the subject of both verbs is the same:

Il partit sans me voir.

He went without seeing me.

But: Il partit sans que je le visse. He went without me seeing him.

284. Infinitive with Passive Force. A transitive infinitive has passive force after verbs of perceiving (**voir**, etc.),

after **faire, laisser**, and when **à** + an infinitive is used adjectively (cf. §241, 3):

J'ai vu bâtir cette maison.

I saw this house being built.

Je me fais faire un habit.

I am having a coat made.

Vous êtes à plaindre.

You are to be pitied.

Une faute à éviter.

A mistake to be avoided.

NOTE.—This construction may be explained by supplying some such ellipsis as the following: 'J'ai vu bâtir une maison (à or par quelqu'un)', 'I have seen somebody building a house.'

285. Infinitive for English -ing. The infinitive must be used to translate many such forms (see § 287, 2, 3, 4).

THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

286. Functions. The participial form in **-ant** serves as a verbal adjective, as a present participle (without **en**), and as a gerund (with **en**):—

1. As a verbal adjective, it denotes quality or state, and agrees like an adjective:

Elle paraît bien portante.

She seems well.

Les enfants doivent être obéissants.

Children must be obedient.

Les vivants, et les mourants.

The living and the dying.

Des paroles consolantes.

Comforting words.

Obs.: The verbal adjective, attributively, regularly follows the noun, as in the last example.

a. Some verbs have a special form for the verbal adjective:

ADJ.	PART.	ADJ.	PART.
différent, <i>different</i> .	différant.	négligent, <i>careless</i> .	négligeant.
convaincant, <i>convincing</i> .	convainquant.	savant, <i>learned</i> .	sachant.
fatigant, <i>fatiguing</i> .	fatiguant.	puissant, <i>powerful</i> .	pouvant.
etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

2. As a present participle, it is used, in general, like the English present participle, to denote simultaneous action, manner, cause, motive, etc., and is invariable:

Pleurant, elle continua le récit.

Weeping, she continued the story.

Je le trouvai riant comme un fou.

I found him laughing like mad.

Elle ne sortit pas, étant malade.	She did not go out, being ill.
Ayant parlé ainsi, il sortit.	Having thus spoken, he went out.
Il n'entrera pas, moi vivant.	He shall not enter, while I live.

NOTES.—1. It is often difficult to determine whether the form in *-ant* is participle (invariable) or adjective (variable). As a participle, the action (generally transitory) is prominent, but as an adjective, quality or else continued action (state) is denoted. It is nearly always a participle when it has a complement or a construction peculiar to the verb, such as object, negative, adverb following: 'Une femme mourante,' 'A dying woman'; 'Des gens mourant de faim,' 'People dying of hunger'; 'Les ennemis se retirèrent, brûlant les villes partout,' 'The enemies retired, burning the towns everywhere'; 'Une femme ne craignant rien,' 'A woman fearing nothing'; 'Des dames parlant doucement,' 'Ladies speaking softly'; 'De soi-disant amis,' 'So-called friends.'

2. In the last example, *soi-disant*, though adjective in force, remains invariable in view of the literal meaning, 'calling themselves.'

3. *Ayant* and *étant* are also always invariable.

3. As a gerund, it denotes either simultaneous action or means by which, and is invariable; *en* = 'while,' 'in,' 'on,' 'when,' 'as,' 'by,' etc., or is untranslated:

En jouant, j'ai perdu ma montre.	While playing, I lost my watch.
En rentrant, j'ai trouvé la lettre.	On returning, I found the letter.
Vous perdrez, en agissant ainsi.	You will lose, if you act thus.
En lisant on apprend à lire.	By reading one learns to read.

a. Both participle and gerund denote simultaneous action, but the use of *en*, strengthened sometimes by *tout*, usually emphasizes the continuity of the action:

(En) disant ceci, il prit la lyre.	(While) saying this, he took the harp.
Tout en pleurant, elle continua.	Still weeping, she went on.

b. The gerund usually refers to the subject:

Je l'ai vu en allant à la poste.	I saw him while going to the post.
But : L'appétit vient en mangeant.	One's appetite comes while eating.

c. *En* is sometimes omitted, especially after *aller*:

Généralement parlant.	Generally speaking.
Il s'en va (en) grondant.	Off he goes grumbling.

d. The gerund denotes progressive action in a few expressions formed from *aller*:

Cela alla (en) diminuant.	That kept growing less and less.
---------------------------	----------------------------------

287. English Forms in *-ing*. These are variously translated into French; idiomatic differences are:—

1. Periphrastic tense forms are avoided in French :

Il a joué toute la matinée. He has been playing all morning.

2. English gerunds are translated by an **-ant** form only when the preposition **en** may be used ; otherwise by an infinitive, a noun, or a clause :

En lisant on apprend à lire.	By reading one learns to read.
But : Il parle de partir.	He speaks of going away.
Il fut pendu pour avoir volé.	He was hanged for having stolen.
Elle partit sans dire adieu.	She went without saying good-bye.
Voir c'est croire.	Seeing is believing.
J'aime la chasse (or à chasser).	I like hunting.
Je suis étonné qu'il soit venu.	I am surprised at his coming.

3. After verbs of perception (**entendre, sentir, voir, etc.**), the relative or infinitive construction is much commoner than the participle :

Je les vois venir (qui viennent or venant).	I see them coming.
Les voilà qui passent !	See them passing !
Il a vu sortir mes frères.	He saw my brothers going out.
Les avez-vous entendus frapper (qui frappaient) ?	Did you hear them knocking ?
Je la (or lui) vis frapper l'enfant.	I saw her striking the child.

4. Compound nouns with a first component in **-ing** are not literally translated :

Une machine à coudre. A sewing-machine.

5. It is often more elegant to avoid a French form in **-ant**, even when permissible :

Pendant mon voyage. While travelling.

THE PAST PARTICIPLE.

288. General Use. The past participle is used, (1) without auxiliary, (2) with **être**, (3) with **avoir** (or **être** used as **avoir**)

289. Without Auxiliary. A past participle without any auxiliary has the force of an adjective (attributive, predica-

tive, appositive), and agrees, like an adjective, in gender and number with the word qualified :

Des fêtes données par le roi.	Festivities given by the king.
Les battus ; les morts.	The beaten ; the dead.
Le passé n'est plus à nous.	The past is no longer ours.
Jean et Marie semblent fatigués.	John and Mary look tired.
Tenez les portes fermées.	Keep the doors closed.
Ils me regardèrent étonnés.	They looked at me astonished.

a. Certain past participles have prepositional force when preceding the substantive, and are invariable, but are variable when following :

Vu les difficultés.	In view of the difficulties.
Excepté eux ; eux exceptés.	Except them ; they excepted.

Such are : Approuvé, attendu, certifié, collationné, y compris, non compris, entendu, excepté, oui, payé, passé, supposé, vu, etc.

b. *Ci-inclus* = 'enclosed' and *ci-joint* = 'herewith,' are invariable when beginning a sentence, or when followed by a noun without article :

<i>Ci-inclus</i> la copie, etc.	Herewith the copy, etc.
Vous recevez <i>ci-joint</i> copie, etc.	You receive herewith a copy, etc.
But : J'envoie <i>ci-jointe</i> une (la) copie, etc.	I send herewith a (the) copy, etc.

290. Past Participle with *être*. A past participle with *être* agrees with the subject, for exceptions see § 244 :

Il sont (ont été) battus.	They are (have been) beaten.
Marie et Louise sont venues.	Mary and Louisa have come.
Ils sont sortis.	They have gone out.
Les dames étant arrivées.	The ladies having come.
Elle parla d'avoir été blessée.	She spoke of having been wounded.

a. Hence the past participle of an impersonal verb with *être* is invariable, agreeing strictly with the grammatical subject *il* :

Il était venu des soldats.	Soldiers had come.
----------------------------	--------------------

291. Past Participle with *avoir*. 1. A past participle with *avoir* agrees with a preceding direct object ; otherwise it is invariable :

La pièce que j'ai écrite, l'avez-vous lue ?	Have you read the play I wrote ?
Quels livres a-t-il apportés ?	What books did he bring ?

But : J'ai écrit la lettre.
Elles ont lu et écrit.
Je lui ai donné la lettre.

I have written the letter.
They have read and written.
I have given her the letter.

2. Similarly, the past participle of a reflexive verb (conjugated with **être** for **avoir**) always agrees with the reflexive object, unless that object be indirect :

Ils **se** sont réjouis.

They have rejoiced.

Elles s'étaient trompées.

They were mistaken.

Elle s'est blessée.

She wounded herself.

Elle s'est laissée tomber.

She has fallen (fell).

But : Ils se sont écrit.

They wrote to each other.

Elle s'est blessé la main.

She wounded her hand.

Ils se sont arrogé ce privilège.

They assumed that privilege.

Ils se sont plu à Paris.

They enjoyed themselves in Paris.

a. Besides the indirect reflexive object, a direct object may be present, with which the following past participle agrees :

Les robes qu'elle s'est achetées. The dresses she bought herself.

202. Remarks. All cases of the agreement of the past participle depend upon the above general principles ; special difficulties are :—

1. The past participle of an impersonal verb is invariable :

La belle journée qu'il a fait !

What a fine day it was !

La disette qu'il y a eu.

The scarcity there was.

2. A noun denoting distance, time, price, weight, etc., with such verbs as **marcher**, **courir**, **vivre**, **coûter**, **peser**, **valoir**, etc., is adverbial accusative (not direct object) ; hence no agreement :

Les dix milles que j'ai marché.

The ten miles I walked.

Les cent francs que cet ouvrage
m'a coûté.

The hundred francs that book cost
me.

a. Such verbs used transitively, or figuratively with transitive force, follow the general rule :

La malle que j'ai pesée.

The trunk which I weighed.

Les dangers qu'il a courus.

The dangers he incurred.

La peur que cela a coûtée.

The fear which that caused.

3. A past participle preceded by an expression of number or quantity, a collective, etc., is variable or invariable according to the sense (cf. § 231-234):

Que de maux il a soufferts !	What ills he endured !
C'est la moitié des meubles qu'on a saisie.	It is the half of the furniture that has been seized.
La moitié des meubles que j'ai vendus.	The half of the furniture which I sold.
Quelle joie, quel bonheur vous lui avez procuré !	What joy, what happiness you have procured him !

a. Partitive **en** is never a direct object ; agreement, however, takes place with **combien**, **plus**, **moins**, preceding **en**, if the sense be plural :

Combien Dieu en a-t-il exaucés !	How many of them God has heard !
Plus on vous a donné de livres, plus vous en avez lus.	The more books you were given, the more of them you read.

4. When an infinitive (with or without a preposition) follows, the past participle is invariable when the preceding direct object is governed by the infinitive, and variable if governed by the past participle alone :

La lettre que j'ai voulu écrire.	The letter I wished to write.
La lettre que j'ai oublié d'écrire.	The letter I forgot to write.
Il nous a priés d'y aller.	He begged us to go.
On nous a dit de sortir.	They told us to go out.

a. **Entendu**, **vu**, **laissé**, agree when the infinitive has active force, but are invariable, if it has passive force (§ 284) :

La dame que j'ai entendue chanter.	The lady I heard sing(ing).
Les enfants que j'ai vu battre.	The children I saw beaten.

b. After **dû**, **pu**, **voulu**, **osé**, with auxiliary force, a governing infinitive is either expressed or implied ; hence no agreement :

J'ai lu tous les livres que j'ai pu (lire).	I read all the books that I could (read).
But : Les livres que j'ai voulus.	The books I wished.

c. **Fait** + infinitive is invariable :

Les médecins qu'il a fait venir.	The doctors he sent for.
----------------------------------	--------------------------

d. The past participle of **avoir à** is variable or invariable :

Les lettres que j'ai eu (eues) à lire.	The letters I had to read.
--	----------------------------

5. The relative pronoun **que** is sometimes direct object of a verb in a following **que** clause, either fully expressed or implied, and hence the past participle is invariable :

Des choses que j'ai cru qu'il ferait.	Things I thought he would do.
J'ai lu les livres qu'il a voulu (que je lusse).	I read the books which he wished (me to read).

GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

293. Transitives. 1. A transitive verb governs a direct object, as in English :

J'ai écrit la lettre (des lettres). I wrote the letter (letters).

2. A transitive verb can have only one direct object ; other substantives related to it must stand as indirect object or as prepositional complement :

Pardonnez-lui ses péchés.	Pardon him his sins.
Je donne le dé à la fille.	I give the girl the thimble.
Je lui donne le dé avec plaisir.	I give her the thimble with pleasure.
Je conseille à mon fils de partir.	I advise my son to go.

a. By an extension of this principle, the verb **faire** = 'make,' 'cause to,' etc. + an infinitive, requires an indirect personal object, when the infinitive has a direct object :

Je fais lire ce livre à mon fils.	I make my son read this book.
Je lui fais lire ce livre.	I make him read this book.
But : Je fais lire mon fils.	I make my son read.
Je le fais lire.	I make him read.

b. **Laisser, voir, entendre, ouïr**, may have, and frequently do have, the same construction :

Laissez-le (-lui) lire le livre.	Let him read the book.
Je l'(lui) ai vu jouer ce rôle.	I saw him play that part.
But : Laissez lire l'enfant.	Let the child read.

294. Intransitives. An intransitive verb can have no direct object, but may, of course, have an indirect object or a prepositional complement :

Il parle à ce soldat.	He is speaking to that soldier.
Il lui parle de la guerre.	He speaks to him of the war.

a. A very few intransitives govern a direct object anomalously :

Où avez-vous passé l'été?	Where did you pass the summer?
Il va tout droit son chemin.	He goes straight on his way.

NOTE.—Many verbs serve both as transitives and intransitives: 'Il est descendu' (intransitive), 'He has gone down'; 'Il a descendu le tableau' (transitive), 'He has taken down the picture.'

295. Predicative Complement. Nouns are used predicatively after certain verbs, as follows:—

1. In nominative relation :

Ils sont Anglais.	They are Englishmen.
Il est médecin.	He is a doctor.
Elle est morte jeune fille.	She died a young girl.

Such verbs are :

demeurer, <i>remain.</i>	mourir, <i>die.</i>	rester, <i>remain.</i>
devenir, <i>become.</i>	naitre, <i>be born.</i>	sembler, <i>seem.</i>
entrer, <i>enter.</i>	paraître, <i>appear.</i>	sortir, <i>go out.</i>
être, <i>be.</i>	passer, <i>pass.</i>	etc.
être censé, <i>be supposed.</i>		

2. In accusative relation :

On le fit roi.	They made him king.
Je le connais honnête homme.	I know him to be an honest man.

Such verbs are :

appeler, <i>call.</i>	estimer, <i>esteem.</i>	se montrer, <i>show one's self.</i>
couronner, <i>crown.</i>	faire, <i>make.</i>	nommer, <i>name.</i>
croire, <i>believe.</i>	se faire, <i>become.</i>	proclamer, <i>proclaim.</i>
déclarer, <i>declare.</i>	instituer, <i>institute.</i>	savoir, <i>know.</i>
élire, <i>elect.</i>	juger, <i>judge.</i>	etc.

296. Prepositional Complement. The use of *de* and *à* presents special difficulty; other prepositions have, in general, their usual literal force:—

1. Some verbs with *de* have the force of an English transitive :

Il médit de ses voisins.	He slanders his neighbours.
Il ne jouit de rien.	He enjoys nothing.

Such verbs are :

abuser de, *misuse*.
s'apercevoir de, *perceive*.
s'approcher de, *approach*.
avoir besoin de, *need*.
avoir peur de, *fear*.
avoir pitié de, *pity*.
convenir de, *admit*.
se défier de, *mistrust*.

se démettre de, *resign*.
disconvenir de, *deny*.
douter de, *suspect, doubt*.
se douter de, *suspect*.
gémir de, *bemoan*.
jouir de, *enjoy*.
manquer de, *lack*.
médire de, *slander*.

se méfier de, *mistrust*.
partir de, *leave*.
se passer de, *do without*.
se servir de, *use*.
se souvenir de, *recollect*.
se tromper de, *mistake*.
user de, *employ, use*.
etc.

2. Similarly, some verbs with *à* have the force of an English transitive :

Il obéit à son père.
Je lui ai résisté.

He obeys his father.
I have resisted him.

Such verbs are :

aller à, *fit, suit*.
arriver à, *reach*.
attenter à, *attempt*.
compatir à, *pity*.
convenir à, *suit*.
déplaire à, *displease*.
désobéir à, *disobey*.
se fier à, *trust*.
importer à, *concern*.

nuire à, *harm*.
obéir à, *obey*.
obvier à, *obviate*.
ordonner à, *order*.
pardonner à, *pardon*.
parvenir à, *attain*.
permettre à, *permit*.
persuader à, *persuade*.
plaire à, *please*.

promettre à, *promise*.
remédier à, *remedy*.
renoncer à, *renounce*.
répondre à, *answer*.
résister à, *resist*.
ressembler à, *resemble*.
succéder à, *succeed*.
survivre à, *survive*.
etc.

3. In some instances, on the contrary, a French transitive has the force of an English verb + a preposition.

Payez-lui les livres.
Je regarde cet arbre-là.

Pay him for the books.
I am looking at that tree.

Such verbs are :

accepter, *accept of*.
admettre, *admit of*.
approuver, *approve of*.
attendre, *wait for*.
chercher, *look for*.

demander, *ask for*.
désirer, *wish for*.
écouter, *listen to*.
envoyer chercher, *send for*.
espérer, *hope for*.

payer, *pay for*.
regarder, *look at*.
rencontrer, *meet with*.
souhaiter, *wish for*.
etc.

4. *De* and *à* frequently have, as compared with English, a special idiomatic force with certain verbs :

Cela dépend de vous.
Pensez à votre devoir.

That depends on you.
Think of your duty.

Such verbs are :

s'affliger de, *grieve at*.
s'approcher(s') de, *draw near to*.

blâmer de, *blame for*.
complimenter de, *compliment on*.

consoler de, *console for*.
déjeuner de, *breakfast on*.
dépendre de, *depend on*.

se désoler de, <i>grieve over.</i>	se nourrir de, <i>live on.</i>	remercier, <i>th.</i>
dîner de, <i>dine on.</i>	profiter de, <i>profit by.</i>	rire de, <i>laugh at.</i>
féliciter de, <i>congratulate on.</i>	punir de, <i>punish for.</i>	triompher de, <i>tr.</i>
gémir de, <i>lament over.</i>	récompenser de, <i>reward for.</i>	vivre de, <i>live on.</i>
louer de, <i>praise for.</i>		etc.
se mêler de, <i>meddle with.</i>	se réjouir de, <i>rejoice at.</i>	

acheter qqch. à qqu., <i>buy something from (or for) some one.</i>	ôter qqch. à qqu., <i>take away for.</i>
arracher qqch. à qqu., <i>snatch from.</i>	pardoner qqch. à qqu., <i>pardon for.</i>
cacher qqch. à qqu., <i>hide from.</i>	payer qqch. à qqu., <i>pay for.</i>
conférer qqch. à qqu., <i>confer on.</i>	penser à qqch. or à qqu., <i>think of.</i>
démander qqch. à qqu., <i>ask for (of).</i>	prendre qqch. à qqu., <i>take from.</i>
dérober qqch. à qqu., <i>steal from.</i>	pouvoir à qqch., <i>provide for.</i>
emprunter qqch. à qqu., <i>borrow from.</i>	procurer qqch. à qqu., <i>procure for.</i>
infliger qqch. à qqu., <i>inflict on.</i>	prodiguer qqch. à qqu., <i>lavish on.</i>
inspirer qqch. à qqu., <i>inspire with.</i>	reprocher qqch. à qqu., <i>reproach with.</i>
mêler qqch. à qqch., <i>mingle with.</i>	souhaiter qqch. à qqu., <i>wish.</i>
	voler qqch. à qqu., <i>steal from.</i>

5. Many verbs have a double construction with varying meaning :

Ils jouent aux cartes.

They are playing cards.

Elle joue du piano.

She is playing the piano.

Such verbs are :

abuser qqu., <i>deceive.</i>	penser de, <i>have opinion of.</i>
" de qqch., <i>misuse.</i>	prétendre qqch., <i>assert.</i>
assister qqu., <i>help.</i>	" à, <i>aspire to.</i>
" à qqch., <i>be present at, witness.</i>	servir, <i>serve (tr. and intr.).</i>
concourir à qqch., <i>contribute to.</i>	" de, <i>serve as.</i>
" pour qqch., <i>compete for.</i>	" à, <i>be useful for.</i>
convenir à qqu., <i>suit.</i>	se servir de, <i>make use of.</i>
" de qqch., <i>agree about.</i>	suppléer qqu., <i>take the place of.</i>
croire, qqu., or qqch., <i>believe.</i>	" à qqch., <i>complete.</i>
" à, en, <i>believe in.</i>	toucher qqu. or qqch., <i>touch.</i>
démander qqu. or qqch., <i>ask after.</i>	" de l'argent, <i>draw money.</i>
" qqch. à qqu., <i>ask for (from, of).</i>	" à, <i>meddle with, be near to.</i>
hériter de qqu., <i>be heir of.</i>	" d'un instrument, <i>play an instrument (keyed).</i>
" de qqch., <i>inherit.</i>	
jouer qqu., <i>deceive.</i>	user qqch., <i>wear out.</i>
" d'un instrument, <i>play on an instrument.</i>	" de, <i>make use of.</i>
" à un jeu, <i>play (at) a game.</i>	en user de, <i>deal, act.</i>
manquer qqu. or qqch., <i>miss.</i>	veiller qqu., <i>watch over, nurse.</i>
" de, <i>lack.</i>	" à qqch., <i>attend to, watch over.</i>
" à, <i>fail in.</i>	sur qqu., <i>watch over.</i>
penser à, <i>think of (about).</i>	etc.

297. Position. Objects and prepositional complements regularly follow the verb, the direct object (if any) being first; but if of unequal length, the longer usually last. For position of personal pronouns, see the Pronoun.

298. Composite Complement. The various parts of a complement must be of the same grammatical value, *i.e.*, all nouns, all verbs, etc.:

Il apprend à lire et à chanter.	He learns to read and sing.
Il apprend la lecture et le chant.	He learns reading and singing.

299. Manifold Verb. Two or more verbs can govern the same complement only if alike in government:

Il aime et respecte son oncle.	He loves and respects his uncle.
Il aime son oncle et lui obéit.	He loves and obeys his uncle.

THE NOUN.

GENDER OF NOUNS.

300. General Rule. Nouns in French are either masculine or feminine. As an aid to memory, general rules for determining gender are given in the following sections.

301. Gender by Derivation. 1. Nouns derived from Latin masculines are regularly masculine:

Mur (L. *murum*); livre (L. *librum*); Wall; book; order; poet.
ordre (L. *ordinem*); poète (L. *poeta*).

a. Exceptions are not uncommon; Latin masculine abstracts in *-or* (accusative *-orem*) have become feminine, except masculine *honneur*, *déshonneur*, *labeur*, *amour*:

candeur, f. (L. *candorem*), *candour*.

*couleur, f. (L. *colorem*), *colour*.

douleur, f. (L. *dolorem*), *pain*.

erreur, f. (L. *errorem*), *error*.

fureur, f. (L. *furorem*), *fury*.

etc.

* Masculine in such phrases as 'couleur de feu,' 'couleur de rose,' etc., *s.g.*, 'ce ruban est d'un beau couleur de rose.'

2. Nouns derived from Latin feminines are regularly feminine :

Justice (L. *justitiam*); charité (L. *caritatem*); main (L. *manum*); foi (L. *fidem*). Justice; charity; hand; faith.

3. Nouns derived from Latin neuters are regularly masculine :

Corps (L. *corpus*); fer (L. *ferrum*); or (L. *aurum*); pré (L. *pratum*); siècle (L. *sæculum*); verbe (L. *verbum*). Body; iron; gold; meadow; century; verb.

a. More than a hundred neuter plurals in *-a* have become feminine singular in French, just as if derived from nouns in *-a* of the Latin first declension :

arme (L. <i>arma</i>), <i>arm.</i>	feuille (L. <i>folia</i>), <i>leaf.</i>	lèvre (L. <i>labra</i>), <i>lip.</i>
date (L. <i>data</i>), <i>date.</i>	graine (L. <i>grana</i>), <i>seed.</i>	œuvre (L. <i>opera</i>), <i>work.</i>
dette (L. <i>debita</i>), <i>debt.</i>	hulle (L. <i>olea</i>), <i>oil.</i>	pomme (L. <i>poma</i>), <i>apple.</i>
étude (L. <i>studia</i>), <i>study.</i>	joie (L. <i>gaudia</i>), <i>joy.</i>	etc.

302. Gender by Endings. 1. Masculine are most nouns ending as follows :—

(1) In a vowel sound (not *-e* mute) :

Un opéra (côté, chapeau, cheveu).	An opera (side, hat, hair).
Un parti (zéro, caillou, tissu).	A party (zero, pebble, tissue).

a. Feminine exceptions are :

guérilla, <i>guerilla.</i>	moitié, <i>half.</i>	bru, <i>daughter-in-law.</i>
gutta-percha, <i>gutta-percha.</i>	fourmi, <i>ant.</i>	glu, <i>bird-lime.</i>
polka, <i>polka.</i>	merci, <i>mercy.</i>	tribu, <i>tribe.</i>
razzia, <i>raid.</i>	fol, <i>faith.</i>	vertu, <i>virtue.</i>
tombola, <i>charity-lottery.</i>	loi, <i>law.</i>	eau, <i>water.</i>
véranda, <i>verandah.</i>	paroi, <i>wall.</i>	peau, <i>skin.</i>
cité, <i>city.</i>	virago, <i>virago.</i>	etc.

Further, abstracts in *-té*, *-tié* :

amitié, <i>friendship.</i>	liberté, <i>liberty.</i>	santé, <i>health.</i>
charité, <i>charity.</i>	pitié, <i>pity.</i>	etc.

(2) In a consonant :

Le sac (pied, joug, sol, nez, temps). The sack (foot, yoke, soil, nose, time)

a. Feminine exceptions are :

clef, <i>key</i> .	chair, <i>flesh</i> .	vis, <i>screw</i> .	croix, <i>cross</i> .
nef, <i>ship, nave</i> .	cour, <i>court</i> .	dent, <i>tooth</i> .	faux, <i>scythe</i> .
soif, <i>thirst</i> .	cuille, <i>spoon</i> .	dot, <i>dower</i> .	noix, <i>walnut</i> .
faim, <i>hunger</i> .	mer, <i>sea</i> .	forêt, <i>forest</i> .	paix, <i>peace</i> .
façon, <i>fashion</i> .	tour, <i>tower</i> .	gent, <i>tribe</i> .	perdrix, <i>partridge</i> .
fin, <i>end</i> .	brebis, <i>sheep</i> .	mort, <i>death</i> .	poix, <i>pitch</i> .
leçon, <i>lesson</i> .	fois, <i>time</i> .	nuit, <i>night</i> .	toux, <i>cough</i> .
main, <i>hand</i> .	oasis, <i>oasis</i> .	part, <i>part, share</i> .	voix, <i>voice</i> .
rançon, <i>ransom</i> .	souris, <i>mouse</i> .	chaux, <i>lime</i> .	etc.

Further, nouns in **-son**, **-ion** and most abstracts in **-eur** (cf. § 301, a) :

chanson, <i>song</i> .	nation, <i>nation</i> .	faveur, <i>favour</i> .
maison, <i>house</i> .	occasion, <i>occasion</i> .	furor, <i>fury</i> .
raison, <i>reason</i> .	possession, <i>possession</i> .	peur, <i>fear</i> .
trahison, <i>treason</i> .	couleur, <i>colour</i> .	etc.

(3) In **-acle**, **-age**, **-asme**, **-ège**, **-ème**, **-isme**, **-tère** :

Le spectacle (voyage, sarcasme, collège, diadème, magnétisme, mystère).	The spectacle (journey, sarcasm, college, diadem, magnetism, mystery).
---	--

a. The following feminines in **-age** should be noted :

cage, <i>cage</i> .	nage, <i>swimming</i> .	plage, <i>beach</i> .
image, <i>image</i> .	page, <i>page</i> (of a book).	rage, <i>rage</i> .

2. Feminine are most nouns ending as follows :—

(1) In **-e** preceded by a vowel or double consonant :

Une année (vie, vue, raie, soie, roue, pluie, famille, flamme, couronne, tristesse, botte).	A year (life, sight, streak, silk, wheel, rain, family, flame, crown, sadness, boot).
---	---

(2) In **-ace**, **-ade**, **-ance**, **-ence**, **-ense**, **-ière**, **-oire**, **-ude**, **-ure** :

La préface (salade, constance, présence, défense, lumière, histoire, habitude, culture).	The preface (salad, constancy, presence, defence, light, history, habit, culture).
--	--

303. Gender by Meaning. 1. Names of male beings are usually masculine, and names of female beings feminine :

Un homme ; une femme.	A man ; a woman.
Un bœuf ; une vache.	An ox ; a cow.

a. Most nouns denoting professions, *e.g.*, **docteur**, *doctor*, **écrivain**, *writer*, **imprimeur**, *printer*, etc., and a few nouns lacking a feminine form, *e.g.*, **ange**, *angel*, **témoin**, *witness*, etc., remain masculine when applied to females :

Elle est un auteur distingué.

She is a celebrated authoress.

Marie est un ange.

Mary is an angel.

b. Some names of lower animals are masculine only, *e.g.*, **éléphant**, *elephant*, **hibou**, *owl* ; others are feminine only, *e.g.*, **fourmi**, *ant*, **souris**, *mouse* ; ambiguity may be avoided by adding **mâle** or **femelle** :

Un éléphant mâle (femelle).

A he- (she-) elephant.

c. Some nouns are feminine only, whether applied to males or females :

caution, *surety*.

personne, *person*.

vedette, *scout*.

connaissance, *acquaintance*.

pratique, *customer*.

victime, *victim*.

dupe, *dupe*.

recrue, *recruit*.

vigie, *look-out man*.

ganache, *blockhead*.

sentinelle, *sentinel*.

etc.

2. The following are masculine :—

(1) Names of cardinal points and winds :

Le nord ; le sud ; le zéphyr.

The north ; the south ; the zephyr

a. Feminine exceptions are :

bise, *north wind*.

mousson, *monsoon*.

tramontane, *north wind*.

brise, *breeze*.

(2) Names of seasons, months, days of the week :

Le printemps ; octobre ; lundi.

Spring ; October ; Monday.

(3) Names of countries not ending in -e :

Le Canada ; le Dauphiné ; le Chili.

Canada ; Dauphiny ; Chili.

(4) Most names of mountains not ending in -es, and most names of rivers :

Le Hartz ; le Jura.

The Hartz mountains ; Mount Jura.

Les Apennins.

The Apennines.

Le Volga ; le Rhône ; le Rhin.

The Volga ; the Rhone ; the Rhine

But fem. : Les Alpes (Pyrénées, Vosges, etc.).

a. The rivers of France in -e are nearly all feminine :

La Seine, la Loire, etc.

The Seine, the Loire, etc.

(5) Names of trees and shrubs :

Le chêne ; le bouleau ; le pommier. The oak ; the birch ; the apple-tree.

a. Feminine exceptions are :

aubépine, <i>hawthorn</i> .	épine, <i>thorn</i> .	vigne, <i>vine</i> .
bourdaine, <i>buckthorn</i> .	hièble, <i>dwarf-elder</i> .	violne, <i>wild clematis</i> .
bruyère, <i>heath</i> .	ronce, <i>bramble</i> .	etc.

(6) Names of weights and measures of the metrical system :

Un mètre (gramme, litre, etc.). A metre (gramme, litre, etc.).

(7) Names of metals and chemicals :

Le fer (or, cuivre, argent, sulphate). Iron (gold, copper, silver, sulphate)

a. Feminine exceptions are :

fonte, <i>cast-iron</i> .	tôle, <i>sheet-iron</i> .
---------------------------	---------------------------

(8) Words and phrases not nouns when used as nouns :

Le beau ; le blanc ; le français. The beautiful ; white ; French.

Un a ; un mais ; un oui-dire. An 'a' ; a 'but' ; a rumour.

Le derrière de la tête. The back of the head.

a. Adjectives referring to concrete objects have the gender of the noun understood :

Une belle (*sc. dame, femme, etc.*). A beauty.

Une capitale (*sc. ville, lettre*). A capital.

b. The names of the letters of the alphabet, as given in § 4, are all masculine, except f, h, l, m, n, r, s :

Un a ; un bé ; une effe. An 'a' ; a 'b' ; an 'f.'

3. The following are feminine :—

(1) Names of countries in -e :

La France (Asie, Normandie). France (Asia, Normandy).

a. Masculine exceptions are :

le Bengale, <i>Bengal</i> .	le Mexique, <i>Mexico</i> .	le Pélopon(n)èse, <i>Peloponnesus</i> .
le Hanovre, <i>Hanover</i> .	le Maine, <i>Maine</i> (in Fr.).	etc.

(2) Most names of cities and towns, especially in -e, -es :

Rome ; Athènes ; Tyr ; Ilion. Rome ; Athens ; Tyre ; Ilium.

a. Masculine exceptions are :

le Caire, <i>Cairo</i> .	Londres, <i>London</i> .	Paris, <i>Paris</i> .
le Havre, <i>Havre</i> .	Versailles, <i>Versailles</i> .	etc.

NOTES.—1. Any name of a town or city is masculine as a collective : 'Tout Rome le sait,' 'All Rome knows it.' 2. In case of doubt as to the gender, the name may always be preceded by *la ville de* 'the town (city) of.'

(3) Names of holidays, *fête de* being understood :

La Saint-Martin ; la mi-juin. Martinmas ; mid-June.

a. Observe :

Noël (la Noël, la fête de Noël). Christmas.

(4) Names of arts, sciences, trades :

La peinture (chimie, librairie). Painting (chemistry, book-trade).

a. Principal exception :

le dessin, *drawing*.

304. Nouns of Double Gender. 1. Some nouns denoting persons, mostly in *-e*, and adjectives in *-e*, when so used, are either masculine or feminine :

Un (une) artiste ; un (une) élève. An artist ; a pupil.

Un (une) malade ; un (une) rebelle. A patient ; a rebel.

Such nouns are :

aide, <i>assistant</i> .	*enfant, <i>child</i> .	propriétaire, <i>owner</i> .
camarade, <i>comrade</i> .	esclave, <i>slave</i> .	pupille, <i>ward</i> .
compatriote, <i>compatriot</i> .	locataire, <i>tenant</i> .	etc.

*Always masculine in the plural.

2. The meaning of some nouns varies with the gender :

Un critique ; une critique. A critic ; a criticism.

Le mode ; la mode. The mode, mood (gram.) ; the fashion.

Such nouns are :

	MASC.	FEM.		MASC.	FEM.
aide,	<i>assistant</i> ,	<i>assistant, help</i> .	page,	<i>page</i> ,	<i>page (of a book)</i> .
aune,	<i>alder</i> ,	<i>ell</i> .	pendule,	<i>pendulum</i> ,	<i>clock</i> .
crêpe,	<i>crêpe</i> ,	<i>pancake</i> .	poêle,	<i>stove, pall</i> ,	<i>frying-pan</i> .
critique,	<i>critic</i> ,	<i>criticism</i> .	politique,	<i>politician</i> ,	<i>politics</i> .
garde,	<i>guard (mil.)</i> ,	<i>keeper, body of</i>	poste,	<i>position</i> ,	<i>post-office</i> .
	<i>keeper</i> ,	<i>troops, watch, hill</i> .	somme,	<i>sleep, nap</i> ,	<i>sum</i> .
guide,	<i>guide</i> ,	<i>rein</i> .	souris,	<i>smile</i> ,	<i>mouse</i> .
livre,	<i>book</i> ,	<i>pound</i> .	statuaire,	<i>sculptor</i> ,	<i>sculpture</i> .
manche,	<i>handle</i> ,	<i>sleeve</i> .	tour,	<i>turn, trick</i> ,	<i>tower</i> .
mémoire,	<i>memorandum</i> ,	<i>memory</i> .	trompette,	<i>trumpeter</i> ,	<i>trumpet</i> .
merci,	<i>thanks</i> ,	<i>mercy, pity</i> .	vapeur,	<i>steamer</i> ,	<i>steam</i> .
mode,	<i>mode, mood</i> ,	<i>fashion</i> .	vase,	<i>vase</i> ,	<i>slime, mud</i> .
moule,	<i>mould</i> ,	<i>mussel</i> .	volle,	<i>veil</i> ,	<i>sail</i> .
mousse,	<i>cabin-boy</i> ,	<i>moss</i> .			
office,	<i>service</i> ,	<i>larder</i> .			

3. The following nouns are either masculine or feminine, with identical or closely related meaning :—

a. **Après-midi**=‘afternoon’ and **automne**=‘autumn’ are usually masculine, sometimes feminine.

b. **Amour** (m.)=‘love,’ ‘loved object,’ ‘passion,’ ‘amour’; **amour** (f. s. poet.)=‘passion,’ ‘amour’; **amours** (f. pl.)=‘passion,’ ‘amours.’

c. **Délice**=‘delight’ and **orgue**=‘organ’ (music) are masculine in singular and feminine in plural.

d. **Hymne** (m.)=‘hymn,’ ‘song of praise’; **hymne** (f.)=‘(church) hymn.’

e. **Couple** (m.)=‘couple,’ ‘pair’ (joined by affection, sentiment, etc.); **couple** (f.)=‘couple,’ ‘two’ (two like objects taken together):

Un couple d’amants.

A pair of lovers.

Une couple d’œufs.

Two (a couple of) eggs.

Note : Une paire de gants, etc.

A pair of gloves, etc.

f. **Pâque** or **pâques** (m. s.)=‘Easter’; **pâques fleuries** (f. pl.)=‘Palm Sunday’ (so also in other phrases); **pâque** (f.)=‘passover.’

g. **Orge** (f.)=‘barley’ is masculine in **orge mondé** (**perlé**)=‘pot-(pearl-) barley.’

h. **Foudre** (f.)=‘thunderbolt’ is sometimes masculine in poetry or elevated prose; **foudre** (m.) in **le foudre de Jupiter**=‘Jove’s thunderbolt’ and in figurative expressions, e.g., **un grand foudre de guerre**=‘a great warrior.’

i. **Œuvre** (f.)=‘work,’ ‘works,’ is sometimes masculine in elevated style; **œuvre** (m. s.)=‘works’ (collectively of an engraver or musician); **le grand œuvre**=‘the philosopher’s stone’; **le gros œuvre**=‘heavy stone-work’; **de l’œuvre** (m.)=‘silver-lead.’

j. **Gens** (pl. m. or f.)=‘people,’ ‘persons,’ etc. Attributive adjectives are feminine when preceding, and masculine when following **gens**, but predicatives, before or after, are masculine. ‘All’ is translated by **toutes** only when attributive and separated from **gens** by an adjective variable for the feminine; otherwise by **tous**:

De bonnes gens.

Good people.

Les vieilles gens sont malheureux.

Old people are unhappy.

Les petites gens et les grands.	The small people and the great.
Merci, bonnes gens, merci.	Thanks, good people, thanks.
Ces gens sont heureux.	Those people are happy.
Toutes les vieilles gens.	All the old people.
Tous les gens.	All the people.
But : Tous les habiles gens.	All the clever people.
Tous ces gens-ci.	All these people.
Tous sont de bonnes gens.	All are good people.
Les gens sont tous ici.	The people are all here.

NOTES.—1. A pronoun to which **gens** is antecedent is masculine : 'Les gens **qui** sont venus,' 'The people who have come.' 2. **Gens** in expressions like **gens de robe**= 'lawyers' and in **jeunes gens**= 'young men' is always masculine.

305. Gender of Compound Nouns. 1. Compound nouns made up of a verb + a governed noun are regularly masculine :

Un cure-dents ; un porte-plume.	A toothpick ; a pen-holder.
Un tire-bouchon ; un portefeuille.	A corkscrew ; a portfolio.

a. Occasionally they are feminine :

Une perce-neige.	A snowdrop.
------------------	-------------

2. The gender of other compounds is regularly that of the noun, when only one noun is present, or of the principal noun, in case there are two :

Une eau-forte.	An etching.
Une mappe-monde.	A map of the world.
La fête-dieu.	Corpus Christi day.

306. Formation of the Feminine. Most nouns denoting living beings distinguish the masculine and feminine as follows :—

1. Some by a different word :

MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
bœuf, <i>ox</i> .	vache.	mari, <i>husband</i> .	femme.
bouc, <i>he-goat</i> .	chèvre.	oncle, <i>uncle</i> .	tante.
coq, <i>cock</i> .	poule.	parrain, <i>god-father</i> .	marraine.
frère, <i>brother</i> .	sœur.	porc, <i>pig</i> .	truie.
homme, <i>man</i> .	femme.	etc.	etc.

a. The feminine form is often obviously cognate :

MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
ambassadeur, <i>ambassador</i> .	ambassadrice.	gouverneur, <i>tutor</i> .	gouvernante.
canard, <i>drake</i> .	cane.	loup, <i>wolf</i> .	louve.
*chanteur, <i>singer</i> .	cantatrice.	mulet, <i>mule</i> .	mule.
cochon, <i>hog</i> .	coche.	*procureur, <i>prozy</i> .	procuratrice.
compagnon, <i>companion</i> .	compagne.	serviteur, <i>servant</i> .	servante.
dindon, <i>turkey cock</i> .	dinde.	vieillard, <i>old man</i> .	vielle.
empereur, <i>emperor</i> .	impératrice.	etc.	etc.

*Also in *-euse*, see § 337, 2, (2), a.

2. Some by adding *-esse* to the last consonant :

MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
abbé, <i>abbot</i> .	abbesse.	ogre, <i>ogre</i> .	ogresse.
âne, <i>ass</i> .	ânesse.	pair, <i>peer</i> .	païresse.
chanoine, <i>canon</i> .	chanoinesse.	pauvre, <i>pauper</i> .	pauvresse.
comte, <i>count</i> .	comtesse.	prêtre, <i>priest</i> .	prêtresse.
diable, <i>devil</i> .	diablesse.	prince, <i>prince</i> .	princesse.
drôle, <i>rogue</i> .	drôlesse.	suisse, <i>Swiss</i> .	suissesse.
druide, <i>druid</i> .	druidesse.	tigre, <i>tiger</i> .	tigresse.
hôte, <i>host</i> .	hôtesse.	traître, <i>traitor</i> .	traitresse.
maître, <i>master</i> .	maîtresse.	etc.	etc.

a. So also the following, but with changes in the stem :

MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
dieu, <i>god</i> .	déesse.	*chasseur, <i>huntsman</i> .	chasseresse.
doge, <i>doge</i> .	dogaresse.	défendeur, <i>defendant</i> .	défenderesse.
duc, <i>duke</i> .	duchesse.	*demandeur, <i>plaintiff</i> .	demanderesse.
larron, <i>thief</i> .	larronesse.	enchanteur, <i>enchanter</i> .	enchanteresse.
négre, <i>negro</i> .	négresse.	pêcheur, <i>sinner</i> .	pêcheresse.
prophète, <i>prophet</i> .	prophétesse.	*vendeur, <i>seller (law)</i> .	venderesse.
baillieur, <i>lessor</i> .	bailleresse.	vengeur, <i>avenger</i> .	vengeresse.

*Also in *-euse*, see § 337, 2, (2), a.

3. A few nouns take *-ine* :

MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
tsar, <i>czar</i> .	tsarine.	Philippe, <i>Philip</i> .	Philippine.
héros, <i>hero</i> .	héroïne.	etc.	etc.

4. Most other nouns follow the analogy of adjectives of like termination, and will be noted under the Adjective.

NUMBER OF NOUNS.

307. General Rule. The plural of a noun is regularly formed by adding **-s** to the singular :

Roi(s) ; reine(s) ; jardin(s). King(s) ; queen(s) ; garden(s).

308. Principal Exceptions. The following are the principal exceptions to the above rule :—

1. Nouns in **-s**, **-x**, **-z** remain unchanged in the plural ; so also invariable words when used as nouns :

Le bras ; la voix ; le nez.	The arm ; the voice ; the nose.
Les bras ; les voix ; les nez.	The arms ; the voices ; the noses.
Les oui et les non ; les on dit.	The ayes and noes ; the rumours.
Plusieurs peu font un beaucoup.	Many littles make a 'muckle.'

2. Nouns in **-au**, **-eu**, and seven in **-ou**, take **-x** :

Noyau(x) ; château(x) ; jeu(x),	Kernel(s) ; castle(s) ; game(s) ;
vœu(x).	vow(s).

The seven nouns in **-ou** are :

bijou(x), <i>jewel</i> .	genou(x), <i>knee</i> .	joujou(x), <i>toy</i> .
caillou(x), <i>pebble</i> .	hibou(x), <i>owl</i> .	pou(x), <i>louse</i> .
chou(x), <i>cabbage</i> .		

But : Clou(s), *nail*, sou(s), *half-penny*, etc.

3. Most nouns in **-al** change **-al** to **-au**, and add **-x** as above:

Général ; cheval ; journal.	General ; horse ; newspaper.
Généraux ; chevaux ; journaux.	Generals ; horses ; newspapers.

a. But the following, and a few rarer ones in **-al**, are regular :

aval(s), <i>endorsement</i> .	cal(s), <i>callosity</i> .	chacal(s), <i>jackal</i> .
bal(s), <i>ball (for dancing)</i> .	carnaval(s), <i>carnival</i> .	régal(s), <i>treat</i> .

4. The following in **-ail** have the plural in **-aux** :

bail (-aux), <i>lease</i> .	travail (-aux), <i>work</i> .	vitrail (-aux), <i>stained glass window</i> .
corail (-aux), <i>coral</i> .	vantail (-aux), <i>folding-door</i> .	
soupirail (-aux), <i>air-hole</i> .	ventail (-aux), <i>ventail</i> .	

But : détail(s), *détail* ; éventail(s), *fan*, etc., are regular.

NOTE.—**Bestiaux** (pl.), *cattle*, is often given as the plural of **bétail**, *cattle* ; it is from an obsolete form **bestiall**, parallel to **bétail**.

5. **Gent** = 'race,' 'tribe,' has the plural **gens** = 'people,' etc.

NOTE.—A similar omission of **t** in the plural of nouns in **-ant**, **-ent**, now archaic, is maintained in the *Revue des deux Mondes*, e. g., 'enfants' for 'enfants.'

309. **Double Plurals.** The following have two plural forms, mostly with varying meaning:

aïeul (aïeux), <i>ancestor.</i>	œil (yeux), <i>eye.</i>
" (aïeuls), <i>grandfather.</i>	" (œils-) in compounds, e. g.
ail (aulx), <i>garlic.</i>	œils-de-bœuf, <i>oval windows.</i>
" (ails), "	pal (paux), <i>pale, stake.</i>
ciel (cieux), <i>sky, heaven, climate.</i>	" (pals), " "
" (ciels), <i>bed-tester, (sky in painting), (roof of a quarry.)</i>	travail (travaux), <i>work.</i>
	" (travaux), <i>report (of a minister, etc.), brake (for horse-shoeing).</i>

Obs.: The **-x** plural regularly has the literal meaning of the word.

310. **Foreign Nouns.** Nouns of foreign origin take **-s** usually only when fully naturalized, but usage varies greatly (see dictionary):

a. Partial list of variable foreign nouns:

accessit(s), <i>honourable mention.</i>	bill(s), <i>bill.</i>	toast(s), <i>toast.</i>
album(s), <i>album.</i>	duo(s), <i>duo.</i>	tramway(s), <i>street-railway.</i>
alibi(s), <i>alibi.</i>	jury(s), <i>jury.</i>	vivat(s), <i>hurrah.</i>
bitteck(s), <i>beefsteak.</i>	opéra(s), <i>opéra.</i>	. etc.
	pensum(s), <i>task.</i>	

b. Partial list of invariable foreign nouns:

amen.	item.	interim.	post-scriptum.	vade mecum.
déficit.	in-folio.	magnificat.	requiem.	veto.
facsimile.	in-octavo.	nota bene.	Te Deum.	etc.

c. A few Italian nouns retain their plural in **i**:

dilletante(-i), <i>dilletante.</i>	soprano(-i), <i>soprano.</i>	quintetto(-i), <i>quintette.</i>
libretto(-i), <i>libretto.</i>	lazzarone(-i), <i>beggar.</i>	etc.

311. **Compound Nouns.** The only components which take a plural sign are nouns and adjectives. The following are special rules:—

1. Compounds without hyphen are treated as one word, and follow the general rules:

Portemanteau(x); grand'mère(s). Valise(s); grandmothers(s).

a. Exceptions are:

bon(s)homme(s), <i>goodman, etc.</i>	madame (mesdames), <i>madam, Mrs.</i>
gentil(s)homme(s), <i>gentleman.</i>	mademoiselle (mesdemoiselles), <i>Miss.</i>
monsieur (messieurs), <i>Mr., sir, etc.</i>	monseigneur (messeigneurs), <i>my lord.</i>

2. When placed in juxtaposition and connected by a hyphen, nouns and adjectives are variable :

Chef(s)-lieu(x) ; chou(x)-fleur(s) ; County-town(s) ; cauliflower(s) ;
grand(s)-père(s). grandfather(s).

a. Demi- is invariable in compounds.

Des demi-heures.

Half-hours.

b. Further exceptions are :

blanc-seing(s), *signature in blank*.

terre-plein(s), *platform*.

cheval-léger(s), *light-horseman*.

etc.

3. Of two nouns joined by preposition and hyphens, the first only is variable :

Arc(s)-en-ciel ; chef(s)-d'œuvre. Rainbow ; masterpiece.

a. The preposition *de* is sometimes understood :

bain(s)-marie, *water-bath*.

timbre(s)-poste, *postage-stamp*.

hôtel(s)-dieu, *hospital*.

etc.

b. The following are invariable, since the idea conveyed by their plural does not properly belong to the first component simply :

coq-à-l'âne, *cock-and-bull story*.

pot-au-feu, *beef and soup*.

piéd-à-terre, *temporary lodging*.

tête-à-tête, *private interview*.

4. A noun with preceding invariable component is usually variable :

Anglo-Saxon(s) ; avant-garde(s) ; Anglo-Saxon ; vanguard ;

tire-bouchon(s) ; vice-roi(s) ;

corkscrew ; viceroy ;

bouche-trou(s) ;

stop-gap.

a. But the final noun remains invariable when the plural idea does not properly belong to it :

abat-jour, *lamp-shade*.

gagne-pain, *means of living*.

réveille-matin, *alarm*.

coupe-gorge, *cut-throat place*.

perce-neige, *snow-drop*.

clock.

crève-cœur, *heart-break*.

prie-dieu, *praying-stool*.

serre-tête, *head-band*.

contre-poison, *antidote*.

boute-en-train, *jolly fellow*.

etc.

b. On the other hand, a final noun of clearly plural sense retains -s in the singular :

un (des) casse-noisettes, *nut-cracker*.

un (des) porte-clefs, *turnkey*.

un (des) cure-dents, *tooth-pick*.

etc.

5. Invariable words, such as verb, adverb, preposition, etc., are invariable in compounds :

Des on dit ; des passe-partout.

Rumours ; master-keys.

a. **Garde-** is usually variable in compounds denoting persons, and invariable in those denoting things :

Des gardes-malades.

Sick-nurses.

But : Des garde-robes.

Wardrobes.

312. Plural of Proper Nouns. 1. Names of persons or families are usually invariable in the plural :

Les deux Racine.

The two Racines.

Les Corneille et les Racine de la scène.

The Corneilles and Racines of the stage (*i.e.*, Corneille, Racine, and others like them).

Les Duval sont arrivés.

(The) Duvals have come.

a. A few Latin names, originally plural in form, and certain well-known historical names of families and dynasties, take -s :

Les Bourbons.

Les Gracques.

Les Pharaons.

Les Tudors.

Les Césars.

Les Guises.

Les Scipions.

etc.

Les Condés.

Les Horaces.

Les Stuarts.

b. Names of persons used as common nouns to denote 'persons like' or 'works by' those named are often variable, but usage is not fixed :

Les Corneilles sont rares.

Corneilles are rare.

J'ai vu deux Raphaëls.

I saw two Raphaels.

But : Les Hamlet ; les La Fontaine ; les Goethe ; les Washington, etc.

2. Names of places take -s when the idea is plural :

Les Indes ; les Vosges.

The Indies ; the Vosges.

Les deux Romes.

The two Romes (*i.e.*, the old and new).

CASE RELATION AND AGREEMENT OF NOUNS.

313. Case Relations. The noun in French does not vary in form to denote case ; it is used as follows :—

1. With verbs, as subject, object, predicate :

Le père aime son fils.

The father loves his son.

Jean est devenu soldat.

John has become a soldier.

2. In appositions; and with adjectival force :

Henri IV, roi de France.

Henry IV., King of France.

Un roi enfant.

A child king.

3. After prepositions :

J'ai parlé à son père.

I have spoken to his father.

4. Absolutely, generally with adverbial force :

Le dîner fini, il partit.

The dinner ended, he set out.

Il était là, le chapeau à la main.

He was there, (with) his hat in his hand.

Je suis venu samedi.

I came on Saturday.

Il est resté trois heures.

He stayed three hours.

J'ai marché dix milles.

I walked ten miles.

Nous l'avons acheté dix francs.

We bought it for ten francs.

5. Vocatively :

Bonjour, mes amis.

Good morning, my friends.

314. Agreement. A predicate noun, or a noun used adjectivally, usually agrees like an adjective with the word referred to, see agreement of the Adjective :

Ils (elles) sont Allemand(e)s.

They are Germans.

La reine mère.

The queen mother.

THE ARTICLE.

315. The Indefinite Article.

MASC.

FEM.

un, a (an).

une, a (an).

316. The Definite Article.

SING.

PLUR.

MASC. le (l') } the.
FEM la (l')

MASC. or FEM. les, the.

Obs.: For the forms in parenthesis, see §19, 1.

317. Contractions. The prepositions **de** and **à + le** and **les**, are always contracted as follows :

de + le = **du**.

à + le = **au**.

de + les = **des**.

à + les = **aux**.

NOTES.—1. No contraction takes place with **la**, **l'**. 2. Formerly **en+les** was contracted to **ès**, a form still used in academical titles, *e.g.*, 'Bachelier ès lettres,' 'Bachelor of Arts.'

318. Agreement and Repetition. The article agrees in gender and number with its noun, and is regularly repeated (as also **de**, **à**) before each noun or adjective denoting a distinctive object :

Une maison et un jardin.

A house and garden.

Le flux et le reflux.

High and low tide.

Au bon et au mauvais côté.

On the good and bad side.

Les bons et les mauvais.

The good and the bad.

Des hommes ou des femmes.

Men or women.

But : Le bon et pieux prêtre.

The kind and pious priest.

Le delta ou basse Égypte.

The Delta or Lower Egypt.

a. The definite article is not repeated when a single adjective precedes nouns joined by **et** :

Les principales villes et provinces de la France. The principal towns and provinces of France.

b. Singular adjectives in apposition to a plural noun omit the article :

Les langues française et anglaise. The French and English languages.

Or : La langue française et la langue anglaise.

La langue française et l'anglaise.

c. A few expressions of collective force, like the following, are permissible, but are either not obligatory or are confined to set expressions :

Les père et mère.

The parents.

Les lundi et mardi.

(On) Mondays and Tuesdays.

Les trois et quatre avril.

The third and fourth of April.

Les officiers et soldats.

The officers and soldiers.

École des ponts et chaussées.

School of bridges and roads.

d. For the repetition of **le**, **la**, **les** with the superlative, see Comparison of Adjectives.

USE OF THE ARTICLE WITH NOUNS.

319. Use in General. French and English agree to a considerable extent in the use of the article; differences are noted below.

320. The Indefinite Article. 1. Its use corresponds in general with that of English 'a,' 'an'; its plural is the partitive **des** (§323):

Un homme; une femme; **des** gens. A man; a woman; people.

2. Contrary to English usage, the indefinite article also commonly stands before an abstract noun used partitively with an adjective or an adjectival adjunct:

Il montra un soin extrême.	He showed extreme care.
Il a une patience à toute épreuve.	He has patience equal to anything.
Elle jouit d'une bonne santé.	She enjoys good health.
C'est une nouvelle triste.	It is sad news.

a. The adjective or complementary clause depending on such a noun may be understood:

Voilà une patience!	There is patience for you!
J'étais d'une humeur...	I was in a temper...
Un garçon d'une raison...	A young fellow of (splendid) intellect!

NOTE.—For several cases in which the English indefinite article is replaced by the French definite article, or *vice versa*, or is omitted, see below.

321. The General Noun. A noun used in a general sense, i.e., 'in general,' 'all,' 'every,' etc., being implied with it, regularly has the definite article in French, though not usually in English:

La vie est courte.	Life is short.
Le fer et le cuivre sont utiles.	Iron and copper are useful.
J'étudie la musique.	I am studying music.
Les Français aiment la gloire.	The French love glory.
Le cheval est l'ami de l'homme.	The horse is the friend of man.
Le noir vous sied bien.	Black becomes you.
J'aime les pommes et les poires.	I like apples and pears.
Le beau et l'utile.	The beautiful and the useful.
Le boire et le manger.	Eating and drinking.

a. So also, names of languages, except after **en** ; but not, however, after **parler** :

Sait-il le français ?

Does he know French ?

Il parle bien (le) français.

He speaks French well.

But : Dites cela en français.

Say that in French.

Parlez-vous français ?

Do you speak French ?

322. The Partitive Noun. A noun implying 'an undetermined quantity or number of' is said to be used *partitively* or in a *partitive* sense.

323. Partitive with Article. The *partitive* sense, expressed in English by the noun simply, or else the noun preceded by 'some' or 'any,' is regularly expressed in French by the noun preceded by **de** + the definite article :

Du pain trempé dans du vin.

(Some) bread dipped in wine.

A-t-il des amis ?

Has he (any) friends ?

Des enfants poussaient des cris désespérés.

Some children were uttering terrible cries.

Il est des gens qui le croient.

There are people who believe it.

C'est du Carlyle pur.

That is pure Carlyleism.

NOTE.—This use of **de** + the definite article, or even of **de** alone (see next section), is often called the '*partitive article*' ; it is entirely identical in form with **de** + the article in other senses, *e.g.*, 'Je vends **du** blé,' 'I sell wheat' ; 'Quel est le prix **du** blé ?,' 'What is the price of the wheat ?'

324. Omission of Article. The *partitive* sense is expressed by **de** alone + the noun as follows :—

1. When an adjective precedes the noun ; so also, when a noun is understood after an adjective :

Avez-vous de bon papier ?

Have you any good paper ?

Donnez-moi de ces plumes-là.

Give me some of those pens.

J'ai de vos livres.

I have some of your books.

De bon vin et de mauvais (*sc.* vin).

Good wine and bad.

De gros livres et de petits (*sc.* livres).

Big books and little ones.

But : Des soldats français.

French soldiers.

J'ai du pain blanc.

I have white bread.

a. The article is not omitted when the noun has a distinctive adjunct :
Du bon papier qu'il a acheté. Some of the good paper he bought.

b. The article is not omitted when adjective and noun are indivisible in sense, *i.e.*, when forming a real or a virtual compound :

Des grands-pères ; des petits-fils.	Grandfathers ; grandchildren.
Des petits pois ; du bon sens.	Green peas ; common sense.
Des jeunes gens ; de la bonne foi.	Young men ; honesty.

c. Familiarly, the article is often used contrary to the rule :

Du bon vin ; du vrai bonheur.	Good wine ; true happiness.
--------------------------------------	-----------------------------

2. After a general negation, implying non-existence of the object in question :

Il n'a pas de montre.	He has no (not any) watch.
Je n'ai point de livres.	I have no (not any) books.
Sans avoir d'argent.	Without having (any) money.
Il ne fit pas de remarques.	He made no remarks.
Pas d'argent et pas d'amis.	No money and no friends.

3. But the article is not omitted, the negation being no longer general :

a. When the noun has a distinctive adjunct :

Je n'ai plus du vin de cette année.	I have no more of this year's wine.
Je n'ai pas de l'argent pour le gas-piller.	I have no money to waste (= I have money, but not to waste).

b. In contrasts :

Pas du lait, mais du thé.	Not milk, but tea.
----------------------------------	--------------------

c. In negative interrogation implying affirmative answer :

N'avez-vous pas des amis, de la santé, de l'influence ?	Have you not friends, health, influence ?
--	---

325. Omission of the Partitive Sign. The partitive sense is expressed by the noun simply, when the preposition **de** forms an essential part of the governing expression, thus :—

1. In expressions of quantity or number :

Une livre de thé (noix).	A pound of tea (nuts).
Un morceau de papier.	A piece of paper.
Une foule de gens.	A crowd of people.
Peu de temps ; beaucoup d'amis.	Little time ; many friends.

Assez de livres.	Enough books (or books enough).
Des milliers d'étoiles.	Thousands of stars.
Que de gens assemblés !	What a number of people assembled !

a. Analogous to the above are expressions like the following :

Trois jours de marche.	Three days' march.
Cent soldats de tués.	A hundred soldiers killed.
Quelque chose (rien) de bon.	Something (nothing) good.

b. **Bien** = ' beaucoup ' regularly has **de** + the definite article :

Bien de l'argent ; bien du monde.	Much money ; many people.
Bien des gens le croient.	Many people think so.
But : Bien d' autres.	Many others.

NOTE.—**Bien** in other senses does not take **de** : ' J'ai bien faim,' ' I am very hungry.'

c. **La plupart** = ' most,' ' the greater part,' etc., has **de** + the definite article :

La plupart des hommes.	Most men.
La plupart du temps.	Most of the time.

d. Expressions of quantity or number with a distinctive adjunct have **de** + the definite article ; so also, **beaucoup**, **peu**, etc., absolutely :

Une livre du thé de ce marchand.	A pound of this tradesman's tea.
Beaucoup des gens ont peur.	Many of the people are afraid.

2. After a verb requiring **de** before its complement, and in phrases, adjectival or adverbial, formed from **de** + a noun :

Il vit de pain (not ' de du pain ').	He lives on bread.
Il manquait d'argent.	He lacked money.
Il était couvert de plaies.	He was covered with wounds.
Une robe de soie.	A silk dress.
Un homme de génie.	A man of genius.
Une bourse pleine d'or.	A purse full of gold.

NOTES.—1. In both cases (§ 325, 1, 2) the disappearance of the partitive **de** is caused by its coincidence with a governing **de**. 2. The negative construction (§ 324, 2) is really parallel, the particles **pas**, **point**, etc., being etymologically nouns.

326. General and Partitive Sense. The general sense of a noun (§ 321) is to be carefully distinguished from the partitive sense (§ 322) :

Les oiseaux ont des ailes.	Birds have wings.
Les hommes sont des animaux.	Men are animals.

327. Article with Titles. A title of dignity or profession, preceding a proper name, regularly takes the definite article, except in direct address :

La reine Victoria est aimée.	Queen Victoria is beloved.
Le docteur Ribot est arrivé.	Doctor Ribot has come.
Qu'est-ce que le père Daru dit	What does Father Daru say?
But : Bonjour, docteur Ribot.	Good morning, Doctor Ribot.

a. So also, when such title is preceded by a title of courtesy (**monsieur, madame**, etc.), whether in speaking to or in speaking of the person :

Bonjour, monsieur le docteur.	Good morning, doctor.
Monsieur le président l'a dit.	The president said so.

b. A preceding attributive adjective may have the force of a title :

La petite Claire ; le gros Robert.	Little Clara ; big Robert.
------------------------------------	----------------------------

328. Article for Possessive. The definite article is commonly used with the force of a possessive adjective, when no ambiguity arises from its use :

Donnez-moi la main.	Give me your hand.
Il a perdu la vie.	He has lost his life.
Il avait le chapeau sur la tête.	He had his hat on his head.

a. The use of an indirect pronoun object + the definite article often avoids ambiguity :

Le courage lui manqua.	His courage failed (him).
Il s'est déchiré l'habit.	He tore his coat.
Il m'a déchiré l'habit.	He tore my coat.

b. Possessive force appears also in **avoir mal** (**froid, chaud**, etc.) à + the definite article followed by a noun denoting part of the person ; similarly, in phrases of personal description made up of **avoir** + the definite article + a noun + an adjective :

J'ai mal à la tête.	I have a headache (my head aches).
Il a mal aux yeux.	He has sore eyes (his eyes, etc.).
Il a froid aux pieds.	He has cold feet (his feet, etc.).
Il a la tête grosse (or une grosse tête).	He has a large head.
Il a les bras longs (or de longs bras).	He has long arms.
Le chêne a l'écorce rude.	The oak has (a) rough bark.

329. Article Distributively. 1. The definite article with distributive force replaces English 'a' of weight, measure, number, when indicating price :

Deux francs la livre (le mètre).	Two francs a pound (a metre).
Des œufs dix sous la douzaine.	Eggs at ten cents a dozen.
Des poires un sou la pièce.	Pears at a cent apiece.

a. Otherwise **par** is generally used with price :

Cinq francs par jour.	Five francs a (per) day.
Cent francs par tête.	A hundred francs a (per) head.
Trois francs par leçon.	Three francs a (per) lesson.

2. The definite article is also used distributively with names of days :

Il vient le dimanche.	He comes (on) Sundays (= every S.).
Le bateau part les lundis.	The boat goes (on) Mondays (= every M.).

330. Omission of the Article. The article, whether definite, indefinite, or partitive, is frequently omitted. This takes place :—

1. In a large number of expressions made up of a verb + a noun :

J'ai sommeil ; il a honte.	I am sleepy ; he is ashamed.
Je vous demande pardon.	I beg your pardon.

Further examples are :

avoir besoin, <i>need</i> .	donner avis, <i>notify</i> .	faire place, <i>make room</i> .
avoir faim, <i>be hungry</i> .	donner ordre, <i>give orders</i> .	prendre congé, <i>take leave</i> .
avoir bonne mine, <i>look well</i> .	faire attention, <i>pay attention</i> .	prendre garde, <i>take care</i> .
avoir peur, <i>be afraid</i> .		rendre visite, <i>pay a visit</i> .
avoir tort, <i>be (in the) wrong</i> .	faire cadeau, <i>make a present</i> .	trouver moyen, <i>find means</i> .
courir risque, <i>run the risk</i> .	faire faillite, <i>fail (in business)</i> .	etc., etc.
demander conseil, <i>ask advice</i> .		

2. In many adjectival and adverbial phrases made up of a preposition + a noun :

D'après nature ; devant témoins.	After nature ; before witnesses.
Sans cause ; à travers champs.	Without cause ; across the fields.

Further examples are :

à bord, <i>on board.</i>	chien de berger, <i>shepherd's</i>	par chemin de fer, <i>by rail-</i>
à cheval, <i>on horseback.</i>	dog.	way.
à dessein, <i>intentionally.</i>	homme de cœur, <i>man of</i>	par exemple, <i>for example.</i>
à genoux, <i>on one's knees.</i>	feeling.	par expérience, <i>by experience.</i>
à pied, <i>on foot.</i>	homme de génie, <i>man of</i>	par terre, <i>by land.</i>
pot à fleurs, <i>flower-pot.</i>	genius.	sans crainte, <i>without fear.</i>
moulin à vent, <i>wind-mill</i>	en bateau, <i>in a boat.</i>	sans raison, <i>without reason.</i>
après diner, <i>after dinner.</i>	en été, <i>in summer.</i>	sous condition, <i>on condition.</i>
avec intérêt, <i>with interest.</i>	en voiture, <i>in a carriage.</i>	sous presse, <i>in the press.</i>
avec plaisir, <i>with pleasure.</i>	par an, <i>by the year.</i>	sur papier, <i>on paper.</i>
sortir de table, <i>leave the table.</i>		etc., etc.

3. Before a predicate noun which qualifies in a general way the personal subject, or object, of certain verbs (cf. § 295):

Ils sont Russes.	They are Russians.
Elle est modiste.	She is a milliner.
Nous sommes médecins.	We are doctors.
Il paraît honnête homme.	He seems an honest man.
Son frère se fit soldat.	His brother became a soldier.
On l'a ordonné prêtre.	He was ordained a priest.
Soyons amis.	Let us be friends.

NOTE.—Nouns so used are commonly those of nationality, profession, title, etc., and their function is adjectival. Whenever a predicate noun denotes an individual or a species, it must have the article : 'La rose est *une* fleur,' 'The rose is a flower'; 'Les rois sont *des* hommes,' 'Kings are men.'

a. The article is not omitted when the predicate noun has a distinctive adjunct :

Son frère est <i>un</i> artiste de mérite.	His brother is an artist of merit.
Ils sont devenus <i>des</i> généraux distingués.	They became distinguished generals.

b. Observe the predicative force of a noun after *traiter + de*, *qualifier + de* :

Il m'a traité de sot.	He called me a fool.
Je qualifie cela de fraude.	I call that fraud.

c. After *c'est*, *ce sont*, the noun is logical subject, not predicate, and hence the article or some other determinating word must be used with it :

C'est <i>une</i> Allemande.	She is (a) German.
Ce sont <i>les</i> (mes) gants.	Those are the (my) gloves.

4. Before such an appositive noun as serves merely the purpose of a parenthetical explanation :

L'Avare, comédie de Molière.	L'Avare, a comedy by Molière.
Pâris, fils de Priam, ravit Hélène, femme de Ménélas.	Paris, the (a) son of Priam, carried off Helena, (the) wife of Menelaus.

a. Thus is explained the omission of the article in numerical titles :

Jacques premier (deux).	James the First (the Second).
-------------------------	-------------------------------

b. An apposition which distinguishes, contrasts, compares, regularly has the article, as in English :

Pierre le Grand.	Peter the Great.
Racine le fils et non Racine le père.	Racine the son and not Racine the father.
Montréal la plus grande ville du Canada.	Montreal the largest city in Canada.
M. Cook, un ami de mon père.	Mr. Cook, a friend of my father.

c. Colloquially, the article is often omitted in contrasts :

Dumas père et Dumas fils.	Dumas the elder and Dumas the younger.
---------------------------	--

NOTE.—Pseudo-apposition (really ellipsis of *de* or of a *de* clause) is found in many cases like 'L'église (*sc. de*) Saint-Pierre,' 'St. Peter's Church'; 'des meubles (*sc. du temps de*) Louis XV,' 'Louis XV. furniture'; 'La rue (*sc. de*) Mirabeau,' 'Mirabeau Street.'

5. In condensed sentences, such as titles of books, enumerations, addresses, advertisements, proverbs, antithetical expressions, etc., and usually after **ni . . . ni, sans . . . ni, soit . . . soit, tant . . . que, jamais :**

Causes de la perte de Rome.	Causes of the fall of Rome.
Portrait de Napoléon III.	(A) portrait of Napoleon III.
Soldats, officiers, citoyens, tous accoururent.	Soldiers, officers, citizens, all has- tened up.
Beauté, talent, esprit, tout s'use à la longue.	Beauty, talent, wit, everything wears out in the long run.
Il loge rue Richelieu.	He lives in Richelieu street.
Maison à vendre.	(A) house for sale.
Chapeaux pour hommes.	Men's hats.
Corps et âme ; nuit et jour.	Body and soul ; night and day.
Soit peur, soit prudence, il évita le combat.	Whether from fear or prudence, he avoided the combat.

Il n'a ni père ni mère.
 Sans amis ni argent.
 Tant hommes que femmes.
 Jamais père n'a tant aimé.

He has neither father nor mother.
 Without friends or money.
 As well men as women.
 Never did a father love so much.

331. Unclassified Examples. The following examples show idiomatic distinctions in the use of the article which cannot conveniently be brought under general rules :

Vous êtes **le** bienvenu.
 Demander (**faire**) l'aumône.
 Avoir **le** temps.
 Aller à l'école (l'église).
 Commander **le** respect.
Le feu s'est déclaré.
 Faire **la** guerre.
 Jeter (lever) l'ancre.
 Garder **le** silence.
 Mettre **le** feu à.
 Sur (vers) **les** trois heures.
Au revoir !
 L'année dernière (prochaine).
La semaine (l'année) passée.
Le vendredi saint.
Le mercredi **des** cendres.
Le printemps, l'été, etc.
Au printemps, en été, etc.
La (sc. fête de) Saint-Michel.
La (sc. fête de) mi-juin.
La moitié de l'année.
Les deux tiers du temps.
 Tous (**les**) deux ; tous (**les**) trois.
 Tous **les** mois.
 Le ministre de **la** guerre.
 Le meilleur **des** amis.
 Il cria à l'assassin.
 Je l'ai dit **au** hasard.
 Prendre **le** deuil de quelqu'un.
 Sentir **la** fumée.
 Je vous souhaite **la** bonne année.
 Il n'a pas **le** sou.

You are welcome.
 Ask (give) alms.
 To have time.
 To go to school (church).
 Command respect.
 Fire broke out.
 Make war.
 Cast (weigh) anchor.
 Keep silence.
 To set fire to.
 Towards three o'clock
 Good-bye !
 Last (next) year.
 Last week (year).
 Good Friday.
 Ash Wednesday.
 Spring, summer, etc.
 In spring, in summer, etc.
 Michaelmas.
 Mid-June.
 (The) half (of) the year.
 Two-thirds of the time.
 Both ; all three.
 Every month.
 The minister of war.
 The best of friends.
 He cried murder.
 I said it at random.
 Go into mourning for somebody.
 Smell of smoke.
 I wish you a happy new year.
 He is wretchedly poor.

Il est plus grand que vous de la tête.	He is taller than you by a head.
Un homme à la barbe noire.	A man with a black beard.
La belle question !	What a (fine) question !
À la (<i>sc.</i> mode) française.	In the French style.
S'en aller à l'anglaise.	To take French leave.
À la (<i>sc.</i> mode de) Henri IV.	In the style of Henry IV.
Cent (mille) ans.	A hundred (a thousand) years.
Les amis, où allez-vous ?	(My) friends, where are you going ?

THE ARTICLE WITH PROPER NOUNS.

332. Names of Persons. 1. Names of persons usually take no article, as in English :

Corneille ; George Fox. Corneille ; George Fox.

a. The definite article is a constituent part of some surnames :

Les romans de Lesage. The novels of Lesage.
 Les fables de La Fontaine. The fables of La Fontaine.

2. The definite article is used according to Italian analogy in the French form of a few famous Italian surnames ; so also, in a very few names which are not Italian :

Le Corrége ; le poème du Tasse. Correggio ; the poem of Tasso.
 Le Poussin ; le Camoëns. Poussin ; Camoëns.

3. The article is used when the name has a distinctive adjunct, when it is plural, or when used as a common noun :

Le Christ.	Christ (= the 'Anointed').
Le Satan de Milton ; le grand Condé.	Milton's Satan ; the Great Condé.
Les Corneille et les Racine.	A Corneille, a Racine (= Corneille, Racine and others like them).
C'est un Alexandre.	He is an Alexander.
C'est du Cicéron tout pur.	It is pure Ciceronian.
J'ai lu le Télémaque.	I have read Télémaque.

4. Familiarly, often in a depreciatory sense, the definite article is not uncommon, especially with names of females :

Sans attendre la Barbette. Without waiting for Barbara.
 Le Duval me l'a dit. Duval told me so.

333. Names of Countries. 1. Names of continents, countries, provinces, large islands, regularly take the definite article, always so when standing as subject or object of a verb:

L'Asie est un grand continent.	Asia is a large continent.
Nous aimons le Canada.	We love Canada.
La Normandie ; l'Angleterre.	Normandy ; England.

a. A few countries named after cities have no article :

Naples ; Parme ; Bade.	Naples ; Parma ; Baden.
------------------------	-------------------------

NOTE. — Considerable variety prevails regarding the use of the article with names of islands: some require the article, whilst it is omitted with others, *e.g.*, 'La Corse,' Corsica; 'La Sicile,' Sicily; 'Cuba,' Cuba; 'Terre-Neuve,' Newfoundland. L'*île* *de*, preceding the name, and l'*île* in apposition, are common forms; *e.g.*, 'L'*île* de Cuba,' 'L'*île* Saint Domingue,' St. Domingo; 'Les îles Bahama,' the Bahama Islands.

2. Before names of continents, European countries singular, and feminine countries singular outside of Europe, **en** denotes 'where,' 'where to,' and the article is omitted; so also, after **de** denoting 'point of departure from' and after **de** in most adjectival phrases:

Il est en (va en) Europe.	He is in (is going to) Europe.
Il voyage en France (Portugal).	He travels in France (Portugal).
Il vient d'Espagne (Danemark).	He comes from Spain (Denmark).
Le roi de Portugal (Espagne).	The King of Portugal (Spain).
Le fer de Suède; les vins de France.	Swedish iron; French wines.

a. Exceptions are very rare, *e.g.*, 'au Maine,' 'Le duc du Maine,' etc.

NOTE. — In an adjectival phrase, **de** denoting titular distinction, origin, description, or mere apposition usually omits the article, *e.g.*, 'le pays **de** France,' 'Le Royaume Uni de Grande-Bretagne et d'Irlande.'

3. But the definite article is not omitted, in answer to 'where?' 'where to?', or after **de** as above, when the name is plural, or has a distinctive adjunct, or denotes a masculine country outside of Europe:

Il est aux Indes.	He is in India.
Il va aux États-Unis.	He goes to the United States.
Aux Pays-Bas.	In (to) the Netherlands.
L'impératrice des Indes.	The Empress of India.
Venir des Indes (de l'Inde).	To come from India.
Dans la France méridionale.	In Southern France.

Dans l'Amérique du Nord.	In North America.
La reine de la Grande-Bretagne.	The Queen of Great Britain.
Il revient de l'Afrique australe.	He returns from South Africa.
Au Canada (Japon).	In (to) Canada (Japan).
Le Dominion du Canada. }	The Dominion of Canada.
La Puissance du Canada. }	
Chassé de la Chine.	Expelled from China.
Le consul du Pérou.	The consul of Peru.
Le fer du Canada.	Canadian iron.

Obs.: When the definite article is used, 'where,' 'where to,' = *à* (general) or *dans* (specific).

a. In a few names like 'Asie Mineure,' 'basse Bretagne,' the adjective is no longer felt to be distinctive:

En Asie mineure.

In Asia Minor.

4. Omission of the article in the predicate, in enumerations, titles, etc., sometimes occurs (cf. §330, 5):

La Gaule est devenue France.

Gaul became France.

Espagne, Italie, Belgique, tout eût pris feu.

Spain, Italy, Belgium, all would have caught fire.

334. Names of Cities. Names of cities and towns usually have no article, unless used with a distinctive adjunct:

Londres, Paris, Québec.

London, Paris, Quebec.

À Toronto (Montréal).

To *or* in Toronto (Montreal).

But: La Rome de ce siècle.

(The) Rome of this century.

La Nouvelle-Orléans.

New Orleans.

a. The definite article is an essential part of several names of cities: Le Caire; le Havre; la Havane. Cairo; Havre; Havana.

335. Names of Mountains and Rivers. Names of mountains always, and names of rivers regularly, have the definite article:

Les Alpes; le Nil; le mont Blanc. The Alps; the Nile; Mt. Blanc.

a. For rivers, the usage after *en*, *de*, is parallel with that described in §333, 2:

De l'eau de Seine.

Seine water.

Un abordage a eu lieu en Seine.

A collision occurred on the Seine.

THE ADJECTIVE.

THE FEMININE OF ADJECTIVES.

336. General Rule. The feminine of an adjective is regularly formed by adding **-e** to the masculine singular, but adjectives ending in **-e** remain unchanged :

M.	F.	M.	F.
grand,	grande, <i>tall</i> .	facile,	facile, <i>easy</i> .
joli,	jolie, <i>pretty</i> .	jeune,	jeune, <i>young</i> .
rusé,	rusée, <i>cunning</i> .	sincère,	sincère, <i>sincere</i> .
blessé,	blessée, <i>wounded</i> .	célèbre,	célèbre, <i>celebrated</i> .
mort,	morte, <i>dead</i> .	etc.	etc.

a. Similarly, nouns of like termination (but see § 306, 2) :

M.	F.	M.	F.
marquis, <i>marquis</i> .	marquise.	artiste, <i>artist</i> ,	artiste.
ami, <i>friend</i> ,	amie.	camarade, <i>comrade</i> ,	camarade.
cousin, <i>cousin</i> ,	cousine.	concierge, <i>porter</i> ,	concierge.
lapin, <i>rabbit</i> ,	lapine.	malade, <i>patient</i> ,	malade.

b. Adjectives in **-gu** are regular, but require the diæresis to indicate that **u** is sounded, *e.g.*, **aigu**, *sharp*, **aiguë**.

c. The circumflex in **dû** (f. due) distinguishes it from **du** = 'of the,' and disappears in the fem. (§ 214); observe also **mû** (f. mue, § 219).

d. Besides adjectives in **-e**, a very few others are invariable for the feminine, *e.g.*, **capot**, in **être capot** = 'have come to grief,' **grognon**, *grumbling*, **rococo**, *rococo*, **sterling**, *sterling*, and rarer ones.

NOTE.—Here also properly belongs **grand** in **grand'mère**, etc. In O. F. **grand** was masculine or feminine, but grammarians at a later date gave it the apostrophe to denote the supposed elision of **e**.

337. Special Rules. 1. Irregularities consist chiefly of changes in the stem on adding the feminine sign **-e**; thus, when **-e** is added :—

(1) Final **f = v**, **x = s**, **c = ch** in some, and **qu** in others, **g = gu** :

M.	F.	M.	F.
actif, <i>active</i> ,	active.	*blanc, <i>white</i> ,	blanche.
bref, <i>brief</i> ,	brève.	†public, <i>public</i> ,	publique.
heureux, <i>happy</i> ,	heureuse.	long, <i>long</i> ,	longue.

*So also: Franc, *frank*, franche; sec, *dry*, sèche.

†So also: Ammoniac (**-que**), *ammoniac*; caduc (**-que**), *decrepit*; franc (**-que**) *Frankish*; turc (**-que**), *Turkish*.

a. Similarly, nouns of like termination :

M.	F.	M.	F.	M.	F.
veuf, <i>widower</i> ,	veuve.	époux, <i>spouse</i> ,	épouse.	turc, <i>Turk</i> ,	turque.

NOTE.—Here also belongs *bailli*, *bailiff* (O. F. *baillif*), *baillive*.

b. The adjectives *doux*, *douce*, *sweet*, *faux*, *fausse*, *false*, *roux*, *rousse*, *red* (of hair, etc.), retain the [s] sound in the feminine, denoted by *c* and *ss* respectively ; *grec*, *Greek*, has feminine *grecque* ; *préfix* *prefixed*, is regular.

(2) Final *-el*, *-eil*, *-ien*, *-on*, and usually *-s*, *-t*, double the final consonant :

M.	F.	M.	F.
cruel, <i>cruel</i> ,	cruelle.	épais, <i>thick</i> ,	épaisse.
pareil, <i>like</i> ,	pareille.	exprès, <i>express</i> ,	expresse.
ancien, <i>old</i> ,	ancienne.	profès, <i>professed</i> ,	professe.
bon, <i>good</i> ,	bonne.	muet, <i>dumb</i> ,	muette.
bas, <i>low</i> ,	basse.	sot, <i>foolish</i> ,	sothe.
gros, <i>big</i> ,	grosse.	etc.	etc.

But : *ras*, *rase*, *flat* ; *gris*, *grise*, *grey* ; *mat*, *mate*, *dead*, *dull* ; *prêt*, *prête*, *ready* ; *dévolt*, *dévôte*, *devout* ; *bigot*, *bigote*, *bigoted* ; *cagot*, *cagote*, *hypocritical* ; *idiot*, *idiote*, *idiotic*, and a few rarer ones.

a. Similarly, nouns of like termination, but see § 306 :

M.	F.	M.	F.	M.	F.
mortel, <i>mortal</i> ,	mortelle.	lion, <i>lion</i> ,	lionne.	poulet, <i>chicken</i> ,	poulette.
chien, <i>dog</i> ,	chiennne.	chat, <i>cat</i> ,	chatte.	linot, <i>linnet</i> ,	linotte.

b. A very few adjectives and nouns of other endings follow this analogy :

M.	F.	M.	F.
paysan, <i>peasant</i> ,	paysanne.	gentil, <i>nice</i> ,	gentille.
rouan, <i>roan</i> ,	rouanne.	nul, <i>null</i> ,	nulle.

NOTE.—The doubling of the final consonant in *-el*, *-ien*, *-et* serves to denote the required [ɛ] sound (§12, 1) ; a few adjectives in *-et* denote this [ɛ] sound by the grave accent without doubling, cf. (4) below.

(3) The following have two masculine forms (in *sing.*, not in *pl.*), one of which doubles *l* for the feminine, like the above :

M.	F.	M.	F.
beau or bel, <i>fine</i> ,	belle.	mou or mol, <i>soft</i> ,	molle.
fou or fol, <i>mad</i> ,	folle.	nouveau or nouvel, <i>new</i> ,	nouvelle.
jumeau or (O.F. jumel) <i>twin</i> ,	jumelle.	vieux or vieil, <i>old</i> ,	vieille.

Obs. : The *-l* form is regularly used only before a vowel or *h* mute ; *vieux* before a vowel is permissible, e.g., 'un vieux ami' (better : 'un vieil ami').

a. Analogous are a few nouns :

M.	F.	M.	F.
chameau, <i>camel</i> ,	chamelle.	jouvenceau, <i>young fellow</i> ,	jouvencelle, etc.

(4) Before final **-r** and **-et** of a few adjectives **e** becomes **è** (cf. §12, 1) ; so also in **bref**, **brève**, **sec**, **sèche** :

M.	F.	M.	F.
cher, <i>dear</i> ,	chère.	complet, <i>complete</i> ,	complète.
léger, <i>light</i> ,	légère.	etc.	etc.

a. Similarly, nouns in **-er** :

M.	F.	M.	F.
berger, <i>shepherd</i> ,	bergère.	étranger, <i>stranger</i> ,	étrangère, etc.

b. The complete list of adjectives in **-et** with fem. in **-ète** is :

(in)complet, (in) <i>complete</i> .	(in)discret, (in) <i>discreet</i> .	replet, <i>over-stout</i> .
concret, <i>concrete</i> .	inquiet, <i>uneasy</i> .	secret, <i>secret</i> .

NOTE.—The grave accent denotes the required [ɛ] sound (§12, 1).

(5) The following feminine stems show etymological elements which have disappeared in the masculine :

M.	F.	M.	F.
coi (L. <i>quietus</i>), <i>quiet</i> ,	coite.	frais (L. L. <i>frescus</i>), <i>cool</i> ,	fraiche.
bénin (L. <i>benignus</i>), <i>benign</i> ,	bénigne.	tiers (L. <i>tertius</i>), <i>third</i> ,	tierce.
favori (It. <i>favorito</i>), <i>favourite</i> , favorite.			

2. Adjectives in **-eur** form their feminine as follows :—

(1) **Majeur**, **mineur**, **meilleur** and those in **-érieur** are regular :

M.	F.	M.	F.
majeur, <i>major</i> ,	majeure.	extérieur, <i>exterior</i> ,	extérieure.
meilleur, <i>better</i> ,	meilleure.	supérieur, <i>superior</i> ,	supérieure.
mineur, <i>minor</i> ,	mineure.	etc.	etc.

a. Similarly, nouns of like termination :

M.	F.	M.	F.	M.	F.
mineur, <i>minor</i> ,	mineure.	prieur, <i>prior</i> ,	prieure.	intérieur, <i>inferior</i> ,	intérieure.

(2) Those in **-eur** with a cognate present participle in **-ant** change **-r** to **-s** and add **-e** :

M.	F.	M.	F.
causeur, <i>talkative</i> ,	causeuse.	rêveur, <i>dreamy</i> ,	rêveuse.
flatteur, <i>flattering</i> ,	flatteuse.	trompeur, <i>deceitful</i> ,	trompeuse.
menteur, <i>lying</i> ,	menteuse.	etc.	etc.

a. Similarly, nouns of like termination, but see also § 306, 1, a, 2, a :

M.	F.	F.	M.
danseur, <i>dancer</i> ,	danseuse.	buveur, <i>drinker</i> ,	buveuse.
chanteur, <i>singer</i> ,	chanteuse.	vendeur, <i>seller</i> ,	vendeuse.
flatteur, <i>flatterer</i> ,	flatteuse.	etc.	etc.

(3) Those in **-teur**, with no cognate present participle in **-ant**, have the feminine in **-trice** :

M.	F.	M.	F.
créateur, <i>creative</i> ,	créatrice.	accusateur, <i>accusing</i> ,	accusatrice.
directeur, <i>directive</i> ,	directrice.	etc.	etc.

a. Similarly, nouns of like termination, but see § 306, 1, a, 2, a :

M.	F.	M.	F.
accusateur, <i>accuser</i> ,	accusatrice.	créateur, <i>creator</i> ,	créatrice.
acteur, <i>actor</i> ,	actrice.	etc.	etc.

THE PLURAL OF ADJECTIVES.

338. General Rule. Most masculine adjectives and all feminines form their plural by adding **s** to the singular (cf. § 307) :

grand(s),	grande(s).	jeune(s),	jeune(s).	bas,	basse(s).
joli(s),	jolie(s).	aigu(s),	aiguë(s).	doux,	douce(s).
rusé(s),	rusée(s).	complet(s),	complète(s).	etc.	etc.

339. Special Rules. The following rules are parallel with those for the irregular plural of nouns (cf. § 308) :

1. Masculine adjectives in **-s**, **-x** (none in **-z**) remain unchanged :

S.	P.	S.	P.	S.	P.
bas,	bas.	gris,	gris.	faux,	faux.
épais,	épais.	soumis,	soumis.	vieux,	vieux.
frais,	frais.	doux,	doux.	heureux,	heureux.
etc.		etc.		etc.	

2. Masculine adjectives in **-eau**, and one in **-eu** take **x** :

S.	P.	S.	P.
beau,	beaux.	jumeau,	jumeaux.
nouveau,	nouveaux.	hébreu,	hébreux.

But : bleu, bleus ; feu, feus.

3. Masculine adjectives in **-al** regularly have the plural in **-aux** :

S.	P.	S.	P.	S.	P.
amical,	amicaux.	général,	généraux.	moral,	moraux.
brutal,	brutaux.	légal,	légaux.	principal,	principaux.
capital,	capitaux.	libéral,	libéraux.	rural,	ruraux.
cardinal,	cardinaux.	local,	locaux.	spécial,	spéciaux.
égal,	égaux.	loyal,	loyaux.	trivial,	triviaux.
fiscal,	fiscaux.	martial,	martiaux.	etc.	etc.

a. **Fatal** makes 'fatals'; Littré gives also **final(s)**.

b. According to the *Dictionnaire de l'Académie* the following have no masculine plural :

*automnal.	frugal.	*jovial.	naval.	†pascal.
*colossal.	glacial.	natal.	*partial.	

* Littré gives a plural in **-aux**.

† Littré admits a plural in **-aux**, and quotes authority for a plural in **-s**.

NOTE.—1. There are upwards of a hundred and fifty adjectives in **-al**. The *Dictionnaire de l'Académie* is silent regarding the masculine plural of some sixty of these, to nearly fifty of which, however, Littré gives a plural in **-aux**. The following have not been pronounced upon by either authority: Brumal, déloyal, diagonal, instrumental, labial, médicinal, mental, monacal, paradoxal, quadragésimal, total, virginal.

2. Regular plurals in **-als** were formerly much commoner, and usage is still unsettled for some words. When the plural is wanting or doubtful it is often avoided, e.g., 'Un repas frugal; des repas **simples**.' Plurals commonly so avoided are: Fatal, final, frugal, glacial, initial, matinal, natal, naval, théâtral.

AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

340. General Rule. An adjective, whether attributive or predicative, regularly agrees in gender and number with its substantive :

Les saisons froides sont saines.	Cold seasons are healthful.
Elles sont contentes.	They are pleased.
Ils se disaient malades.	They said they were ill.
Je les crois sincères.	I believe them sincere.

a. When the substantive has a **de** clause, the agreement is parallel with that explained for subject and verb (cf. §232, 2).

b. The agreement with **vous** is according to the sense :
Madame, vous êtes bien bonne. **Madam, you are very kind.**

341. Manifold Substantive. 1. One adjective qualifying two or more substantives is made plural, and agrees in gender with both, if of the same gender; if of different gender, the adjective is masculine.

De la viande et des pommes de terre froides. Cold meat and potatoes.

Sa sœur et lui sont contents. His sister and he are pleased.

a. When substantives are joined by *ou*, *ni...ni*, or are synonymous, or form a climax, etc., the principles stated for Agreement of subject and verb apply (cf. § 233).

b. When nouns differ in gender, the masculine one is usually placed nearest the adjective, especially when the feminine form is distinct from the masculine.

La mer et le ciel bleus. The blue sea and sky.

2. When the noun is followed by a preposition + a noun, the agreement is, of course, according to the meaning:

Une table de bois dur. A table of hard wood.
Une table de bois carrée. A square wooden table.

342. Manifold Adjective. When two or more adjectives, denoting different objects singular, refer to one noun, the noun is made plural, and the adjectives follow it in the singular, or the noun is made singular, and the article repeated with each adjective.

Les nations grecque et romaine. The Greek and Roman nations.
La nation grecque et la romaine. The Greek nation and the Roman.
Or: La nation grecque et la nation romaine.

a. The agreement for a preceding ordinal is parallel to this:

Les sixième et septième rangs. The sixth and seventh ranks.
Le sixième rang et le septième. The sixth rank and the seventh.
Le sixième et le septième rang. The sixth and the seventh rank.

343. Special Cases. 1. Adjectives used as adverbs are regularly invariable:

Cette rose sent bon. That rose smells sweet.
Les livres coûtent cher ici. Books cost dear here.

a. **Possible**, replacing a clause, and **fort**, in **se faire fort** = 'to pledge one's self,' are considered as adverbs :

J'ai fait le moins de fautes possible. I have made as few mistakes as possible.

Elle se fait fort de le payer. She pledges herself to pay it.

2. Compound adjectives, with or without hyphen, are treated as follows :

(1) Both components are variable when co-ordinate, except first components in -o :

Des sourd(e)s-muet(te)s. Deaf-mutes.

Des oranges aigres-douces. Sourish oranges.

But : Les lettres gréco-romaines. Græco-Roman literature.

(2) A subordinate component is usually invariable, being regarded as adverbial, but the principle is not fully carried out :

Des mots grecs-modernes. Modern Greek words.

Des enfants court-vêtus. Short-coated children.

Une dame haut placée. A lady of high rank.

Des enfants nouveau-nés. New-born infants.

a. But the subordinated component is variable in **frais cueilli** = 'freshly gathered,' in **ivre mort** = 'dead drunk,' in **grand ouvert** = 'wide open,' and in **premier, dernier, nouveau** + a past participle (except **nouveau-né**, see above) :

Des fleurs fraîches cueillies. Freshly gathered flowers.

La porte est grande ouverte. The door is wide open.

Les nouveaux mariés. The bridegroom and bride.

3. Nouns serving as adjectives of colour are regularly invariable :

Des robes lilas (citron). Purple (lemon-coloured) dresses.

a. **Rose, cramoisi, pourpre**, are exceptions, and vary :

Des robes roses (cramoisies). Pink (crimson) dresses.

b. Modified adjectives of colour are also usually invariable, the modifier being also invariable by rule, 2 (2), above :

Des cheveux blond ardent. Reddish blond hair.

NOTE.—These constructions are explained by supplying the ellipsis : 'Des robes (couleur de) lilas' ; 'Des cheveux (couleur de) blond ardent.'

4. A few adjectives are variable or invariable according to position or context :

a. **Demi** = 'half,' **nu** = 'naked,' **plein** = 'full of,' are invariable before and variable after the noun ; so also, **excepté** and others (§289, *a, b*) ; **franc de port** = 'post-paid' (also 'franco,' adverb) is invariable before, and usually variable after :

Une demi-heure ; une heure et demie. Half an hour ; an hour and a half.

Il a de l'or plein ses poches.	He has his pockets full of gold.
Il est nu-tête ; il a les bras nus.	He is bareheaded ; his arms are bare.
Il a les yeux pleins de larmes.	His eyes are full of tears.
Recevoir franc de port une lettre.	To receive a letter post-paid.
Des lettres franches de port.	Post-paid letters.

Obs. : **demi, nu**, when preceding, form a compound with hyphen.

b. **Feu** = 'late,' 'deceased,' is invariable when preceding the definite article, or determinative, and variable after it :

Feu la reine (la feue reine). The late queen.

c. After **avoir l'air** = 'have an air (appearance)' the adjective agrees with **air** ; but it agrees with the subject of the verb when the expression means 'seem,' 'appear' :

Cette dame a l'air hautain.	That lady has a haughty air.
Elle a l'air malheureuse.	She seems unhappy.
Cette soupe a l'air bonne.	This soup seems good.

5. A very few adjectives are always invariable :

Nous avons été capot.	We had come to grief.
Vingt livres sterling.	Twenty pounds sterling.

344. Nouns as Adjectives. By a sort of apposition, nouns are frequently used as adjectives ; when so used, they usually agree like adjectives :

Une maîtresse cheminée.	A main chimney.
Des philosophes poètes.	Poet philosophers.
But : La race nègre, etc.	

a. **Témoin** = 'witness,' at the head of a phrase, is adverbial and invariable :

J'ai bien combattu, témoin les blessures que j'ai reçues.	I have fought well, witness the wounds I received.
---	--

b. For nouns as adjectives of colour, see §343, 3.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

345. The Comparative. It is regularly denoted by placing **plus** = 'more,' **moins** = 'less,' for inequality, and **aussi** = 'as,' for equality, before each adjective compared; 'than' or 'as' = **que** :

Il est plus grand que Jean.	He is taller than John.
Il est moins grand que Jean.	He is less tall than (not so tall as) John.
Il est aussi grand que Jean.	He is as tall as John.
Il est plus diligent et plus attentif que Jean.	He is more diligent and (more) attentive than John.
Il est plus faible que malade.	He is more weak than ill.

a. **Aussi**, used negatively, may be replaced by **si** :

Il n'est pas aussi(si) grand que J. He is not so tall as John.

b. When **aussi** or **si** is omitted, **comme** (*not que*) is used :

Un roi riche comme Crésus. A king as rich as Cræsus.

c. After **plus**, **moins**, affirmatively, 'than' = **que**...**ne** when coming before a finite verb :

Il est plus grand qu'il ne (le) paraît. He is taller than he seems.

d. 'More and more (or -er and -er)' = **de plus en plus** ; 'less and less (or -er and -er)' = **de moins en moins** ; 'the more...the more' = **plus... (et) plus** ; 'the less...the less' = **moins... (et) moins** ; 'the more...' = **d'autant plus**... :

L'air devint de plus en plus froid.	The air became colder and colder.
Il devint de moins en moins actif.	He became less and less active.
Plus il devient riche (et) moins il est généreux.	The richer he becomes the less generous is he.
Il en sera d'autant plus riche.	He will be the richer for it.

346. Irregular Comparison. The adjectives **bon**, **mauvais**, **petit**, have a special comparative form :

Pos.	Comp.	Pos.	Comp.
bon , <i>good</i> ,	meilleur .	<i>or bon</i> ,	plus bon (rare)
mauvais , <i>bad</i> ,	pire .	<i>or mauvais</i> ,	plus mauvais .
petit , <i>small</i> ,	moindre .	<i>or petit</i> ,	plus petit

a. **Bon** is hardly ever compared regularly :

À bon marché, à meilleur marché. Cheap, cheaper.
Cela sent bon (meilleur). That smells good (better).
But : Ce n'est ni **plus bon** ni **plus mauvais**.

NOTES.—1. In expressions like 'Ce vin est plus ou moins bon,' **bon** is not really comparative. 2. Some grammarians admit **plus bon** = 'more good-natured.'

b. **Pire** is, in general, stronger than **plus mauvais**, and may serve also as a comparative to **méchant** = 'bad,' 'evil,' 'wicked' :

Cet homme est méchant (pire). That man is bad (worse).

c. In general, **moindre** = 'less,' 'lesser,' 'less (in importance)' and **plus petit** = 'smaller,' 'less (in size)' :

Votre douleur en sera moindre. Your sorrow will hence be less.
Une plus petite pomme. A smaller apple.

347. The Superlative Relative. 1. It is denoted by placing the definite article (variable) or a possessive adjective (variable) before the comparative of inequality :

Elle est la moins aimable. She is the least amiable.
Mes meilleurs amis. My best friends.
La moindre difficulté. The slightest difficulty.

a. When the superlative follows the noun, the definite article is not omitted :

C'est l'enfant le plus diligent et le plus attentif de tous. He is the most diligent and attentive boy of all.
Mes amis les plus fidèles. My most faithful friends.

2. After a superlative, 'in' = **de** (not **à**, **dans**, etc.) ; 'among' = **entre** or **d'entre** :

L'homme le plus riche de la ville. The richest man in the city.
Le meilleur écrivain du Canada. The best writer in Canada.
Le plus brave (d')entre les Grecs. The bravest among the Greeks.

348. The Superlative Absolute. It is expressed by **le** (invariable) + **plus** or **moins** before the adjective, or else by an adverb, such as **très**, **bien**, **fort**, **extrêmement**, etc., or some other modifying expression :

Elle est le plus heureuse (moins heureuse) quand elle est seule. She is happiest (least happy) when she is alone.

Vous êtes très aimable.	You are very (most) kind.
C'est tout ce qu'il y a de plus beau.	It is most beautiful.
Un brave des braves.	One of the bravest.
Un homme des plus dignes.	A most worthy man.
Une dame on ne peut plus digne.	A most worthy woman.
Des tribus sauvages au possible.	Most savage tribes.

a. Occasionally it is denoted in familiar style by repetition of the adjective, or by *-issime* :

Cet homme est rusé, rusé.	That man is very, very cunning.
Il est richissime.	He is very wealthy.

349. Remarks. 1. Comparative and superlative are undistinguishable in constructions requiring in English a definite article before the comparative :

Le plus fort de mes deux frères.	The stronger of my two brothers.
----------------------------------	----------------------------------

2. *De* denotes 'by how much' after a comparative or superlative :

Plus âgé de trois ans.	Older by three years.
Il est le plus grand de beaucoup.	He is the tallest by far.
But : Il est beaucoup plus grand.	He is much taller.

3. Observe the following :

Les basses classes.	The lower classes.
J'ai fait mon possible.	I did my utmost.

POSITION OF ADJECTIVES.

350. Predicative Adjectives. They are placed, in general, as in English :

Elles sont contentes.	They are pleased.
Elle parut fatiguée.	She seemed tired.
Brave, savant, vertueux, il se fit aimer de tous.	Brave, learned, virtuous, he made himself beloved by all.

a. Observe the position after *assez*, after *plus... plus, moins... moins*, and in exclamations with *combien* !, *comme* !, *que* !, *tant* !. as compared with the order of words in English :

Il est assez sot pour le croire.	He is silly enough to believe it.
Plus il devint riche moins il fut généreux.	The richer he became the less generous was he.
Que vous êtes aimable !	How kind you are !

351. Attributive Adjectives. When used literally, to define, distinguish, specify, emphasize, etc., they usually follow ; but when used figuratively, or as a merely ornamental epithet, or denoting a quality viewed as essential to the object, or when forming, as it were, one idea with the noun, they usually precede :

Une rue étroite ; une étroite amitié.	A narrow street ; an intimate friendship.
Un roi savant ; le savant auteur.	A learned king ; the learned author.
Le fameux Pitt ; un rusé coquin.	The famous Pitt ; a cunning rogue.

a. The following, of very common use, generally precede :

beau.	grand.	joli.	meilleur.	pire.	vilain.
bon.	gros.	long.	moindre.	sot.	
court.	jeune.	mauvais.	petit.	vieux.	

352. Special Rules for Attributives. 1. Certain adjectives serve regularly to define, distinguish, etc., and hence regularly follow ; such are :—

(1) Adjectives of physical quality :

Une table carrée ; une pierre dure ;	A square table ; a hard stone ;
de l'eau froide (chaude) ; de l'encre noire ; une sauce piquante.	(hot) water ; black ink ; a piquant sauce.

a. By the general rule (§351) they sometimes precede :

De noirs chagrins ; une verte vieillesse ; le bleu ciel d'Italie.	Dark sorrows ; a green old age ; the blue sky of Italy.
---	---

(2) Adjectives of nationality, religion, profession, title, and those from proper names :

La loi anglaise ; un prêtre catholique ; une splendeur royale ; le latin cicéronien.	The English law ; a Catholic priest ; royal splendour ; Ciceronian Latin.
--	---

(3) Participles used as adjectives :

Une étoile filante ; un homme instruit ; une porte ouverte.	A shooting star ; an educated man ; an open door.
---	---

a. By the general rule (§351) they sometimes precede :

Une éclatante victoire.

A signal victory.

b. Past participial forms which have become real adjectives, *e.g.*, *prétendu*, *absolu*, *parfait*, *dissolu*, *feint*, *rusé*, etc., very often precede (*prétendu* nearly always) :

Une feinte modestie.

Feigned modesty.

Le prétendu comte.

The would-be count.

2. Adjectives sometimes follow the noun on account of their adjuncts or their function ; thus :—

(1) When modified by an adverb, other than **aussi**, **si**, **très**, **bien**, **fort**, **plus**, **moins**, **assez** :

Un discours extrêmement long.

An extremely long speech.

But : Un très long discours.

A very long speech.

(2) When modified by an adverbial phrase, or in comparisons :

Une contrée riche en vins.

A district rich in wines.

Un guerrier brave comme un lion.

A warrior as brave as a lion.

(3) Nouns used appositively as adjectives :

Une puissance amie.

A friendly power.

3. Two or more adjectives, with one noun. follow, in general, the rules stated, but, if joined by a conjunction, they all follow, in case one is such as must follow :

Une jolie petite fille.

A pretty little girl.

Une belle maison blanche.

A beautiful white house.

Un objet blanc et étincelant.

A white and dazzling object.

Une dame belle et savante.

A beautiful and learned lady.

a. The more specific of two or more adjectives which follow comes last, contrary to English usage :

Des écrivains français habiles.

Clever French writers.

4. A considerable number of adjectives differ more or less widely in meaning, according as they precede or follow :

Mon cher enfant ; une robe chère.

My dear child ; a costly dress.

Une franche coquette ; une femme franche.

A thorough coquette ; a plain-spoken woman.

Such adjectives are :

ancien.	dernier.	fort.	jeune.	parfait.	sage.
bon.	différent.	furieux.	maigre.	pauvre.	seul.
brave.	digne.	galant.	malhonnête.	petit.	simple.
certain.	divers.	grand.	mauvais.	plaisant.	triste.
cher.	fameux.	gros.	méchant.	premier.	véritable.
commun.	faux.	haut.	mort.	propre.	vrai, etc.
cruel.	fier.	honnête.	nouveau.	pur.	

NOTE.—Distinctions of this kind depend, in the main, upon the general principles laid down above, but they are too numerous and too subtle to be given in detail here. Observation, and the use of a good dictionary will, in time, make the learner familiar with the most important of them.

353. Determinatives. Such adjectives, including numerals, possessives, demonstratives, indefinites, precede.

Trois plumes ; mes plumes.

Three pens ; my pens.

Ces plumes-ci ; d'autres plumes.

These pens ; other pens.

PREPOSITIONAL COMPLEMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

354. An adjective is often followed by a complement connected with it by a preposition, such as *à*, *de*, *en*, *envers*, etc. The preposition to be used is determined by the meaning of the adjective, as explained in the following sections.

355. Adjective + *à*. The preposition *à* = 'to,' 'at,' 'for,' etc., is required after most adjectives denoting tendency, fitness, and their opposites, comparison, etc.

Cet homme est adonné *à* la boisson. That man is addicted to drink.

Il est favorable *à* mes projets. He is favorable to my projects.

Il est bien habile *aux* affaires. He is very clever in business.

Un homme supérieur *à* tous. A man superior to all.

Ce n'est bon *à* rien. That is good for nothing.

Such adjectives are :

accoutumé, <i>accustomed</i> (to).	cher, <i>dear</i> (to).	hardi, <i>bold</i> (in).
adroit, <i>clever</i> (at).	convenable, <i>suitable</i> (to).	impropre, <i>unfit</i> (for).
agréable, <i>pleasant</i> (to).	égal, <i>equal</i> (to).	inférieur, <i>inferior</i> (to).
antérieur, <i>anterior</i> (to).	exact, <i>exact</i> (in).	infidèle, <i>unfaithful</i> (to).
ardent, <i>ardent</i> (in).	fidèle, <i>faithful</i> (in).	inutile, <i>useless</i> (to).
bon, <i>good</i> , <i>fit</i> (for).	fort, <i>clever</i> (at).	lent, <i>slow</i> (in).

nuisible, <i>hurtful (to)</i> .	prêt, <i>ready (to)</i> .	semblable, <i>similar (to)</i> .
opposé, <i>opposed (to)</i> .	prompt, <i>prompt (in)</i> .	utile, <i>useful (to)</i> .
pareil, <i>similar (to)</i> .	propice, <i>propitious (to)</i> .	etc.
porté, <i>inclined (to)</i> .	propre, <i>fit (for)</i> .	

a. Bon pour = 'good for,' 'beneficial to,' 'kind to.'

356. Adjective + de. The preposition **de** = 'of,' 'from,' 'with,' etc., is required after most adjectives denoting source or origin (hence also, feeling, sentiment, abundance), separation (hence also, absence, distance, want, etc.), and after most past participles to denote the agent (cf. §240):

Êtes-vous natif de Paris?	Are you a native of Paris?
Ils sont contents de mon succès.	They are pleased at my success.
Elle est pleine de vanité.	She is full of vanity.
Je suis libre de douleur.	I am free from pain.
Il est inconnu de tous.	He is unknown to all.

Such adjectives are :

absent, <i>absent (from)</i> .	éloigné, <i>distant (from)</i> .	lourd, <i>heavy (with)</i> .
affligé, <i>grieved (at)</i> .	enchanté, <i>delighted (with)</i> .	malheureux, <i>unhappy (at)</i> .
aise, <i>glad (of)</i> .	ennuyé, <i>weary (of)</i> .	offensé, <i>offended (at)</i> .
alarmé, <i>alarmed (at)</i> .	étonné, <i>astonished (at)</i> .	pauvre, <i>poor (in)</i> .
ambitieux, <i>ambitious (of)</i> .	exempt, <i>free (from)</i> .	plein, <i>full (of)</i> .
avide, <i>greedy (of)</i> .	fâché, <i>sorry (for)</i> .	ravi, <i>delighted (with)</i> .
béni, <i>blessed (by)</i> .	fier, <i>proud (of)</i> .	satisfait, <i>satisfied (with)</i> .
capable, <i>capable (of)</i> .	glorieux, <i>proud (of)</i> .	soucieux, <i>anxious (about)</i> .
charmé, <i>delighted (with)</i> .	hérissé, <i>bristling (with)</i> .	souillé, <i>soiled (with)</i> .
chéri, <i>beloved (by)</i> .	heureux, <i>glad (of)</i> .	sûr, <i>sure (of)</i> .
confus, <i>confused (at)</i> .	honteux, <i>ashamed (of)</i> .	surpris, <i>surprised (at)</i> .
contrarié, <i>vexed (with)</i> .	ignorant, <i>ignorant (of)</i> .	triste, <i>sad (at)</i> .
dénué, <i>destitute (of)</i> .	indigne, <i>unworthy (of)</i> .	vain, <i>vain (of)</i> .
dépourvu, <i>devoid (of)</i> .	inquiet, <i>uneasy (about)</i> .	vexé, <i>vexed (at)</i> .
désireux, <i>desirous (of)</i> .	ivre, <i>intoxicated (with)</i> .	victorieux, <i>victorious (over)</i> .
différent, <i>different (from)</i> .	jaloux, <i>jealous (of)</i> .	vide, <i>empty (of)</i> .
digne, <i>worthy (of)</i> .	libre, <i>free (from)</i> .	etc.

a. Fâché contre = 'angry at or with (a person).'

357. Adjective + en. **En** is required after a few adjectives denoting abundance, skill, etc. :

Le Canada est fertile en blé.	Canada is fertile in wheat.
Il est expert en chirurgie.	He is expert in surgery.

Such adjectives are :

abondant, <i>abounding (in)</i> .	fort, <i>strong (in)</i> , <i>learned (in)</i> .	riche, <i>rich (in)</i> .
fécond, <i>fruitful (in)</i> .	ignorant, <i>ignorant (in)</i> .	savant, <i>learned (in)</i> .

a. **fort** and **ignorant** sometimes have **sur** :

Il est **fort sur** l'histoire.

He is well versed (good) in history.

Ignorant sur ces matières-là.

Ignorant about those matters.

358. Adjective + envers. **Envers** is used after most adjectives denoting disposition or feeling towards :

Il est **libéral envers** tous.

He is liberal towards all.

Such adjectives are :

affable, affable.

honnête, polite.

poli, polite.

bon, kind.

indulgent, indulgent.

prodigue, lavish.

charitable, charitable.

ingrat, ungrateful.

reconnaissant, grateful.

civil, civil.

insolent, insolent.

respectueux, respectful.

cruel, cruel.

juste, just.

responsable, responsible.

dur, hard, harsh.

méchant, malicious.

rigoureux, stern.

généreux, generous.

miséricordieux, merciful.

sévère, severe, stern.

grossier, rude.

officieux, obliging.

etc.

a. **Bon, dur**, very frequently take **pour** ; **indulgent** may take **pour** or **à** ; **civil, sévère**, may take **à l'égard de** :

Il est **bon (dur)** pour moi.

He is kind (harsh) to me.

Indulgent pour (à) ses enfants.

Indulgent to his children.

Civil (sévère) à l'égard de ses domestiques. **Civil (harsh)** to his servants.

THE PRONOUN.

THE PERSONAL PRONOUN.

359. Personal Pronouns.

1. Conjunctive forms :

	1ST PER.	2ND PER.	3RD PER. (m.).	3RD PER. (f.).	3RD PER. (m.f.).
(Sing.) N.	je, I.	tu, thou.	il, he, it.	elle, she, it.	
D.	me, (to) me.	te, (to) thee.	lui, (to) him.	lui, (to) her.	se, (to)-self.
A.	me, me.	te, thee.	le, him, it.	la, her, it.	se, -self.
(Plur.) N.	nous, we.	vous, you.	ils, they.	elles, they.	
D.	nous, (to) us.	vous, (to) you.	leur, (to) them.	leur, (to) them.	se, (to)-selves.
A.	nous, us.	vous, you.	les, them.	les, them.	se, -selves.

2. Disjunctive forms :

	1ST PER.	2ND PER.	3RD PER. (m.).	3RD PER. (f.).	3RD REF. (m.f.).
(Sing.) N. A. P.	moi, I, me.	toi, thou, thee.	lui, he, him.	elle, she, her.	soi, one'sself, etc
(Plur.) N. A. P.	nous, we, us.	vous, you.	eux, they, them.	elles, they, them.	

[N.=nominative; D.=dative; A.=accusative; P.=object of a preposition.]

NOTE.—A more scientific terminology would be 'unstressed' and 'stressed' instead of 'conjunctive' and 'disjunctive,' as indicating the real distinction between the two sets of forms, e.g., '*Je* (unstressed) parle'; '*Qui* parle?—*Moi*' (stressed). As a matter of fact, the unstressed forms usually stand in immediate connection with the verb (as subject or object), hence the term 'conjunctive,' while the stressed forms are usually employed otherwise, hence the term 'disjunctive.' The distinction of 'unstressed' and 'stressed' is common to most other kinds of pronouns as well.

360.

Pronominal Adverbs.

y=to (at, on, in, into, etc.) it or them; there, thither.

en=of (from, etc.) it or them; some, any, some of it, some of them; thence, from there.

NOTE.—*Y* and *en* were originally adverbs (*y* from *L. ibi*= 'there,' and *en* from *L. inde*= 'thence'), but they are now usually pronominal in function, and are used precisely like the conjunctive forms.

361. Agreement. The personal pronoun regularly agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person :

Nous les avons frappé(e)s.

We have struck them.

Elle lit la lettre; elle la lit.

She reads the letter; she reads it.

a. The first person plural for the first person singular is used by sovereigns and authorities, and by writers, as in English :

Nous (le roi) avons ordonné et
ordonnons ce qui suit.

We (the king) have ordained and
ordain as follows.

Comme nous avons dit déjà.

As we have said already.

b. *Vous*= 'you' (singular or plural) has a plural verb; its other agreements, as also those of *nous* above, are according to the sense :

Nous (la reine) sommes contente.

We (the queen) are satisfied.

Madame, vous êtes bien bonne.

Madam, you are very kind.

c. For imperative first plural instead of first singular, see §267. a.

d. **Il** and **le** are used as invariable neutral forms, when the antecedent is one to which gender cannot be ascribed :

Y en a-t-il?—Je le crois.

Is there any (of it)? I think so.

362. Case Relations of Conjunctives. 1. The nominative forms stand as subject and the accusative forms as direct object to a verb; their use is obvious :

Il nous a vus.

He saw us.

a. The conjunctive is optional when there are two accusatives :
Je (les) blâme lui et elle.

I blame him and her.

2. The dative forms denote the person or thing for whose 'advantage' or 'disadvantage' the action is done, denoted by **à** = 'to,' 'for,' 'from,' with nouns :

Je leur prêterai les livres.

I shall lend them the books.

On lui a volé son argent.

His money has been stolen from him.

But **à** + a disjunctive form is used in the following cases :

(1) When two datives are joined by a conjunction, or when in emphasis a second dative is implied :

Je parle à lui et à elle.

I speak to him and to her.

Je donne le livre à elle (pas à lui).

I give the book to her (not to him).

(2) When the conjunctive direct object is any other pronoun than **le**, **la**, **les** :

Je vous présente à elle.

I introduce you to her.

Il se présenta à moi.

He introduced himself to me.

But : Je le (la, les) leur présente, etc.

(3) After verbs of motion and some others, to denote the 'object towards which the action tends,' the relation, though expressed by **à**, not being really dative :

Je courus à lui.

I ran to him.

Cette maison est à moi.

That house belongs to me.

Il pense (songe, rêve) à eux.

He thinks (muses, dreams) of them.

Such verbs are :

accoutumer, <i>accustom.</i>	comparer, <i>compare.</i>	prendre intérêt, <i>take interest.</i>
aller, <i>go.</i>	courir, <i>run.</i>	prétendre, <i>aspire.</i>
appeler, <i>call.</i>	être (à), <i>belong (to).</i>	recourir, <i>have recourse.</i>
en appeler, <i>appeal.</i>	faire attention, <i>pay attention.</i>	renoncer, <i>renounce.</i>
aspirer, <i>aspire.</i>	habituer, <i>accustom.</i>	revenir, <i>come back.</i>
attirer, <i>attract.</i>	marcher, <i>march.</i>	rêver, <i>dream.</i>
avoir affaire, <i>have to do.</i>	penser, <i>think.</i>	songer, <i>muse.</i>
avoir recours, <i>have recourse.</i>	prendre garde, <i>pay heed.</i>	venir, <i>come.</i>

a. Certain verbs of this class, when not literal, take the conjunctive dative :

Il lui vint une idée.

There occurred to him an idea.

Vous nous reviendrez.

You will come to see us again.

NOTE.—The ethical dative, denoting the person 'interested in' or 'affected by' an action, rare in English, is common in French: 'Goutez-moi ce vin-là,' 'Just taste that wine'; 'Ne me faites plus cela,' 'Don't do that again (I tell you).'

363. Impersonal *il*. For invariable *il* as the subject of an impersonal verb, see §§248-253.

364. Predicative *le, la, les*. As predicate the accusative third person is either variable or invariable :—

1. **Le** agrees when referring to a determinate noun or to an adjective used as such :

Êtes-vous sa mère?—Je **la** suis.

Are you his mother?—I am.

Êtes-vous la mariée?—Je **la** suis.

Are you the bride?—I am.

Sont-ce là vos livres?—Ce **les** sont.

Are those your books?—They are.

2. **Le**, invariable, is used when referring to an adjective, or to a noun as adjective :

Êtes-vous fatiguée?—Je **le** suis.

Are you tired?—I am.

Êtes-vous mère?—Je **le** suis.

Are you a mother?—I am.

Sont-ils Anglais?—Ils **le** sont.

Are they English?—They are.

365. Pleonastic *le*. The neutral form *le* (§361, *d*) is often pleonastic, as compared with English usage :

Êtes-vous mère?—Je **le** suis.

Are you a mother?—I am.

Qu'ils soient venus, je **le** sais.

That they have come, I know.

Fais du bien, quand tu **le** peux.

Do good, when you can.

Ce qu'il voulait, il **le** veut encore.

What he wished, he still wishes.

Je suis prête, s'il le faut.	I am ready, if need be.
J'irai si vous le désirez.	I shall go, if you wish (it).
Ils sont comme je (le) désirerais.	They are as I should like.
Il est plus âgé que je ne (le) suis.	He is older than I am.

Obs.: This **le** is optional in comparative clauses.

a. **Le** is also used in a number of fixed expressions :

Il ne le cède à personne.	He yields to nobody.
Nous l'avons emporté.	We have carried the day.
Il l'a échappé belle.	He had a narrow escape.

b. **Le** may sometimes be translated by 'one' or 'so' :

Il est soldat ; je le suis aussi.	He is a soldier ; I am one too.
Sois brave, et je le serai aussi.	Be brave, and I shall be so too.

366. Reflexives. 1. A special conjunctive reflexive form, **se** for dative or accusative of either gender or number, is required in the third person only ; for the first and second person the ordinary forms are used (cf. §242) :

Il (elle) se loue.	He (she) praises him (her) -self.
Ils (elles) se le sont dit.	They said so to each other.
But : Je me loue ; tu te loues ; nous nous louons ; vous vous louez.	

2. The disjunctive **soi** is hardly used beyond the third singular in an indefinite or general sense :

Chacun travaille pour soi.	Every one works for himself.
On doit parler rarement de soi.	One should rarely speak of one's self.
De soi le vice est odieux.	In itself vice is hateful.
But : Elle est contente d' elle-même ; ils ne songent qu'à eux-mêmes , etc.	

a. The use of **soi** is rarer for the feminine than for the masculine :

Un bienfait porte sa récompense avec soi (lui).	A good deed brings its reward with it.
La guerre entraîne après elle (soi) des maux sans nombre.	War brings after it countless evils.

NOTE.—**Soi** is no longer used of persons denoted by a general noun, e.g., 'L'avare ne vit que pour **lui-même**' (not 'pour soi'), nor is it used, as formerly, of persons to avoid ambiguity, e.g., 'Quoique son frère soit dans la misère, il ne pense qu'à **lui-même** (not 'à soi').

367. Uses of en. 1. **En** is in function an equivalent of **de** + a pronoun of the third person of either gender or number ; it is used of things, and less commonly of persons :

Je parle des plumes ; j'en parle.	I speak of the pens ; I speak of them.
Donnez-les-moi ; j'en ai besoin.	Give me them ; I need them.
Il est mon ami ; j'en réponds.	He is my friend ; I answer for him.
Il aime ses fils, et il en est aimé.	He loves his sons, and is loved by them.
Vous voilà ; j'en suis content.	There you are ; I am glad of it.
Vient-il de Toronto?—Il en vient.	Does he come from T.? He does.

a. The antecedent is often understood or indefinite :

Voyons ! où en étions-nous ?	Let me see, where were we ?
Ils en sont venus aux mains.	They came to blows.
Il m'en veut.	He has a grudge against me.
Tant s'en faut.	Far from it.
C'en est fait de lui.	It is all up with him.
À vous en croire.	If one is to believe you.
Quoi qu'il en soit.	However it may be.
Je n'en peux plus.	I am done out.
Il y en a qui le croient.	There are some who think so.

2. Through a somewhat special application of the general principle, it is further used :—

(1) In a partitive sense :

Voici du papier ; en voulez-vous ?	Here is some paper ; do you wish any
—Merci, j'en ai.	of it?—Thank you, I have some.
Avez-vous une plume?—J'en ai	Have you a pen?—I have one (I
une (j'en ai plusieurs).	have several).
Il me faut en acheter d'autres.	I must buy others.

(2) **En** = 'thereof' + the definite article replaces a possessive adjective referring to a possessor in the preceding sentence, but only when the thing possessed is a direct object, a subject of **être**, or a predicate noun :

J'aime ce pays ; j'en admire les institutions.	I like this country ; I admire its institutions.
Blâmez les péchés de ces gens, mais n'en blâmez pas les malheurs.	Blame the sins of those people, but do not blame their misfortunes.
Cette affaire est délicate ; le succès en est douteux.	That affair is delicate ; its success is doubtful.
Ceci est la gloire du pays ; cela en est la honte.	This is the country's glory ; that is its disgrace.
But : 'Cette maison a ses défauts' (the possessor not being in the pre-	

vicious sentence); 'J'aime ces vers ; leur harmonie me ravit' (the thing possessed being subject of another verb than *être*); 'J'admire ce pays ; il est fameux pour ses bonnes lois' (the thing possessed being governed by a preposition).

368. Use of *y*. *Y* is in function equivalent to *à* (*en*, *dans*, etc.) + a pronoun of the third person of either gender or number ; it is used of things, and rarely of persons :

Je pense à mes péchés ; j'y pense.	I think of my sins ; I think of them.
Il est en Europe ; il y est, et moi j'y vais aussi.	He is in Europe ; he is there, and I am going there too.
Il se connaît en ces choses, mais moi je ne m'y connais pas.	He is an expert in those things, but I am not.
Il aspire à cela ; il y aspire.	He aspires to that ; he aspires to it.
Vous fiez-vous à lui ?—Je m'y fie.	Do you trust him ?—I trust him.

a. The antecedent is often understood or indefinite :

Il y va de votre vie.	Your life is at stake.
J'y suis ! Qu'y a-t-il ?	I have it ! What is the matter ?
Il s'y prend adroitement.	He goes about it cleverly.
Est-ce que Monsieur B. y est ?	Is Mr. B. at home ?
Y pensez-vous ?	You don't mean it ?

369. Position of Conjunctive Objects. 1. They stand immediately before their governing verb, except the imperative affirmative :

Je leur en parlerai.	I shall speak to them of it.
Je l'y ai envoyé pour le leur dire.	I sent him there to tell them it.
Il lui faut parler ; il faut lui parler.	He must speak ; one must speak to him.

Obs. : Remember that the auxiliary is the verb in compound tenses.

a. With negative infinitive, the object may stand between *ne* and *pas* (*point*, *rien*, etc.) ; similarly adverb + infinitive :

Je suis étonné de ne point le voir (or ne le point voir).	I am astonished not to see him.
--	---------------------------------

Pour les bien considérer.	To consider them well.
---------------------------	------------------------

b. The objects of an infinitive governed by *faire*, *laisser* (cf. §230, 6, 7) or a verb of perceiving (*entendre*, *voir*, etc.), accompany the finite verb :

Je le lui ferai dire.	I shall make him say it.
Il se le voit refuser.	He sees himself refused it.
Faites-vous-la raconter.	Have it related to you.

c. A similar arrangement is permissible with *aller*, *venir*, *envoyer*, etc. + an infinitive :

J'enverrai le chercher <i>or</i> }	I shall send for him.
Je l'enverrai chercher. }	
Envoyez-le chercher.	Send for it.

NOTE.—In the older language, objects of an infinitive often stood before the so-called modal auxiliaries, e.g., 'Je **vous** dois dire,' but usage hardly permits this now, except for **en**, y, e.g., 'Ce qu'on **en** doit attendre.'

2. Conjunctive objects stand immediately after an imperative affirmative :

Regardez-les ; écoutez-nous.	Look at them ; listen to us.
Donnez-le-lui ; allons-nous-en.	Give it to him ; let us go away.
But : Ne les regardez pas.	Do not look at them.
Ne nous écoutez point.	Do not listen to us.
Ne le lui donnez pas.	Do not give it to him.

a. The rule does not apply to the subjunctive as impv. (§272, 1, a) :

Qu'il les écoute. Let him listen to them.

NOTES.—1. Formerly, but rarely now, an imperative affirmative when joined to another by *et* (*ou*, *mais*) might have an object before it: 'Achetez-les et les payez,' etc.

2. *Voici* and *voilà*, which are imperatives by derivation, are always preceded by their conjunctive object: '*Les* voici ; *en* voilà, etc.'

370. Relative Position of Objects. Personal pronoun objects and pronominal adverbs are arranged with reference to each other, as follows :—

1. When coming before the verb :

me	} before	le	} before	lui	} before	y	} before	en.
te		la		leur				
se		les						
nous								
vous								

Il me les donne.	He gives them to me.
Il les lui donne.	He gives them to him.
Il nous en donne.	He gives us some of it.
Je leur en parlerai.	I shall speak to them of it.
Ne leur en parlez pas.	Do not speak of it to them.
Je l'y ai envoyé pour le leur dire.	I sent him there to tell them it.

a. When there are two direct or two indirect objects, they become disjunctive and follow the verb :

J'ai vu lui et elle.

I have seen him and her.

Je parle à lui et à elle.

I speak to him and to her.

2. When coming after the verb :

le (la les)

before moi (toi, lui, nous, vous, leur).

me (te, lui, nous, vous, leur) before y (en).

y

before en.

Donnez-les-moi.

Give them to me.

Donnez-leur-en.

Give them some of it.

Donnez-m'en ; va-t'en.

Give me some ; begone.

Conduisez-nous-y.

Take us there.

Allez-vous-y-en.

Go away there.

a. After an imperative, the indirect objects nous, vous, may precede the direct le, la, les in familiar language :

Conservez-vous-le.

Keep it for yourselves.

Tenez-vous-le pour dit.

Consider it as final.

3. Reference table showing possible combinations of two pronouns :

(Before the Verb.)				(After the Verb.)		
me le	te le	se le	le lui	-le -moi	-le -toi	-le -lui
me la	te la	se la	la lui	-la -moi	-la -toi	-la -lui
me les	te les	se les	les lui	-les-moi	-les-toi	-les-lui
nous le	vous le	se le	le leur	-le -nous	-le -vous	-le -leur
nous la	vous la	se la	la leur	-la -nous	-la -vous	-la -leur
nous les	vous les	se les	les leur	-les-nous	-les-vous	-les-leur
m'en	t'en	s'en	lui en	-m'en	-t'en	-lui-en
m'en	t'en	s'en	l'en	-m'en	-t'en	-l'en
nous en	vous en	s'en	leur en	-nous-en	-vous-en	-leur-en
nous en	vous en	s'en	les en	-nous-en	-vous-en	-les-en
m'y	t'y	s'y	[lui y]	[-m'y]	[-t'y]	[-lui-y]
m'y	t'y	s'y	l'y	[-m'y]	[-t'y]	-l'y
nous y	vous y	s'y	leur y	-nous-y	-vous-y	-leur-y
nous y	vous y	s'y	les y	-nous-y	-vous-y	-les -y
	y en				y-en	

Obs. : 1. The disjunctive forms **moi**, **toi** are used instead of **me**, **te** after the verb, except before **en**.

2. After the verb, the forms are joined to it and to each other by hyphens, apostrophe instead of hyphen being used according to §19.

3. Combinations of three forms are rare, *e.g.*, 'Il **nous y en a donné**'; they are usually avoided, *e.g.*, 'Donnes-**y-en à moi**' for 'Donne-**m'y-en**.'

4. The forms in [] are almost always avoided, either by transposition or by some other form of expression, *e.g.*, 'Mènes-**y-moi**' or 'Mène-**moi là**' for 'Mène-**m'y**,' etc.

* See §159, 4

371. Omission of Object. The object of the second of two verbs in a compound tense joined by **et** or **ou** may be omitted along with the auxiliary and the subject :

Il l'a pris et tué.	He caught and killed it.
Or : Il l'a pris et l'a tué.	He caught it and killed it.
Il l'a pris et il l'a tué.	He has caught it and he has killed it.
But : Il l'a pris, l'a tué.	He has caught it, has killed it.
Il le prend, et le tue.	He catches it, and kills it.

NOTE.—The verbs must be alike in government, must have the same auxiliary, must both be affirmative or negative, otherwise no omission is allowed.

372. Disjunctives. When, for any reason, the pronoun is stressed (§7), the disjunctive form is usually employed (see §359, note) ; thus, the disjunctives are used :—

1. Absolutely, a verb being implied, but not expressed :

Qui est là ?—Moi (eux, elle).	Who is there ?—I (they, she).
Qui as-tu vu ?—Lui (eux).	Whom did you see ?—Him (them).
Toi absent, que ferai-je ?	You absent, what shall I do ?

a. So also, in comparisons, and analogously, after **ne... que** :

Je suis plus grand que toi.	I am taller than you.
Faites comme eux.	Do as they do.
Je n'ai vu que lui.	I have seen him only.

2. In appositions, often emphatic :

Moi, je l'ai vu (moi-même).	(Why) I saw it myself.
Toi qui l'as vu, tu me crois.	You who saw it (you) believe me.
Lui aussi (il) le sait.	He too knows it.
Cela vous est facile à vous.	That is easy for you.

a. With *lui* so used, and sometimes also with *eux*, the conjunctive subject may be omitted :

Lui seul (il) ne le voulait pas.	He alone did not wish it.
Lui travaillait ; eux jouaient.	He worked ; they played.

NOTE.—*Je soussigné* = 'I the undersigned' is a relic of the earlier language.

3. As logical subject after *ce* + *être* :

C'est moi (toi, vous) : *ce sont eux*, etc. It is I (thou, you) ; it is they.

4. With an infinitive :

Moi t'oublier ! jamais.	I forget thee ! Never.
Et eux de s'enfuir.	And they made off.

5. When the subject or object is composite, see also §362, 1, a and 2, (1) :

Son frère et lui sont venus.	His brother and he have come.
------------------------------	-------------------------------

a. A composite subject or object is usually summed up by a pleonastic appositive conjunctive, especially when the components are unlike in person :

Vous et lui (vous) l'avez vu.	You and he saw it.
Je vous envoie, toi et ton frère.	I send you and your brother.

6. After a preposition :

Je parle de toi et d'eux.	I speak of you and of them.
Ils sont chez eux.	They are at home.
Il se moque de nous.	He makes sport of us.

a. Observe the peculiar use of a preposition + a disjunctive pronoun as a sort of emphatic appositive of possession.

J'ai une maison à moi.	I have a house of my own.
Mon idée à moi, c'est, etc.	My (own) idea is, etc.

NOTE.—A disjunctive for things after a preposition is usually avoided, either by means of *en*, *y*, or else by an adverb, such as *dedans*, *dehors*, *dessus*, *devant*, *derrière*, etc. : 'Je ne vois rien *là dedans* (in it)' ; 'Voyez sur la table, cherchez *dessus* (on it) et *dessous* (under it).'

7. For *moi* and *toi* after imperative, see §370, 3, obs. 1.

373. Pronouns in Address. In addressing one person *vous* is, in general, the pronoun of formality and respect,

whilst **tu** denotes familiarity, affection, solemnity, etc., as follows :—

1. **Tu** = 'you,' of one person, is generally used between members of the same family (husband and wife, parents and children, brothers and sisters), between very intimate friends, between children, by grown persons to children and sometimes to servants, by everybody to animals and inanimate objects :

Où es-tu, mon cher père ?

Where are you, my dear father ?

Est-ce toi, mon enfant ?

Is that you, my child ?

Pauvre chien, tu as faim.

Poor dog, you are hungry.

2. **Tu** = 'thou' is used in poetry and elevated prose, and by Protestants in addressing God, Roman Catholics using **vous** :

Nous te (vous) louons, ô Dieu !

We praise thee, O God !

3. **Vous**, with the above limitations, is used, both in the singular and plural, as in English.

THE POSSESSIVE PRONOUN.

374-

Possessives.

1. Adjectival Forms :

SING.	PLUR.
m. mon	} mes , my.
f. ma (mon)	
m. ton	} tes , thy, your.
f. ta (ton)	
m. son	} ses , } his, her,
f. sa (son)	
m. }	} ses , } its, one's.
f. }	
m. }	} notre nos , our.
f. }	
m. }	} votre vos , your.
f. }	
m. }	} leur leurs , theirs.
f. }	

2. Pronominal Forms :

SING.	PLUR.
m. le mien	} les miens } mine.
f. la mienne	
m. le tien	} les tiens } thine, yours.
f. la tienne	
m. le sien	} les siens } his, hers, its,
f. la sienne	
m. }	} les siennes } one's own.
f. }	
m. le nôtre	} les nôtres , ours.
f. la nôtre	
m. le vôtre	} les vôtres , yours.
f. la vôtre	
m. le leur	} les leurs , theirs.
f. la leur	

Obs. : 1. The forms in parenthesis, **ma**, **ton**, **son**, are used instead of **ma**, **ta**, **sa**, before a vowel or **h** mute : '**Mon** amie,' 'my friend (f.)'; '**ton** histoire (f.)', 'your story'; '**son** aimable tante,' 'his amiable aunt.' 2. Since **son** (**sa** **ser**) = 'his,' 'her,' 'its,' 'one's,' the context determines which sense is intended.

Obs. : 1. The feminine, except for **leur**, is formed as for adjectives of like ending. 2. **De**, **à**+**le**, **les**, contract as usual; thus, **du mien** (= **de**+**le mien**), **aux miennes** (= **à**+**les miennes**), etc. 3. Note the accent mark in **nôtre**, **vôtre**, absent in **notre**, **votre**. 4. Since **le sien** (**la sienne**, etc.) = 'his,' 'hers,' 'its,' 'one's,' the context determines which sense is intended.

NOTE.—The regular feminine forms, **ma**, **ta**, **sa**, were at one time used before a vowel sound; a trace of this usage survives in **ma mie** (for **m'amie**), **m'amour**

375. Agreement. The possessives agree in gender and number with the noun denoting the object possessed, and in person with the possessor :

Elle a son crayon et les miens.

She has her pencil and mine.

Il a sa plume et les vôtres.

He has his pen and yours.

a. The possessive adjective must be repeated precisely like the definite article (cf. §318) :

Mes parents et mes amis.

My relatives and friends.

b. When the possessor is indefinite, **son** (**sa**, etc.) and **le sien** (**la sienne**, etc.), are used :

On doit tenir sa parole.

One must keep one's word.

Se charger des affaires d'autrui et négliger les siennes.

To undertake the business of others and neglect one's own.

376. Use of Adjectival Forms. They are used, in general, like the corresponding English forms; idiomatic distinctions and special rules are :—

1. The possessive adjective is commonly replaced by the definite article (cf. §328) when no ambiguity arises from its use :

Donnez-moi la main.

Give me your hand.

Il m'a déchiré l'habit.

He has torn my coat.

But : Il a déchiré son habit.

He has torn his coat.

a. If the sense is specific, emphatic, or distinctive, the possessive is used :

Mon bras me fait mal.

My arm pains me.

Voilà encore ma migraine!

There is my sick-headache again!

Je l'ai vu de mes propres yeux.	I saw it with my own eyes.
Elle lui a donné sa main.	She has given him her hand (<i>sc.</i> in marriage).

2. **En** + the definite article serves in certain cases as a substitute for **son**, **leur**, see §367, 2, (2):

a. This construction is more usual for things than for persons; for things personified, for names of places, or to avoid ambiguity, **son**, **leur** are not uncommon:

La nécessité parle; il faut suivre sa loi.	Necessity speaks; we must follow her law.
Vous rappelez-vous cette ville?	Do you remember that city? Its promenades are very fine.
Ses promenades sont très belles.	
La source de toutes les passions est la sensibilité, l'imagination détermine leur pente.	Sensation is the source of all the passions, imagination determines their tendency.

3. The emphatic 'own' is denoted by **propre** or by an apposition with **à**:

Je l'ai écrit de ma propre main.	I wrote it with my own hand.
C'est mon opinion à moi.	That is my own opinion.
Cf. also: J'ai un cheval à moi.	I have a horse of my own.
C'est à moi à jouer.	It is my turn to play.

a. Along with **son** the **à** construction often avoids ambiguity:

Son père à lui.	His (<i>i.e.</i> , not 'her') father.
-----------------	--

4. **Mon** (**ma**) is commonly used, in direct address, before the name of a relative (not before **papa**, **maman**) or the title of a superior officer:

Bonjour mon père (mon colonel).	Good morning father (colonel).
But: Est-ce toi papa (maman)?	Is that you papa (mamma)?

NOTE.—This usage explains the origin of **monsieur** (= **mon** + **sieur**), **madame** (= **ma** + **dame**), etc.

5. In speaking to a person of his or her relatives, **votre** (**vos**) is often preceded by **monsieur**, etc., for politeness:

Madame votre mère y est-elle?	Is your mother in?
-------------------------------	--------------------

6. When there is plurality of possessor, the object possessed usually remains singular, if it is singular as regards the individual possessor :

Les hommes songent moins à leur	Men think less of their souls than
Âme qu'à leur corps .	of their bodies .
Ils ont perdu la vie .	They lost their lives .

a. Sometimes the sense demands a plural :

Leurs têtes se ressemblent.	Their heads are alike.
-----------------------------	------------------------

377. Use of Pronominal Forms. They are used, in general, like the corresponding English forms; idiomatic distinctions and special rules are the following :—

1. 'Mine,' etc., after **être** is regularly expressed by **à + moi**, etc., when denoting ownership simply, while **le mien**, etc., denotes a distinction of ownership :

Cette montre est à moi .	} That watch is mine.
Cette montre est la mienne .	

2. The pronominal form sometimes stands without article in the predicate after certain verbs :

Ces opinions sont vôtres .	Those opinions are yours.
Elle deviendra mienne .	She shall become mine.
Je les ai fait miens .	I made them mine.

Such verbs are :

être.	devenir.	dire.	faire.	regarder comme, etc.
--------------	-----------------	--------------	---------------	-----------------------------

3. The idiom 'a friend of mine,' etc., is not literally translated :

Un de mes amis.	A friend of mine.
Un médecin de mes amis.	{ One of my friends, (who is) a doctor.
	{ A doctor, a friend of mine.
Un ami à moi.	A friend of mine.
Mon ami que voici.	This friend of mine.
Cf. : Un tour de sa façon.	One of his tricks.

a. The use of **mien** (**tien**, **sien**) attributively in this sense is familiar :

Un mien parent.	A relative of mine.
Une sienne cousine.	A cousin of his.

4. Emphatic 'own' is rendered by **propre**, or is, more usually, untranslated:

Son avis et le mien (propre). His opinion and my own.

5. When used absolutely, *i.e.*, without antecedent, the singular denotes 'property,' 'what is mine,' etc., and the plural 'relatives,' 'friends,' 'allies,' etc.:

Je ne demande que le mien. I ask only for what is mine.
Les nôtres se sont bien battus. Our soldiers (etc.) fought well.

a. Familiarly, the feminine means 'pranks,' etc.:

Il fait encore des siennes. He is at his pranks again.

NOTE.—Other obsolete uses are not permissible, *e.g.*, 'Votre lettre (not 'la vôtre') de la semaine dernière.'

THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN.

378.

Demonstratives.

1. Adjectival forms:

2. Pronominal forms:

SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
m. ce (cet) } this, that.	ces .	m. celui } that (one), etc.	ceux }
f. cette }		f. celle }	celles }
m. ce (cet) . . . -ci } this.	ces . . . -ci .	m. celui-ci }	ceux-ci }
f. cette . . . -ci }		f. celle-ci }	celles-ci }
m. ce (cet) . . . -là } that.	ces . . . -là .	m. celui-là }	ceux-là }
f. cette . . . -là }		f. celle-là }	celles-là }
		(Invar.) ce , this(these), that(those), he(she, it, they).	
		ceci , this.	
		cela , that.	

Obs.: The form **cet** is used before a vowel or **h** mute: **Cet** arbre; **cet** homme; **cet** autre dé; but: **ce** chêne; **ce** hêtre.

Obs.: The **e** of **ce** is elided before a vowel or **h** mute (§19); **c'** becomes **ç'** before **a** (§5, 4): '**ç'a** été.'

379. Agreement. The adjectival form agrees in gender and number with the noun before which it stands; the pronominal form agrees in gender and number with the noun instead of which it stands:

Cette plume et celle de Jean.

This pen and that of John.

J'aime ces livres ci, mais je n'aime pas ceux-là.

I like these books, but I do not like those.

a. The demonstrative adjective must be repeated like the definite article (cf. § 318).

380. Use of Adjectival *ce*. *Ce* (*cette*, etc.) = 'this' or 'that'; to distinguish 'this' from 'that' *-ci* and *-là* are respectively added to the noun :

Lis <i>ce</i> livre- <i>ci</i> ; lis <i>ce</i> livre- <i>là</i> .	Read this book ; read that book.
J'aime <i>ces</i> tableaux- <i>là</i> .	I like those pictures.

a. *Ce* (*cette*, etc.), referring to what has already been mentioned, sometimes has the force of 'that' :

Le télégraphe, <i>cette</i> grande découverte de notre siècle.	The telegraph, that great discovery of our century.
--	---

b. The definite article replaces the demonstrative adjective in a few idioms :

Ne parlez pas de <i>la</i> sorte.	Do not speak in that way.
J'irai à l'instant.	I shall go this (very) moment.

381. *Celui*. The pronoun *celui* (*celle*, etc.) = 'that,' 'that one,' 'the one,' 'he,' is regularly used only along with a relative clause or a *de* clause :

Ceux qui rient pleureront.	Those who laugh will weep.
Celle dont je parle est venue.	She of whom I speak has come.
Le devoir d'aimer Dieu et <i>celui</i> d'aimer son prochain.	The duty of loving God and that of loving one's neighbour.
Cette robe et celle que j'ai vue.	This dress and the one I saw.
Mes plumes et celles de mon frère.	My pens and my brother's.

Obs. : Note the use of *celui*=English possessive noun substantively.

a. The relative sentence is sometimes elliptically expressed by the past participle :

Les découvertes énumérées sont celles faites par Edison.	The discoveries enumerated are those made by Edison.
--	--

b. *Celui-là* replaces *celui* when the predicate comes before the relative :

<i>Celui-là</i> est riche qui est toujours content.	He (that man) is rich who is always happy.
---	--

382. *Celui-ci*, *celui-là*. The pronouns *celui-ci* (*celle-ci*, etc.) = 'this,' 'this one,' 'he,' 'the latter' and *celui-là* (*celle-*

là, etc.) = 'that,' 'that one,' 'the former,' are used to contrast the nearer with the more remote :

Voici les deux chaînes ; gardez celle-ci, et renvoyez celle-là. Here are the two chains ; keep this (one), and send back that (one).

Veut-il ceux-ci ou ceux-là ? Does he wish these or those ?

Cicéron et Virgile étaient Romains ; celui-ci était poète, et celui-là orateur. Cicero and Virgil were Romans ; the former was an orator, and the latter a poet.

Obs. : The idiom in the last example is literally 'the latter..., the former.'

a. 'This' or 'that' for emphasis, not contrast, is *celui-là* :

C'est une bonne loi (que) celle-là. This (that) is a good law.

383. *Ce* as Representative Subject. *Ce* = 'this,' 'that,' 'these,' 'those,' 'he,' 'she,' 'it,' 'they,' according to the context, is used with *être*, or with *devoir*, *pouvoir*, *savoir* + *être*, as representative subject, when the logical subject is :—

1. A proper noun, or a determinate noun, including adjectives as such :

C'est Marie et sa mère.	It is Mary and her mother.
Ce sera un beau spectacle.	That (it) will be a fine sight.
Ce sont nos plumes.	These (those) are our pens.
Était-ce le meilleur ?	Was it the best ?
Ce sont des Allemands.	They (those) are Germans.
C'est mon ami(e).	He (she) is my friend.
Ce peut être Jean.	That may be John.

a. Before *être* + an indeterminate noun *il* (ils, elles) is the regular construction :

Il est temps de s'en aller.	It is time to go.
Ils sont amis (Allemands).	They are friends (Germans).
Elle est couturière.	She is a seamstress.

NOTE.—For a few expressions like *c'est dommage*, etc., in which *c'est* stands with an indeterminate noun, see 384, 1, note 3.

b. *Il est* is always used to indicate hours of the day :

Il est midi (trois heures).	It is noon (three o'clock).
But : Quelle heure est-ce qui vient de sonner ?—C'est cinq heures.	What hour has just struck ?—It is five.

c. Observe the use of **ce** in the following date idioms :

C'est aujourd'hui lundi.	To-day is Monday.
Ce sera demain le quatre.	To-morrow will be the fourth.

2. A pronoun :

Qui est-ce ?—Ce sont eux.	Who is it ?—It is they.
Ce sont les leurs.	Those are theirs.
C'est ceci ; c'est cela.	It is this ; it is that.
C'étaient les mêmes.	They (those) were the same.
Ce doivent être les miens.	Those must be mine.

3. An infinitive, or an infinitive with **de** :

Ce serait tout perdre.	That would be losing everything.
Voir c'est croire.	Seeing is believing.
Ce que je crains c'est de l'offenser.	What I fear is to offend him.

4. A noun sentence :

Est-ce que vous ne le ferez pas ?	Will you not do it ?
Où est-ce qu'il est ?	Where is it that he is ?
Ce n'est pas qu'il ait peur.	It is not that he is afraid.

a. The noun sentence may be understood :

Vous partirez, n'est-ce pas ? (= n'est-ce pas que vous partirez ?)	You will go, will you not ?
--	-----------------------------

5. An adverb of quantity :

Combien est-ce ? Ça été trop.	How much is it ? It was too much.
-------------------------------	-----------------------------------

NOTE.—For agreement of the verb, see §232, 3.

384. Ce as Real Subject. **Ce** stands as real subject of **être**, or of **devoir**, **pouvoir**, **savoir** + **être**, when the complement of **être** is :—

1. An adjective, an adjective + **à** + an infinitive, an infinitive preceded by **à**, an adverb (in all cases without further syntactical connection, see a, below) :

C'est facile (vrai, bien).	That (it) is easy (true, well).
Ce doit être (ne saurait être) vrai.	That must be (cannot be) true.
Il est parti, c'est clair.	He is gone, that is clear.
C'est clair, il est parti.	It is clear, he is gone.
C'est à désirer.	That (it) is to be desired.

Où sera-ce ?

Where will it (that) be ?

C'était bien mal à vous.

That was very wrong of you.

a. When followed by **de** + an infinitive or by a **que** clause, the regular construction for the above is impersonal **il** (not 'ce'); so also the parenthetical **il est vrai** and **n'est-il pas vrai**? (= **n'est-ce pas**?), though without syntactical connection :

Il est facile de dire cela.

It is easy to say that.

Il est triste de vous voir ainsi.

It is sad to see you thus.

Il est clair que j'ai raison.

It is clear that I am right.

Il est à désirer que la guerre finisse bientôt.

It is to be desired that the war will soon end.

On rit, il est vrai, mais attendez.

They laugh, to be sure, but wait.

Il est bien mal à vous de parler ainsi.

It is very wrong of you to speak so.

NOTE.—1. Colloquially, **c'est** is pretty freely used instead of **il est** before **de** + infinitive or a **que** clause : '**C'est facile de faire cela**' ; '**C'est clair que j'ai raison**,' etc.

2. This use of **ce** is permissible in the literary style only in expressions of emotion, e.g., '**C'est heureux (malheureux, beau, triste, étonnant, etc.), c'est à présumer (craindre, regretter, etc.)**' : '**C'est triste de vous voir**' ; '**C'est à craindre qu'il ne soit noyé**.'

3. The **ce** construction is obligatory after a few noun phrases of like value, e.g., '**C'est dommage (pitié, plaisir, justice, etc.)**,' '**C'est pitié de l'entendre**.'

2. A prepositional clause, or a conjunction :

C'est pour vous.

It (that) is for you.

C'est pourquoi je suis venu.

That is why I came.

C'est comme vous (le) dites.

It is as you say.

385. Ce + a Relative. As antecedent **ce** + a relative denotes 'that which,' 'what,' 'which,' etc. :

Ce qui m'amuse.

What (that which) amuses me.

Ce que je dis est vrai.

What I say is true.

Ce dont nous parlions.

What we were speaking of.

Ce à quoi je pense.

What I am thinking of.

Il est âgé, ce qui est dommage.

He is old, which is a pity.

a. **Ce**, so used, either immediately precedes the relative, or is, for emphasis, divided from it by **être** + a predicate substantive :

Ce qu'il veut est la gloire.

What he desires is glory.

C'est la gloire qu'il veut.

It is glory that he desires.

NOTE.—This type of construction is widely used to render a predicate substantive emphatic, e.g., '**C'est ton frère qui le dit**' ; '**C'est à vous que (= 'à qui') je parle**' ; '**C'est mourir que de vivre ainsi**' ; '**C'est une belle ville que Paris**' (cf. 397, 2, n. 1).

386. Other uses of *ce*. Apart from its use with *être* or with a relative, *ce* is found in a few phrases only, mostly archaic, familiar or jocular :

<i>Ce</i> devint un usage.	This (that) became a custom.
Tu crains, <i>ce</i> lui dit-il.	You fear, said he to him.
Sur <i>ce</i> , je vous quitte.	And now, I leave you.
De <i>ce</i> non content.	Not satisfied with this.

a. The parenthetical *ce* *semble* may be used only when unconnected (cf. §384, 1, a), otherwise *il* *semble* :

C'est lui, <i>ce</i> me semble, au moins.	It's he, it seems to me, at least.
But : Il me semble que c'est lui.	

387. Pleonastic *ce*. As compared with English, *ce* is often pleonastic ; thus, it is used with *être* + a logical subject :—

1. Regularly, after *celui qui* and *ce qui* :

Celle qui l'a dit c'est vous.	The one who said so is you.
Ce que je crains <i>ce</i> sont mes prétendus amis.	What I fear is my would-be friends.
Ce à quoi je pense c'est sa santé.	What I think of is his health.

2. Regularly, between infinitives when not negative :

Penser, c'est vivre.	To think is to live.
But : Végéter (<i>ce</i>) n'est pas vivre.	To vegetate is not to live.

3. Regularly, in inversion with *que* :

C'est une belle ville que Paris.	{ Paris is a beautiful city. It is a fine city, ('is') Paris.
----------------------------------	--

4. Optionally, in other inversions for emphasis :

La guerre (<i>ce</i>) serait la ruine.	War would be ruin.
--	--------------------

NOTE.—When the complement of *être* is an adjective or participle, pleonastic *ce* may not be used : 'Ce qui est utile n'est pas toujours juste.'

388. *Ceci* and *cela*. *Ceci* = 'this,' the nearer, and *cela* = 'that,' the more remote, are used to denote something indicated, but not yet named :

Gardez ceci et donnez-moi cela.	Keep this and give me that.
---------------------------------	-----------------------------

Obs. : If the object has been already named, or if the name is fully implied by the context, *celui-ci* (-là) must be used.

a. **Ceci** also refers to what is about to be said, and **cela** to what has been said :

Réfléchissez bien à ceci.

Think well on this.

Je ne dis pas davantage, cela suffit.

I say no more, that is enough.

b. **Ceci** (not 'cela') may have a predicate noun :

Ceci est un secret.

This is a secret.

Or : **C'est** ici un secret (rarer).

But : **C'est** là un secret.

That is a secret.

Cela c'est un secret.

NOTE.—**Cela** is not so divided before **même**, **seul**, and its division in negations is optional : '**Cela** seul (même) en est la cause' ; '**Cela** n'est pas (or ce n'est pas là) une faute.'

c. **Cela** (not 'ceci') = 'this' before a **de** clause :

Paris a **cela** d'avantageux.

Paris has this advantage.

d. **Cela** may be replaced by **là** after **de** and **par** :

De **là** vient que, etc.

From that it comes that, etc.

Il faut commencer par **là**.

We must begin with that.

e. **Cela** is often contracted to **ça** colloquially :

Ça ne fait rien.

That doesn't matter.

f. **Ça** is sometimes used familiarly or contemptuously of persons instead of a personal pronoun :

Regardez comme **ça** mange.

Look how they (etc.) eat.

Ça veut faire à sa tête.

You (etc.) wish to do as you please.

NOTE.—Distinguish **ça** from **çà** (adverb) and **çà** ! (interjection).

THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN.

389.

Interrogatives.

1. Adjectival forms :

SING.	PLUR.	
m. quel ?	quels ?	} which ?, what ? etc.
f. quelle ?	quelles ?	

2. Pronominal forms :

SING.	PLUR.	
m. lequel ?	lesquels ?	} which ?, which or what one(s) ?
f. laquelle ?	lesquelles ?	
(Invar.)		qui ?, who ?, whom ?
		que ?, what ?
		quoi ?, what ?

Obs. : 1. For the feminine and plural of **quel**, cf. §§337, 1, (2), and 338.

2. **Lequel** = **le** + **quel**, both parts being inflected (§§316, 339, 1) ; **de**, **à** contract with **le**, **les** (**duquel**, **auquel**, etc., cf. §317).

3. **Que** = **qu'** before a vowel or **h** mute (§19).

390. Agreement. The adjectival forms agree like ordinary adjectives; the variable pronominal forms agree in gender, not necessarily in number, with the nouns for which they stand; **qui?** assumes the number of the noun or pronoun referred to:

Quels livres avez-vous ?	Which (what) books have you ?
Quelles sont vos raisons ?	What are your reasons ?
Laquelle des dames est venue ?	Which of the ladies has come ?
Qui sonne ? Qui sont-elles ?	Who rings ? Who are they ?

391. Quel?, Lequel?. The adjective **quel?** = 'which?', 'what?', and the pronoun **lequel?** = 'which (one)?', 'what (one)?', refer either to persons or things, and stand both in direct and indirect questions :

Quels livres avez-vous ?	Which (what) books have you ?
Dites-moi quel livre il a.	Tell me which (what) book he has.
Desquels avez-vous besoin ?	Which (ones) do you need ?
Dites-moi lesquels vous avez.	Tell me which (ones) you have.
Quelle dame est arrivée ?	Which (what) lady has come ?
Je ne sais pas laquelle.	I do not know which (one).
Quelles sont vos raisons ?	What are your reasons ?
Quel homme est-ce là ?	What (what kind of) man is that ?
Auquel des hommes parle-t-il ?	To which of the men does he speak ?

a. Quel! in exclamations sometimes = 'what a!', 'what!':

Quel héros ! Quels héros !	What a hero ! What heroes !
Quelle belle scène !	What a beautiful scene !

b. Quel? as predicative adjective often replaces **qui?** = 'who?':

Quels sont ces gens-là ?	Who are those people ? (or what kind of people are those ?)
Sais-tu quelle est cette dame ?	Do you know who that lady is ?

NOTE.—A pleonastic **de** is commonly used before alternatives after **quel?**, **lequel?** and other interrogatives, probably caused by case attraction with **des deux**, often present in such expressions: 'Quel (des deux) est le plus habile, **de** cet homme-ci ou **de** celui-là?'; 'Laquelle est la plus illustre, d'Athènes ou **de** Rome?'

392. Qui? 1. The pronoun **qui?** = 'who?', 'whom?', is regularly used of persons only, and stands in both direct and indirect questions :

Qui frappe ?	Who is knocking ?
Qui est là ?	Who is there ?
De qui (à qui) parle-t-il ?	Of whom (to whom) is he speaking ?
Qui avez-vous vu ?	Whom did you see ?
Qui êtes-vous ?	Who are you ?
Dites-moi qui est venu.	Tell me who has come ?

a. **Qui?** is sometimes used, though rarely and not necessarily, as subject to a transitive verb in the sense of 'what?':

Qui vous amène de si bonne heure? What brings you so early?

b. **Qui?**, predicatively, is often replaced, especially when feminine or plural, by **quel?**:

Quelle est cette dame ?	Who is that lady? (What l. is that?).
Quels sont-ils ?	Who are they ?

2. 'Whose?', denoting ownership simply = **à qui?**; otherwise generally **de qui?**, sometimes **quel?**, but never 'dont':

À qui est cette maison-là ?	Whose house is that ?
De qui êtes-vous fils ?	Whose son are you ?
Quelle maison a été brûlée ?	Whose (what) house was burnt ?

NOTE.—Compare with this the idiom **c'est à qui**: 'C'était à qui finirait le premier,' 'It was a strife as to who would finish first.'

393. Que?, Quoi?. The form **que?** = 'what?' is conjunctive, while **quoi?** = 'what?' is disjunctive; their uses in detail are:—

1. **Que?** stands regularly as direct object or as predicate, and in direct question only:

Que vous a-t-il dit ?	What did he say to you ?
Que cherchez-vous ?	What are you looking for ?
Que sont-ils devenus ?	What has become of them ?

a. **Que?**, alternatively with **quoi?**, may stand with an infinitive in indirect question:

Je ne sais que (quoi) dire. I know not what to say.

b. **Que?** and **que!** sometimes have adverbial force:

Que ne m'avez-vous dit cela ?	Why did you not tell me that ?
Que vous êtes heureux !	How happy you are !
Que d'argent perdu !	What a quantity of money lost !

2. 'What?' as subject of a verb is regularly **qu'est-ce qui ?** :

Qu'est-ce qui fait ce bruit ?

What is making that noise ?

a. The form **que ?** may stand as subject to a few intransitive verbs, mostly such as may also be impersonal, but never as subject to a transitive verb :

Que sert de pleurer ?

What is the use of crying ?

Que vous en semble ?

What do you think of it ?

Qu'est-ce ?

What is it ?

3. **Quoi ?** is used absolutely, *i.e.*, with ellipsis of the verb, and after a preposition :

Il y a du nouveau.—Quoi ?

There is news.—What ?

Quoi de plus beau que cela ?

What finer than that ?

Quoi ! vous l'admirez !

What ! You admire him !

À quoi pensez-vous ?

What are you thinking of ?

En quoi puis-je vous servir ?

In what can I help you ?

a. In cases of special emphasis **quoi ?** may be direct object :

Je reçois quoi ?—Des lettres.

I receive what ?—Letters.

b. With an infinitive, **que ?**, or more emphatically, **quoi ?** is used :

Que (quoi) faire ?

What is one to do ?

Je ne sais que (quoi) répondre.

I know not what to answer.

394. Interrogative Locutions. The use of interrogative phrases formed with **est-ce**, etc., instead of the simple forms is very frequent (cf. §§392-3) :

Qui est-ce qui chante ?

for Qui chante ?

Qui est-ce que vous demandez ?

" Qui demandez-vous ?

À qui est-ce que vous parliez ?

" À qui parliez-vous ?

Qu'est-ce que cela prouve ?

" Que prouve cela ?

Qu'est-ce que c'est ?

" Qu'est-ce ?

Qu'est-ce que c'est que cela ?

" Qu'est-ce que cela ?

De quoi est-ce qu'il parle ?

" De quoi parle-t-il ?

Qu'est-ce qui fait ce bruit ?

What is making that noise ?

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN.

395. Relative Pronouns.

qui, who, which, that ; whom (after a preposition).

que, whom, which, that.

dont, whose, of whom, of which, etc.

où, in which, into which, at which, to which, etc.

lequel , m. s.	lesquels , m. pl.	} who, whom, which, that.
laquelle , f. s.	lesquelles , f. pl.	

quoi, what, which.

Obs. : For **qu'**, see §19.

396. Agreement. A relative pronoun, whether variable or invariable in form, is of the gender, number and person of its antecedent :

Moi qui étais (vous qui étiez) là.	I who was (you who were) there.
Les lettres que j'ai apportées.	The letters which I have brought.
Moi qui suis son ami(e).	I who am his friend (m. or f.).
Dieux (vous) qui m'exaucez !	(Ye) gods who hear me !
C'est nous qui l'avons dit.	It is we who have said it.
Je suis celui qui l'ai dit.	I am the one who has said it.

a. When the antecedent is a predicate noun, or an adjective as such, the relative may agree in person either with this noun or with the subject of the sentence :

Nous sommes deux moines qui voyageons (voyagent).	We are two monks who are travelling.
Je suis le seul qui l'aie (ait) dit.	I am the only one who has said it.

b. The relative after **un** + a plural is either singular or plural, usually according to the sense :

C'est un de mes (des) procès qui m'a (m'ont) ruiné.	It is one of my (of the) law-suits which has (have) ruined me.
---	--

397. Qui, Que. Both **qui** and **que** refer to antecedents, of either gender or number, denoting persons or things ; their uses in detail are :—

1. **Qui** = 'who,' 'which,' 'that,' serves as subject; **qui** = 'whom,' of persons only, or things personified, may also be used after a preposition :

La dame qui a chanté.	The lady who (that) has sung.
Les amis qui sont arrivés.	The friends who (that) have come.
La vache qui beugle.	The cow which (that) lows.
Les livres qui ont été perdus.	The books which have been lost.
Les oiseaux qui volent.	The birds which (that) fly.
Ce qui m'amuse.	What (that which) amuses me.
Rien qui soit beau.	Nothing that is beautiful.
La tante chez qui je demeure.	The aunt with whom I live.
Les amis à (de) qui je parlais.	The friends to (of) whom I spoke.
Rochers à qui je me plains.	Rocks to whom I complain.

a. **Qui**, without antecedent, sometimes = **celui qui** (**ceux qui**, etc.), or, when repeated, = **les uns . . . les autres** :

Aimez qui vous aime.	Love him (the one) who loves you.
Jouera qui voudra.	Let those who will play.
Pour qui connaît.	For any one who knows.
Qui d'un côté, qui de l'autre.	Some on one side, some on the other.

b. Similarly, in a few phrases, mostly exclamatory or parenthetical, **qui** = **ce qui** :

Voilà qui est étrange !	That is strange !
Qui pis est (<i>or</i> ce qui est pis).	What is worse.

2. **Que** = 'whom,' 'which,' 'that,' serves regularly as direct object :

Les ami(e)s que j'aime.	The friends whom (that) I love.
Le livre (cheval) que j'ai.	The book (horse) which I have.
Les plumes que j'ai achetées.	The pens which I have bought.
Ce que vous dites.	That which you say.
Rien de ce que vous dites.	Nothing that you say.

a. **Que** stands also as predicate nominative (cf. §295, 1), and as logical subject of an impersonal verb :

Malheureuse que je suis !	Unhappy woman that I am !
Qu'est-ce qu'elle est devenue ?	What has become of her ?
À l'heure qu'il est.	At the present hour.
L'homme qu'il vous faut.	The man that you need.
Prenez ce qu'il vous faut.	Take what you need.

NOTES.—1. The **que** of emphatic inversions (§385, a, n.) is best explained as predicative **que**: 'C'est une belle ville **que** Paris' = 'C'est une belle ville **que** Paris (est)' or 'C'est une belle ville (ce) **que** (c'est) Paris'; 'Erreur **que** tout cela' = '(C'est) erreur **que** tout cela (est)' or '(C'est) erreur (ce) **que** (c'est) tout cela.'

2. The form **que** is often a relative adverb, not to be confounded in function with the relative proper: 'Dans le temps **que** cela arrivait'; 'C'est à vous **que** je parle' (or 'C'est vous à qui je parle').

398. Dont. The form **dont** = 'whose,' 'of whom,' 'of which,' etc., has the value of **de** + a relative; it refers to antecedents, of either gender or number, denoting persons or things:

L'homme dont le fils est mort.	The man whose son is dead.
Les gens dont je parle.	The people of whom I speak.
Les plumes dont je me sers.	The pens which I make use of.
La gloire dont il est avide.	The fame for which he is eager.
Ce dont je me plains.	That of which I complain.

a. A noun after **dont** = 'whose' does not omit the article as in English, and must follow its governing verb (cf. §40, 2):

Le monsieur dont j'ai trouvé la bourse. The gentleman whose purse I found.

b. As compared with **d'où** (cf. §399, a), **dont** has figurative force in expressions referring to extraction, lineage, etc.:

La maison dont il sort. The family from which he comes.

c. **Dont** was originally an adverb (L. *de* + *unde*), and is often best construed as such:

La pays dont il est venu. The country whence he came.

399. Où. The adverb **où** = 'where' is also used as a relative with the value of **dans** (**à**, **sur**, **vers**, etc.) + a relative; if preceded by a preposition, **où** = 'which,' 'where':

La maison où je loge.	The house in which I lodge.
Le siècle où nous vivons.	The age in which we live.
Le but où il tend.	The end towards which he tends.
Les villes par où je suis venu.	The cities through which I came.
L'endroit d'où il vient.	The place from which he comes.
D'où venez-vous?	Where do you come from?

a. **D'où** = 'from which,' 'whence,' is usually literal in force:

La maison d'où il sort. The house out of which he comes.

400. Lequel. The form **lequel** = 'who,' 'whom,' 'which,' 'that,' refers to persons or things, and varies in form to agree with its antecedent; it is chiefly used where **qui**, **que**, etc., may not be employed:—

1. **Lequel**, being inflected, stands where **qui**, **que**, from want of inflection, would be ambiguous, or it serves, owing to its stress, to denote the more remote of two possible antecedents:

La sœur de mon ami laquelle vient d'arriver. The sister of my friend who has just come.

Le fils du rédacteur lequel je viens de voir. The son of the editor whom (i.e., 'the son') I have just seen.

a. **Lequel** may not be used of persons after **en**, and it must be used of persons after **parmi**, **entre**:

Un homme **en** qui je crois. A man in whom I believe.

Les amis **parmi** (entre) lesquels. The friends among whom.

2. When depending on a noun governed by a preposition, 'whose' must be turned by **duquel**, etc., which must follow the noun (cf. §398, a):

La dame au fils de laquelle (or de qui) je donne des leçons. The lady to whose son I give lessons.

NOTE.—**Lequel** is used exceptionally as an adjective: 'J'espère partir demain, **auquel** cas, etc. '; 'Je viens de toucher mille francs, de **laquelle** somme je payerai mes dettes.'

401. Quoi. 1. The form **quoi** = 'what,' 'which,' is used without definite antecedent, and stands after a preposition, rarely otherwise:

Voilà de **quoi** je parlais. That is what I was speaking of.

Sur **quoi** il est parti. Whereupon he went away.

C'est à **quoi** je pensais. That is what I was thinking of.

Il m'a payé, ce à **quoi** je ne m'attendais guère. He paid me, which I hardly expected.

a. **De quoi** + an infinitive, expressed or implied, denotes the means or cause of the action of the infinitive :

Il a de quoi vivre.	He has enough to live on.
Il a de quoi (<i>sc.</i> vivre, etc.).	He has means (is well off).
Donnez-moi de quoi écrire.	Give me something to write with.
Il n'y a pas de quoi.	There is no occasion (don't mention it, etc.).

b. **Quoi** stands without a preposition in a few expressions :

Quoi faisant.	(By) doing which.
Un je ne sais quoi de cruel.	A certain indefinable cruelty.

2. 'What' = 'that which' is expressed by **ce** + a relative (cf. §385) :

Je vois ce qui se passe.	I see what is going on.
Je sais ce que je sais.	I know what I know.
Ce dont je me plains.	That of which I complain.
Ce à quoi je me fiais.	What I was trusting to.
Il est sourd, ce qui est bien dommage.	He is deaf, which is a great pity.

402. Remarks. 1. The relative pronoun, often omitted in English, is never omitted in French :

Le tableau que j'ai vu là.	The picture (which) I saw there.
Le livre dont je parle est à moi.	The book (which) I speak of is mine.

2. Relative and antecedent should stand as near together as possible :

Il y a de ce livre une édition qui se vend, etc.	There is an edition of that book which is sold, etc.
--	--

Not : Une édition de ce livre qui, etc.

3. A preposition never ends the relative sentence, as sometimes in English :

Ce à quoi je me fiais.	What I was trusting to.
------------------------	-------------------------

4. For English forms in **-ing** = relative clause, see §287, 3.

THE INDEFINITE PRONOUN.

403.

Indefinites.

1. Adjectival forms :

- | | | |
|--|---|---------------|
| 1. certain , a certain ; pl. certain . | 4. divers , m. pl. } | various, etc. |
| 2. chaque , each, every. | diverses , f. pl. } | |
| 3. différent(e)s , pl., various, etc. | 5. maint , many a. | |
| | 6. quelque , some ; pl., some (few). | |

Obs. : Except for **divers**, the feminine and plural are formed like those of ordinary adjectives.

2. Pronominal forms :

- | | | |
|---|--------------------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. autrui , others, other people, etc. | 5. quelqu'un , m. s. } | somebody, etc. |
| 2. chacun , m. } each (one), every | quelqu'une , f. s. } | |
| chacune , f. } (one). | quelques-uns , m. pl. } | some (people), etc. |
| 3. on (l'on), one, people, etc. | quelques-unes , f. pl. } | |
| 4. personne...ne , nobody, etc. | 6. quelque chose , something. | |
| | 7. rien...ne , nothing. | |

Obs. : 1. **On** often becomes **l'on** after a vowel sound to avoid hiatus, especially after **et, ou, où, que, lorsque**, etc., **qui, quoi, pourquoi, si, ainsi, aussi**, but not usually when a closely following word has initial **l** ; **qu'on** almost always becomes **que l'on** when a closely following word has initial **[k]** sound.

2. For **quelqu'un(e)**, see §19.

3. Note the hyphen of the plural of **quelqu'un**.

3. Forms serving either as adjective or as pronoun :

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. aucun...ne , no ; nobody, etc. | 6. plusieurs , m. or f. pl., several. |
| 2. autre , other. | 7. tel , m. } |
| 3. même , same, etc. | telle , f. } |
| 4. nul...ne , m. } no ; nobody, | 8. tout , m. tous, m. pl. } |
| nulle...ne , f. } etc. | toute , f. toutes, f. pl. } |
| 5. pas un...ne , no ; nobody, etc. | 9. un , a ; one, etc. |

Obs. : The feminine and plural are like those of adjectives of like ending, except the feminine of **nul** and the plural of **tout**.

404. Use of Adjectival Forms. 1. **Certain** = '(a) certain,' pl. 'certain,' 'some,' precedes its noun ; the use of **un** in the singular, and of partitive **de** in the plural, is optional :

(Un) certain roi français.

A certain French king.

(De) certaines gens.

Certain (some) people.

a. Certains is exceptionally used as a pronoun :

Certains prétendent, etc.

Some assert, etc.

NOTE.—**Certain**, placed after the noun, is an ordinary adjective = 'sure,' 'trustworthy,' 'positive,' etc. (cf. §352, 4).

2. Chaque = 'each,' 'every,' is distributive and singular only :

Chaque homme (femme).

Each or every man (woman).

a. Distinguish *chaque* = 'every,' 'each,' which individualizes from **tout** = 'every,' 'all,' which generalizes :

Chaque homme a des passions.

Every (each) man has passions.

Tout homme a une passion dominante.

Every man has (all men have) a ruling passion.

Chaque année ; tous les ans.

Each year ; every year.

3. Différents, Divers = 'various,' 'several,' 'sundry,' 'divers,' are indefinite adjectives only when plural and standing before nouns :

Différentes choses m'ont retenu.

Various things detained me.

On a essayé divers moyens.

Several methods have been tried.

NOTE.—With the sense of 'different,' 'diverse,' they are used as ordinary adjectives.

4. Maint, whether singular or plural, = 'many a' ; it is often repeated :

Maint(s) danger(s).

Many a danger.

Mainte(s) fois.

Many a time.

En mainte et mainte occasion.

On many an occasion.

5. Quelques = 'some' ; when used of quantity or number, **quelque** = 'some, but not much or many,' 'a little,' 'a few,' and is of more limited force than the partitive **some** (§322) :

Quelques amis sont pires que des ennemis.

Some friends are worse than enemies.

J'ai eu quelque difficulté.

I have had some (a little) difficulty.

Il a quelques amis ici.

He has some (a few) friends here.

Voici les quelques francs qui nous restent.

Here are the few francs we have left.

a. **Quelque** has adverbial force, and is invariable, before numerals (not nouns of number) = 'about,' 'some':

À quelque dix milles d'ici.	About (some) ten miles from here.
But: Quelques centaines de pas.	A few hundred paces.
À cent et quelques pas.	At a little more than 100 paces.

b. Similarly before adjectives or adverbs = 'however' (cf. §271, 4, *b*):

Quelque riches qu'ils soient.	However rich they may be.
Quelque bien que vous parliez.	However well you may speak.

NOTE.—'However' + adjective is also expressed by **tout...que** (usually with the indicative), **si... (que)** (with the subjunctive), **pour...que** (with the subjunctive), *e.g.*, '**Toutes** bonnes **qu'**elles sont,' 'However good they are'; '**Si** bonnes **qu'**elles soient,' 'However good they are'; '**Si** bonnes vos raisons soient-elles,' 'However good your reasons are'; '**Pour** bonnes **qu'**elles soient,' 'However good they are.'

c. For the use of **quelque(s) ... que** = 'whatever,' see §407.

405. Use of Pronominal Forms. 1. **Autrui** = 'others' 'other people,' 'our neighbour (in general),' is rarely used except after a preposition:

Il ne faut pas convoiter les biens d'autrui.	We must not covet the goods of others.
La rigueur envers autrui.	Severity towards others.

NOTE.—'Others' is more usually **les autres, d'autres** (§406, 2, *b*); regularly so, as subject or direct object.

2. **Chacun** = 'each,' 'each one,' 'every one' is the pronoun corresponding to the adjective **chaque** (§404, 2):

Chacun d'eux a refusé.	Each (every) one of them refused.
Donnez à chacun(e) sa part.	Give to each his (her) share.
Des poires à deux sous chacune.	Pears at two cents each.

a. The possessive form to **chacun** is regularly **son**:

Mettez-les chacun(e) à sa place.	Put them each in his (her, its) place.
----------------------------------	--

b. **Chacun** in apposition to **nous, vous**, takes, as its possessive, **notre, votre**:

Parlez chacun(e) à votre tour.	Speak each in your turn.
--------------------------------	--------------------------

c. **Chacun**, in apposition to **ils, elles**, takes the possessive **leur** before the direct object; otherwise **son** or **leur**:

Elles récitent chacune leur verset (chacune à son or leur tour).	They each recite their verse (each in turn).
--	--

d. The reflexive to **chacun** = 'every one' is **se (soi)** :

Chacun pour soi.

Every one for himself.

3. **On** = 'one,' 'some one,' 'we,' 'you,' 'they,' 'people,' etc., is used as subject of a verb in the third singular, without specifying any person in particular :

On dit que la reine est malade.

They (people) say the queen is ill.

A-t-on allumé mon feu ?

Has anyone lighted my fire ?

On ne peut pas mêler l'huile avec l'eau.

One (we, you) cannot mix oil with water.

a. The **on** construction often corresponds to an English passive, especially when the agent is not specified :

On a attrapé le larron.

The thief has been caught.

On croit que la guerre est finie.

It is thought the war is over.

On vous demande.

You are wanted.

b. **On** may not be replaced by a personal pronoun subject :

On est triste quand **on** est sans argent.

A man is sad when he is without money.

c. Since **on** is subject only, the corresponding direct and indirect object, when required, are borrowed from **vous** :

Lorsqu'**on** presse trop un poisson il vous échappe.

When you squeeze a fish too much it escapes you.

d. The reflexive to **on** is **se (soi)**, and the corresponding possessive is **son**, whatever be the English equivalent :

On se demande.

People ask themselves.

On perdrait son temps.

You would lose your time.

e. Although **on** is invariable, a feminine or plural noun or adjective may relate to it, when the sense is clearly feminine or plural :

On est plus jolie à présent.

She is prettier now.

On est si proches voisins.

We are such near neighbours.

f. **On** may replace a personal pronoun, often with depreciatory force :

On y pensera.

I (we) shall see about it.

On se croit bien fin.

You (he, etc.) think yourself very cunning.

4. **Personne** and **rien** along with **ne** + a verb, or when alone, a verb being understood, = 'nobody,' 'no one,' 'not anybody,' etc., and 'nothing,' 'not anything,' respectively :

Personne n'est venu.

Nobody (no one) has come.

Je n'ai parlé à personne.

I have spoken to nobody (not spoken to anybody).

Ne dites rien.

Say nothing (do not say anything).

Personne ici !—Personne.

No one here !—No one.

Qu'a-t-il dit ?—Rien.

What did he say ?—Nothing.

a. If the context contains or implies negation, **personne**, **rien**, assume affirmative force (= **quelqu'un**, **quelque chose**) :

Il n'a rien dit à personne.

He said nothing to any one.

Personne n'a jamais rien dit.

Nobody has ever said anything.

Je vous défends de rien dire.

I forbid you to say anything.

Je crains de parler à personne.

I fear to speak to anybody.

Impossible de rien faire !

Impossible to do anything !

Il cessa de rien donner.

He ceased giving anything.

Où trouverai-je rien de pareil ?

Where shall I find anything like it ?

Sans parler à personne.

Without speaking to anybody.

b. The above rule does not apply to pleonastic **ne**, nor to double negations :

Je crains qu'il ne fasse mal à quelqu'un. I fear he will hurt somebody.

Ne revenez pas sans voir quelqu'un. Do not come back without seeing somebody.

NOTE.—The pronoun **personne** is masculine (sometimes sylleptically feminine like **on**, § 3, e, above) ; the noun **personne** is always feminine (cf. § 303, 1, c).

5. **Quelqu'un(e)** = 'somebody,' 'some one,' 'any one,' etc., with its plural **quelques-un(e)s** = 'some,' 'some people,' 'any,' 'a few,' etc., is the pronoun corresponding to the adjective **quelque** (§404, 5) :

Il y a quelqu'un là.

There is somebody there.

Y a-t-il quelqu'un là ?

Is there any one there ?

A-t-il quelques-unes des fleurs ?

Has he some (any) of the flowers ?

Il en reste quelques-unes.

A few of them remain.

Quelqu'une des dames viendra.

Some one of the ladies will come.

Quelques-uns le croient.

Some (people) believe it.

6. **Quelque chose** = 'something,' 'anything,' and is masculine, though formed from the feminine noun **chose** :

Quelque chose est promis.

Something is promised.

A-t-il dit quelque chose ?

Did he say anything ?

A-t-il quelque chose de bon ?

Has he anything good ?

406. Adjectival or Pronominal Forms. 1. **Aucun, nul, pas un**, along with **ne** + a verb, or when alone, a verb being understood, = 'no,' 'not any,' 'not one,' as adjective, and 'none,' 'nobody,' 'no one,' 'not one,' as pronoun :

Aucun

Nul } écrivain ne le dit.

No writer says so.

Pas un

Aucun ne le croit.

No one believes it.

Je n'en ai vu aucun(e).

I saw none of them.

Pas un de ses amis ne reste.

Not one of his friends remains.

A-t-il de l'espoir ?—Aucun.

Has he any hope ?—None.

a. **Aucun**, but not 'nul' or 'pas un,' becomes affirmative (= **quelque** or **quelqu'un**) when the context is negative (cf. §405, 4, a) :

Sans aucune cause.

Without any cause.

Rien pour aucun de nous.

Nothing for any of us.

Gardez-vous de faire aucune faute. Take care not to make any mistake.

b. The plural adjective **aucun(e)s** may be used, especially before nouns with no singular, or before such as are preferably plural ; (d')**aucuns** = **quelques-uns** is sometimes found in naïf or jocular style :

Il ne me rend aucuns soins.

He gives me no care.

(D')aucuns le croiraient.

Some would believe it.

2. **Autre** = 'other,' is usually preceded in the singular by **un** or **l'** :

Une autre fois ; d'autres livres.

Another time ; other books.

En avez-vous un(e) autre ?

Have you another ?

Un autre dit le contraire.

Another says the contrary.

Les autres m'aideront.

The others will help me.

Entre autres choses.

Among other things.

a. Distinguish **un autre** = 'another (a different)' from **encore un** = 'another (an additional)' :

Donnez-moi une autre plume }
" " encore une " }

Give me another pen.

b. 'Others,' 'other people,' = *les autres* or *d'autres*, sometimes *autrui* (cf. §405, 1):

Il se méfie toujours des autres.	He always suspects others.
D'autres pensent autrement.	Others think otherwise.
Bien d'autres.	Many others.

Obs. : The *d'* of *d'autres* is a partitive sign (cf. §325, 1, b).

c. *Autres* is often added familiarly to *nous*, *vous* :

Nous autres peintres.	We painters.
Vous autres Français parlez très vite.	You Frenchmen speak very fast.

d. Observe the following expressions with *autre* :

Autre part ; de part et d'autre.	Elsewhere ; reciprocally.
C'est un (tout) autre homme.	He is a very different man.
Parler de choses et d'autres.	To speak of this and that.
L'autre jour.	The other day.
Autre est promettre, autre est donner.	It is one thing to promise, and another to give.
Tout autre que lui.	Any one but him.
De temps à autre.	From time to time.
À d'autres (familiar).	Tell that to the marines (familiar).

e. For *l'un...l'autre*, *les uns...les autres*, see §406, 7, (2).

3. *Même* varies in meaning and form according to its position and function :—

(1) Preceding its noun or as a pronoun, *même* = 'same,' and nearly always has the article :

La (les) même(s) chose(s).	The same thing(s).
Les miens sont les mêmes.	Mine are the same.
Donnez-moi des mêmes.	Give me some of the same.
Une même affaire.	One and the same business.
Des plantes de la même espèce.	Plants of the same species.

(2) Following the noun or pronoun qualified, *même* = 'self,' 'very,' 'even,' and agrees, but has no article :

Dieu est la bonté même.	God is goodness itself.
Moi-même ; elles-mêmes.	I myself ; they themselves.
Cela même ; celui-là même.	That itself ; that man himself.
Les enfants mêmes.	The very (even the) children.

a. **Même** is also used as an adverb (invariable) :

Il nous a même insultés.	He even insulted us.
Quand même il le dirait.	Even if he should say so.

b. **Même** forms a number of highly idiomatic locutions :

Cela revient au même.	That amounts to the same thing.
Êtes-vous à même de faire cela ?	Are you in a position to do that ?
J'irai tout de même.	I shall go nevertheless.

4. **Plusieurs** = 'several' ; it is sometimes used in the sense of **beaucoup** = 'many' :

Plusieurs hommes (femmes).	Several men (women).
Apporte plusieurs des plumes.	Bring several of the pens.
J'en ai plusieurs.	I have several of them.
Plusieurs l'ont cru.	Many (people) believed it.

5. **Tel**, as adjective, = 'such,' 'like' ; **un tel** = 'such a' ; **tel**, as pronoun, = 'many a one,' 'he,' 'some,' etc.:

Ne crois pas une telle histoire.	Do not believe such a story.
Tels sont mes malheurs.	Such are my misfortunes.
Il n'y a pas de tels animaux.	There are no such animals.
À telles et telles conditions.	On such and such conditions.
Telle qu'une tigresse.	Like (as) a tigress.
Tel qui rit vendredi dimanche pleurera (proverb).	Some (many a one, he) who laugh(s) on Friday will weep on Sunday.

a. Examples of more idiomatic uses are :

Tel père, tel fils.	Like father, like son.
Tel rit, tel pleure.	One laughs, another weeps.
Monsieur un tel (Mme une telle).	Mr. So-and-so (Mrs. So-and-so).
De la musique telle quelle.	Music such as it is.
Votre argent tel quel.	Your money intact.

NOTE.—'Such,' as adverb, is **si** or **tellement** (not 'tel') : '**Une si** belle étoile' : '**Un homme tellement** cruel.'

6. **Tout** (sing. lar) = 'all,' 'every,' 'any,' 'whole,' etc. ; **tous** (plural) = 'all' :

Toute ma vie ; tous les hommes.	All my (my whole) life ; all (the) men.
Tout homme ; toute créature.	Every (any) man ; every creature.
Tous (toutes) sont venu(e)s.	All have come.

C'est tout ; de tous côtés.
Tout m'effraie.

That is all ; on all sides.
Everything frightens me.

a. **Tout** is often adverb = 'quite,' 'wholly,' 'very,' 'very much,' etc., and agrees like an adjective, when immediately preceding a feminine adjective with initial consonant or *h* aspirate, but is elsewhere invariable :

Elles étaient toutes pâles et tout agitées. They were quite pale and very much excited.

But : Ils étaient tout pâles et tout agités, etc.

NOTE.—So also, in the compound **tout-puissant**, e.g., 'Elle est toute-puissante.'

b. Observe the following idiomatic expressions :

Tout le monde (cf. le monde entier).	Everybody (cf. the whole world).
Tous les mois ; pas du tout.	Every month ; not at all.
Tous les deux jours.	Every other (alternate) day.
Tous (les*) deux or les deux.	Both.
Tout à l'heure.	Presently (or a little ago).
Tout beau ; tout doux.	Gently (slowly) ; softly.
(Pour) tout de bon.	Seriously.

***Tous deux** (**trois**, etc.)—without '*les*'—usually denotes 'simultaneousness' (= 'both together,' etc.) ; **les** is obligatory above ten, and usual from five to ten.

c. For the distinction between **tout** and **chaque** see §404, 2, a ; for **tout**...*que* = 'however,' see §404, 5, b, note.

7. **Un** is used either alone or as correlative to **autre** :—

(1) **Un**, as adjective, = 'a,' 'an,' (cf. §320), 'one,' 'a certain' ; **un**, as pronoun, = 'one' :

La maison est d'un côté.	The house is on one side.
Un monsieur A. l'a dit.	A (certain) Mr. A. said so.
Une des dames l'a dit.	One of the ladies said so.
Voici un crayon.—J'en ai un.	Here is a pencil.—I have one.
Les uns sont de cet avis, les autres n'en sont pas.	Some are of this opinion, (the) others are not.

a. **Un** as a pronoun is often preceded by *l'*, especially with a *de* clause :

L'un des consuls est arrivé. One of the consuls has come.

(2) **L'un l'autre**, so also the feminine and plural, are combined into various correlative phrases, as follows :

l'un l'autre = 'each other,' 'one another'; pl. ditto.

l'un et l'autre = 'both'; pl., 'both,' 'all.'

l'un ou l'autre = 'either'; pl., ditto.

ni l'un ni l'autre (. . . **ne**) = 'neither'; pl., 'neither,' 'none.'

Elles se flattent l'une l'autre.	They flatter each other.
Ils parlent les uns des autres.	They speak of one another.
Les uns pour les autres.	For one another.
L'une et l'autre occasion.	Both occasions.
Les uns et les autres parlent.	Both (all of them) speak.
Dites ceci aux uns et aux autres.	Say this to both (all).
Je prends l'un(e) ou l'autre.	I take either.
Parle à l'une ou à l'autre.	Speak to either.
Ni les un(e)s ni les autres ne sont pour vous.	Neither (none of them) are for you.
Ni pour l'un(e) ni pour l'autre.	For neither.

407.

Indefinite Relatives.

1. Adjectival :

Quelconque, any (whatever, at all).
Quel que (+ subj. of *être*), whatever.
Quelque . . . que (+ subj.), whatever.

2. Pronominal :

Quiconque, whoever.
Qui que . . . (+ subj. of *être*), whoever.
Quoi que . . . (+ subj.), whatever.

a. Quelconque takes -s for the plural, and always follows its noun; *quiconque* is invariable; the other forms are made up from *quel*, *quelque*, *qui*, *quoi*, + *que* :

Un (deux) point(s) quelconque(s).	Any (two) point(s) whatever.
Des raisons quelconques.	Any reasons whatever (at all).
Quiconque parle sera puni(e).	Whoever speaks will be punished.
Quels que soient (puissent être) vos desseins.	Whatever be (may be) your designs.
Quelle que fût la loi.	Whatever the law was.
Quelques efforts qu'il fasse.	Whatever efforts he makes.
Qui que tu sois (puisses être).	Whoever you be (may be).
Quoi que vous fassiez.	Whatever you do.

Obs. : For the use of the subjunctive, see § 270, 4 :

b. Qui que and *quoi que* are also used with *ce* before *soit* :

Qui que ce soit qui le dise.	Whosoever says it.
Quoi que ce soit qu'il dise.	Whatsoever he says.

THE ADVERB.

408. Simple Adverbs. The following list contains the commoner simple adverbs :

ailleurs, <i>elsewhere</i> .	dorénavant, <i>henceforth</i> .	pas, <i>not</i> .
ainsi, <i>thus, so</i> .	encore, <i>still</i> .	peu, <i>little</i> .
alors, <i>then</i> .	enfin, <i>at last</i> .	pis, <i>worse</i> .
après, <i>afterwards</i> .	ensemble, <i>together</i> .	plus, <i>more</i> .
assez, <i>enough, rather</i> .	ensuite, <i>then</i> .	plutôt, <i>rather</i> .
aujourd'hui, <i>to-day</i> .	environ, <i>about</i> .	point, <i>not</i> .
auparavant, <i>before</i> .	exprès, <i>on purpose</i> .	pourquoi (?), <i>why (?)</i> .
aussi, <i>also, too, as</i> .	fort, <i>very</i> .	pourtant, <i>however</i> .
aussitôt, <i>directly</i> .	hier, <i>yesterday</i> .	près, <i>near (by)</i> .
autant, <i>as much</i> .	ici, <i>here</i> .	presque, <i>almost</i> .
autrefois, <i>formerly</i> .	jadis, <i>formerly</i> .	proche, <i>near (by)</i> .
beaucoup, <i>much</i> .	jamais, <i>ever, never</i> .	puis, <i>then, whereupon</i> .
bien, <i>well, very, much</i> .	là, <i>there</i> .	quand (?), <i>when (?)</i> .
bientôt, <i>soon</i> .	loin, <i>far (off), a long way</i> .	que !, <i>how (!)</i> .
cependant, <i>however</i> .	longtemps, (a) <i>long</i>	quelquefois, <i>sometimes</i> .
certain, <i>indeed</i> .	(while).	si, <i>so ; yes</i> .
combien (?), <i>how much (?)</i> .	lors, <i>then</i> .	souvent, <i>often</i> .
comme, <i>as, like</i> .	maintenant, <i>now</i> .	surtout, <i>especially</i> .
comment (?), <i>how (?)</i> .	mal, <i>badly</i> .	tant, <i>so much</i> .
davantage, <i>more</i> .	même, <i>even</i> .	tantôt, <i>soon, recently</i> .
dedans, <i>inside</i> .	mieux, <i>better</i> .	tard, <i>late</i> .
dehors, <i>outside</i> .	moins, <i>less</i> .	tôt, <i>soon</i> .
déjà, <i>already</i> .	ne . . . , <i>not</i> .	toujours, <i>always, still</i> .
demain, <i>to-morrow</i> .	néanmoins, <i>nevertheless</i> .	tout, <i>quite, entirely</i> .
derrière, <i>behind</i> .	non, <i>no</i> .	toutefois, <i>however</i> .
désormais, <i>henceforth</i> .	où (?), <i>where (?)</i> .	très, <i>very</i> .
dessous, <i>under</i> .	oui, <i>yes</i> .	trop, <i>too (much)</i> .
dessus, <i>above</i> .	parfois, <i>sometimes</i> .	vite, <i>quickly</i> .
devant, <i>before</i> .	partout, <i>everywhere</i> .	volontiers, <i>willingly</i> .

409. Adverbs from Adjectives. Most adjectives become adverbs by the addition of **-ment** to the feminine singular :

ADJ.	ADV.	ADJ.	ADV.
pur,	purement, <i>purely</i> .	doux,	doucement, <i>sweetly</i> .
strict,	strictement, <i>strictly</i> .	fou,	follement, <i>madly</i> .
actif,	activement, <i>actively</i> .	facile,	facilement, <i>easily</i> .
sec,	sèchement, <i>dryly</i> .	autre,	autrement, <i>otherwise</i> .

a. Adjectives ending in a vowel, other than -e, drop the -e of the feminine on adding -ment :

ADJ.	ADV.	ADJ.	ADV.
poli(e),	poliment, <i>politely</i> .	déclaté(e),	déclatement, <i>decidedly</i> .
absolu(e)	absolument, <i>absolutely</i> .	etc.	etc.

NOTE.—The omitted e is denoted by a circumflex accent in **assidûment**, **continûment**, **crûment**, **(in)dûment**, **gaîment** (better 'gaïement'), **nuûment**.

b. The following adjectives in -e change e to é on adding -ment :

ADJ.	ADV.	ADJ.	ADV.
aveugle,	aveuglément.	immense,	immensément.
commode,	commodément.	incommode,	incommodément.
conforme,	conformément.	opiniâtre,	opiniâtrément.
énorme,	énormément.	uniforme,	uniformément.

c. The following adjectives change the added -e of the feminine to é :

ADJ.	ADV.	ADJ.	ADV.
commun(e),	communément.	obscur(e),	obscurément.
confus(e),	confusément.	opportun(e),	opportunément.
diffus(e),	diffusément.	précis(e),	précisément.
expresse(e),	expressément.	profond(e),	profondément.
importun(e),	importunément.	profus(e),	profusément.

d. Adjectives in -ant, -ent (except **lent**, **présent**, **véhément**) assimilate -nt to m and add -ment to the masculine form :

ADJ.	ADV.	ADJ.	ADV.
constant,	constamment, <i>constantly</i> .	prudent,	prudemment, <i>prudently</i> .
élégant,	élégamment, <i>elegantly</i> .	etc.	etc.

But: **Lentement**, *slowly*; **présentement**, *presently*; **véhémentement**, *vehemently*.

e. **Gentil** gives **gentiment**, *nicely*; the adverb to **bref** is **brèvement** (from a parallel form), *briefly*; the adverb to **impuni** is **impunément** (probably from L. *impune*, cf. b, above), *with impunity*.

f. The adverbs corresponding to **bon**, *good*, and **mauvais**, *bad*, are **bien**, *well*, and **mal**, *badly*. From **bon** comes regularly **bonnement** = 'simply.'

410. Adjectives as Adverbs. Adjectival forms are not uncommonly used as adverbs, and, as such, are regularly invariable :—

1. A number of adjectives serve as adverbs in certain fixed expressions :

Cette sottise lui coûte cher .	That folly is costing him dear.
Elles parlent bas (haut).	They speak low (loud).

Such expressions are :

coûter bon, <i>cost dear</i> .	arrêter court, <i>stop short</i> .	coûter gros, <i>cost dear</i> .
sentir " <i>smell good</i> .	filer doux, 'sing small.'	viser haut, <i>aim high</i> .
tenir " <i>stand firm</i> .	aller droit, <i>go straight</i> .	chanter juste, <i>sing in tune</i> .
acheter cher, <i>buy dear</i> .	viser " <i>aim</i> "	frapper " <i>strike straight</i> .
coûter " <i>cost</i> "	chanter faux, <i>sing out of</i>	sentir mauvais, <i>smell bad</i> .
vendre " <i>sell</i> "	<i>tune</i> .	écrire serré, <i>write small</i> .
voir clair, <i>see clearly</i> .	frapper ferme, <i>strike hard</i> .	(à) vrai dire, <i>speak truly</i> .
prouver clair, <i>prove clearly</i> .	parler " <i>speak firmly</i> .	etc. etc.

2. An adjective sometimes modifies another adjective :

Des dames haut placées.	Ladies of high rank.
Un véritable grand homme.	A truly great man.

3. Besides the above, a few adjectival forms serve also as adverbs :

Je l'ai dit exprès .	I said it purposely.
Soudain nous vîmes l'ennemi.	Suddenly we saw the enemy.

Such forms are :

bref, <i>in short</i> .	même, <i>even</i> .	tout beau, <i>not so fast</i> .
exprès, <i>purposely</i> .	proche, <i>near (by)</i> .	tout doux, <i>gently</i> .
fort, <i>very, hard, loud, etc</i> .	soudain, <i>suddenly</i> .	† vite, <i>quickly</i> .
juste, <i>exactly, etc</i> .	* tout, <i>quite, very, etc</i> .	

* For the inflection of **tout** as adverb, see § 406, 6, a.

† The adverb **vitement** = 'quickly,' is familiar.

411. Adverbial Locutions. Phrases with adverbial function are numerous :

Je viendrai tout à l'heure.	I shall come presently.
Venez de bonne heure.	Come early.

Further examples are :

à bon marché, <i>cheap</i> .	d'ailleurs, <i>besides</i> .	plus tôt, <i>sooner</i> .
à côté, <i>near, near by</i> .	dès lors, <i>since</i> .	sans doute, <i>doubtless</i> .
à droite, <i>to the right</i> .	d'ordinaire, <i>usually</i> .	tant mieux, <i>so much the better</i> .
à jamais, <i>forever</i> .	d'où, <i>whence</i> .	
à la fois, <i>at once</i> .	d'où ?, <i>whence ?</i>	tôt ou tard, <i>sooner or later</i>
à l'avenir, <i>in future</i> .	du moins, <i>at least</i> .	tour à tour, <i>in turn</i> .
à peine, <i>hardly</i> .	en avant, <i>forward</i> .	tout à coup, <i>suddenly</i> .
à peu près, <i>nearly</i> .	en bas, <i>below, down stairs</i> .	tout de suite, <i>at once</i> .
au juste, <i>exactly</i> .	en effet, <i>in fact</i> .	tout d'un coup, <i>all at once</i> .
au moins, <i>at least</i> .	en haut, <i>above, up stairs</i> .	etc., etc.
ça et là, <i>here and there</i> .	là-bas, <i>yonder</i> .	
d'abord, <i>at first</i> .	là-dessus, <i>thereupon</i> .	

412. Comparison of Adverbs. 1. Adverbs are regularly compared like adjectives (cf. § 345) by the use of **plus**, **moins**, **aussi** ; **que** = 'than,' 'as' :

Plus, **moins** facilement **que** Jean. More, less easily than John.

Aussi facilement **que** Jean. As easily as John.

a. Further examples, illustrating § 345, *a*, *b*, *c*, *d*, as applied to adverbs :

Il ne marche pas aussi (si) vite.	He does not walk as (so) fast.
Vite comme un éclair.	As quick as lightning.
Il marche plus vite que je ne pensais.	He walks faster than I thought.
De plus en plus vite.	Faster and faster
Plus je le connais (et) moins je l'estime.	The more I know him the less I esteem him.

b. 'More than,' 'less than,' as adverbs of quantity = **plus de**, **moins de**, respectively ; they must be carefully distinguished from **plus (moins)** **que** = 'more (less) than' in an elliptical sentence :

J'ai plus (moins) de dix francs.	I have more (less) than ten francs.
En moins d'une demi-heure.	In less than half an hour.
But : Un éléphant mange plus que six chevaux (ne mangent).	An elephant eats more than six horses (eat).

2. The following are irregularly compared :

bien, well.	mieux, better.	beaucoup, much.	plus, more.
mal, badly, ill.	{ pis, worse.	peu, little.	moins, less.
	{ plus mal, worse.		

a. **Beaucoup** = 'much (many)' or 'very much (many),' and is never modified by another adverb, except **pas**.

3. The superlative is formed by placing **le**, which is invariable, before the comparative of inequality :

Le plus souvent (moins souvent). (The) most frequently (least f.).

Elle parle le plus (mieux, moins). She speaks (the) most (best, least).

413. Position. 1. An adverb regularly stands immediately after its verb, rarely between the subject and the verb :

Charles porte souvent ma canne. Charles often carries my cane.

On devrait lire lentement. One should read slowly.

Se levant tard, se couchant tôt. Rising late, going to bed early.

Ils l'ont bien reçu. They have received him well.

Obs.: Hence the adverb regularly comes between the auxiliary and the participle in compound tenses.

a. The adverbs **aujourd'hui**, **hier**, **demain**, **autrefois**, **tôt**, **tard**, **ici**, **là**, **ailleurs**, **partout**, never come between the auxiliary and the participle :

Il est parti hier. He went away yesterday.

Je l'ai cherché partout. I looked for it everywhere.

b. Long adverbs in **-ment** not uncommonly stand after the past participle :

Il a parlé éloquemment. He has spoken eloquently.

c. Most adverbs of quantity, such as **peu**, **beaucoup**, **trop**, etc., and a few short adverbs like **bien**, **mal**, **mieux**, etc., as also adverbs of negation, regularly precede the infinitive :

Tu ne devrais pas trop lire. You should not read too much.

Il ne saurait mieux faire. He cannot do better.

Il parle de ne pas y aller. He speaks of not going.

d. Interrogative adverbs head the phrase, as in English ; other adverbs are not uncommonly placed first for emphasis (cf. § 237, 3) :

Quand allez-vous revenir ? When are you going to come back ?

Aujourd'hui je vais me reposer. To-day I am going to rest.

Malheureusement tout est perdu. Unfortunately all is lost.

2. Adverbs usually precede the nouns, adjectives, adverbs, and phrases modified by them :

Assez de livres, et assez chers. Books enough, and dear enough.

Bien mal à propos. Very unseasonably.

a. For **combien**!, **comme**!, **que**!, **tant**!, and **plus...plus, moins...moins** with adjectives or adverbs, cf. §350, a.

3. Adverbial phrases follow the same rules as adverbs, except that only the shorter ones may usually come between the auxiliary and the verb:

Nous étions à peine partis.

Hardly had we gone.

NEGATION.

414. Negation without Verb. **Non** = 'no,' 'not,' apart from a verb; it is often emphasized by **pas, point**:

L'avez-vous dit?—Non.

Did you say it?—No.

Vous viendrez?—Non pas (point).

You will come?—Certainly not.

Non, non, je n'irai pas.

No, no, I shall not go.

Non content de dire cela.

Not satisfied with saying that.

Riche ou non, il ne l'aura pas.

Rich or not, he shall not have it.

A-t-il, oui ou non, du talent?

Has he talent, yes or no?

Des idées non moins vastes.

Ideas not less vast.

Une maison non meublée.

A house not furnished.

Non seulement...mais encore.

Not only...but also.

a. For the use of **que non**, see §420, 1, a.

415. Negation with Verb. 1. Along with a verb, a negation consists regularly of two parts, **ne** (n', see §19) together with some other word or words; the principal correlative expressions of this kind are:

ne...pas, <i>not</i> .	ne...aucunement	} <i>not at all</i>	ne...rien, <i>nothing</i> .
ne...point, <i>not</i> .	ne...nullement		ne...ni(...ni) <i>neither...nor</i> .
ne...guère, <i>hardly</i> .	ne...aucun	} <i>no, none</i> .	
ne...jamais, <i>never</i> .	ne...nul		
ne...plus, <i>no more</i> .	ne...pas un		
ne...que, <i>only</i> .	ne...personne, <i>nobody</i> .		

NOTES.—1. **Point** is usually more emphatic than **pas**, and is less common in ordinary language.

2. Negation is often denoted by **pas**, without **ne**, in familiar language: 'Ai-je **pas** dit cela? (= N'ai-je **pas** dit cela?).'

2. Other forms of less frequent use are:

a. **Ne...quelconque** = 'no...whatsoever (at all),' **ne...qui que ce soit** = 'nobody whatsoever (at all),' **ne...quoi que ce soit** = 'nothing whatsoever (at all).'

Je n'ai dit quoi que ce soit.

I said nothing at all.

b. **Ne...brin** (lit. 'blade'), or **mie** (lit. 'crumb'), or **goutte** (lit. 'drop'), or **mot** (lit. 'word') = **ne...rien**, in certain phrases :

Il n'y en a brin.

There is none of it.

Je n'y entends goutte.

I understand nothing of it.

c. **Ne...Âme vivante**, or **homme qui vive**, or **Âme qui vive**, etc. = **ne...personne** :

Il n'y avait Âme vivante dans la maison. There was not a living soul in the house.

d. **Ne...de** + an expression of time, *e.g.*, **la (ma) vie**, **de huit jours**, etc. :
Je ne l'oublierai de ma vie. I shall not forget it while I live.

416. Position. **Ne** always precedes the verb, and its conjunctive objects, if any ; **pas**, **point** and other adverbs immediately follow the verb, and its conjunctive pronouns, if any ; indefinites have their usual place.

Je ne le leur ai pas (point) dit.

I did not tell them it.

Je n'en ai guère.

I have hardly any of it.

Ne les a-t-il jamais vus ?

Did he never see them ?

Je n'y resterai plus.

I shall stay there no longer.

Il ne le veut nullement.

He does not wish it at all.

Il ne prend aucun soin.

He takes no care.

Personne ne peut le dire.

Nobody can say (it).

Il n'a mal quelconque.

He has no pain at all.

Je ne l'ai dit à qui que ce soit.

I have told it to nobody at all.

a. **Pas**, **point**, usually, and **plus**, often, precede the simple infinitive, and its conjunctive objects ; they may precede or follow **avoir**, **être**, either when alone or in a compound infinitive :

Il parle de ne pas vous voir.

He speaks of not seeing you.

Être ou ne pas être.

To be or not to be.

J'étais fâché de ne vous avoir pas vu (or de ne pas vous avoir vu, or de ne pas vous avoir vu).

I was sorry not to have seen you.

b. **Rien** as object is treated as an adverb; it may also precede an infinitive like an adverb:

Il promet de ne rien dire.

He promises to say nothing.

c. The **que** of **ne...que** must immediately precede the word which it modifies:

Je n'en ai vu **que** trois.

I saw only three of them.

d. To denote 'neither...nor,' **ni** is placed before each co-ordinate, if not a finite verb, and **ne** stands before the finite verb; when finite verbs are co-ordinated, **ne** stands before each of them, while **ni** also must stand with the last, but may not stand with the first, and is optional with others:

Qui le sait?—Ni lui ni moi.

Who knows it?—Neither he nor I.

Il n'a ni parents ni amis.

He has neither relatives nor friends.

Je ne l'ai ni vu ni entendu.

I neither saw nor heard it.

Il ne sait ni lire ni écrire.

He can neither read nor write.

Je ne veux ni qu'il lise ni qu'il écrive.

I neither wish him to read nor to write.

Il ne le blâme ni ne le loue.

He neither blames nor praises it.

Je ne pouvais, (ni) ne devais, ni ne voulais céder.

I neither could, nor should, nor would yield.

417. Ellipsis of the Verb. If the verb be omitted, but understood, **ne** is also omitted, and the correlative itself denotes negation:

Est-il venu?—Pas encore (=Il n'est pas encore venu).

Has he come?—Not yet (=He has not yet come).

Qui est là?—Personne.

Who is there?—Nobody.

Plus de larmes; plus de soucis.

No more tears; no more cares.

a. **Pas**, when so used, may not stand alone:

Non (pas); pas encore; pas lui; pas du tout; pas ce soir, etc.

No; not yet; not he (him); not at all; not this evening, etc.

418. Ne alone as Negative. Negation with verbs is expressed by **ne** alone in certain cases, as follows:—

1. After **que** = **pourquoi?**, and usually after **que**, **qui** in rhetorical question or exclamation:

Que ne le disiez-vous plus tôt?	Why did you not say so sooner?
Que ne ferais-je pour lui?	What would I not do for him?
Qui ne voit cela?	Who does not see that?

2. After condition expressed by inversion :

N'eût été la pluie.	Had it not been for the rain.
---------------------	-------------------------------

a. Sometimes also in conditions regularly expressed with **si** :

Si je ne me trompe.	If I am not mistaken.
Qui, si ce n'est vous?	Who, if not you?

3. In dependent sentences after negation, either fully expressed or implied :

Je n'ai pas (j'ai peu) d'amis qui ne soient les vôtres.	I have no (I have few) friends who are not yours.
Il n'y a rien qu'il ne sache.	There is nothing he does not know.
Non que je ne le craigne.	Not that I do not fear him.
Impossible qu'il ne vienne !	Impossible that he will not come !
Ai-je un ami qui ne soit fidèle?—Non.	Have I one friend who is not faithful?—No.

a. More obscure cases of implied negation are **prendre garde que** = 'take care that not,' etc., and such expressions as **il tient** = 'it depends on,' used interrogatively :

Prenez garde qu'il ne tombe.	Take care he does not fall.
Gardez qu'il ne sorte.	Take care he does not go out.
À quoi tient-il qu'on ne fasse cela?	What is the cause of that not being done?

4. Sometimes with **savoir**, **bouger**, and with **pouvoir**, **oser**, **cesser** + an infinitive, expressed or implied :

Je ne sais (pas).	I do not know.
Ne bougez (pas) de là.	Do not stir from there.
Je ne puis (pas) répondre.	I cannot answer.
Il n'oserait (pas) le dire.	He would not dare to say so.
Elle ne cesse (pas) de pleurer.	She does not cease weeping.

a. Always **ne** alone in **je ne saurais** and **je ne sais** **quoi** :

Je ne saurais vous le dire.	I cannot tell you.
Ne sauriez-vous m'aider?	Can you not help me?
Un je ne sais quoi de terrible.	Something indefinitely terrible.

5. In a few set expressions, such as :

N'importe ; n'avoir garde.	It does not matter ; not to care.
Ne vous en déplaie.	By your leave.
N'avoir que faire de.	To have no use (whatever) for.
Il n'est pire eau que l'eau qui dort (proverb).	Still waters run deep.

419. Pleonastic *ne*. In a *que* clause *ne* is often pleonastic, as compared with English ; thus, *ne* stands :—

1. After **empêcher** = 'prevent,' **éviter** = 'avoid,' **à moins que** = 'unless,' or **que** so used :

Empêchez qu'il ne sorte.	Prevent him from going out.
J'évite qu'on ne me voie.	I avoid being seen.
À moins que je ne sois retenu.	Unless I be detained.

a. This *ne* is often omitted after **empêcher** and **éviter**, after **empêcher** mostly when negative or interrogative.

b. *Ne* may also stand after **avant que** :

Avant qu'il (ne) parte.	Before he goes away.
----------------------------------	----------------------

2. After expressions of fearing, such as **craindre**, **redouter**, etc., **avoir peur**, etc., **de peur que**, etc., when not negative, or when negation is not implied by interrogation expecting negative answer, or by condition :

Je crains qu'il ne vienne.	I fear he will come.
Craignez-vous qu'il ne vienne ?	Do you fear he will come ?
But : Je ne crains pas qu'il vienne.	Sans craindre qu'il vienne.
Craignez-vous qu'il vienne ?—Non.	Si je craignais qu'il vînt.

a. What it is, or is not, feared will not happen has the full negation **ne...pas** in the *que* clause :

Je crains qu'il ne vienne pas .	I fear he will not come.
Je ne crains pas qu'il ne vienne pas .	I do not fear he will not come.

b. Interrogation or condition and negation neutralize each other, and *ne* stands :

Necraignez-vous pas qu'il ne vienne ?	Do you not fear he will come ?
Si je ne craignais qu'il ne vînt.	If I did not fear he would come.
Quand même je ne craindrais pas qu'il ne vînt.	Even though I did not fear he would come.

3. With a finite verb in the second member of a comparison of inequality, when the first member is not negative, or does not imply negation as above :

Il est plus riche qu'il ne l'était.	He is richer than he was.
Est-il plus riche qu'il ne l'était ?	Is he richer than he was ?
Il gagne moins qu'il n'espérait.	He earns less than he hoped.
But : Il n'est pas plus riche qu'il l'était ; est-il plus riche qu'il l'était ?—	
Non.	

a. A negative interrogation implies affirmation, and **ne** stands :

N'est-il pas plus riche qu'il ne l'était ?	Is he not richer than he was ?
--	--------------------------------

NOTE.—Autre, autrement, plutôt, plus tôt, similarly take **ne** : 'Il est tout autre que je ne pensais.'

4. Usually after expressions of doubt, denial, such as **douter, nier, disconvenir**, etc., often **désespérer**, when negative, or when negation is implied as above :

Je ne doute pas qu'il ne vienne.	I do not doubt that he will come.
Doutez-vous qu'il ne vienne ?—	Do you doubt whether he will come ?—No.
Non.	
But : Je doute qu'il vienne ; doutez-vous qu'il vienne ? (—question for information).	

5. After **il s'en faut** negatively, interrogatively, or with **peu, guère**, etc. :

Il ne s'en fallut pas (de) beaucoup qu'il ne fût tué.	He came very near being killed.
Combien s'en faut-il que la somme n'y soit ?	How much is lacking of the sum total ?
Peu s'en est fallu que je ne vinsse.	I came very near coming.

6. With compound tenses after **il y a, voilà, depuis** :

Il y a (voilà) trois jours que je ne l'ai vu.	It is three days since I saw him (I have not seen him for, etc.).
Il avait grandi depuis que je ne l'avais vu.	He had grown since I saw him.
Depuis que je ne vous ai vu.	Since I saw you.

a. In a simple tense (§§ 257, 2, 258, 4) negatively, **ne...pas**, etc., must be used :

Voilà un an qu'il ne buvait plus.	He had drunk no more for a year.
-----------------------------------	----------------------------------

USE OF CERTAIN ADVERBS.

420. Distinctions. The following are especially liable to be confounded in use :—

1. **Oui, Si.** 'Yes' in affirmation or assent is **oui** ; 'yes' is usually **si** in contradiction, in correction, in dissent :

L'avez-vous dit?—Oui, monsieur.	Did you say it?—Yes, sir.
Venez.—Oui, oui, j'irai.	Come.—Yes, yes, I shall go.
Il ne s'en va pas.—Si, monsieur, il s'en va.	He is not going.—Yes, (sir), he is (going).
Il ne s'en va pas?—Mais si.	He is not going?—Yes, certainly.
Je n'irai pas.—Si, si venez.	I shall not go.—Yes, yes, come.

NOTE.—The use of **si**, as also of the intensive **si fait**, etc., though very common, is classed as familiar by the *Académie* ; it is often avoided by **pardon**, etc., or other expressions : 'Il ne va pas.—**Pardon**, monsieur (il va).'

a. Oui, si, and non, are often preceded by **que**, really with ellipsis of a whole **que** clause, and are then variously translated by 'yes,' 'so,' 'no,' 'not,' etc., or by a clause :

Je dis que oui (non).	I say yes (no).
Je crois que oui (non).	I think so (not).
Vous ne l'avez pas?—Oh ! que si.	You haven't it?—Oh yes !
Le fera-t-il?—Je crois que oui.	Will he do it?—I think he will.
Je dis que non.	I say it is not so.
Peut-être que non.	Perhaps not.

2. **Autant, Tant.** 'As much (many)' = **autant** ; 'so much (many)' = **tant** :

Je gagne autant que vous.	I earn as much as you.
Il but tant qu'il en mourut.	He drank so much that he died from it.
J'ai tant d'amis ; j'en ai autant que vous.	I have so many friends ; I have as many as you.

3. **Plus, Davantage.** **Plus** is used in all senses of 'more,' 'most' (see below) ; **davantage** (strengthened sometimes by **bien** = 'much,' **encore** = 'still') = 'more,' is regularly used only absolutely, and usually stands at the end of its clause :

N'en parle pas davantage.	} Say no more about it.
N'en parle plus.	
Ne restez pas davantage.	} Do not remain any longer.
Ne restez plus.	

Cela me plaît encore davantage That pleases me still more.
(plus).

Je suis riche ; il l'est bien davantage I am rich ; he is much more so.
tagé (plus).

But only : J'en ai plus que lui ; il est plus habile ; plus de dix francs ;
c'est ce qui le flatte le plus, etc.

NOTE.—**Davantage** is occasionally followed by **que** in archaic style.

4. **Ne...que, Seulement.** **Seulement** must be used, (1) when no verb is present, (2) when 'only' refers to the subject, (3) or to the verb, (4) or to a **que** clause, and (5) it may be used to strengthen a **ne...que** ; otherwise 'only' = **ne...que** or **seulement** :

Seulement les braves.

Only the brave.

Seulement mon frère le sait.

Only my brother knows it.

Écoutez seulement.

Only listen.

Il dit seulement qu'il irait.

He only said he would go.

Il n'a seulement qu'à venir.

He has only to come.

But : Nous ne serons que trois (*or* trois seulement) ; je ne veux que voir son père (*or* je veux seulement voir son père), etc.

a. 'Only,' referring to the subject, may be turned also by **il n'y a que, ce n'est que** ; 'only,' referring to the verb, may be turned by the help of **faire** :

Il n'y a que les morts qui ne reviennent pas. The dead only do not come back.

Elle ne fait que pleurer.

She does nothing but weep.

THE NUMERAL.

421.

Cardinal Numerals.

1. un, une [œ, yn].

8. huit [qit].

2. deux [dø].

9. neuf [nœf].

3. trois [trwa].

10. dix [dis].

4. quatre [katr].

11. onze [ɔ̃z].

5. cinq [sɛ̃k].

12. douze [duz].

6. six [sis].

13. treize [trez].

7. sept [set].

14. quatorze [katorz].

15. quinze	[kɛ̃ːz].	70. soixante-dix	[swasɑ̃ːt dis].
16. seize	[sɛːz].	71. soixante-onze	[swasɑ̃ːt ɔ̃ːz].
17. dix-sept	[dis sɛ̃t].	80. quatre-vingts	[katr vɛ̃].
18. dix-huit	[diz ɥit].	81. quatre-vingt-un	[katr vɛ̃ œ̃].
19. dix-neuf	[diz nœ̃f].	90. quatre-vingt-dix	[katr vɛ̃ dis].
20. vingt	[vɛ̃].	91. quatre-vingt-onze	[katr vɛ̃ ɔ̃ːz].
21. vingt et un	[vɛ̃t e œ̃].	100. cent	[sɑ̃].
22. vingt-deux	[vɛ̃nd dœ̃].	101. cent un	[sɑ̃ œ̃].
30. trente	[trɑ̃ːt].	200. deux cents	[dœ̃ sɑ̃].
31. trente et un	[trɑ̃ːt e œ̃].	201. deux cent un	[dœ̃ sɑ̃ œ̃].
40. quarante	[karɑ̃ːt].	1000. mille	[mil].
50. cinquante	[sɛ̃kɑ̃ːt].	1001. mille un	[mil œ̃].
60. soixante	[swasɑ̃ːt].	2000. deux mille	[dœ̃ mil].

NOUNS OF NUMBER: 1,000,000=**un million** [œ̃ miljɑ̃]; 2,000,000=**deux millions** [dœ̃ miljɑ̃]; 1,000,000,000=**un milliard** [œ̃ miljaːr].

Observe: 1. The hyphen unites together compound numerals under 100, except where *et* occurs. 2. *Et* stands regularly in 21, 31, 41, 51, 61, is optional in 70, 71, omitted in 81, and elsewhere.

NOTES ON PRONUNCIATION: 1. The final consonant of 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 17, 18, 19, is silent before initial consonant or *h* aspirate of a word multiplied by them, not elsewhere: 'Cinq livres' [sɛ̃ liːvr], but 'le cinq mai' [lə sɛ̃ːk mɛ̃]. 2. No elision or liaison occurs before **huit**, **onze**: *Le huit* [lə ɥit]; *les huit livres* [lə ɥi liːvr]; *le onze* [lə ɔ̃ːz]; *les onze francs* [lə ɔ̃ːz frɑ̃]. 3. The *t* is sounded in **vingt** in 21, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, becomes *d* in 22, is silent from 81 to 99, is silent in **cent un**, **deux cent un**, etc.

a. Un (f. une) is the only cardinal which varies for gender:

Une (deux, trois, etc.) plume(s). One (two, three, etc.) pen(s).
Vingt et une vaches. Twenty-one cows.

b. Cardinals are invariable for number, except that *-s* is added to **quatre-vingt** and the multiples of **cent**, but only when immediately preceding a noun, or an adjective + a noun, or when they themselves serve as nouns of number:

Quatre-vingts francs.	Eighty francs.
Trois cents (bonnes) plumes.	Three hundred (good) pens.
Deux cents millions.	Two hundred millions.
Trois cents de pommes.	Three hundred apples.
Les cinq cents.	The five hundreds.

But: Trois **cent** un francs ; les **cent** hommes engagés ; quatre-vingt-une plumes ; deux cent mille ; trois mille milles, etc.

N.B.—They are not nouns of number in dates (c. below) or when used as ordinals (§427): 'L'an quatre cent'; 'page deux cent'; 'page quatre-vingt.'

c. The form **mil** (not 'mille') is used in dates of the Christian era from 1001 to 1999:

En mil huit cent quatre-vingt-onze.	In eighteen hundred and ninety-one.
-------------------------------------	-------------------------------------

(En) l'an mil six.	(In) the year 1006.
--------------------	---------------------

But: L'an mille (sometimes mil) ; l'an deux mille trois cent ; l'an mille cent du monde, etc.

d. From 1100 to 1900 dates are often expressed by hundreds, as so frequently in English :

Onze cent(s) ; treize cent(s).	Eleven hundred ; thirteen hundred.
Quinze cent cinquante.	Fifteen hundred and fifty.

e. 'A (or one) hundred' = **cent** ; 'a (or one) thousand' = **mille** :
Mille soldats. A (one) thousand soldiers.

NOTE.—**Septante** = 70, **octante** = 80, **nonante** = 90, **six-vingt(s)** = 120, and **quinse-vingt(s)** = 300, are now obsolete in the literary language.

422. Ordinal Numerals. The ordinal numerals denote order or place in a series relatively to the first ; they are formed, from 'third' up, by adding **-ième** to the last consonant of the corresponding cardinal, **cinq** adding **u**, and **f** of **neuf** becoming **v** before **-ième** :

1st premier [prəmje].	7th septième [setjem].
2nd {second [səgɔ̃].	8th huitième [ɥitjem].
deuxième [døzjem].	9th neuvième [nœvjem].
3rd troisième [trwɔziem].	10th dixième [dizjem].
4th quatrième [katrjem].	11th onzième [ɔzjem].
5th cinquième [sɛ̃kjem].	21st vingt et unième [vɛ̃t e ynjem].
6th sixième [sizjem].	22nd vingt-deuxième [vɛ̃d døzjem].

NOTES.—1. Besides the ordinary forms, **tiers** (f. **tierce**) = 'third,' **quart(e)** = 'fourth,' are used in a few expressions and in fractions: 'Le **tiers** état,' 'The commoners'; 'En maison **tierce**,' 'In the house of a third party'; 'Une fièvre **quarte**,' 'A quartan ague.'

2. **Quint** = 'fifth' is used only in 'Charles-**Quint**,' 'Charles V. (the Emperor)'; 'Sixte-**Quint**,' 'Sixtus V. (the Pope).'

a. Ordinals are like ordinary adjectives in inflection and agreement, and regularly precede the noun :

La (les) première(s) maison(s). The first house(s).
 Nous sommes arrivés les premiers. We arrived first.

b. **Deuxième** instead of **second** is more usually employed in a series of more than two, and always in compounds :

Le second volume. The second volume (of two).
 Le deuxième volume. The second volume (of three, etc.).
 La cent deuxième fois. The hundred and second time.

423. Collectives. The following nouns are used with collective force :

un(e) couple, <i>a couple (two)</i> .	une cinquantaine, <i>about fifty</i> .
une paire, <i>a pair</i> .	une soixantaine, <i>about sixty</i> .
une huitaine, <i>about eight</i> .	une centaine, <i>about a hundred</i> .
une dizaine, <i>about ten</i> .	un cent, <i>a hundred</i> .
une douzaine, <i>a dozen</i> .	un millier, (<i>about</i>) <i>a thousand</i> .
une quinzaine, <i>about fifteen</i> .	un million, <i>a million</i> .
une vingtaine, <i>about twenty</i> .	un milliard, } <i>a billion</i> .
une trentaine, <i>about thirty</i> .	un billion, }
une quarantaine, <i>about forty</i> .	etc.

a. They take -s in the plural, and have the construction of ordinary nouns :

Il y a une centaine d'élèves.	There are about 100 pupils.
Il y en a deux cents.	There are two hundred of them.
Des milliers de gens.	Thousands of people.
Deux millions de francs.	Two million(s) of francs.

424. Fractions. The numerator is regularly denoted by a cardinal and the denominator by an ordinal; 'half' = **moitié**, f., as a noun, and **demi** as an adjective or a noun :

$\frac{1}{2}$ un demi.	$\frac{1}{4}$ un quart.	$\frac{3}{8}$ trois seizièmes.
$\frac{1}{2}$ une moitié.	$\frac{3}{4}$ trois quarts.	$\frac{1}{100}$ sept centièmes.
$\frac{2}{3}$ deux demis.	$\frac{1}{5}$ un cinquième.	$\frac{10}{100}$ dix cent unièmes.
$\frac{1}{3}$ un tiers.	$\frac{1}{7}$ un septième.	$\frac{1}{1000}$ onze millièmes.
$\frac{2}{3}$ deux tiers.	$\frac{1}{11}$ un onzième.	etc.

a. **Demi**, before its noun, is invariable and joined by a hyphen, but agrees elsewhere; as a noun, **demi** is hardly used, except in arithmetical calculations ;

Une demi-heure ; une heure et demie.	Half an hour ; an hour and a half.
Quatre demis = deux.	Four halves = two.
La moitié de la somme.	Half the sum.

b. The definite article is required before fractions followed by *de* + a noun when the noun is determined by the definite article, a possessive, or a demonstrative, and similarly for pronominal substitutes for such constructions :

La moitié du temps.	Half the time.
Les trois quarts de ces (ses) biens.	Three-fourths of those (his) goods.
J'en prends les cinq sixièmes.	I take five-sixths of them.

425. Multiplicatives. The following are used as adjectives, or absolutely as nouns :

double, <i>double</i> .	septuple, <i>sevenfold</i> .
triple, <i>triple</i> .	octuple, <i>eightfold</i> .
quadruple, <i>quadruple</i> .	nonuple, <i>ninefold</i> .
quintuple, <i>fivefold</i> .	décuple, <i>tenfold</i> .
sextuple, <i>sixfold</i> .	centuple, <i>hundredfold</i> .

As nouns, **le double**, the double, etc. :

La triple alliance.	The triple alliance.
Payer le double.	To pay twice as much.

a. **Double** is sometimes adverb :

Il voit double.	He sees double.
-----------------	-----------------

2. 'Once,' 'twice,' 'three times,' etc. = **une fois, deux fois, trois fois**, etc.:

Dix fois dix font cent.	Ten times ten make a hundred.
J'ai payé deux fois autant.	I paid twice as much.

426. Numeral Adverbs. They are formed from the ordinals by **-ment**, according to rule (cf. §409) :

premièrement, <i>first, firstly</i> .	troisièmement, <i>thirdly</i> .
secondement	etc. etc.
deuxièmement	} <i>secondly</i> .

a. Substitutes for them, of very frequent use, are : **d'abord** = 'at first,' **puis** = 'then,' 'after that,' **ensuite** = 'then,' 'next,' **en premier lieu** = 'in the first place,' **en second lieu**, etc. = 'in the second place,' etc. ; or the Latin adverb forms **primo**, **secundo**, **tertio**, etc., abbreviated to 1°, 2°, 3°, etc., are used.

REMARKS ON THE USE OF NUMERALS.

427. Cardinals and Ordinals. 1. **Premier** = 'first' is the only ordinal used to denote the day of the month or the numerical title of a ruler; otherwise, cardinals are employed:

Le premier (deux, dix) mai.	The first (second, tenth) of May.
Le onze de ce mois.	The eleventh of this month.
Napoléon (Grégoire) premier.	Napoleon (Gregory) the First.
Henri (Catherine) deux.	Henry (Catherine) the Second.

2. Observe the following date idioms:

Quel jour du mois est-ce aujourd'hui?	What day of the month is this?
Quel jour du mois sommes-nous aujourd'hui?	" " " "
Quel quantième du mois est-ce aujourd'hui?	" " " "
C'est aujourd'hui le quinze.	To-day is the fifteenth.
Ce sera demain le seize.	To-morrow will be the sixteenth.
Le six janvier.	On the sixth of January.
Ils sont arrivés lundi.	They came on Monday.
D'aujourd'hui en huit.	A week from to-day (future).
Il y a quinze jours.	A fortnight ago.

3. Other numerical titles, book, chapter, scene, page, etc., are expressed as in English, ordinals being used before nouns, and either cardinals or ordinals after nouns:

Tome troisième (trcis).	Volume third (three).
La dixième scène du second acte.	The tenth scene of the second act.

a. The first of two ordinals joined by *et* or *ou* is not uncommonly replaced by a cardinal:

La quatre ou cinquième page.	The fourth or fifth page.
------------------------------	---------------------------

b. Cardinals must precede ordinals:

Les deux premières scènes.	The first two scenes.
----------------------------	-----------------------

428. Dimension. The various methods of indicating dimension may be seen from the following:

(1) Une table longue de dix pieds.	A table ten feet long.
(2) Une table de 10 p. de longueur	" " " " "
(3) Une table de 10 p. de long.	" " " " "
(4) Une table d'une longueur de 10 p.	" " " " "

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| (5) La table est longue de 10 p. | The table is ten feet long. |
| (6) La table a 10 p. de longueur. | " " " " " " |
| (7) La table a 10 p. de long. | " " " " " " |
| (8) La table a une longueur de 10 p. | " " " " " " |

Obs.: 1. Dimension after an adjective is denoted by **de**, cf. (1), (6).

2. Substitutes for the adjectival construction of (1) are seen in (2), (3), (4).

3. The verb 'to be' is **être**, as in (5), or **avoir**, as in (6), (7), (8).

4. **Haut, large, long** (but not 'épais,' 'profond') may be used as nouns, instead of **hauteur, largeur, longueur**, cf. (3), (7).

a. 'By,' of relative dimension = **sur**; 'by,' after a comparative = **de** :

Cette table a dix pieds de longueur	This table is ten feet long by three
sur trois de largeur.	wide.

Plus (moins) grand de deux pouces.	Taller (shorter) by two inches.
------------------------------------	---------------------------------

429. Time of Day. The method of indicating the time of day may be seen from the following :—

Quelle heure est-il ?	What time (o'clock) is it ?
Il est une (deux) heure(s).	It is one (two) o'clock.
Il est trois heures et demie.	It is half-past three.
Trois heures (et) un quart.	A quarter past three.
Quatre heures moins un quart.	A quarter to four.
Trois heures trois quarts.	A quarter to four.
Trois heures dix (minutes).	Ten minutes past three.
Six heures moins cinq (minutes).	Five minutes to six.
Cinq heures cinquante-cinq.	Five fifty-five.
Il est midi et demi.	It is half-past twelve (noon).
Il est minuit (et) un quart.	It is a quarter past twelve (night).
À huit heures du soir.	At eight o'clock in the evening.
À quelle heure ?	At what o'clock ?
À trois heures précises.	At three o'clock precisely.
Vers (les) trois heures.	Towards (at about) three o'clock.

Obs.: 1. 'It is (was, etc.)' = **il est (était, etc.)**.

2. **Heure(s)** is never omitted.

3. **Et** is essential only at the half hour.

4. **Demi(e)** agrees with **heure** (f.) or with **midi** (m.), **minuit** (m.).

5. **Minutes** is often omitted.

6. 'A quarter to,' 'minutes to' is **moins** before the following hour.

7. Twelve o'clock is never **douze heures**.

430. Age. Idiomatic expressions denoting age are :

Quel âge avez-vous ?	How old are you ?
J'ai vingt ans.	I am twenty (years old).
Je suis âgé de vingt ans.	" " " " "
Une fille âgée de six ans.	A girl six years old (of age).
Plus âgé de deux ans.	Older by two years.

Obs.: 1. The construction with **avoir** is the more common.

2. **An(s)** may not be omitted in specifying age.

3. 'By' = **de**, after a comparison.

THE PREPOSITION.

431. Simple Prepositions. The following list contains the commoner simple prepositions :

à, <i>to, at, in, on, etc.</i>	durant, <i>during.</i>	parmi, <i>among.</i>
après, <i>after, next to.</i>	en, <i>in, to.</i>	pendant, <i>during.</i>
avant, <i>before.</i>	entre, <i>between, among.</i>	pour, <i>for.</i>
avec, <i>with.</i>	envers, <i>towards.</i>	sans, <i>without.</i>
chez, <i>with, at—'s.</i>	hormis, <i>except.</i>	sauf, <i>save, except.</i>
contre, <i>against.</i>	jusque, <i>till, until.</i>	selon, <i>according to.</i>
dans, <i>in(to).</i>	malgré, <i>in spite of.</i>	sous, <i>under.</i>
de, <i>of, from, with, etc.</i>	moyennant, <i>by means of.</i>	suivant, <i>according to.</i>
depuis, <i>since, from.</i>	nonobstant, <i>notwith-</i>	sur, <i>on, upon.</i>
derrière, <i>behind.</i>	<i>standing.</i>	vers, <i>towards.</i>
dès, <i>from, since.</i>	outré, <i>besides.</i>	voici, <i>here is (are).</i>
devant, <i>before.</i>	par, <i>by, through.</i>	voilà, <i>there is (are).</i>

432. Prepositional Locutions. Phrases with prepositional function, mostly ending in **de** or **à**, are numerous :

À côté de l'église.	Beside the church.
Jusqu'à la semaine prochaine.	Until next week.
À travers la forêt.	Through the forest.

Such locutions are :

à cause de, <i>on account of.</i>	au-dessus de, <i>above.</i>	faute de, <i>for want of.</i>
à côté de, <i>by the side of.</i>	au lieu de, <i>instead of.</i>	jusqu'à, <i>as far as, until.</i>
à force de, <i>by dint of.</i>	autour de, <i>around.</i>	par delà, <i>beyond.</i>
à l'égard de, <i>with regard to.</i>	au moyen de, <i>by means of.</i>	par-dessous, <i>under.</i>
à l'exception de, <i>except t.</i>	auprès de, <i>near by.</i>	par-dessus, <i>over.</i>
à l'insu de, <i>unknown to.</i>	au travers de, <i>across, through.</i>	près de, <i>near.</i>
à travers, <i>across, through.</i>	d'après, <i>according to.</i>	quant à, <i>as for.</i>
au delà de, <i>beyond.</i>	en deçà de, <i>on this side (of).</i>	vis-à-vis de, <i>opposite.</i>
au-dessous de, <i>under.</i>	en dépit de, <i>in spite of.</i>	etc., etc.

433. Position. Prepositions regularly precede the governed word, as in English :

Je parle de Jean (de lui). I speak of John (of him).

a. Conjunctive personal pronouns governed by **voici, voilà**, precede :

Me voici ; les voilà. Here I am ; there they are.

En voici quelques-uns. Here are some of them.

b. **Durant** is sometimes placed after its noun :

Durant sa vie (or sa vie durant). During his life.

434. Repetition. The prepositions **à, de, en**, are regularly repeated before each governed substantive ; the repetition of other prepositions is regular in contrasts, but is elsewhere optional, as in English :

Il aime à lire et à écrire. He likes to read and write.

Le père de Jean et de Marie. The father of John and Mary.

En France ou en Italie. In France or Italy.

Sur terre et sur mer. By land and sea.

Par la persuasion ou par la force. By persuasion or force.

But : Pour lui et (pour) son frère, etc.

IDIOMATIC DISTINCTIONS.

435. Prepositions vary greatly as to idiomatic force in different languages. In the following sections are given some of the various French equivalents of the commoner English prepositions.

436.

About.

1. In the sense of 'around' =
- autour de**
- :

Regardez autour de vous.

Look about you.

Autour de la place.

About the square.

2. In the sense of 'concerning,' 'of' =
- de, à**
- :

De quoi parlez-vous?

What are you talking about?

À quoi pensez-vous?

What are you thinking about?

3. In the sense of 'with,' 'about (the person)' =
- sur**
- :

Avez-vous de l'argent sur vous?

Have you any money about you?

4. Denoting approximation =
- environ, près de, à peu près, vers**
- :

Environ (près de, à peu près) deux

About two thousand francs ; about

mille francs ; vers (sur les) dix

ten o'clock ; about 1830.

heures ; vers 1830.

437.

After.

1. Denoting time, rank, order, position =
- après**
- :

Après dîner ; le premier après le

After dinner ; the first after the

roi ; on met l'adjectif après le

king ; the adjective is placed after

nom ; courez après lui.

the noun ; run after him.

2. In the sense of 'at the end of' =
- au bout de**
- :

Au bout de trois siècles.

After three centuries.

3. Unclassified :

De jour en jour ; dessiné d'après

Day after day ; drawn after Raph-

Raphaël ; le lendemain de son

aël ; the day after his return ; he

retour ; il tient de sa mère.

takes after his mother.

438.

Among.

1. In the sense of 'in the midst of,' 'surrounded by' =
- parmi, some-
times entre**
- :

Une brebis parmi les loups.

A sheep among wolves.

Il fut trouvé entre les morts.

He was found among the dead.

2. 'Among (distributively or reciprocally)' =
- entre**
- :

Il le partagea entre ses amis.

He divided it among his friends.

Ils parlaient entre eux.

They spoke among themselves.

3. Unclassified :

C'était ainsi chez les Grecs.

It was so among the Greeks.

439.

At.

1. Denoting place, time, = **à**, sometimes **en** :

À l'école ; à Douvres ; à table ; à At school ; at Dover ; at table ; at
cinq heures ; à l'âge de ; en tête five o'clock ; at the age of ; at
de ; en (au) même temps ; à la the head of ; at the same time ;
fin (enfin). at last.

2. In the sense of 'at the house, etc., of,' 'at—'s' = **chez** :

J'ai été chez vous ; il est chez I was at your house ; he is at Mr.
Monsieur Ribot. Ribot's.

3. Unclassified :

À mes dépens ; à tout prix ; At my expense ; at any price ; at
d'abord ; sous la main ; entrer first ; at hand ; come (go) in at
par la fenêtre ; en haut (bas) ; au the window ; at the top (bottom) ;
moins ; sur mer ; en guerre. at least ; at sea ; at war.

440.

Before.

1. Denoting place, in the sense of 'in front of,' 'in the presence of' = **devant** :

Mettez cela devant le feu ; le jar- Put that before the fire ; the garden
din est devant la maison ; il is before the house ; he preached
prêcha devant le roi. before the king.

2. Denoting time, order = **avant** :

Avant midi ; je l'ai vu avant vous ; Before noon ; I saw it before you ;
mettez l'article avant le nom. put the article before the noun.

3. Unclassified :

Sous mes yeux ; la veille de la Before my eyes ; the day before
bataille ; comparaître par-de- the battle ; to appear before the
vant le juge. judge.

441.

By.

1. Denoting the agent after the passive = **par**, **de** (cf. §240) :

Elle fut saisie par le voleur ; ils She was seized by the robber ; they
sont aimés de tous. are loved by all.

2. Denoting means, way, etc. = **par** (usually) :

Par la poste ; par chemin de fer ; By post ; by railway ; by this
par ce moyen ; par un ami. means ; by a friend.

3. Denoting measure = **de** ; relative dimension = **sur** :

Plus grand de la tête ; plus âgé Taller by a head ; older by ten years
de dix ans (de beaucoup) ; plus (by far) ; heavier by a pound ;
lourd d'une livre ; moindre de less by half ; ten feet by six.
la moitié ; dix pieds sur six.

4. Unclassified :

De jour (nuit) ; à l'année ; goutte By day (night) ; by the year ; drop
à goutte ; il est midi à ma by drop ; it is noon by my watch ;
montre ; connaître de vue ; de to know by sight ; by word of
vive voix ; un tailleur de son mouth ; a tailor by trade ; to sell
état ; vendre au poids ; fait à by weight ; made by hand.
la main.

442.

For.

1. In the sense of 'for the sake of,' 'instead of,' '(in exchange) for'
= **pour** :

Mourir pour la patrie ; je le fais pour To die for one's country ; I do it for
vous ; donnez-moi ceci pour cela. you ; give me this for that.

2. Denoting destination :

Je pars pour la France ; une let- I leave for France ; a letter for
tre pour vous. you.

3. Denoting a period of time (future) = **pour** :

Je resterai (pour) huit jours ; j'en I shall stay (for) a week ; I have
ai pour dix ans. enough of it for ten years.

NOTE.—'For' of time not future is variously rendered : 'J'étais huit jours absent
or J'étais absent pendant huit jours,' 'I was absent for a week'; 'Il y a (voici, voilà)
deux heures que je lis or Je lis depuis deux heures,' 'I have been reading for two
hours.'

4. Unclassified :

Mot à mot or mot pour mot ; un Word for word ; a remedy for ; to
remède contre (pour) ; trembler tremble for fear ; for example ;
de crainte ; par exemple ; quant as for me ; to sell for ten francs
à moi ; vendre dix francs or or to give for ten francs ; to
laisser (donner) pour dix francs ; to thank (punish) for ; to change
remercier (punir) de ; changer for ; it is for you to say ; for
pour (contre) ; c'est à vous de all that
dire ; malgré tout cela.

443.

From.

1. Usually = **de** :

Il vient de Paris; de trois à quatre heures; je l'ai appris de lui. He comes from Paris; from three to four o'clock; I heard it from him.

2. In the sense of 'because of,' 'out of,' 'through' = **par** :

Cela arriva par négligence; par expérience (amitié). That happened from carelessness; from experience (friendship).

3. In the sense of 'dating from' = **dès, depuis, à partir de** :

Dès (depuis, à partir de) ce jour; à partir de 1820. From that day; from 1820 (on).

4. Unclassified :

D'aujourd'hui en huit; dessiné d'après nature; boire dans un verre; ôtez cela à l'enfant. A week from to-day; drawn from nature; to drink from a glass; take that from the child.

444.

In, into.

1. Denoting place or time specifically, i.e., in the sense of 'within,' 'inside of,' 'in(to) the interior of' = **dans** (cf. §333, 3) :

Dans ce paquet (champ); dans la maison; dans l'Afrique australe; dans toute la ville; dans la même année. In this parcel (field); in(to) the house; in South Africa; in the whole city; in the same year.

NOTE.—The governed noun usually has the definite article.

2. Denoting place or time generally = **en, à** (cf. §333, 2, 3) :

En Afrique; à la maison; aux champs; au Canada; à Berlin; à la campagne (ville); en hiver; au printemps; en paix. In Africa; in the house (at home); in the fields; in Canada; in Berlin; in the country (city); in winter; in spring; in peace.

NOTE.—The governed word after **en** has but rarely the definite article (mostly in fixed expressions before initial vowel sound): 'En l'air'; 'En l'honneur de,' etc.

3. In the sense of 'at the end of (time)' = **dans**; 'in the course of (time)' = **en** :

Le train part dans une heure; on peut aller à L. en une heure. The train leaves in an hour; one can go to L. in an hour.

4. Denoting place, after a superlative=**de** :

La plus grande ville du monde. The largest city in the world.

5. Unclassified :

Par la pluie ; le matin ; de nos jours ; par le passé ; à l'avenir ; d'avance ; entre les mains de ; à mon avis ; sous le règne de ; sous presse ; de cette manière ; un sur dix. In the rain ; in the morning ; in our day(s) ; in the past ; in the future ; in advance ; in the hands of ; in my opinion ; in the reign of ; in press ; in this way ; one in ten.

445.

Of.

1. Usually=**de** :

Le toit de la maison ; la ville de Paris ; un homme d'influence ; une livre de thé ; digne d'honneur ; il parle d'aller à Paris. The roof of the house ; the city of Paris ; a man of influence ; a pound of tea ; worthy of honour ; he speaks of going to Paris.

2. Denoting material=**en** :

Un pont en bois (fer) ; les pièces de dix francs sont en or. A bridge of wood (iron) ; ten franc pieces are of gold.

3. Unclassified :

C'est aimable à vous ; sur 100 personnes 50 sont échappées ; docteur en médecine ; un de mes amis ; majeur. It is kind of you ; of 100 persons 50 escaped ; doctor of medicine ; one of my friends ; of age.

446.

On, upon.

1. Usually=**sur** :

Le livre est (je mets le livre) sur la table. The book is (I put the book) on the table.

2. Is omitted in dates before specified days :

Le dix mai ; je viendrai mardi ; il arriva le lendemain. On the tenth of May ; I shall come on Tuesday ; he arrived on the morrow.

3. Unclassified :

Par une belle journée d'été; mettre au feu; pendre contre le mur; dans la rue; dans l'île; dans l'escalier; en (dans un) voyage; en visite (congé); en chemin (route); d'un côté; tomber par terre; à genoux; dans cette occasion; à cheval (pied); à droite (gauche); à son arrivée; au contraire; pour affaires.	On a fine summer day; to put on the fire; to hang on the wall; on the street; on the island; on the stairs; on a journey; on a visit (a holiday); on the way (the road); on one side; to fall on the ground; on one's knees; on that occasion; on horseback (foot); on the right (the left); on his arrival; on the contrary; on business.
---	--

447.

Out of.

1. Unclassified :

Boire dans un verre; copier dans un livre; regarder par la fenêtre; un sur dix.	To drink out of a glass; to copy out of a book; to look out of the window; one out of ten.
---	--

448.

Over.

1. In the sense of 'above' = **au-dessus de** :

Au-dessus de la porte étaient écrits ces mots; les nombres au-dessus de mille.	Over the door were written these words; the numbers over one thousand.
--	--

2. Denoting motion above = **sur, par, par-dessus** :

Passer la main sur ce drap; par monts et par vaux; il sauta par-dessus la haie.	Pass your hand over this cloth; over hill and dale; he leaped over the hedge.
---	---

3. Unclassified :

Au delà de la rivière; l'emporter sur (triumpher de); se réjouir de; veiller sur.	Over the river; to triumph over; to rejoice over; to watch over.
---	---

449.

Through.

1. Denoting motion across = **à travers (au travers de), par** :

Je passai à travers (au travers de) la forêt; passer par Berlin.	I passed through the forest; to pass through Berlin.
---	---

2. In the sense of 'because of,' 'owing to,' = **par** :

Par négligence.

Through carelessness.

450.

Till, until.

1. Unclassified :

Jusqu'à demain ; pas avant l'année Till to-morrow ; not till next year ;
prochaine ; jusqu'ici ; du matin till now ; from morning till
au soir. night.

451.

To.

1. Denoting the indirect object = **à** (cf. §362, 2) :

Je l'ai donné à un ami.

I gave it to a friend.

2. Denoting motion to = **à, en** (cf. §333, 2, 3) ; in the sense of 'to the house, etc., of,' 'to —'s' = **chez** :

Il va à Paris (à l'école ; au Japon ; He goes to Paris (to school ; to
à un bal ; en France ; en Por- Japan ; to a ball ; to France ; to
tugal ; chez eux ; chez mon Portugal ; to their house, etc. ;
ami). to my friend's).

3. In the sense of 'towards' = **vers** (physical tendency), **envers** (moral tendency) :

Levez les yeux vers le ciel ; il est Raise your eyes to heaven ; he is
juste envers tous. just to all.

4. In the sense of 'as far as' = **jusqu'à** :

Venez jusqu'au bout de la rue. Come to the end of the street.

5. Unclassified :

Le voyage (train) de Montréal ; The journey (train) to Montreal ; to
écrire sous dictée ; dans ce but. write to dictation ; to this end.

452.

Towards.

See §451, 3.

453.

Under, underneath.

1. Usually = **sous** :

Sous la table ; sous la loi ; sous Under the table ; under the law ;
peine de mort. under pain of death.

2. Denoting lower than, less than=**au-dessous de** :

Au-dessous du coude ; vendre une chose au-dessous de sa valeur. **Under the elbow ; to sell a thing under its value.**

3. Unclassified :

Fouler aux pieds ; à cette condition ; dans les circonstances ; dans la nécessité de ; mineur. **To tread under foot ; under this condition ; under the circumstances ; under the necessity of ; under age.**

454.

With.1. In the sense of 'along with,' 'in company with'=**avec** :

Dinez avec moi à l'hôtel ; un officier avec des soldats. **Dine with me at the hotel ; an officer with some soldiers.**

2. In the sense of 'at the house, etc., of'=**chez** :

Il demeure chez nous. **He lives with us.**

3. Denoting instrument, manner=**avec** (usually) :

Frapper avec un marteau ; écrire avec une plume ; avec courage (force). **To strike with a hammer ; to write with a pen ; with courage (force).**

4. Denoting a characteristic=**à** :

Un homme à la barbe noire. **A man with a black beard.**

5. 'With' of accessory circumstance is usually turned by an absolute construction :

Il parla les yeux baissés. **He spoke with downcast eyes.**

6. In the sense of 'from,' 'on account of,' and after many verbs and adjectives=**de** :

Elle pleura de colère ; couvrir de ; content de. **She wept with anger ; to cover with ; satisfied with.**

7. Unclassified :

À l'exception de ; à haute voix ; à bras ouverts ; de bon appétit ; à l'œil nu ; de tout mon cœur. **With the exception of ; with a loud voice ; with open arms ; with a good appetite ; with the naked eye ; with all my heart.**

THE CONJUNCTION.

455. Conjunctions. The following table contains most of the conjunctions and conjunctive locutions in use :—

‡à (la) condition que ³ , <i>on condition that.</i>	*encore que ⁴ , <i>though, although.</i>
*afin que ² , <i>in order that, so that.</i>	‡en sorte que ² , <i>so that.</i>
ainsi, <i>therefore, hence.</i>	*en supposant que ³ , <i>supposing that.</i>
ainsi que, <i>as well as, as.</i>	et, <i>and.</i>
alors que, <i>when.</i>	et...et, <i>both...and.</i>
à mesure que, <i>as, just as.</i>	excepté que, <i>except that.</i>
*à moins que...ne ³ , <i>unless.</i>	‡jusqu'à ce que ¹ , <i>until.</i>
après que, <i>after.</i>	*loin que ⁵ , <i>far from.</i>
à proportion que, <i>in proportion as.</i>	lorsque, <i>when.</i>
attendu que, <i>considering that.</i>	mais, <i>but.</i>
‡au cas où ³ , <i>in case (that).</i>	*malgré que ⁴ , <i>though, although.</i>
*au cas que ³ , <i>in case (that).</i>	néanmoins, <i>nevertheless.</i>
aussi, <i>hence, therefore.</i>	ni, <i>nor.</i>
aussitôt que, <i>as soon as.</i>	ni...ni...ne, <i>neither...nor.</i>
*avant que ¹ , <i>before.</i>	*nonobstant que ⁴ , <i>notwithstanding that.</i>
*bien que ⁴ , <i>though, although.</i>	*non (pas) que ⁵ , <i>not that.</i>
car, <i>for.</i>	non seulement...mais encore, <i>not only...but also.</i>
*ce n'est pas que ⁵ , <i>not that.</i>	or, <i>now.</i>
cependant, <i>however, yet.</i>	ou, <i>or.</i>
comme, <i>as.</i>	ou...ou, <i>either...or.</i>
‡dans le cas où ³ , <i>in case (that).</i>	outré que, <i>besides that.</i>
*de crainte que...ne ² , <i>for fear that.</i>	parce que, <i>because.</i>
‡de façon que ² , <i>so that.</i>	partant, <i>therefore, hence.</i>
‡de manière que ² , <i>so that.</i>	pendant que, <i>while, whilst.</i>
de même que, <i>as well as.</i>	*pour peu que ⁴ , <i>if ever so little.</i>
*de peur que...ne ² , <i>for fear that.</i>	*pour que ² , <i>in order that.</i>
depuis que, <i>since.</i>	pourtant, <i>yet, however.</i>
‡de (telle) sorte que ² , <i>so that.</i>	*pourvu que ³ , <i>provided that.</i>
dès que, <i>as soon as, when, since.</i>	puisque, <i>since.</i>
donc, <i>now, then, therefore.</i>	quand, <i>when.</i>
*en attendant que ¹ , <i>until.</i>	‡quand même ⁴ , <i>though, even if</i>
*en cas que ³ , <i>in case (that).</i>	‡que ⁶ , <i>that, than, as.</i>
encore, <i>yet, still.</i>	*quoique ⁴ , <i>though, although.</i>

*sans que⁵, *without*.

selon que, *according as*.

†si³, *if* (§271, 3, a).

†si bien que², *so that*.

†si peu que⁴, *however little*.

sinon, *if not, or else*.

sitôt que, *as soon as*.

soit...soit, *whether...or*.

soit...ou, *whether...or*.

*soit que...soit que⁴, *whether...or*.

*soit que...ou que⁴, *whether...or*.

suivant que, *according as*.

*supposé que³, *suppose that*.

tandis que, *whilst, whereas*.

tant...que, *both...and*.

tant que, *as long as*.

†tellement...que², *so...that*.

toutefois, *yet, nevertheless*.

une fois que, *as soon as*.

vu que, *seeing that*.

* Followed by the subjunctive.

† Followed by the indicative or subjunctive.

N.B.—Conjunctions without * or † in the table are followed by the indicative.

1 See §271, 1 (time before which or up to which).

2 See §271, 2 (purpose or result).

3 See §271, 3 (condition).

4 See §271, 4 (concession).

5 See §271, 5 (negation).

6 See §269, §271, 6, and §458

USE OF CERTAIN CONJUNCTIONS.

456. Et. 1. When repeated, *et* usually denotes 'both... and'; otherwise it stands with the last only of two or more clauses:

Et vous et lui (vous) savez mieux. Both you and he know better.

Les femmes pleuraient, criaient et gesticulaient. The women wept (and) screamed and gesticulated.

2. 'And' after a verb of motion is usually untranslated:

Allez leur parler.

Go and speak to them.

457. Ni. 1. A finite verb with *ni* or *ni...ni* must be preceded by *ne*:

Il n'a ni or ni argent.

He has neither gold nor silver.

Il ne mange ni ne boit.

He neither eats nor drinks.

a. For the position of *ni...ni...ne*, see §416, d.

2. In sentences of negative force, 'and,' 'or,' are rendered by **ni**:

Honneurs **ni** richesses ne font le bonheur. Honours and wealth do not constitute happiness.

3. Observe the following equivalents of 'neither,' 'not either,' 'nor either,' 'nor,' when not correlative:

Je ne le ferai pas.—Ni moi non plus.	I shall not do it.—Nor I either (or Neither shall I).
Il ne le fera pas non plus.	He will not do it either.
Il ne l'a pas fait, et il ne le fera pas.	He has not done it, nor will he (do it).

458. Que. 1. **Que** = 'that' is followed by the indicative or subjunctive according to the context:

Je dis que vous avez raison.	I say that you are right.
Je suis fâché que vous ayez raison.	I am sorry that you are right.

2. **Que** often replaces another conjunction; when so used, it takes the same construction as the conjunction for which it stands, except that **que** instead of **si** = 'if' always requires the subjunctive:

Quand vous aurez fini, et que vous aurez le temps.	When you have finished, and (when you) have time.
Venez que (= 'afin que,' 'pour que') je vous voie.	Come that I may see you.
Si vous venez demain, et que vous ayez le temps.	If you come to-morrow, and (if you) have time.

3. **Que** may not be omitted before a finite verb, as 'that' often is in English:

Je crois qu'il viendra et qu'il restera.	I think (that) he will come and (that he will) stay.
--	--

459. Distinctions. The following conjunctions are especially liable to be confounded in use:

1. **Quand, Lorsque.** They are equivalents in the sense of 'when,' but **quand** (not 'lorsque') serves also as an interrogative adverb in direct or indirect questions;

Quand est-il arrivé?

Dis-moi quand il est arrivé.

Quand (or lorsque) je l'ai vu.

Nous partirons lorsque (or quand)
la lettre arrivera.

When did he come?

Tell me when he came.

When I saw him.

We shall leave when the letter
comes.

2. Pendant que, Tandis que. Pendant que = 'while,' 'whilst,' 'during the time that'; tandis que = 'while,' 'whilst,' 'during the time that,' and also, 'whilst,' 'on the contrary,' 'whereas':

Lisez le journal pendant que j'écris ce billet. Read the newspaper while I write this note.

Tandis que vous êtes ici.

Whilst you are here.

Le père travaille, tandis que le fils ne fait rien. The father works, while the son does nothing.

3. Depuis que, Puisque. Depuis que denotes time; puisque denotes cause assigned:

Je suis solitaire depuis que mon frère est parti. I am lonely since my brother went away.

Il me faut rester, puisqu'il n'y a pas de train ce soir. I must remain, since there is no train this evening.

THE INTERJECTION.

460. Interjections. The commoner interjections and expressions used as such are:—

1. Joy, admiration, approval:

ah!, ah!

à la bonne heure!, well done!, that's

ha, ha! or hi, hi! (to denote laughter).

right!

bon!, good!

bis!, encore!

bien!, good!

bravo! or bravissimo!, well done!,
bravo!

à merveille!, capital!

hourra! or vivat!, hurrah!

2. Disgust, disapproval, indifference:

fi!, fie!

foin de!, a plague upon!

fi donc!, for shame!

pouah!, disgusting!, faugh!

fi de!, fie on!

oh!, oh!

bah ! or ah ! bah !, *nonsense !*
pooh-pooh !
 baste !, *enough !*, *pooh !*, *nonsense !*

par exemple !, *dear me !*
 zest !, *pshaw !*

3. Grief, fear, pain :

ah !, *ah !*
 oh !, *oh !*
 hélas !, *alas !*
 aïe !, *oh !*, *oh dear !*

miséricorde !, *mercy !*
 ouf ! (*to express suffocation, or relief*
and exhaustion).

4. Surprise :

ah !, *ah !*
 oh !, *oh !*
 eh !, *ah !*
 ha !, *ha !*
 comment !, *what !*

quoi !, *what !*
 vraiment !, *indeed !*
 tiens !, *indeed !*
 par exemple !, *you don't say so !*
 miséricorde !, *mercy !*

5. Encouragement :

allons !, *come !*
 courage !, *cheer up !*
 voyons !, *come now !*
 ça !, *or or ça !*, *or sus !*, *or or sus !*,
now then !

en avant !, *forward !*
 ferme !, *steady !*
 presto !, *quick !*

6. Warning :

gare !, *look out !*, *take care !*

holà !, *stop !*, *stop !*

7. Calling :

hé !, *or ohé !*, *or holà !*, *ho !*, *hoy !*
halloo !
 hem !, *ahem !*

st !, *hi there !*
 qui vive !, *who goes there !*

8. Calling for aid :

à moi !, *or au secours !*, *help !*
 à l'assassin *or au meurtre !*, *murder !*

au voleur !, *stop thief !*
 au feu !, *fire !*

9. Silencing, stopping :

chut ! *or st !*, *hush !*
 silence !, *silence !*
 motus !, *not a word !*

tout doux *or tout beau !*, *gently !*
not so fast !
 halte-là !, *stop there !*

NOTE.—Akin to interjections are imitations of sounds : Cric crac !, *breaking* ; drelin, drelin ! *or drelin, din, din !*, *ringing* ; pan pan !, *bang* ; pit paf !, *gunshots* ; boum !, *cannonading* ; rataplan !, *drum* ; dare dare !, *quick movement* ; cahn-caha, *jogging along* ; clopin-clopat, *hobbling* ; tic tac, *ticking, etc.*

ABBREVIATIONS.

461. French Abbreviations. The following are the commoner abbreviations used in French :

- | | |
|---|--|
| c.-à.-d. = c'est-à-dire, <i>that is.</i> | M ^{me} (pl. M ^{es}) = Madame, <i>Mrs.</i> |
| C ^{ie} or C ^e = compagnie, <i>company.</i> | M ⁿ = maison, <i>house, firm.</i> |
| etc. = et cætera. | ms. (pl. mss.) = manuscrit, <i>manu-</i> |
| fr. or f. = francs, <i>francs.</i> | <i>script.</i> |
| h. = heure, <i>hour.</i> | N.-D. = Notre-Dame, <i>Our Lady.</i> |
| in-f ^o = in-folio, <i>folio.</i> | N.S. = Notre-Seigneur, <i>Our Lord.</i> |
| J.-C. = Jésus-Christ, <i>Jesus Christ.</i> | n ^o = numéro, <i>number.</i> |
| M. = Monsieur, <i>Mr.</i> | R.S. V. P. = Répondez s'il vous plaît, |
| MM. = Messieurs, <i>Messrs.</i> | <i>an answer is requested.</i> |
| M.R. or M.R... = Monsieur R. or | S. A. R. = Son Altesse Royale, <i>His</i> |
| Monsieur R Trois-Étoiles, <i>Mr.</i> | <i>Royal Highness.</i> |
| R. or Mr. R—. | s.-ent. = sous-entendu, <i>understood.</i> |
| M ^d = marchand, <i>merchant.</i> | S. Exc. = Son Excellence, <i>His Ex-</i> |
| M ^e (pl. M ^{es}) = maître, <i>is used with</i> | <i>cellency.</i> |
| <i>names of lawyers instead of mon-</i> | S. M. (pl. LL. MM.) = Sa Majesté, |
| <i>sieur.</i> | <i>His (Her) Majesty.</i> |
| Mgr. (pl. NNSS.) = monseigneur, | S.S. = Sa Sainteté, <i>His Holiness.</i> |
| <i>my lord.</i> | s. v. p. = s'il vous plaît, <i>if you</i> |
| M ^{lle} (pl. M ^{lles}) = Mademoiselle, | <i>please.</i> |
| <i>Miss.</i> | V ^e = veuve, <i>widow.</i> |
-
- | | |
|--|---|
| I ^{er} (in titles) = premier, <i>the First.</i> | 1 ^{er} (fem. 1 ^{ère}) = premier, <i>first.</i> |
| II (in titles) = deux, <i>the Second.</i> | 2 ^e = deuxième, <i>second.</i> |
| Le XV ^e siècle, etc. = le quinzième | 1 ^o = primo, <i>firstly.</i> |
| <i>siècle, the 15th century.</i> | 7 ^{bre} = septembre, <i>September. Etc.</i> |
-

EXERCISES.

[The references accompanying the exercises are to the sections in the Grammar on which the exercises are based.]

EXERCISE I, a.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

A. Complete the following, orally or in writing (cf. p. 110, B): 1. Je jette une pierre. 2. Nous payons ce que nous achetons. 3. Il enverra chercher le médecin. 4. Ils pèlent (*pare*) les poires. 5. Elle essuiera (*wipe*) la vaisselle.

B. (§§ 156-161.) 1. Who is calling? 2. We are calling. 3. He is buying a hat. 4. They will buy (some) hats. 5. Do not yield. 6. We shall never yield. 7. Let him bring the children. 8. Let us call them now. 9. Let us advance. 10. Do not advance.

C. (§§ 162-166.) 1. He welcomed me. 2. He will welcome you also. 3. He is leaving for France. 4. He left yesterday. 5. He will go out. 6. He makes use of it. 7. Let him not make use of it. 8. Use my book. 9. They do not feel the cold. 10. I do not consent to it. 11. I shall never consent to it.

D. (§§ 167-179.) 1. Let us flee [from] evil. 2. I hate evil. 3. Let us not hate our enemies. 4. Here lies a hero. 5. That tree is dying away. 6. He opens the gates. 7. We have opened them already. 8. She used to suffer a great deal. 9. Columbus discovered America. 10. It is necessary that he should come. 11. The purse contains money. 12. She is ill clad.

E. (§§ 156-179.) 1. Let us go and see the fields and woods. 2. We shall gather some flowers there, and then we shall come back. 3. In autumn, when it freezes, the flowers seem to die, but they do not die; they fall asleep. 4. In spring, when the snow goes away, they waken. 5. There are birds also which go away in autumn and come back in spring; and there are little animals which sleep all winter. 6. Let us take (*mener*)

the children with us to the woods. 7. The birds will sing, the little animals will run, and the children will play and shout. 8. Shall we start at once? 9. Yes, we must start, for the day is advancing (*s'avancer*), but first we must eat something. 10. Let us eat some bread and cheese (*fromage*, m.). 11. The water will soon boil, and we shall have some coffee. 12. Now we have finished our lunch. 13. Open the door, (my) children. 14. Do not run too fast. 15. When you are (fut.) in the woods, you will run.

EXERCISE II, a.

IRREGULAR VERBS, *continued*.

A. Complete the following, as above: 1. Il bat son cheval. 2. Nous buvons de l'eau. 3. Ils y conduisent la reine. 4. Je crains le froid et la neige. 5. J'éteins le feu.

B. (§§ 180-188.) 1. We are felling the tree. 2. He has drunk the wine. 3. They will not close the bargain. 4. The bread is baking well. 5. The children destroyed their books. 6. We shall construct a bridge. 7. Let him appear. 8. They will not disappear. 9. Do you know my friend? 10. I did not recognize him.

C. (§§ 189-193.) 1. He was painting a picture. 2. Let him put out the lamp. 3. We feared the rain. 4. They will not believe it. 5. It is necessary that they should believe it. 6. We did not believe it. 7. We grew. 8. Do not say so (*le*). 9. Do not slander. 10. Cain was cursed by (*de*) God.

D. (§§ 194-200.) 1. We shall write our exercise. 2. He has described his travels. 3. Do what I say. 4. Let us do our work. 5. Let him do what I said. 6. I was doing my work when he came. 7. Do not commit that crime. 8. The miller grinds the wheat. 9. The prophet said that a child would be born. 10. Men are born weak.

E. (§§ 180-200.) 1. Let us write our exercise. 2. An hour will suffice for it (*y*). 3. Then we shall read our history and translate our French lesson (*leçon de français*). 4. We were reading fairy stories yesterday evening. 5. We read stories of poor men who became rich, of heroes who girded on their swords to protect the weak, of great generals who were born of poor parents, of little girls who sewed queens' dresses, of prophets who cursed the wicked. 6. This evening we shall

read the newspapers, and then we shall go to bed. 7. Tomorrow we shall rise at seven o'clock. 8. We shall put on our clothes (*s'habiller*). 9. At breakfast we shall eat fruit and drink coffee. 10. It will be necessary for us to (that we) go to school at nine o'clock. 11. We believe that we must work while we are young. 12. We know children who are idle, and do nothing. 13. One pities (*plaindre*) those children. 14. They are like plants which do not grow. 15. Our parents do not permit us to be idle. 16. They tell us that we shall be glad some (*un*) day of having worked in our youth.

EXERCISE III, a.

IRREGULAR VERBS, *continued*.

A. Complete the following, as above: 1. Je m'assieds sur le banc. 2. Nous savons toute la leçon. 3. Je ne peux pas m'en aller. 4. Vous ne voulez pas le faire. 5. Apprenez la leçon de français.

B. (§§ 201-211.) 1. That does not please him (*lui*). 2. Come when it pleases (*fut.*) you. 3. He will not undertake that affair. 4. We have resolved to (*de*) go away. 5. Let us not laugh at (*de*) the unfortunate. 6. The dog follows his master. 7. The woman is milking her cow. 8. He is not selling his house. 9. Let us live in peace with everybody. 10. The king is dead: long live the king.

C. (§§ 212-222.) 1. We received the money. 2. We shall owe him twenty francs. 3. They will sit down. 4. That does not become him (*lui*). 5. Passion moves men. 6. Steam and water drive machines. 7. It has not rained, but it will rain soon. 8. I could do that if I were rich. 9. That child cannot write; he is too young. 10. I cannot write; I have a sore finger.

D. (§§ 201-225.) 1. Take your places if you please, and learn your lessons. 2. We have already learned some of them. 3. We have read our history. 4. We read the story of a king who lived long ago. 5. He conquered his enemies, but he could not conquer his passions. 6. His subjects followed him in his victories and his sins. 7. Let us conquer our passions. 8. Let us follow (*the*) good examples. 9. Now we shall solve these problems (*problème, m.*) in (*de*) arithmetic. 10. We have problems which speak of men who owe money; of payments

which will fall due; of water which drives a mill; of a house which was worth a thousand dollars. 11. We do not know all our lessons yet, but we do not wish to learn any more at present. 12. It was raining, but it is not raining now. 13. We should like to go out if we might. 14. You may go out, but be good enough to come back soon. 15. Yes, we shall come back, we shall sit down and we shall write our exercises.

EXERCISE IV, a.

USE OF AUXILIARY VERBS.

A. Complete the following, as above; 1. Je suis né en France. 2. Nous sommes partis pour les États-Unis. 3. Que deviendra-t-il? 4. Elle ne sait pas ce qu'elles sont devenues. 5. Il a descendu la malle.

B. (§§ 227-229.) 1. That gentleman was born in France. 2. Our neighbor's son died (*est mort*) this morning. 3. Did the lady go down this morning? 4. Yes, she went down, but she came up again (*remonter*). 5. When did your father return? 6. He has not yet returned; he will return next week. 7. Is your brother out? 8. No, sir, he is in. 9. At what o'clock did your mother go out? 10. She went out at ten o'clock.

C. (§§ 227-229.) 1. Mr. and Mrs. Peters came to America from England two years ago. 2. After having stayed at New York (*New York*) a week, they left for New Orleans. 3. They arrived there in (*au bout de*) a few days. 4. They put up (*descendre*) at a good hotel (*hôtel*, m.). 5. The porter (*garçon*) took their trunks up to (*dans*) their room. 6. They lived at the hotel for (*pendant*) a month. 7. When they left for Mexico (*le Mexique*) the porter brought down their trunks. 8. They got into (*monter dans*) a carriage and went to the station. 9. At the station they bought (*prendre*) their tickets and got into the train. 10. The train went (*marcher*) very fast. 11. It stopped at a small town, and there they lost a little dog which they had brought with them from England. 12. They searched for him everywhere, but without success. 13. Did somebody find him? 14. Did he run away? 15. Did he die? 16. They never knew what (*ce que*) became of him. 17. [Having] arrived at the city of Mexico (*Mexico*), they stayed there for a year, and then returned to New York, where they took the steamer for Europe.

EXERCISE V, a.

USE OF VERB PHRASES.

A. Complete the following, as above: 1. Je crois pouvoir le faire. 2. Nous lui avons fait lire ce livre. 3. Il aurait dû s'en aller. 4. Je n'en ai jamais entendu parler. 5. J'ai dû me taire. 6. Elle s'est fait faire une robe.

B. (§ 230.) 1. We had just gone out. 2. They were going to write letters. 3. He would have liked to see you. 4. We are going to have a house built. 5. You might have seen us if you had been here. 6. My father told me that I was to write this exercise. 7. That gentleman must have been in Paris, for he speaks French like a Parisian. 8. I liked that book so well that I had my pupils read it. 9. We said to the innkeeper: "Would you be so kind as to have our horses saddled?"

C. (§ 230.) 1. We have just arrived in Paris; I mean, we arrived three days ago. 2. We had wished (§ 258, 4) for a long time to see this city. 3. We had been made to write many exercises, and read many French books. 4. We should have liked to come to France long ago, but our parents would not let us start. 5. We thought we could speak French well, but we cannot. 6. We ought to have worked harder at home, but here we are in Paris. 7. We are going to visit the interesting places. 8. To-day we are going to see the *Invalides* (m. pl.) and the *Trocadéro* (m.). 9. The day after to-morrow we are to see *Notre-Dame*. 10. We saw the *Louvre* (m.) yesterday. 11. We ought to have visited the *Louvre* when you were with us; you could have shown us the finest pictures. 12. May we go with you when you visit it the next time? 13. We should like to have explained to us some of the beauties of the best pictures. 14. When we go there, will you be good enough to explain to us the different styles of the different periods (*époque*, f.)? 15. We have heard of them, but we do not dare to speak about them. 16. We do not wish to show our ignorance (*ignorance*, f.).

EXERCISE VI, a.

THE VERB AND ITS SUBJECT.

A. Complete the following, as above: 1. C'est moi qui suis allé chercher le médecin. 2. À quelle heure partirai-je? 3. Est-ce que je pars? 4. Fais comme tu voudras.

B. (§§ 231-238.) 1. Will his friends be there? 2. I think so (*le*). 3. Will not your friends be there? 4. Perhaps they will (be there), but it is not certain. 5. When was (*thé*) king Louis XVI. beheaded? 6. It was (*pres.*) [on] the 21st [of] January, 1793, that he was beheaded. 7. Do I say, or can I say, the half of what he has done for me? 8. Neither you nor I can ever know the half of it. 9. Were you and he not there? 10. Yes, he and I were there, and your brother too.

C. (§§ 231-238.) 1. Most people think that their own nation is the best. 2. An Englishman says: "I cannot do (*de*) such things; am I not an Englishman?" 3. A Frenchman says: "The French people are brave and gay; they may have defects, but they have many good qualities." 4. The Swiss say: "We are a free nation; it is we who have taught freedom (*liberté*, *f.*) to the other peoples." 5. Formerly (*autrefois*) no nation was free; now, more than one is so (*le*). 6. Many think, however, that there is too much freedom now. 7. It is true that the majority are not always right. 8. Many things which were not just have happened in free countries. 9. However free a nation is (*subj.*), it must be just, or it cannot remain free. 10. Religion, truth, honour, all will be lost, if we have not justice.

EXERCISE VII, a.

THE PASSIVE AND REFLEXIVE.

A. Complete the following, as above: 1. Je me le rappelle. 2. Est-ce que je m'en souviens? 3. Je ne me rappelle pas où j'ai été. 4. Je me suis trompé de porte. 5. Je ne m'y suis pas attendu. 6. Je me suis promené en voiture. 7. Je me plais à la campagne. 8. Je m'ennuie ici. 9. Je m'appelle Dupont.

B. (§§ 239-241.) 1. We have been told that our friends were deceived. 2. They did not know what had been done. 3. They knew that this individual had gone away. 4. But they were not told that he had been pardoned. 5. They thought (that) that would not be done among respectable people. 6. They said that crime was always punished. 7. But they were mistaken. 8. Crime is not always punished. 9. And sometimes virtue is not rewarded.

C. (§§ 242-247.) 1. There is a knock; the door opens, and an individual comes in. 2. He sits down and asks for bread.

3. We give him some, for men cannot do without bread. 4. He tells us that he is not well, that he fell and broke his arm. 5. He cannot use it yet. 6. When he fell he hurt his (*se faire mal à la*) head also. 7. He cannot remember where he has been. 8. He can remember his name, but he cannot remember how old he is. 9. He says he is called Jacques Dupont.

D. (§§ 242-247.) 1. We went out for a drive this morning, and in the afternoon we went for a sail. 2. I never tire of being in the country. 3. One can go for a walk, or a drive, or a sail. 4. One can always amuse one's self. 5. One can go to bed early and get up late, if one likes.

E. (§§ 242-247.) 1. As I was going to the market, I met an old friend. 2. We stopped. 3. He did not remember my name, but I remembered his. 4. He is called Durand. 5. I asked (*demander*) him how he was, and he asked me how I was myself. 6. We both said (*said both*) that we were well. 7. I invited him to come to my house, and we hastened to take the street-cars, for it was almost noon. 8. We sat down and began to chat, but soon we noticed that we had taken the wrong (*se tromper de*) line. 9. Then we had to alight (*descendre*). 10. We arrived at my house at a quarter past twelve. 11. We were a little tired, but after having washed (*se laver*) our (§ 83) hands, we had lunch (*avons déjeuné*). 12. We had a great deal (*beaucoup de choses*) to say to one another (*se dire*). 13. We rose from [the] table and retired to (*dans*) the library. 14. I was glad to see my friend. 15. I had not expected to meet him, and we talked a great deal. 16. We recalled (*se rappeler*) to one another (*l'un à l'autre*) many things. 17. After (*au bout de*) some time my friend rose, we shook hands, we promised to write to each other, and he went away.

EXERCISE VIII, a.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

(§§ 248-253.) 1. It has frozen, and it has snowed; now it is raining. 2. What kind of weather will it be to-morrow? 3. If it is not fine, we cannot ascend the mountain. 4. It has been bad weather. 5. It has been cold; now I hope it will be warmer. 6. How far is it from here to the top of the mountain? 7. They say (*on dit*) (that) it is about (*environ*) five miles. 8. Then we shall need about five hours. 9. We shall be obliged to rest several times. 10. I hope it will not be

foggy at the summit (*sommet*, m.). 11. When the sun is shining there is (from there) a splendid view. 12. There is (one has there) a fine view also when it is (*faire*) moonlight. 13. But it often happens that it rains or snows when people (*on*) are on the mountains. 14. It would be better, perhaps, not to go up there to-morrow. 15. We can wait for a few days, can't we (§ 256)? 16. We cannot wait very long, for we must be back in Paris before the end of the month.

EXERCISE IX, a.

TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE.

A. Complete the following, as above: 1. Je m'efforçai de le saisir. 2. Je voulus me jeter à son cou. 3. Je m'éveillai en pleurant. 4. Je reconnus Mentor. 5. Je fus transporté dans un lieu délicieux.

NOTE.—The student will make a careful study of the cases of the Imperfect and Past Definite occurring in the following extract from Fénelon's *Télémaque*, before attempting B.

Il me sembla que j'étais transporté dans un jardin délicieux, tel qu'on dépeint (§ 190) les Champs Élysées (*Elysian Fields*). En ce lieu je reconnus Mentor, qui me dit: Fuyez cette cruelle terre, cette île empestée (*tainted*), où l'on ne respire que la volupté. La vertu la plus courageuse y doit trembler, et on ne peut se sauver qu'en fuyant. Dès que je le vis, je voulus me jeter à son cou pour l'embrasser. Mais je sentais que mes pieds ne pouvaient se mouvoir, que mes genoux se dérobaient sous moi, et que mes mains, s'efforçant de saisir Mentor, cherchaient une ombre vaine qui m'échappait toujours. Dans cet effort, je m'éveillai, et je sentis que ce songe était un avertissement divin.

B. (§§ 258, 260.) 1. I was transported to a delightful garden. 2. Mentor was there. 3. But he was fleeing from that cruel spot (*lieu*, m.) where one breathed nothing but voluptuousness. 4. I made an effort to seize him, but my knees sank under me. 5. Like an empty shadow he escaped me, and I awoke. 6. This dream was a warning from Heaven, for it seemed to me that one could not preserve his virtue there.

C. (§§ 254-267.) 1. When we were young, our mother would often tell us fairy stories which interested us very much. 2. We remember them yet, and we hope (that) we shall never

forget them. 3. She would tell us the story of the miller who had three sons, to whom he left his mill, his ass and his cat. 4. The eldest received (§ 260, a) the mill, while (§ 459, 2) the youngest received only the cat. 5. The young man was sad, but the cat said, "Get me a pair of boots (*bottle*, f.) made, and I will help you." 6. As soon as the young man had got the boots made, the cat put them on and began to help his master. 7. He soon made him rich and famous. 8. My mother used to read the Bible (*Bible*, f.) to us also. 9. We learned the ten commandments. 10. They tell us: Thou shalt not (*point*) have any other gods. 11. Thou shalt not take the name of thy God in vain. 12. Thou shalt not kill. 13. Thou shalt not steal (*dérober*).

D. (§§ 258, 260.) 1. The two kings met (*se rencontrer*) on the 13th of July in a vast plain between Warsaw (*Varsovie*) and Cracow (*Cracovie*). 2. Augustus had nearly twenty-four thousand men; Charles had only ten thousand. 3. At the first volley, the Duke of Holstein, who commanded the Swedish cavalry, received a cannon-shot in the back. 4. The king asked if he was dead: he was told (use *on*) that he was (*que oui*): he made no reply; (some) tears fell from his eyes; he hid (*se cacher*) his (*le*) face [for] a moment with his (*les*) hands; then he rushed into the midst of the enemy at the head of his guards. 5. The king of Poland did all that one should expect from a prince who was fighting for his crown; he himself brought back his troops three times to the charge; but he fought with his Saxons only; the Poles, who formed his right wing, fled at the beginning of the battle. 6. Charles won a complete victory. 7. He did not stay on the field of battle, but (*et*) marched direct to Cracow, pursuing the king of Poland, who kept fleeing before him.

E. (§§ 254-267.) 1. We had been in Paris several months, when our friends arrived. 2. We had seen many interesting things. 3. We had been in picture-galleries and churches. 4. Our friends were in Marseilles, and they had written us that they were coming. 5. As soon as we learned that they would come, we began to prepare (*se préparer*) to receive them. 6. We did not know whether they would come in March or April. 7. We hoped (that) they would come early. 8. We longed to see them. 9. We had not forgotten how much we used to enjoy ourselves when we were (§ 330, 3) children. 10. We wrote to them saying that we were expecting them.

11. When they arrived, we went to the station to meet them (*à leur rencontre*) at five o'clock in (*du*) the morning. 12. They said to us that we should not have come, and that they could have found our hotel (*hôtel*, m.). 13. But we said, "Nonsense! we are very glad to have come." 14. We took a carriage, and went (*se diriger*) to (*vers*) the hotel.

EXERCISE X, a.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

A. Complete the following, as above: 1. Il faut que je m'en aille. 2. Êtes-vous content que la nouvelle soit vraie? 3. Elles craignent que Marie ne vienne. 4. C'est un bonheur que je sois parti. 5. Il est juste que je fasse cela. 6. Je n'aimerais pas qu'on se moque (or *moquât*) de lui. 7. Je voudrais (bien) qu'elle le fasse (or *fit*).

B. (§§ 268, 269.) 1. I am anxious that (*tenir à ce que*) our friends should be there. 2. We should not like our friends to be made sport of. 3. We wish them to go away. 4. There is no more bread; I should like you to go and get some. 5. I am anxious that you should come to see us. 6. The doctor orders that he be given no wine. 7. Our friends wish us to stay with them this week. 8. He has torn his book; he deserves to be (use *on*) punished. 9. He will not consent to your doing that. 10. I long (*il me tarde que*) for his return. 11. The doctor forbids him to go out. 12. I should prefer that you stay here. 13. My father regrets that you are going away. 14. His mother is glad that he is coming back. 15. We fear they will go away. 16. They are afraid you will not come. 17. Do you think he will succeed? 18. I hope he will succeed. 19. Is it probable that you will go away to-day? 20. It is certain that I shall not go away to-day.

C. (§§ 270-273.) 1. Give me a book which contains beautiful stories. 2. This is a book in which you will find beautiful stories. 3. He has not a single friend who is true to him. 4. It is the largest ship I have ever seen. 5. It is the finest thing one can see! 6. Whoever you are you will have to obey the law. 7. I know no book which pleases me better. 8. We rose this morning before the sun rose. 9. I am going to stay here until the weather is warm. 10. In case you cannot come, will you be kind enough to send me word? 11. He is going away so that I may not see him. 12. Although we

used to be good friends, I never hear from him now. 13. I was sorry that we were not able to go for a walk. 14. Our friends were glad that you had seen them before you went away. 15. My father thought you would come, but my mother did not think you would come. 16. I left Russia when I was young; I sought a country where I might be free. 17. Although the children have gone to bed, they have not yet gone to sleep. 18. However good men may be, they do not escape misfortune. 19. Whatever you may say, I am certain you are wrong. 20. He told me he would go away unless he succeeded better.

D. (§§ 268-273.) 1. My father is anxious that I should learn French. 2. It is a pity I did not begin sooner. 3. I shall have to work hard. 4. What must I do? 5. It will be best that you should go to France. 6. I am afraid I cannot go (there). 7. I am sorry you cannot go (there), for France is the only (*seul*) country where one learns French well. 8. Still (*cependant*), it is possible that you may learn the language pretty well, even if you stay in America. 9. There are many places in America where French is spoken. 10. I am glad that I can stay here. 11. Can you tell me where I might be able to find those who speak French? 12. There are many of them. 13. Even if you do not go to the French province of Quebec or to New Orleans, there are French families in American towns, and there are French teachers in American colleges. 14. Wherever (*en quelque lieu que*) you are, you must always try to speak French. 15. Although conversation (*conversation*, f.) is important, it is not the only thing which is of value (*valoir*). 16. There are also French literature (*littérature*, f.) and art.

E. (§§ 268-273.) 1. The literature of France is very rich, and one can study it without (one's) going to France. 2. But there are many things which one cannot know, unless one goes to France. 3. One must see the life of the people in order to know their literature. 4. However clever you are, you cannot understand everything which (*tout ce qui*) is in books without having lived in the country. 5. Often a student (*étudiant*) will not believe at first that this is necessary. 6. He does not know how much difference there is between countries. 7. He cannot imagine that a French peasant is different from an American farmer. 8. Can he imagine that the former is more industrious (*laborieux*) and economical than the latter? 9. It

is necessary too that one should know something of French art. 10. One must see the great churches and the great paintings, if one wishes to understand the literature. 11. It is to be desired that a greater number of students of French literature should go to France to learn these things.

EXERCISE XI, a.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES: THE INFINITIVE.

A. Complete the following, as above: 1. Je me mets à écrire une lettre. 2. Prenez garde de tomber. 3. Elle pensa mourir. 4. Je me suis permis de le faire. 5. J'ai vu bâtir cette maison. 6. Il s'amuse à regarder jouer les enfants.

B. (§§ 274-275.) 1. If it does not rain, will you go for a walk this afternoon? 2. No, even if it should not rain, I cannot go for a walk. 3. That is a brave general, if ever there was one. 4. If it were to rain to-day, we should stay here. 5. If I were he, I should go away. 6. If he had risen at six o'clock, he would not have missed the train. 7. If I am present when he arrives (fut.), I shall speak to him.

C. (§§ 276-278.) 1. Are the children coming? 2. Yes, I see them coming. 3. When do you expect to be there? 4. I expect to be there in a fortnight. 5. It is useless for me to speak; he will not listen (pres.) to me. 6. He may say what he likes (*il a beau dire*); nobody will believe (pres.) him. 7. I thought I saw her, but I am not sure (of it). 8. I hope I shall see you to-morrow. 9. Come and see us whenever you wish.

D. (§ 279.) 1. That house is for sale. 2. He spends his time in reading novels. 3. I should like to know where my mother is; she is long (*tarder*) in coming. 4. The sewing-machine is in the dining-room. 5. I have difficulty in believing him. 6. Are you anxious to have it to-day? 7. No, I am not (§ 256). 8. It (*c'*) is difficult to do.

E. (§ 280.) 1. It has ceased raining. 2. I am very glad to say that he will be there. 3. They are afraid to speak. 4. Will you permit me to retire? 5. Take care not to fall. 6. He is wrong to believe that we are his enemies. 7. He pretends to be asleep. 8. It (*il*) is difficult to do that.

F. (§§ 282-284.) 1. One should not live to eat. 2. It is too cold to go for a walk. 3. After writing our exercises we

went out. 4. He commenced by flattering us, and he finished by slandering us. 5. They went away without seeing me. 6. We went away without his seeing us. 7. He went away for fear of being punished. 8. These are fine houses; I saw them being built.

G. (§§ 274-285.) 1. Will you tell our friends, if you see them, that I cannot go to the concert this evening? 2. I am sorry you cannot go (there), for the artists will sing charmingly. 3. I am sorry for it, too. 4. I like to go to concerts, but my cousin has invited me to dine with him. 5. I like concerts too, but I like better to go to the opera (*opéra*, m.). 6. There is more to (à) hear and (to) see at the opera. 7. A long action is more interesting to (à) listen to than songs. 8. By the way, I am thinking (*songer*) of going to spend the winter in Florida. 9. I should like to stay here, but when it is cold I suffer a good deal. 10. I was very ill last winter, and was very nearly (§ 281, 14 or 17) dying. 11. If I stay here, I run the risk (§ 280, 2, a) of being ill again. 12. Besides, it is much more agreeable to (§ 280, 1) see (the) flowers than (the) snow. 13. But I have not yet decided to (§ 280, 6) go to Florida. 14. It is possible that I may go to Mexico (*au Mexique*).

EXERCISE XII, a.

PARTICIPLES: GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

A. Complete the following, as above: 1. Je les vois venir. 2. Je peignis un tableau. 3. Je l'apprends par cœur. 4. Je le sais par cœur. 5. Quoi que je fasse, je ne peux pas le faire partir.

B. (§§ 286-287.) 1. Don't you see the horses coming? 2. Yes, there they come! 3. Where are the children? 4. There they are, playing under the trees. 5. One's (the) appetite comes while eating; but, said the Gascon, I have been eating two hours (§ 257, 2), and it has not come yet. 6. That young man went away without saying good-bye to me. 7. While travelling I saw many astonishing things. 8. Those so-called learned men, who really know nothing, are very tiresome.

C. (§§ 288-292.) 1. That is the old lady whom I saw fall in the street. 2. Our friends have gone away. 3. My mother enjoyed herself in the country. 4. Those ladies have written each other many letters. 5. They (f.) have fallen out, and

have burnt the letters (which) they wrote to each other. 6. They (f.) have shaken hands, and have said good-bye to each other. 7. That is the house we have built. 8. There are the books which we sent for (*faire venir*).

D. (§§ 293-299.) 1. We shall make them do their work. 2. They (*on*) have made her suffer great ills. 3. We have seen him play that part. 4. Did you notice their dejection? 5. No, I did not notice it. 6. We cannot do without our books; we are going to use them to-morrow. 7. The king pardoned him his crime. 8. He loves his father and obeys him. 9. Did you pay him for the book? 10. No, I shall pay him for it to-morrow. 11. That young lady's gloves do not fit her. 12. He stole my watch from me.

EXERCISE XIII, a.

GENDER AND NUMBER OF NOUNS.

A. Complete the following, as above: 1. Je fais cuire la crêpe dans la poêle. 2. Il faut que je lise les œuvres complètes de Racine. 3. Je cueillerai ces belles feuilles. 4. Je ferai un bon somme (*nap*). 5. Je payerai cette somme d'argent.

B. (§§ 300-314.) 1. In the kitchen there is a stove. 2. There is on it (*dessus*) a frying-pan. 3. The maid is preparing potatoes and cauliflowers (*chou-fleur*, m.) for (the) dinner. 4. There are two lamp-shades on the cupboard. 5. In the dining-room there are two masterpieces by Rembrandt — an etching (§ 305, 2) and a painting. 6. The ladies and gentlemen are in the parlour. 7. Our neighbours, the Smiths, have just come. 8. The old people are drinking coffee, and the young people are talking of books and pictures. 9. All these good people are happy. 10. One of the young ladies is writing a letter. 11. She has sent for some postage-stamps. 12. When she has finished her letter, the servant will take it to the post-office.

EXERCISE XIV, a.

THE ARTICLE.

A. Complete the following, as above: 1. Nous avons le chapeau sur la tête. 2. Je vais en France. 3. Je m'en vais lundi.

4. Ils partent toujours le mercredi. 5. J'ai les cheveux longs. 6. Je parle français. 7. Savez-vous le français? 8. Elle est Américaine.

B. (§§ 315-335.) 1. In North America there are three large countries — the United States, Canada and Mexico (*Mexique*, m.). 2. The United States are larger than Russia in (*d'*) Europe, Germany (*Allemagne*, f.), Austria (*Autriche*, f.), France, Spain (*Espagne*, f.), Italy and England together. 3. Canada is about (of) the same size (*grandeur*, f.) as the United States. 4. Mexico is smaller, but it is as large as France, Spain, Portugal (*Portugal*, m.) and Germany together. 5. In the United States nearly all (the) languages are spoken (use *on*). 6. French, German, Italian and Spanish (*espagnol*) are spoken, but the majority of the inhabitants speak English. 7. In Canada also most people speak English, but in Lower Canada (*Bas-Canada*, m.) nearly everybody speaks French. 8. In Mexico Spanish is generally spoken. 9. There are many islands near North America. 10. Two of the largest of these islands are Cuba (*Cuba*, m.) and Newfoundland (*Terre-Neuve*, f.). 11. In (*à*) Cuba people grow (*cultiver*) sugar and tobacco (*tabac*, m.), while the chief industry (*industrie*, f.) of Newfoundland is cod-fishing (*pêche*, f. *de la morue*). 12. In these countries there are no kings. 13. The United States and Mexico are republics; and although Canada is an English colony (*colonie*, f.), it governs itself (*se gouverner*) like a republic.

C. (§§ 333-335.) 1. Our family came to the United States from England when I was only ten years old. 2. At present we are scattered (*disperser*) almost everywhere. 3. My parents live in New Orleans, where my father sells French and Spanish wines (§ 333, 2). 4. My eldest brother is American consul (*consul*, m.) at Havre. 5. My eldest sister has gone to India (*les Indes*) with her husband. 6. My second sister has been in Europe to study painting, and will come home next month, (in) passing through Canada. 7. One of my brothers has gone into business in South America, in Peru (*Pérou*, m.). 8. My youngest brother and I are commercial travellers (*com-mis voyageur*). 9. We often travel in southern France, in Spain (*Espagne*, f.), and even in the Netherlands (*Pays-Bas*, m. pl.). 10. Last summer we visited Switzerland to make the ascent (*ascension*, f.) of Mt. Blanc (*le mont Blanc*, m.). 11. The whole family hopes to meet next year, and then we shall have many things to relate.

EXERCISE XV, a.

THE ADJECTIVE.

A. (§§ 336-343.) Re-write the following, making the adjective in parenthesis agree in each case with the noun which it qualifies: 1. Une réponse (*bref*). 2. Sa vie (*public*). 3. L'armée (*turc*). 4. L'histoire (*grec*). 5. Des forêts (*épais*). 6. Plusieurs (*gentil petit*) filles. 7. Deux sœurs (*jumeau*). 8. La cavalerie (*léger*). 9. Ma chanson (*favori*). 10. Mes (*meilleur*) plumes. 11. Des espérances (*flatteur*). 12. Une conscience (*accusateur*). 13. Les (*vieux*) chansons (*français*). 14. Des principes (*libéral*). 15. Des accidents (*fatal*). 16. Des tables de chêne (*carré*). 17. Les nations (*grec et romain*). 18. Des rubans (*rose*).

B. (§§ 336-358.) 1. I know those old ladies well; they are our neighbours. 2. What a fine-looking man! 3. The newly married couple had just left the church. 4. When I was young, I used to go barefoot to school. 5. He is getting richer and richer. 6. He is richer than people (*on*) believe. 7. The older one is, the wiser one should be. 8. My brother is older than I by four years. 9. That man is bad, but his brother is still worse. 10. The dearer that bread is, the less of it we shall buy. 11. Men are often the most unhappy when they ought to be most happy.

C. (§§ 336-358.) 1. I am a Swiss, and my country is one of the smallest in Europe. 2. Italy, for example, situated to the south (*sud*, m.) of Switzerland, is much larger and more populous (*peuplé*). 3. Our climate (*climat*, m.), however, is less hot and more agreeable than that of Italy. 4. Our beautiful lakes and mountains are visited every year by thousands (*millier*, m.) of foreign travellers. 5. The Swiss government is republican (*républicain*), and our laws are the best in the world. 6. Our cities are much smaller than those of Italy. 7. The Swiss speak, in general, either the French or the German language.

EXERCISE XVI, a.

THE ADJECTIVE, *continued*.

A. (§§ 336-358.) 1. I have just seen that pretended nobleman go by. 2. I love that gentleman; he is so kind to children. 3. Are you ready to start? 4. I am sorry to say that

the train is gone. 5. We are charmed with the beautiful present you gave (*faire*) us. 6. You are not angry with me, are you? 7. I do not like that man; he is too severe with his children. 8. That is a nice little girl; she is so polite to everybody. 9. That little boy is very clever at history and arithmetic. 10. That army is weak in number[s]. 11. We must be charitable to everybody. 12. Living languages are more useful than dead languages. 13. We must not confound the verbal adjectives with the present participles. 14. The more learned that man becomes, the less generous he becomes.

B. (§§ 336-358.) 1. My native (*natal*) village is not so large or so fine as the city; yet I love it. 2. The houses are not so beautiful as those of the city; but there are some very pretty ones (§§ 324, 367), and each one has its courtyard (*cour*, f.) and garden. 3. The streets are not paved (*pavé*), but they are well cared for (*entretenu*) and very clean (*propre*). 4. We have a fine square planted with trees, and a fountain (*fontaine*, f.) of cool water. 5. We have, besides, a good church and a town-hall (*mairie*, f.), quite new, with a large room where the town-council (*conseil municipal*, m.) meets. 6. Around the village there are orchards full of fine fruit (*fruitier*) trees. 7. Near the village there is a vineyard (*vignoble*, m.) which furnishes us with the best [of] grapes. 8. Tell me if all that is not magnificent — that fresh (*fraîs*) verdure (*verdure*, f.) and those flowers which smell so sweet! 9. Tell me too if those strong and sturdy (*robuste*) peasants, who dwell there, are not happier than the idle people of the great cities!

EXERCISE XVII, a.

THE PERSONAL PRONOUN.

A. Complete the following, as above: 1. Je n'y pensais pas. 2. Voilà la boîte; j'y mets les plumes. 3. Ne vous en allez pas encore. 4. Ne lui en demandez pas. 5. Je ne veux pas les leur ôter (*take away*). 6. Je ne lui en donnerai pas. 7. Je ne le lui ai pas donné. 8. Dépêche-toi.

B. (§§ 359-373.) 1. I was thinking of you, when you came in. 2. As soon as the child saw his mother, he ran to her. 3. Are you that young man's sister? — I am. 4. Are you satisfied, madam? — I am. 5. Are you Americans? — We are. 6. Are you the gentlemen we met yesterday? — We are. 7. Why do you tell me to be brave? I am so already. 8. Tell

me where he lives, if you know. 9. There is the box; put the pens into it. 10. Go there, my child, but do not stay there. 11. Let us not go away; let them laugh at us, if they will. 12. That boy has your knife; take it away from him. 13. That boy has apples and pears; let us ask him for some. 14. He will not give us any.

C. (§§ 365-373.) 1. Will you write to your cousin that we expect her? 2. Yes, I shall tell her so in this letter. 3. Will you read me your letter, when you have finished it? 4. No, I will not read it to you. 5. Why do you not wish to read it to me? 6. Because I never read my letters to other people (§ 406, 2, b). 7. I beg (*en prier*) you, read it to me; it will be the first and last time that I shall ask you to read me one of your letters. 8. Very well, listen to me. 9. It is well written, but you have forgotten to tell her one important thing. 10. What is it? 11. (*De*) Not to come to see us on Saturday, for we shall not be at home. 12. I shall tell her so in a postscript (*post scriptum*, m.). 13. Yes, do so, if you please; but hasten, because the post-office closes (*se fermer*) at ten o'clock.

EXERCISE XVIII, a.

THE PERSONAL PRONOUN, *continued*.

A. (§§ 359-373.) Substitute corresponding pronominal constructions for the substantival constructions in the following: 1. J'attends Jean et Marie. 2. On lui a volé son argent. 3. Je donne de l'argent au frère, pas à la sœur. 4. Je vous présenterai à ma tante. 5. Cette maison est à M. Poirier. 6. Il est aimé de ses fils. 7. Il vient de l'Europe. 8. Je ne veux pas de ces mauvaises pommes. 9. Je ne pense plus à cela. 10. Je l'ai envoyé pour dire la nouvelle à mes parents. 11. Nous leur ferons dire la vérité. 12. Ne prêtez pas ma plume à Marie. 13. Voici de l'encre. 14. Donnez de l'encre aux enfants.

B. (§§ 366-373.) 1. Everyone for himself is too often the maxim of men. 2. One should not always think of one's self. 3. Have you any money? — I have, but I should like to have more. 4. He who plants a tree does not always eat its fruit. 5. My brother has gone home, and I am going (there) too. 6. There is some water; give us some, for we are thirsty. 7. Do not give them any; they do not need any. 8. Do not

listen to them; they are making sport of us. 9. There is my hat; give it to me, if you please. 10. Let us go away; it is getting late. 11. What are you doing, naughty dog? Go away. 12. Our duty to our parents is to love and obey them. 13. It was (is) I who saw him go away.

C. (§§ 366-373; translate "you" by the 2nd singular.) 1. Has your cousin invited you alone? 2. No, he has invited us all, but especially (*surtout*) you and me. 3. We shall go to his house this evening, shall we not? 4. Yes, yes, we shall go together, George and Robert, you and I, and my sisters. 5. Tell me, if you please, how long (*combien de temps*) we shall stay there. 6. When shall we return? 7. Oh! you are thinking already of our return? 8. I am not thinking of it yet; let us not speak of it. 9. When we have enjoyed ourselves there for some hours, we shall begin to think of coming home. 10. You are right. 11. We shall not go away before midnight; I am sure (of it).

EXERCISE XIX, a.

POSSESSIVES.

A. (§§ 374-376.) 1. My brother and sister have gone away; they will not be back till Wednesday. 2. Our friends are coming by the railway; yours are coming by the steamer. 3. One should never fail to (*de*) pay one's debts. 4. The duke was presented to the queen, and he kissed her (§ 328, a) hand. 5. I shall not forget his kindness as long as my heart beats. 6. It was so warm that I could not close my eyes all night (*de toute la nuit*). 7. Close your eyes, and open your mouth. 8. He closes his eyes to the light. 9. He fell and broke his arm. 10. It is very cold this morning; will you not warm your hands at the fire? 11. Thank you; my hands are not cold. 12. My head aches this morning; I did not close my eyes last night (*cette nuit*).

B. (§§ 374-377.) 1. He has a house of his own. 2. Whom do you mean; his aunt or her aunt? 3. This house is mine, not yours. 4. A friend of mine who is a doctor told me this. 5. The difference between mine and thine is not always easy to determine. 6. I must say that his views are different from my own on that point. 7. Whose watch is that? — It is mine. 8. Those on our side (*les nôtres*) behaved themselves like heroes. 9. They lost their lives fighting for their country.

EXERCISE XX, a.

DEMONSTRATIVES.

A. (§§ 380-383, 385, 388.) 1. I have never read that book, but I have read this one. 2. Our house and our neighbour's are both of (*en*) brick. 3. Your house is very fine, but I like your brother John's better. 4. The man (*celui*) of whom you were speaking has come back. 5. These gentlemen are Russians. 6. Gambetta and Hugo were distinguished men; the former was an orator, the latter a poet. 7. What o'clock is it now? 8. It is half-past ten. 9. What day of the month is it (§ 427, 2)? 10. To-day is the tenth. 11. It is they who have done it, I am sure (of it). 12. You can do this; it is easy. 13. Give me this; keep that for yourself. 14. It is difficult to translate the word "that" into French. 15. I am sure that that "that" that that man uses is superfluous. 16. What we were speaking about has happened. 17. What I am thinking of is the way of preventing that misfortune. 18. He has lost all his money, which is sad.

B. (§§ 378-388.) 1. Who is that gentleman, yonder? 2. It is Mr. Carat, the jeweller (*bijoutier*, m.). 3. That large shop on this side of the street belongs to him. 4. Which do you mean? 5. The one which those ladies have just entered. 6. By the way, that reminds (*rappeler*) me that I haven't yet bought, for my nephews (*neveu*, m.) and nieces (*nièce*, f.), those presents which I promised them. 7. Well, you will not find a better opportunity than this. 8. That is true. 9. Let us go in at once. 10. I am not [one] of those who like to postpone (*remettre*) things; besides, I have heard (say) that what one buys at Carat's is always good. 11. Let us make our purchases at this counter (*comptoir*, m.). 12. What do you wish, gentlemen? 13. Show us some cuff-buttons (*bouton*, m. *de manchettes*), if you please. 14. Here are some very pretty ones; these are of (*en*) silver, at five francs a pair; those are of gold, and will cost you twenty-five francs. 15. I have just sold a pair (of them) like these to the Duke of D. 16. That makes no difference to me; but, tell me, is this gold of good quality? 17. It is the best (which) we use for articles of this kind. 18. In that case I shall take these, but you must give me that pretty box to put them into (*y*). 19. It would be a great sacrifice (*sacrifice*, m.); we shall speak of that later. 20. You wish to see some brooches (*broche*, f.)? 21.

What do you say to (*de*) this one? 22. It is a magnificent brooch, no doubt, but too dear for me, I fear. 23. Show me some cheaper brooches. 24. How do you like (*trouver*) that one which is in the show-case (*vitrine*, f.)? 25. Very fine! That is what I like: something elegant (*élégant*) and solid (*solide*) at the same time. 26. Have you another of the same kind? 27. Let us see; yes, these two are exactly alike (*pareil*), and they will cost you a hundred francs, if you take both. 28. We shall not dispute about (*sur*) the price, and I shall take a second pair of those buttons; so that there will be no difficulty about (*au sujet de*) the boxes, I hope. 29. Take the ones which suit you best, and I will make a parcel (*paquet*, m.) of all this, and send it to your house this evening.

EXERCISE XXI, a.

INTERROGATIVES AND RELATIVES.

A. Complete the following, as above: 1. Elle s'est cassé le bras. 2. Elle est tombée. 3. C'est moi qui l'ai vue le premier. 4. Qui êtes-vous allé chercher? 5. C'est ce dont je me plains. 6. Il a tout ce dont il a besoin.

B. (§§ 389-402.) 1. What man is that who has just passed? 2. What ladies are those? 3. Whose house is that which has been burnt? 4. How happy you ought to be! 5. What has become of my watch? Tell me what has become of it. 6. Who is that singing in the parlour? 7. It is we who have the right to complain; not you. 8. The man I speak of has gone away without paying his debts. 9. What I was expecting was that he would come back soon. 10. I thank you, sir, for (*de*) all you have done for me. 11. Don't mention it; it was only my duty.

C. (§§ 389-402.) 1. What are your plans (*projet*, m.) for to-day? 2. I don't know what I shall do; the whole house is upset (*bouleverser*). 3. We have had an accident. 4. Tell me what has happened; is it serious (*sérieux*)? 5. One of my little sisters has broken her arm. 6. What a misfortune! Which of your sisters is it? 7. (It is) Alice (*Alice*), the youngest. 8. How did the accident happen? 9. She fell from the garden fence on which she had climbed. 10. Who was with her at the time when (*où*) she fell? 11. Nobody; it was (is) I who (the) first found her. 12. My mother thought at first it was nothing, but when she saw what was the matter (*s'agir*), she

said to me, "What are you thinking of? Go and get the doctor." 13. Whom did you go for? 14. Dr. Ricin, whose son is in our class, you know. 15. He is a man in whom everybody has confidence. 16. I found him busy with his patients, several of whom were waiting. 17. When I told him who I was, and what I wanted, he came at once. 18. He said to my sister, "What is the matter?"—[a] question to which she did not know what to answer. 19. Then he examined the arm, which was much swollen (*enflé*). 20. Fortunately (*heureusement*) we had, in the house, everything (*tout*) that he needed to set (*remettre*) the arm, which he did at once. 21. All that you tell me is very sad. 22. It is evident (*évident*) that we must postpone (*remettre*) the walk which I came to propose to you for this afternoon.

EXERCISE XXII, a.

INDEFINITES.

A. Complete the following, as above: 1. Vous feriez bien d'avouer la vérité. 2. Je dirai tout ce qui est arrivé. 3. Ne croyez pas cela. 4. Il s'est dépêché de mettre les pommes dans un sac. 5. Je ne me doutais de rien.

B. (§§ 403-407.) 1. Listen, (my) boys (*enfant*, m.). 2. I have been told that somebody stole some apples from (*dans*) Mr. Poirier's orchard yesterday evening; do you know anything about it, Robert? 3. Yes, sir, I heard (say) the same thing myself this morning; several persons were speaking of it in the village. 4. In fact (*en effet*) it seems that everybody knows it, and some accuse (*accuser*) the pupils of this school. 5. I do not think that you have stolen (*voler*) anything. 6. However, whoever conceals the crime of other people for any reason whatever is guilty (*coupable*) in a certain sense; so that you would do well not to conceal anything, and to tell all you know about it. 7. Have you ever been in that orchard, Robert? 8. Many a time, sir. 9. Certain people say that you were in it yesterday. 10. Do not believe such a story, sir. 11. Whoever he is who told you that deceived you. 12. I am accused without any cause. 13. Come! confess the truth. 14. Very well, it is true that I was going past the orchard towards nine o'clock with some of my comrades. 15. Not one of us thought of going in. 16. George and I climbed on the fence to see the orchard. 17. We were astonished to see sev-

eral persons quite near the fence. 18. They had gathered a great many apples; suddenly (*tout à coup*) one of these individuals shouted, "Every one for himself," and then they hastened to put the apples into bags and even into their pockets. 19. No movement (*mouvement*, m.) of the thieves escaped us, because they suspected nothing. 20. After some time, thinking that nobody had seen them, each one of them put his bag on his back and ran off (*se sauver*). 21. Both of us saw them go away. 22. The other boys also saw them come out. 23. That is all. 24. I am very glad that you have explained yourself so well, for your mother has been quite uneasy (*inquiet*) about you (*à votre sujet*). 25. I shall have the pleasure of telling her that I have still every confidence in you.

EXERCISE XXIII, a.

THE ADVERB.

A. Complete the following, as above: 1. Il n'aura ni temps ni patience. 2. Je crains qu'ils ne soient malades. 3. Ils ont dit que non. 4. Je ne l'oublierai de la vie. 5. Nous n'irons plus voir cet homme.

B. (§§ 408-420.) 1. My neighbour, Mr. S., is a very eccentric (*excentrique*) man. 2. He has neither relatives nor friends in this town, and he seems to be interested in (*s'intéresser à*) nothing but (*que*) his studies. 3. He hardly ever (say: almost never) goes out. 4. It is more than three weeks since I saw him in the street. 5. Nobody comes to see him, and he doesn't go to see anybody. 6. He lives almost alone, and does nothing but read, eat and sleep. 7. One must (*il faut*) admit that he is an educated man. 8. There is hardly anything (cf. 3 above) he doesn't know. 9. Besides, he is very rich, but less rich than he was five years ago, I think. 10. A week after his arrival here, I went one day to his house to invite him to dinner. 11. I did not find a living soul in the house except (*excepté*) himself. 12. After a few compliments, I approached (*aborder*) the question of the dinner. 13. Here is our conversation (*conversation*, f.) word for word. 14. I am afraid that you sometimes find yourself very lonely (*seul*) in this big house. 15. Not at all; nothing pleases me as much as being alone. 16. Could you not come and dine with us next Sunday? 17. I think not. 18. Yes, yes, come; my wife will be charmed to see you. 19. She is sorry not to have seen you already. 20.

No, no, impossible for (*que*, etc.) me to come! I have so much to do that I have hardly (the) time to sleep. 21. My company would give pleasure neither to you nor to your family. 22. Let us say no more about it. 23. Do you fear you will not be welcome? 24. Perhaps not (§ 420, 1, a), but I avoid, as much as possible, being invited (*que l'on*, etc.); I have my reasons. 25. Come, no more excuses (*excuse*, f.)! 26. I have told you I will not (cf. § 420, 1, a), and that is all. 27. My visit (*visite*, f.) had not lasted five minutes, but I shall not forget it while I live (§ 415, 2, d). 28. Never had I been insulted in that way. 29. I shall certainly not go again (*plus*) to see that individual. 30. As I was going out he exclaimed, laughing, "Take care that the dog doesn't bite you." 31. I cannot (*ne saurais*) explain his conduct (*conduite*, f.) unless he is half mad (*à moitié fou*).

EXERCISE XXIV, a.

THE NUMERAL.

A. (§§ 421, 422, 427.) 1. The progress of the United States during the 19th century is one of the most remarkable facts of history. 2. One may say that the existence (*existence*, f.) of the American nation dates (*dater*) from 1776, [the] year of the Declaration of Independence (*déclaration*, f. *de l'indépendance*, f.). 3. At that time George IV. was king of England. 4. The war (*guerre*, f.) of independence ended in 1782, peace was signed on the 30th of November, and was proclaimed (*proclamer*) on the 11th of April, 1783. 5. George Washington, the hero of the war, became the first president (*président*, m.) of the United States. 6. He died in the last year of the 18th century, on the 14th of December (*décembre*, m.), 1799. 7. In 1800 the United States possessed (*posséder*) a territory (*territoire*, m.) of 418,305 square (*carré*) miles, and had a population of 5,308,483. 8. In 1900 the area (*superficie*, f.) of the country was (of) 3,846,595 square miles, and the population (of) 76,304,799, while (§ 459, 2) the number of states and territories had increased from 16 in 1800 to 51 in 1900. 9. The most important event (*événement*, m.) of the century was the civil (*civil*) war, which began on the 12th of April, 1861, and ended on the 9th of April, 1865.

B. (§§ 427, 429.) 1. What day of the month is this? 2. It is the 13th of July. 3. Really! Then it will be the 14th

to-morrow, the day of the great national holiday (*fête*, f.). 4. Would you not like to spend the afternoon at Versailles? 5. I should be very glad (of it). 6. At what o'clock shall we set out? 7. Let us see the time-table (*indicateur*, m.). 8. The first afternoon train starts at 12.35; there is another at 12.55, a third at 1.30, and still another at 2.00. 9. The two o'clock train suits me best. 10. Let us take it then. 11. To return [in] the evening there are a great many trains. 12. Here is one which reaches Paris at 11.05, and another which arrives at 11.55. 13. Oh! that will be too late; let us rather take this one which arrives at 10.15. 14. What time is it now? 15. It is exactly eight o'clock, and we have a great deal to do; let us hasten.

C. (§§ 421, 422, 424.) 1. In France they (*on*) indicate (*indiquer*) weights (*poids*, m.) by *grammes* (m.), measures (*mesure*, f.) by *litres* (m.), and distances (*distance*, f.) by *mètres* (m.). 2. A thousand grammes make a *kilogramme* (m.), and a thousand metres make a *kilomètre* (m.). 3. The kilogramme equals (*équivaloir à*) about two American pounds, the litre equals about a "quart," and the kilometre about (the) sixty-two hundredths of our mile. 4. To indicate larger or smaller quantities and measures, they make use of multiples (*multiple*, m.) and fractions (*fraction*, f.), for example, (of) the *hectolitre* (m.), which equals a hundred litres, (of) the *centimètre* (m.), which is the hundredth part of a metre, (of) the *milligramme* (m.), which is the thousandth part of a gramme.

D. (§ 430, etc.) 1. Our neighbour, Mr. Bernier, has three sons. 2. The youngest is eight years old; the second son is three years older than the youngest, and the eldest is two years older than the second. 3. Mrs. Bernier is thirty-eight years old. 4. The age of Mr. Bernier is equal (*égal*) to (the) four-sevenths of the sum of the age[s] of his wife and sons. 5. How old is he?

E. (§ 428, etc.) 1. The floor (*plancher*, m.) of my dining-room is 5.25 metres (5 *mètres*, 25 *centimètres*) long by 4.75 metres wide. 2. How many metres of carpet (*tapis*, m.) shall I need to cover this floor, the carpet being 75 centimetres wide?

F. (§ 424, etc.) 1. A merchant bought a hundred litres of wine for one hundred and ten francs. 2. He sold the half of it at one franc fifty centimes a litre, and one (the) fifth

at two francs. 3. At what price must he sell what remains to gain (*gagner*) in all 115 fr. 50?

G. (§ 427, etc.) 1. The first two volumes of a work contain fifteen chapters, and the third contains as many chapters as the first two together. 2. How many chapters does the work contain?

EXERCISE XXV, a.

THE PREPOSITION.

(§§ 431-454.) 1. I will tell you what happened to me in St. Petersburg (*Saint-Petersbourg*) about ten years ago. 2. It was in winter. 3. I was staying (*demeurer*) at a friend's house, and for two days I did not go out on account of the cold. 4. On the third day, after (the) breakfast, I looked out of the window, and, as it seemed to be less cold, I determined to (§ 281) go out. 5. I intended to go on foot through the city to call (*faire une visite*) at the French embassy (*ambassade*, f.). 6. I prepared (*armer*) myself against the cold, putting on a fur cap (*bonnet*, m. de *fourrure*) and three overcoats (*manteau*, m.), (the) one over the other. 7. It was one by my watch when I set out, and I thought [to] arrive before three. 8. On the way, about (*vers*) two o'clock, I stopped for a moment before the post-office (*bureau*, m. de *poste*), which is a fine building of (*en*) stone. 9. Two or three persons went past shouting, one after another, "noss," and they seemed to be laughing at me. 10. On the other side of the square a *moujik*, with a red (*roux*) beard, taller than I by a head, met me, and began to rub my nose with snow. 11. It was very kind of him, as I learned afterwards. 12. Believing that he wished to amuse himself at my expense, I threw him on the ground, pulled off (*arracher*) his cap, and trod it under foot. 13. Two policemen (*agent de police*) ran up (*accourir*) and seized me; and a captain, whom I knew by sight, happened to pass. 14. As he knew French, he soon learned what was the matter, and explained my action to the policemen, who then set me free (*en liberté*). 15. Turning (*se tourner*) to (*vers*) me, he told me that "noss" meant "nose," that my nose had been frozen, and that without the kindness of that man I should have lost it. 16. With tears in my eyes, for it was very cold, I sought my benefactor to thank him for having saved my nose, but the *moujik* had disappeared. 17. From that day I did not go out without watching over my nose, which remained tender (*sensible*) for several weeks.

EXERCISE XXVI, a.

THE CONJUNCTION.

(§§ 455-459.) 1. Both he and his brother were with us. 2. That lazy [fellow] neither works nor plays. 3. These poor people are without bread, or money to buy any. 4. He does not believe what you say; nor I either. 5. We have not gone away; nor shall we. 6. As soon as you are there and have time, will you go and see my brother? 7. When bread is dear and the weather is cold, the poor suffer. 8. I think we shall go away the day after to-morrow. 9. If your friend comes to the meeting and I am there, I shall speak to him of that affair. 10. Since you went away yesterday, George has done nothing but play. 11. Since every action brings its recompense with it, we must pay attention to what we do. 12. While I was doing my exercise, you were writing your letters. 13. The good shall be rewarded, while the bad shall be punished. 14. When I saw him, he was working in his field.

VOCABULARY.

FRENCH-ENGLISH.

A.

a [a], 3 sg. pres. indic. *avoir*.
à [a], to, towards, at, for, in, into, around, by, with, from; — *votre montre*, by your watch.
abaisser [abese], to lower; *s'—*, to lower one's self, fall, sink, be lowered.
abandonner [abōdone], to abandon, forsake.
abattre [abatr], to throw down, knock down, cast down, dishearten; *abattu*, p.p., disheartened, discouraged, depressed.
abécédaire [abesede:r], m., primer, spelling-book.
abîme [abi:m], m., abyss.
abondamment [abōdamō], abundantly.
abondant [abōdō], abundant.
abord (d') [d abō:r], at first, first (of all), at the outset.
abreuver [abroeve], to water, fill, soak.
abri [abri], m., shelter, cover; *à l'— de*, in the shelter of.
abriter [abrite], to shelter, shield.
absorber [apsorbe], to absorb, engross.
absurde [apsyrd], absurd.
abuser [abyze], to make a bad use (of, *de*), abuse.
académique [akademik], academic.
accent [aksō], m., accent, tone.
accepter [aksepte], to accept.
accident [aksidō], m., accident, incident.
acclimater [aklimote], to acclimatize; *s'—*, to become acclimatized.

accompagner [akōpape], to accompany.
accorder [akorde], to grant, concede.
accoster [akoste], to come alongside (nav.).
accoupler [akuple], to couple, fasten.
accourir [akuri:r], § 164, to run or hasten up; run or hasten to one's aid.
accourut [akury], 3 sg. p. def. *accourir*.
accoutumer [akutyme], to accustom, habituate.
accusateur [akyzatō:r], accusing.
accuser [akyze], to accuse, blame, reproach.
achat [aʃa], m., purchase.
acheter [aʃte], § 158, to buy, purchase.
acheminer (s') [s aʃmine], to take one's way, set out.
achever [aʃve], § 158, to finish, complete; — *de + infin.*, to finish.
acier [asje], m., steel.
acquérir [akeri:r], § 162, to acquire.
acquis [aki], p.p. *acquérir*.
acteur [aktō:r], m., actor.
action [aksjō], f., action.
actuellement [aktuelmō], now, at this very time.
addition [adisjō], f., bill, reckoning.
adieu [adjø], m., good-bye, farewell.
adjurer [adzyre], to adjure, beseech.
admettre [admetr], § 198, to admit.

admirablement [admirabləmō], admirably.

admirer [admire], to admire.

admission [admisjō], f., admission.

adosser (s') [s adose], to lean one's back (against, *à, contre*).

adresse [adres], f., address, skill, dexterity.

adresser [adrese], to address; *s'*—, to address one's self, be addressed or directed, apply, have recourse.

adversaire [advèrsɛ:r], m., adversary, opponent.

affaire [afɛ:r], f., affair, business, matter; pl., things, business.

affectueux [afektuø], affectionate.

affiche [afɛʃ], f., placard, poster.

afficher [afɛʃ], to post up.

affliger [afliʒ], § 156; to afflict, vex, grieve; *s'*—, to grieve, be troubled, be sorrowful, fret.

affreux [afʁø], frightful, horrible.

afin de [afɛ̃ də] + infin., in order to.

afin que [afɛ̃ kə], in order that, that (takes subjunctive).

âge [ɑ:ʒ], m., age, century, time; *en*—*de*, of an age to; *quel*—*a-t-il*?, how old is he?

âgé [ɑʒe], aged, old.

agile [aʒil], nimble, swift.

agir [azi:r], to act, operate, work, move, manage.

agiter (s') [s azite], to stir, move, be or grow restless.

agneau [apo], m., lamb.

agréable [agʀeabl], agreeable, pleasant.

ah! [ɑ or ɑ:], ah!, hah!, oh!

ai [e], 1 sg. pres. ind. *avoir*.

aide [eid], m., helper; — *de camp*, aide-de-camp.

aider [ede], to aid, help, assist.

aie [e], 1 sg. pres. subj. and 2 sg. impv. *avoir*.

aigu [egy], acute; shrill, penetrating.

aile [el], f., wing.

aimable [emabl], kind, amiable.

aimer [eme], to love, like; — *mieux*, to prefer.

ainé [ene], eldest.

ainsi [ɛsi], thus, so; — *que*, as, just as; *pour* — *dire*, so to say.

air [ɛ:r], m., air, atmosphere; air, look, appearance; *à l'*—, *en l'*—, in the air; *le grand* —, the open air; *en plein* —, in the open air; *avoir l'* — *de*, to seem to.

airain [erɛ̃], m., brass, bronze.

aise [ɛ:z], f., gladness; ease, convenience; *à ton* —, comfortably, at your ease, just as you like, suit yourself.

aisé [eze], easy.

aisément [ezemō], easily.

ait [ɛ], 3 sg. pres. subj. *avoir*.

ajouter [aʒute], to add.

Albret (d') [d albʀe]; *Henri* —, father of Henry IV. of France.

Allah [allo], m., Allah.

allemand [almō], adj., German; *l'*—, m., German (the language).

aller [ale], § 160, to go; — + infin., to go to, go and; *y*—*de bon cœur*, to go at (a thing) with spirit; *s'en* —, to go away, depart, set out; *allez-vous-en*, go away; *qu'elle s'en aille!*, let her go (away)!; *allons!*, come!, courage!, up!, arise!; — *à la rencontre* *de*, to go to meet; — *chercher*, go for, go and get; — *trouver*, go and find, go to.

allonger [alɔʒe], § 156, to lengthen, stretch out; — *un coup*, to deal or administer a blow; *s'*—, to stretch out, extend.

allumer [alyme], to light.

alors [alɔ:r], then.

Alsace [alzas], n. pr. f., Alsatia.

alternatif [alternatif], alternate, alternating.

amadou [amadu], m., tinder, punk; *babines d'* —, red lips (of animals).

ambition [ābisjō], f., ambition.

âme [ɑ:m], f., soul, heart.

amener [amne], § 158, to bring, lead.

américain [amerikɛ̃], American.
amertume [amertym], f., bitterness.
ami [ami], m., friend; *mon* —, my good fellow.
amie [ami], f., friend, loved one.
amical [amikal], friendly.
amirauté [amirote], f., admiralty.
amitié [amitje], f., friendship, affection.
amour [amuɪr], m. in sing. and f. in pl., love, affection; *un — de petite chèvre*, a dear little goat.
amoureux [amurø], enamoured, in love; — *à la folie*, madly in love.
amusant [amyzɑ̃], amusing.
amusement [amyzmɑ̃], m., amusement.
amuser [amyze], to amuse; *s' —*, to amuse or enjoy one's self, play.
an [ɑ̃], m., year; *avoir quarante —s*, to be forty years old, forty years of age; *le jour de l'An*, New Year's day.
ancien [ɑ̃sjɛ̃], ancient, old; former, *un —*, m., an ancient.
âne [ɑ̃n], m., ass, donkey.
anecdote [anegdɔt], f., anecdote.
Angelus [ɑ̃ʒelys], m., Angelus (a prayer in honour of the Incarnation), ringing bell for ditto.
anglais [ɑ̃gle], adj., English; n. m., Englishman; *l' —*, m., English.
anglaise [ɑ̃gleiz], f., running-hand (of writing).
angle [ɑ̃gl], m., angle, corner.
animal [animɑl], m., animal, beast.
animer (s') [s anime], to become animated, become lively.
anneau [ano], m., ring.
année [ane], f., year, twelvemonth; *l' — dernière*, last year.
annoncer [anɔ̃se], § 156, to announce, usher in; *s' —*, to announce one's self, be indicated, be evident.
annotation [anotasjɔ̃], f., annotation, note.

antichambre [ɑ̃tiʃɑ̃br], f., ante-chamber.
antique [ɑ̃tik], ancient.
août [u], m., August.
apercevoir [apersɔvwaɪr], § 213, to perceive, see, observe, notice; *s' —*, ditto.
aperçoit [aperswa], 3 sg. pres. indic. *apercevoir*.
aperçu [apersy], p.p. *apercevoir*.
aperçut [apersy], 3 sg. p. def. *apercevoir*.
apôtre [apoɪtr], m., apostle.
apparaître [apareɪtr], § 188, to appear.
appartement [apartemɑ̃], m., apartments, suite of rooms.
appartenir [apartɛniɪr], § 177, to belong (to, à).
appel [apel], m., call.
appeler [aple], § 158, to call; call in, summon; name; *s' —*, to be called, named; *comment s'appelle-t-il?*, what is his name?; *il s'appelle Jean Bart*, his name is Jean Bart.
applaudir [aplodiɪr], to applaud, clap (the hands).
appliquer [aplike], § 158, to apply; *s' —*, to apply one's self, work, set to work, take pains.
apporter [apɔrte], to bring (to, à).
apprendre [apɾɑ̃dr], § 202, to learn; teach.
apprenti [apɾiti], m., apprentice.
apprêter [aprete], to prepare, get ready.
apprivoiser [apɾivwaze], to tame (animals).
approche [apɾɔʃ], f., approach.
approcher [apɾɔʃe], intr., to approach, draw near; —*de*, ditto; *s' —*, to approach, draw near (to, *de*).
appuyer [apuije], § 157, to prop, support, lean, rest, press on; *appuyé*, p.p., leaning or supported (on, à); *s' —*, to support one's self, lean.
après [apɾe], after, next (to); adv., afterwards, after.

après-demain [apre dmã], the day after to-morrow.
après-midi [apre midi], m. f., afternoon.
aquilon [akilõ], m., north-wind.
arabe [arab], Arabian; *Arabe*, m., (an) Arabian.
Arabie [arabi], f., Arabia.
arbre [arbr], m., tree.
arbuste [arbyst], m., shrub.
Arc de Triomphe [ark də triõ:f], name of an arch in Paris.
arçon [arsõ], m., saddle-bow.
ardent [ardõ], fiery, eager, intense.
ardeur [ardœ:r], f., heat, burning heat.
argent [arõ], m., silver, money.
argument [argymõ], m., argument.
arithmétique [aritmetik], f., arithmetic.
arme [arm], f., arm, weapon; *aux* —s/ to arms!
armée [arme], f., army.
armer [arme], to arm, equip, fit out, provide; *s'—*, to arm, fortify, secure one's self.
armoire [armwair], f., cupboard, clothes-press.
Arnault [arno], French author, b. 1766, d. 1834.
arracher [araʃe], to pull out, snatch (from), extract (a tooth).
arranger [arõʒe], § 156, to arrange.
arrêter [arete], to stop, delay, stay, check, arrest; *s'—*, to stop, pause, give heed (to, *à*); *du monde arrêté*, people standing.
arrière [arjir], m., back part; *en—*, back(wards).
arriver [arive], to arrive (at, *à*, *dans*, *sur*); come, come to, come up; happen, occur; *les voilà qui arrivent*, see them coming (there).
arroser [aroze], to sprinkle, water (a garden, etc.).
article [artikl], m., article.
articuler [artikyle], to articulate, utter.
artillerie [artijri], f., artillery.
as [a], 2 sg. pres. indic. *avoir*.

ascension [asõsjõ], f., ascension; *la fête de l'Ascension*, Ascension day.
assassiner [asasine], to assassinate, murder.
asseoir(s') [s aswa:r], § 215, to sit down, seat one's self, be seated.
asseyant(s') [s asejõ], pres. part. *s'asseoir*.
assez [ase], enough, sufficiently; pretty, rather, quite, very; — *bon*, good enough.
assied(s') [s asje], 3 sg. pres. indic. *s'asseoir*.
assiette [asjet], f., plate.
assis [asi], p.p. *s'asseoir*, seated, sitting.
assistant [asistõ], m., person present, bystander.
assister [asiste], to be present (at, *à*), look upon.
assit(s') [s asi], 3 sg. past def. *s'asseoir*.
associé [asosje], m., partner.
assommer [asome], to knock down, beat to death.
assomption [asõpsjõ], f., assumption; *la fête de l'Assomption*, Assumption day.
assujettir [asyʒeti:r], to subdue, enthral, subject.
assurer [asyre], to assure.
astracan [astrakõ], astrakhan (a kind of fur).
attacher [ataʃe], to fasten, tie, make fast.
attendre [atõ:dr], § 210, to wait; wait for, expect.
attentif [atõtif], attentive.
attention [atõsjõ], f., attention; *faire —*, to pay attention.
attentivement [atõtivmõ], attentively.
attestation [atestasjõ], f., certificate.
attirail [atira:j], m., apparatus, gear, paraphernalia.
attirer [atire], to attract, draw.
attrait [atre], m., attraction, charm.
au [o], contr. of *à + le*.

aube [oɪb], f., dawn.
aubépine [obepin], f., hawthorn.
auberge [ɔberʒ], f., inn.
aubergiste [ɔbersist], m., inn-keeper.
aucun [okœ], any, no; *ne* . . . —, no, none, no one.
au-dessus [odsy], above; — *de*, above.
audience [odjɑ̃s], f., audience, interview.
Auguste [ɔgyst], m., Augustus.
aujourd'hui [ɔʒurdɥi], to-day, now; — *en huit*, a week from to-day.
auparavant [oparavɑ̃], adv., before.
auprès de [opre də], into the presence of, to.
auquel [okel], contr. of *à* + *lequel*.
aura [ɔra], 3 sg. fut. *avoir*.
aurai [ɔre], 1 sg. fut. *avoir*.
auraient [ɔre], 3 pl. cond. *avoir*; — *eu* (obs. form), would have.
aurais [ɔre], 1 sg. cond. *avoir*.
aurait [ɔre], 3 sg. cond. *avoir*.
auras [ɔra], 2 sg. fut. indic. *avoir*.
aurez [ɔre], 2 pl. fut. *avoir*.
auriez [ɔrje], 2 pl. cond. *avoir*.
auront [ɔrɔ̃], 3 pl. fut. *avoir*.
ausculter [oskylte], to auscultate, sound (lungs, etc.).
aussi [osi], too, also, likewise; as (in comparison); — *bien*, besides; — *bien que*, as well as.
aussitôt [osito], immediately, forthwith, at once.
austère [ostɛr], austere, severe, rigorous.
autant [otɑ̃], as or so much, as or so many; — *de*, ditto; *d'* — *plus*, the more so; *bien* —, quite as much.
automne [otɔ̃], m., autumn; *en* —, in autumn.
autour de [otuir dɛ], prep., around, round.
autre [otr], other; *les* —s, others, the others, other people; *d'* —s, others; *l'un et l'autre* —, both; *les uns les autres* —s, one another, both, all; *nous* —s *Français*, we

Frenchmen; *bien* — *chose*, something very different.
autrefois [otrɛfwɑ̃], formerly, once.
autrement [otrɛmɑ̃], otherwise; — *encornées que toi*, with horns very different from yours.
aux [o], contr. of *à* + *les*.
avaient [ave], 3 pl. impf. indic. *avoir*.
avait [ave], 3 sg. impf. indic. *avoir*.
avance [avɑ̃s], f., advance; *par* —, beforehand.
avancer [avɑ̃se], § 156, to advance, forward; *s'* —, to advance, move forward; *avancé*, advanced; proficient.
avant [avɑ̃], before; *en* —, forward; *la tête en* —, head first, head foremost; — *de*, before.
avant que [avɑ̃ kə], conj. + subj., before.
avare [avair], m., miser; *l'Avare*, a comedy by Molière.
avec [avek], with; — *le temps qu'il fait*, in such weather as this.
avenir [avniʁ], m., future.
aventure [avɑ̃tyʁ], f., adventure; *d'* —, by chance.
aventurer (s') [s'avɑ̃tyʁ], to venture.
avenue [avny], f., avenue.
avertir [avɛrtiʁ], to warn, inform; *averti*, warned, put on one's guard.
avez [ave], 2 sg. pres. indic. *avoir*.
aviser [avize], to consider, take counsel.
avoir [avwaʁ], § 154, to have; obtain, receive, get; *y* —, impers., *il y a*, there is, there are; *il y avait*, there was, etc.; *il y a huit jours*, a week ago; *il y eut*, there was, etc.; *il eut le moulin*, he obtained, received, the mill; *cet enfant a quelque chose*, there is something the matter with that child; *qu'est-ce que vous avez?*, what is the matter with you?; *il a dix ans*, he is ten

years old, ten years of age; *vous n'avez qu'à parler*, you have only to speak; — *raison*, to be (in the) right; *en* — *à*, be angry with.
avons [avɔ̃], 1 pl. pres. indic. *avoir*.

avouer [avwe], to confess, declare, avow, acknowledge.

avril [avril], m., April.

ayant [ejã], pres. part. *avoir*.

ayez [eje], 2 pl. impv. *avoir*.

ayons [ejɔ̃], 1 pl. pres. subj. *avoir*.

B.

babine [babin], f., lip (of animals); — *s' d'amadou*, red lips.

babiole [babjol], f., toy, trinket.

bah! [ba], pooh! pshaw!

baigner [beje], tr. to bathe, lave; *se* —, to bathe (intr.).

baiser [beze], to kiss.

baiser [beze], m., kiss.

baissér [bese], to lower, let down, hang (down); — *la tête*, bow down, hang one's head; *se* —, to stoop down, stoop.

balancer [balɔ̃se], § 156, to balance, swing, wave; *se* —, intr., to swing, rock, sway.

banane [banan], f., banana.

banc [bã], m., bench, seat.

bander [bãde], to bind up.

banque [bã:k], f., bank.

banquier [bãkje], m., banker.

barbarisme [barbarism], m., barbarism.

barbiche [barbiʃ], f., tuft of beard, tufted beard.

barrer [bare], to bar, obstruct, block.

Bart (Jean) [ʒã ba:r], famous French seaman, b. at Dunkirk 1651, d. 1702.

bas [ba], low; *là* —, over there, yonder; *tout* —, in an undertone, to one's self, softly, silently; *en* —, below, at the bottom, down (below), down stairs; *d'en* —, from down below.

Bas-Canada [ba kanada], m., Lower Canada.

Bastille [basti:j], f., Bastile.

bataille [bata:j], f., battle.

bataillon [batojɔ̃], m., battalion, squadron.

bateau [bato], m., boat; *se promener en* —, to go for a boat-ride, row, sail (in a boat).

bâtiment [batimã], m., building, edifice; ship, vessel.

bâtir [bati:r], to build.

bâton [batɔ̃], m., stick; stroke (in learning to write); *coup de* —, blow with a stick.

batterie [batri], f., battery (milit.).

battre [batr], § 180, to beat, strike; thresh; — *des mains*, clap the hands; — *le briquet*, to strike a light with flint and steel; *battu*, beaten, wrought; *se* —, to fight; *battant*, swinging, swinging open, flapping.

bavarder [bavarde], to babble, prattle, gossip.

béant [beã], gaping.

beau, bel, belle, pl. beaux, belles [bo, bel, bel, bo, bel], beautiful, handsome, fine; *au* — *milieu*, in the very midst; *il fait* — (*temps*), it is fine.

beaucoup [boku], much, a great deal, very much, many, very many, a great many; — *de*, ditto.

Bec [bek], proper name.

bêcher [beje], to dig, delve.

becqueter [bekte], § 158, to peck.

becquée [beke], f., billful.

bel [bel], see *beau*.

bélier [belje], m., ram; battering-ram.

belle [bel], see *beau*.

bénédiction [benediksɔ̃], f., benediction.

bénir [beni:r], § 163, to bless.

berçant [bersã], soothing, somniferous.

bercer [berse], § 156, to rock, lull to sleep.

berger [berʒe], m., shepherd;
chien de —, shepherd's dog.

Berlin [berlɛ̃], m., Berlin.

besoin [bɔzwã], m., need, necessity; *avoir — de*, to need, be in need of; *vous avez — que je vous aide*, you need my help; *aussi bien nous fera-t-il —*, then besides we shall need him.

bête [bɛ:t], f., beast, brute, animal.

bête [bɛ:t], stupid.

bêtise [beti:z], f., stupidity, folly.

bibliothèque [bibliotɛ:k], f., library.

bicyclette [bisiklet], f., bicycle.

bien [bjɛ̃], well, very, indeed, really, I am sure, surely, of course, quite; — *plus*, much more; *j'ai — le temps*, I have plenty of time; *être —*, to be well, be well off, be comfortable, be happy; — *que* (+ subj.), though, although; *ou —*, or indeed, or on the contrary; — *de*, much, a great deal of.

bien [bjɛ̃], m., good.

biens [bjɛ̃], m. pl., estate, property, goods, wealth, possessions; blessings.

bientôt [bjɛto], soon, shortly, presently.

bienvenu [bjɛvny], adj., welcome; *être —*, to be welcome.

billet [bijɛ], m., note, letter; promissory note; ticket; — *d'entrée*, ticket (of admission).

bique [bik], f., she-goat.

bise [bi:z], f., north wind.

bizarre [bizair], odd, singular, strange.

blanc [blɑ̃], white; *le —*, n. m., the white.

Blanche [blɑ̃ʃ], pr. n. f., Blanche.

Blanchette [blɑ̃ket], f., 'Whitey.'

blé [ble], m., wheat, wheat-field.

blême [ble:m], pale, pallid.

blesser [blesɛ], to wound.

blesure [blesy:r], f., wound.

bleu [blø], blue.

bloquer [bloke], to blockade.

Blücher [blykɛ:r or blyɛ:r], Prussian general, ally of Wellington at Waterloo.

boeuf [bœf], m., ox.

boire [bwa:r], § 181, to drink; *donner pour —*, to give a gratuity, a tip (colloq.).

bois [bwa], m., wood(s), forest.

bois de Boulogne [bwa də bulɔ̃], m., name of a park in the suburbs of Paris.

boiserie [bwazri], f., wainscoting.

boîte [bwa:t], f., box.

bon [bɔ̃], good; kind; *sentir —*, to smell sweet.

Bonaparte [bɔnapart], (Napoleon) Bonaparte.

bonbon [bɔ̃bɔ̃], m., bonbon, candy.

bond [bɔ̃], m., bound, skip.

bondissement [bɔ̃dismɑ̃], m., bounding, leaping.

bonheur [bɔ̃œ:r], m., happiness; good fortune, (good) luck.

bonjour [bɔ̃ʒu:r], m., good morning, good day.

bonne [bɔ̃], f., maid, servant, nursery-maid.

bonnet [bɔ̃nɛ], m., cap.

bonsoir [bɔ̃swa:r], m., 'good evening.

bonté [bɔ̃tɛ], f., goodness; — *divine!*, goodness gracious!

bord [bɔ:r], m., shore, bank, margin, edge; board (nav.); *à — de*, on board of.

borner [bɔrne], to limit; *se —*, to be limited.

botte [bɔt], f., boot.

bouter [bote], to furnish with boots; *botté*, booted, with boots on; "*Le Chat Botté*," "Puss in Boots;" *se —*, to put on one's boots.

bouc [buk], m., he-goat.

bouche [buʃ], f., mouth; *à la —*, in one's mouth.

boucher [buʃɛ], to stop, stop up.

boue [bu], f., mud, mire.

bouger [buzɛ], § 156, intr., to stir, budge.

boulangier [bulɑ̃ʒɛ], m., baker.

bouleverser [bulvɛrɛ], to overthrow, overturn, upset, agitate.

bouquet [buke], m., nosegay, bouquet.

bourdonner [burdone], to buzz, hum.
bourrer [bure], to stuff, fill.
bousculade [buskylad], f., jostling, hustling, confusion.
bout [bu], m., end, tip; edge, extremity; *au — de*, at the end of.
boutique [butik], f., shop.
branche [brā:ʃ], f., branch.
brandir [brādi:r], to brandish.
bras [bra], m., arm.
brave [bra:v], brave, gallant; good, kind, honest, worthy.
bravement [bravmā], bravely, courageously.
braver [brave], to defy, brave.
brèche [breʃ], f., breach.
brigade [brigad], f., brigade.
brigand [brigā], m., brigand, thief.
briller [brije], to shine, sparkle.
brin [brē], m., blade, sprig.
briquet [brike], m., steel (for striking a light); *battre le —*, to strike a light.
brise [bri:z], f., breeze.
briser [brize], to break, break or dash to pieces, shatter.
broder [brōde], to embroider; *brodé*, p. part., embroidered.
brodequin [brōdkē], m., (laced-) boot.
bronze [brō:z], m., bronze.
brosse [bros], f., brush.
brosser [brose], to brush.
brouillard [bruja:r], m., fog, mist, haze.
brouiller [bruje], to confuse; bedim (the sight).
broussailles [bruso:j], f. pl., brush-wood, bushes.
brouter [brute], to browse.
broyer [brwoje], § 157, to grind, crush to pieces.
bruit [bri], m., noise, sound; fame, reputation; *faire tant de —*, to attract so much attention.
brûlant [brylā], burning hot.
brûler [bryle], to burn.
brume [brym], f., fog, mist, haze.

brusque [brysk], blunt.
brusquement [bryskmā], bluntly, roughly, abruptly; suddenly.
brutalement [brytalmā], brutally, rudely.
bruyère [bryje:r], f., heath, heather.
bu [by], p. part. *boire*.
buissière [buisje:r], f., thicket, bush.
buisson [buisō], m., bush, thicket.
bureau [byro], m., office.
but [byt or by], object, end, goal; *arriver à son —*, attain his object.
buvais [byve], 1 sg. impf. indic. *boire*.

C.

ça [sa], (for *cela*) that.
ç'a été [s a ete], for *ça* or *ce a été*.
ça [sa], here; — *et là*, here and there, up and down, hither and thither.
cabinet [kabine], m., cabinet; office, private office.
cabrer (se) [sə kabre], intr. to rear.
cachemire [kaʃmi:r], m., cashmere.
cacher [kaʃe], to hide, conceal; *se —*, to hide one's self.
cadavre [kado:vr], m., corpse, dead body.
cadeau [kado], m., present, gift.
café [kafē], m., coffee; coffee-house, restaurant, café.
cage [ka:ʒ], f., cage.
cahier [kaje], m., note-book, exercise-book.
caille [ka:j], f., quail.
caillou [kaju], m., pebble, stone.
caissier [kesje], m., cashier.
calculer [kalkyle], to calculate, reckon.
calice [kalis], m., chalice, cup; calyx.
câlin [kalē], adj., wheedling, coaxing.
calme [kalm], m., stillness, calm.
calme [kalm], calm, still.
calmer [kalme], to calm.

calotte [kalot], f., cap, skull-cap.
 camarade [kamarad], m., f., comrade, playmate.
 camp [kɑ̃], m., camp.
 campagnard [kɑ̃paɲa:r], m., countryman.
 campagne [kɑ̃paɲ], f., country, fields; *à la* —, in the country.
 campanule [kɑ̃panyl], f., campanula, bell-flower.
 Canada [kanada], m., Canada.
 canadien [kanadjẽ], Canadian.
 canard [kana:r], m., duck.
 caniche [kaniʃ], m., poodle.
 canif [kanif], m., penknife.
 canon [kanɔ̃], m., cannon.
 canonnière [kanɔ̃je:r], f., gunboat.
 cantique [kɑ̃tik], m., hymn.
 cap [kap], head, obs., except in *de pied en* —, from head to foot.
 capitaine [kapiten], m., captain.
 capitale [kapital], f., capital letter.
 capiteux [kapitø], heady, intoxicating.
 car [kar], for.
 caractère [karakte:r], m., character, disposition, temper.
 caravane [karavan], f., caravan.
 caressant [karesɔ̃], kindly, gentle.
 caresse [kares], f., caress; *faire mille* — *s à qq.*, to overwhelm anyone with kindness.
 caresser [karese], to caress, stroke.
 cargaison [kargezɔ̃], f., cargo.
 carotte [karot], f., carrot.
 carré [kore], m., square.
 carrosse [karos], m., carriage, coach.
 cas [ka], m., case.
 casaque [kazak], f., jacket.
 casque [kask], m., helmet.
 casser [kɑ:se], to break.
 Castille [kastij], f., Castile.
 catastrophe [katastrof], f., catastrophe.
 Caucase [koko:z], m., Caucasus.
 cauchemar [kojma:r], m., nightmare.
 cause [ko:z], f., cause; *à* — *de*, because of.

causer [koze], to cause; chat, talk; — *une impression*, to make an impression.
 causeur [kozœ:r], talkative.
 cavalerie [kavalri], f., cavalry; *grosse* —, heavy cavalry.
 cavalier [kavalje], m., horseman, rider, trooper.
 ce [sə], pron., it, this, that; *c'est pourquoy*, that is why; *c'est nous*, it is we; *ce sont eux*, it is they; *ce qui*, *ce que*, that which, which, what.
 ce, cet, cette, ces [sə, set, set, se], adj., this, that; *ce . . . -là*, that (emphatic).
 céans [seɑ̃], here within, in this house.
 ceci [səsi], pron., this.
 céder [sede], § 158, to yield, give way.
 cela [sla], pron., that; — *s'entend*, that is evident; of course.
 célébrer [selebre], § 158, to celebrate.
 célèbre [selebr], celebrated.
 celle [sɛl], see *celui*.
 celui, celle, ceux, celles [sɛli, sɛl, sɔ, sɛl], this or that, this or that one; the one, he, him; — *qui*, the one who, he or him who.
 celui-ci [sɛli si], celle-ci, ceux-ci, celles-ci, pron., this, this man, this one, the latter, he (too).
 celui-là, etc. [sɛli la], pron., that, that man, that one, the former, he.
 cent [sɑ̃], (a) hundred.
 centième [sɑ̃tjem], hundredth.
 centime [sɑ̃tim], m., the hundredth part of a franc.
 centre [sɑ̃tr], m., centre.
 cependant [səpɑ̃dɑ̃], yet, nevertheless; still, however, in the meantime, meanwhile; — *que*, while, whilst.
 cercle [serkl], m., circle.
 cérémonie [seremɔ̃ni], f., ceremony.
 cerise [seriz], f., cherry.

cerisier [sərizje], m., cherry-tree.
certain [sɛrtɛ̃], certain.
certain [sɛrtɛ̃], certainly, surely.
cerveau [sɛrvɔ], m., brain, mind.
cervelle [sɛrvɛl], f., brains.
cesser [sɛsɛ], to cease, leave off;
 — *de*, ditto.
ces [sɛ], see *ce*.
cet [sɛt], see *ce*.
cette [sɛt], f. of *ce*.
ceux [sø], m. pl. *celui*.
chacun [ʃakœ̃], pron., each, each
 one, every one.
chagrin [ʃagrɛ̃], m., sorrow, grief;
 shagreen.
chaîne [ʃɛ:n], f., chain.
chair [ʃɛ:r], f., flesh, meat; — *à*
 pâté, mince-meat; *ne faisant*
 qu'une —, becoming only an in-
 distinguishable mass of flesh.
chaire [ʃɛ:r], f., pulpit, desk (of a
 teacher).
chaise [ʃɛ:z], f., chair.
chaleur [ʃalœ:r], f., heat.
chambre [ʃɑ:br], f., room; *Cham-*
 bre des députés, House of Parlia-
 ment.
chameau [ʃamo], m., camel.
champ [ʃɑ̃], m., field.
Champs-Élysées [ʃɑ̃:z elizɛ], m.
 pl., name of certain public gar-
 dens in Paris.
chance [ʃɑ:s], f., chance.
changement [ʃɑ̃ʒmɑ̃], m., change;
 — *de front*, change of front,
 transformation.
changer [ʃɑ̃ʒɛ], § 156, to change,
 alter, transform; *se* —, to
 change or transform one's self,
 change (intr.).
chanson [ʃɑ̃sɔ̃], f., song.
chant [ʃɑ̃], m., singing; crowing
 (of a cock).
chanter [ʃɑ̃tɛ], to sing; chant, in-
 tone, play.
chantonnement [ʃɑ̃tɔnmɑ̃], m.,
 humming, singing.
chapeau [ʃapo], m., hat.
chapelier [ʃapɛljɛ], m., hatter; *chez*
 le —, to or at the hatter's.

chapelle [ʃapɛl], f., chapel.
chapitre [ʃapitr], m., chapter.
chaque [ʃak], each, every.
charbonner [ʃarbɔnɛ], to write
 with charcoal, sketch, scrawl.
charge [ʃarʒ], f., charge, load.
charger [ʃarʒɛ], § 156, to charge,
 commission, order, entrust; *se*
 —, to undertake.
charmant [ʃarmɑ̃], charming.
charmer [ʃarme], to charm, de-
 light; *charmé de*, charmed with,
 delighted with.
chasse [ʃas], f., chase, hunt, hunt-
 ing, hunting-party.
chasser [ʃase], to chase, drive
 away.
chasseur [ʃasœ:r], m., light infan-
 try soldier, chasseur.
chat [ʃa], m., cat; "*Le Chat Botté*,"
 "Puss in Boots."
châtaigne [ʃɑtɛ̃], f., chestnut.
châtaignier [ʃɑtɛ̃jɛr], m., chestnut-
 tree.
château [ʃɑto], m., castle, palace.
Chateaubriand [ʃɑtɔbriɑ̃], French
 writer, b. 1768, d. 1848.
chaud [ʃo], warm, hot.
chaud [ʃo], m., heat, warmth; *il*
 fuit —, it is warm, hot (of
 weather, etc.); *avoir* —, to be
 warm, hot (of living beings).
chaumière [ʃomjɛ:r], f., thatched
 house, cottage, cot.
chaussée [ʃose], f., highway, main
 road.
chaussures [ʃosy:r], f. pl., shoes,
 boots.
chauve [ʃo:v], bald; *un* —, a bald
 man.
chef [ʃɛf], m., chief, commander;
 — *d'escadre*, rear-admiral.
chemin [ʃɛmɛ̃], m., way, road;
 grand —, main road, highway;
 — *de fer*, railway; — *faisant*,
 on the way; *en* —, on the way.
cheminée [ʃɛmine], f., fire-place;
 mantel-shelf.
chêne [ʃɛ:n], m., oak.
chenille [ʃɛni:j], f., caterpillar.

cher [ʃe:r], dear; beloved; *payer* —, pay dear(ly) for, pay too much for.

chercher [ʃerʃe], to seek, search, look for; *aller* —, go for, go and get; — *à*, seek to, try to.

chère [ʃe:r], f., cheer, entertainment; *faire bonne* —, to provide good cheer, provide a good spread.

cherir [ʃeri:r], to cherish; *chéri*, beloved, cherished, dear.

cheval [ʃəval], m., horse; *à* —, on horseback.

chevet [ʃəve], m., pillow, bolster, the head of a bed; *épée de* —, see *épée*.

cheveu [ʃəvø], m., hair; *cheveux*, pl., hair.

chèvre [ʃe:vr], f., goat.

chevreau [ʃəvro], m., kid.

chevrette [ʃəvrɛt], f., little goat.

chez [ʃe], to, at, in, into (the house, shop, office, etc., of); with; *aller — le roi*, to go to the king's (palace, court, etc.); *ils étaient — eux*, they were at home; — *moi*, at my house, at home; — *vous*, at your house, at home.

chien [ʃjɛ̃], m., dog; — *de berger*, shepherd's dog; — *danois*, Danish dog, great Dane.

chiffon [ʃifɔ̃], m., rag; strip, piece.

chiffre [ʃifr], m., figure, number.

chimère [ʃime:r], f., chimæra (a fabulous beast of antiquity).

chœur [kœ:r], m., chorus.

choisir [ʃwazi:r], to choose.

chose [ʃo:z], f., thing, affair, matter; *quelque* —, m. pron., something; *quelque — d'extraordinaire*, something extraordinary, unusual; *la chèvre à quelque —*, there is something the matter with the goat; *bien autre* —, something very different.

chou [ʃu], m., cabbage.

chute [ʃyt], f., fall, downfall.

-ci [si], see *ce*.

Cicéron [siserɔ̃], Cicero.

Cid [sid], *le Cid*, drama by Corneille.

ciel, pl. **cieux** [sjel, sjø], m., heaven, heavens, sky.

cimetière [simtje:r], cemetery, m.

cinq [sɛ:k], five.

cinquante [sɛkɑ̃:t], fifty.

cinquième [sɛkjɛm], fifth.

circonspect [sirkɔ̃spe(kt)], circumspect, cautious.

cirque [sirk], m., circus.

cité [site], f., city.

citoyen [sitwaʒjɛ̃], m., citizen.

civilement [sivilmɑ̃], civilly, courteously, politely.

civilisation [sivilizasjɔ̃], f., civilisation.

clair [kle:r], clear, bright, plain.

clair [kle:r], m., light, clearness; — *de lune*, moonlight.

clair [kle:r], clearly, plain(ly).

clairon [klerɔ̃], m., clarion.

clameur [klamœ:r], f., clamour, outcry.

classe [kla:s], f., class, recitation, lesson, class-room; *manquer la —*, stay away from school, play truant; *faire la —*, give a lesson (to a class), teach (a class).

clef [kle], f., key.

cliquetis [klikti], m., rattle, clicking, jingle.

cloche [kloʃ], f., bell.

clochette [kloʃɛt], f., (small) bell.

clos [klo], p. part. *clore*, to close, shut.

clos [klo], m., enclosure, field.

clouer [klue], to nail.

cocher [kɔʃe], m., coachman.

cœur [kœ:r], m., heart, heartiness, courage, energy; *de (bon) —*, heartily, fervently; *le — gros*, with a heavy heart.

coin [kwɛ̃], m., corner.

coïncidence [kɔ̃sɛsidɑ̃:s], f., coincidence.

colère [kolɛ:r], f., anger; *se mettre en —*, to get angry, be angry.

collation [kolasjɔ̃], f., collation, repast.

collège [kolɛːʒ], m., college, school.
collègue [kolɛg], m., colleague, mate.

coller [kolɛ], to glue, paste.

colline [kolin], f., hill.

colonel [kolɔnɛl], m., colonel.

colonne [kolɔn], f., column; — *épaisse*, close column, in close marching order.

colossal [kolɔsal], colossal, mighty.

colosse [kolɔs], m., colossus, giant; *chevaux* — s, colossal or gigantic horses.

combat [kɔba], m., combat, fight.

combattre [kɔbatr], § 180, to fight, do battle.

combien [kɔbjɛ̃], how much?, how many?; at what price?; how much, how many; — *êtes-vous?*, how many are there of you?; — *serez-vous de gens à table?*, how many (people) will there be of you at table?; — *avez-vous payé?*, how much or what did you pay (for)?

comble [kɔblɛ], to heap up; fill, crown, complete; *comblé*, full to overflowing.

comique [komik], comical.

commandature [komɔdaty:r], f., headquarters (milit.).

commander [komɔde], to command, order, bid.

comme [kom], as, like; as it were, as if; as well as; how; how!; — *voici*, as follows; — *il faut*, in fine style, exactly right, as it should be.

commencement [komɔ̃smã], m., beginning, commencement.

commencer [komɔse], § 156, to begin, commence (to, a, de).

comment [komã], how; how?; how!, what! — *cela?*, how is that?; — *faire pour ne pas voler?*, how is one to avoid stealing?

commode [komɔd], comfortable.

communication [komynikasjɔ̃], f., communication.

compact [kɔpakt], compact, dense.

compagne [kɔpaɲ], f., companion; wife.

compagnie [kɔpaɲi], f., company.

compagnon [kɔpaɲɔ̃], m., companion; — *de voyage*, travelling-companion.

comparaison [kɔparezɔ̃], f., comparison.

comparer [kɔpare], to compare.

compartment [kɔpartimã], m., compartment.

compassion [kɔpasjɔ̃], f., compassion, pity.

complet [kɔplɛ], m., suit (of clothes); complement; *être au* —, to be full.

compliment [kɔplimɛ̃], m., compliment.

composer [kɔpoze], to compose, form, arrange; *se* —, to be composed, consist (of, de).

composition [kɔpozisjɔ̃], f., composition.

comprendre [kɔprã:dr], § 202, to understand, comprehend; include; *faire* —, to explain.

compter [kɔtɛ], to count, reckon; intend, think; be of importance; *il comptait plus*, he was of more account.

concentrer [kɔsãtre], to concentrate.

concert [kɔsɛ:r], m., concert.

concorde [kɔkɔrd], f., concord; *place de la Concorde*, name of a square in Paris.

condamnation [kɔdanasjɔ̃], f., condemnation, sentence.

condamner [kɔdane], to condemn, sentence.

condamné [kɔdane], m., convict.

conduire [kɔdwi:r], § 185, to conduct, lead, guide, drive, take, convey.

confiance [kɔfjã:s], f., confidence, trust.

confiseur [kɔfizɛ:r], m., confectioner.

confus [kɔfy], confused, indistinct.

congé [kɔʒɛ], m., holiday; *donner* — a, to give a holiday to.

conjuger [kɔ̃ʒyʁ], to implore.
connais [kɔ̃nɛ], 1 sg. pres. indic. *connaître*.
connaissance [kɔ̃nɛsɑ̃:s], f., acquaintance; *faire — avec*, become acquainted with.
connaissiez [kɔ̃nɛsɛ], 2 pl. pres. indic. *connaître*.
connaissions [kɔ̃nɛsjɔ̃], 1 pl. pres. indic. *connaître*.
connait [kɔ̃nɛ], 3 sg. pres. indic. *connaître*.
connaître [kɔ̃nɛ:tr], § 188, to know, be acquainted with, understand.
conscience [kɔ̃sjɑ̃:s], f., conscience; consciousness; conscientiousness; *je ferais — de*, I should scruple to, I should think it a sin to.
conseil [kɔ̃sɛ:j], m., counsel, advice.
conseiller [kɔ̃sɛje], to advise, counsel.
consentir [kɔ̃sɑ̃ti:r], § 166, to consent.
conserver [kɔ̃sɛʁvɛ], to preserve, save.
consigne [kɔ̃sjɛ̃], f., orders (milit.), instructions.
consister [kɔ̃sistɛ], to consist.
consoler [kɔ̃sɔlə], to console, solace, comfort; *se —*, to console one's self (with, *de*).
consterner [kɔ̃stɛrnɛ], to astound, dismay, amaze, terrify.
construire [kɔ̃stʁui:r], § 185, to construct.
conte [kɔ̃:t], m., story, tale; *faire un —*, tell a story.
contempler [kɔ̃tɑ̃plɛ], to contemplate, gaze on, survey.
contenir [kɔ̃tənɛi:r], § 177, to contain.
content [kɔ̃tɑ̃], adj., content, satisfied, pleased, gratified, happy.
contentement [kɔ̃tɑ̃tmɑ̃], m., contentment, satisfaction.
contenter [kɔ̃tɑ̃tɛ], to satisfy.
contier [kɔ̃tɛ], to relate, tell.
continuer [kɔ̃tɪnʒɛ], to continue (to, *de*), keep on, pursue.

contraire [kɔ̃tʁɛ:r], m., contrary; *au —*, on the contrary.
contre [kɔ̃tʁ], against, from.
convaincu [kɔ̃vɛ̃ky], convinced, satisfied.
convenable [kɔ̃vənabl], suitable.
convenir [kɔ̃vɛni:r], § 178, to suit, become, be fitting or appropriate.
conversation [kɔ̃vɛrsasjɔ̃], f., conversation.
convoitise [kɔ̃vwa:ti:z], f., covetousness, envy.
copie [kɔ̃pi], f., copy; exercise.
coq [kɔ̃k], m., cock.
coquin-e [kɔ̃kɛ̃, kɔ̃kin], rogue, wretch, scamp.
corde [kɔ̃rd], f., cord, rope.
cordons [kɔ̃rdɔ̃], m., cord, string; — *de sonnette*, bell-pull, bell-rope.
corne [kɔ̃rn], f., horn.
Corneille [kɔ̃rnɛ:j], m., French dramatist, b. 1606, d. 1684.
corps [kɔ̃:r], m., body, form.
corridor [kɔ̃ridɔ̃:r], m., corridor, passage.
corsaire [kɔ̃rsɛ:r], m., privateer.
costume [kɔ̃stym], m., costume, dress.
côte [kɔ̃t], f., coast, rib, side; — *à —*, side by side.
côté [kɔ̃tɛ], m., side, way; *d'un —*, on one side; *de l'autre —*, on the other side; *de ce —*, on this side; *de —*, to one side, aside; *du — de*, in the direction of, towards; *de son —*, on his part, he too; *à — de*, beside.
cou [ku], m., neck.
coucher [kuʒɛ], intr., to lie, lie down; set (of the sun); tr., to put to bed, lay down; — *en joue*, take aim (at); *se —*, to go to bed, retire (to rest); *être couché*, to be lying down.
coucher [kuʒɛ], m., setting; — *du soleil*, sunset.
coulée [kule], f., running-hand.
couler [kule], to flow, run, trickle.
couleur [kulœ:r], f., colour.

couleuvre [kulœ:vr], f., snake.
coup [ku], m., blow, stroke; drink;
boire cinq ou six —s, to take five
 or six drinks or draughts; — *de*
poing, a blow with the fist; — *de*
piéd, a kick; *d'un seul* —, at a
 single stroke; *tout à* —, all at
 once; *du* —, at once, thereupon;
donner des —s *de corne*, to hook,
 butt; — *de dent*, bite; *donner*
des —s *de jouet*, to whip; — *de*
tonnerre, thunder-clap; — *de*
bâton, blow with a stick; — *de*
pistolet, pistol-shot; *de plusieurs*
 —s, in several places.
coupable [kupabl], guilty, at fault,
 blameworthy.
coupe [kup], f., cup, wine-cup.
coupe-gorge [kup gors], m., a
 cut-throat place, a nest of
 swindlers.
couper [kupe], to cut.
cour [ku:r], f., court; yard, court-
 yard; *faire la* —, pay court;
gens de la —, courtiers.
courage [kura:s], m., courage.
courageux [kuraʒø], brave.
couramment [kuramɑ̃], fluently.
courber [kurbe], to bend, bow.
coureur [kurœ:r], m., runner; —
de grands chemins, tramp, va-
 grant.
courir [kuri:r], § 164, to run (about);
 hasten; hunt after; — *les nids*,
 to hunt after birds' nests, go
 birds' nesting.
couronne [kurɔ̃n], f., crown;
 wreath.
couronner [kurɔ̃ne], to crown,
 wreath.
course [kurs], f., course, tour,
 walk, round; *faire une* —, take
 a walk, make a round; *prendre*
sa —, to take one's way.
court [ku:r], short (adj.); short
 (adv.); *de trop* —, too short,
 too tightly.
court [ku:r], 3 sg. pres. indic.
courir.
courtisan [kurtizɑ̃], m., courtier.
couru [kury], p. p. *courir*.

courus [kury], 1 sg. past def.
courir.
courut [kury], 3 sg. past def.
courir.
cousin-e [kuzɛ, kuzin], cousin.
couteau [kuto], m., knife.
coûter [kute], to cost.
coutume [kutym], f., custom,
 habit.
couturière [kutyʁjɛ:r], f., dress-
 maker.
couver [kuve], to brood, hatch;
couvant de l'œil, wistfully eying,
 gazing at.
couvert [kuve:r], p. p. *couvrir*,
 covered; cloudy, overcast; with
 one's hat on.
couvrir [kuvri:r], § 176, to cover;
se —, cover one's self, be covered.
craindre [krɛ:dr], § 190, to fear,
 be afraid of.
craie [kre], f., chalk.
crainte [krɛ:t], f., fear.
cravate [kravat], f., neckcloth.
crayon [krejɔ̃], m., pencil.
créature [kreaty:r], f., creature.
crête [kre:t], f., crest, summit.
creuser [krøze], to dig.
creux [krø], hollow; *chemin* —,
 deep-cut road.
crève-cœur [krɛv kœ:r], m., heart-
 break, grief.
crever [kræve], § 158, to burst; die,
 perish.
cri [kri], m., cry, shout, outcry.
cribler [krible], to sift; riddle.
crier [krie], to cry (out), shout,
 call (out), exclaim.
crin [krɛ], m., hair (of the mane
 and tail of the horse, etc.);
crins, pl., hair, mane; *plume*
 (of a helmet).
cristal [kristal], m., crystal.
croire [krwa:r], § 191, to believe;
 think; *se* —, to believe or think
 one's self; *faire* — *à*, to make
 (one) believe in.
croiser [krwaze], to cross, come
 across, meet.
croître [krwa:tr], § 192, to grow,
 increase.

crosse [krɔs], f. ; — *de fusil*, butt (-end) of a gun or musket.

crouler [krule], to crumble, go to ruin, sink to ruin.

croupe [krup], f., croup, rump.

croquant [krwɔ̃ɑ̃], pres. part. *croire* ; —, m., believer.

croyez [krwɔʒe], 2 pl. pres. indic. *croire*.

croysons [krwɔ̃sɔ̃], 1 pl. indic. or impv. *croire*.

crus [kry], 1 sg. past def. *croire*.

crut [kry], 3 sg. past def. *croire*.

cueillir [kœji:r], § 165, to pick, pluck, gather.

cuiller [kyje:r], f., spoon.

cuir [kɥi:r], m., leather.

cuirasse [kɥiras], f., cuirass, breast-plate.

cuirassier [kɥirasje], m., cuirassier.

cuisinier [kɥizinje], m., cook.

cuisinière [kɥizinje:r], f., cook.

cuisse [kɥis], f., thigh ; leg, "drum-stick."

cuivre [kɥi:vɾ], m., copper, brass ; *à pleins* —, as loud as the band could play.

culminant [kylminɑ̃], culminating.

curieux [kyrjø], curious, odd.

curiosité [kyrjozite], f., curiosity.

cytise [siti:z], m., cytissus, bean-trefoil, laburnum.

D.

dame [dam], f., lady.

dangereux [dɑ̃ʒɛʁ], dangerous.

danois [danwa], Danish.

dans [dɑ̃], in, within, to, into, at, on, among, between ; — *le temps*, at the time.

danse [dɑ̃s], f., dance ; *entrer en* —, to begin to play.

danser [dɑ̃se], to dance.

date [dat], f., date ; *de longue* —, long before.

Daudet [dɔde], Alphonse Daudet, French novelist, b. at Nîmes, 1840, d. 1897.

davantage [davɑ̃ta:s], more ; *le docteur pas* —, nor the doctor either.

de [də], of, from, out of, for, with, in, on, by, at, to ; — + infin., to, at, for, in, etc.

débarbouiller [debarbuje], to clean, wash (the face).

débarrasser [debarase], to disencumber, rid ; *se* —, to free one's self, get rid (of, *de*).

débattre (se) [sə debatʁ], § 180, to struggle.

déborder [deborde], to overflow, run over.

déboucher [debuʃe], to come out (on, *sur*), debouch.

debout [dəbu], adv., upright, standing.

décapiter [dekapite], to behead.

décembre [desɑ̃br], m., December.

déchirer [deʃire], to tear (asunder), rend.

décidé [deside], decided.

décider [deside], to decide, determine ; *se* —, to decide, resolve, make up one's mind.

déclarer [deklare], to declare.

décourager [dekuraze], § 156, to discourage ; *se* —, to be discouraged, give up (intr.).

découvrir [dekuvri:r], § 176, to discover ; take off the hat.

dédaigner [dedeɲe], to disdain.

dedans [dədɑ̃], adv., within, inside ; in it, into it ; *le* —, *les* —, n. m., the inside, interior ; *en* —, inside.

défendre [defɑ̃dr], § 210, to defend, protect (from, *de*) ; forbid ; *se* —, to defend one's self.

défense [defɑ̃s], f., defense, protection.

défenseur [defɑ̃sɛ:r], m., defender, guardian.

défier [defje], to defy, challenge ; *je vous en défie*, I dare, defy, you to do it ; *se* — *de*, to mistrust, distrust.

dégoûter [degute], to disgust.

dégradation [degradasiɔ̃], f., degradation.

degré [degre], m., step ; degree.

déguster [degyste], to taste, enjoy the taste of.

déjà [deʒa], already; *déjà!*, so soon!

déjeuner [deʒøne], m., breakfast; lunch; — *du matin* or *premier* —, breakfast (i.e., the first meal of the day); — *à la fourchette* or *second* —, luncheon, lunch.

déjeuner [deʒøne], to breakfast, lunch.

delà [dəla], beyond; *par* —, further (than), beyond.

délaisser [delese], to abandon, desert, forsake.

délicatesse [delikates], f., delicacy, consideration.

demain [dəmɛ̃], m., to-morrow.

demande [dəmɑ̃:d], f., demand, request.

demander [dəmɑ̃de], to ask, ask for; — *à*, to ask of, from (indir. obj.), ask; — *à* + infin., to ask to; *se* —, to ask one's self, wonder.

démener (se) [sə demne], § 158, to struggle.

démenti [dəmɑ̃ti], m., contradiction; *il ne voulait pas en avoir le*, he was determined not to be beaten.

demeurer [dəmœre], to live, dwell, reside; remain, be.

demi [dəmi], half; *à* —, half.

demi-heure [dəmi œ:r], f., half an hour.

demi-obscurité [dəmi opskyrɛt], f., half darkness, faint light, feeble light.

démontrer [dəmɔ̃tre], to show, prove.

denier [dənje], m., denarius (obs.), penny.

dénoncer [denɔ̃se], § 156, to denounce.

dent [dɑ̃], f., tooth; *coup de* —, bite.

dentelé [dɑ̃tle], denticulated, notched (said of leaves).

dentelle [dɑ̃tel], f., lace.

dentiste [dɑ̃vist], m., dentist.

départ [dəpa:r], m., departure.

dépêcher (se) [sə depeʃe], to make

haste, hurry; *ne te dépêche pas tant*, do not be in such a hurry.

dépendance [depɑ̃dɑ̃:s], f., dependence, territory.

dépendre [depɑ̃:dr], § 210, to depend (upon, de).

dépenser [depɑ̃se], to spend, expend.

déployer (se) [sə deplwaje], § 157, to deploy (milit.).

dépouiller [depuje], to strip, despoil, deprive.

depuis [dəpi], since; from; — *deux ans*, for two years back, for the last two years; — *que*, since; — *quand?*, since when?, how long?

député [depyte], m., deputy, member of parliament.

déraciner [derasine], to uproot.

déranger [derɑ̃ʒe], § 156, to derange; *se* —, to trouble one's self.

dernier [dərnje], latter, last, final.

derrière [dərʒe:r], behind (prep.); behind, at the back (adv.); *de* —, hind (adj.).

des [de], contr. of *de + les*.

dès [də], from (dating from), not later than; — *demain*, beginning to-morrow; — *que*, as soon as, from the very moment that; — *le même jour*, on the (very same) day; — *le point du jour*, at daybreak.

désagréable [dezagreabl], disagreeable, unpleasant.

désarmer [dezarme], to disarm; *désarmé*, unprotected, helpless.

descendre [desɑ̃:dr], § 210, to descend, come or go down; go down (stairs).

descente [desɑ̃:t], f., descent.

désenchantement [dezɑ̃ʔtmɑ̃], m., disenchantment, disappointment.

désert [deze:r], m., desert.

désespérance [dezesperɑ̃:s], f., despair.

désespérer [dezespere], § 158, to despair.

désillusion [dezilyzjɔ̃], f., disillusion.

désir [dezi:r], m., desire, longing.

désirer [dezire], to desire, wish.

désireux [dezirø], desirous, anxious (to, *dé*).

désormais, henceforth.

dessécher [deseʃe], § 158, to dry, dry up, parch, wither; *se* —, to dry up, wither. [scheme.

dessein [desɛ̃], m., design, plan,

dessert [dese:r], m., dessert.

dessus [døsy], adv., above, over; upon or over (it, them, etc.); *de* —, from (off).

destinée [destine], f., fate, destiny.

destiner [destine], to destine; intend, design.

destruction [destryksjɔ̃], f., destruction.

désunir [dezyni:r], to disunite.

détacher [detaʃe], to detach, separate.

détresse [detres], f., distress, grief, trouble.

deuil [dø:j], m., mourning (attire).

deux [dø], two; *tous* (or *toutes*) —, both (of them).

deuxième [døzjem], second.

devant [dävã], prep., before, in front of, ahead of.

devant [dävã], adv., before, ahead, in advance; *pattes de* —, front paws, fore-paws; *prendre les* —s, to go on before, ahead; *courir au* —, to run to meet.

développement [devlɔpmã], m., development, progress.

devenir [dəvni:r], § 178, to become; become of.

deviendront [dəvjẽdrɔ̃], 3 pl. fut. *devenir*.

devint [dəvẽ], 3 sg. past def. *devenir*.

devoir [dəvwa:r], m., duty; exercise (lesson); *rendre leurs* —s à, to pay their respects to.

devoir [dəvwa:r], § 214, to owe; be one's duty to, ought, be to, have to, be obliged to, must; — + infin., to be one's duty to,

ought, be to, have to, be obliged to, must.

diable [djo:bl], interj., the devil! the deuce!

diantre [djã:tr], interj., the deuce!

Dieu [djø], m., God; *ah! mon* —!, oh! dear me!

dieu [djø], m., god.

différence [diferã:s], f., difference.

différend [diferã], m., quarrel, dispute.

différent [diferã], different, divers, various.

difficile [difisil], difficult, hard.

difficulté [difikylte], f., difficulty.

digitale [dizital], f., fox-glove.

dimanche [dimã:f], m., Sunday; *tous les* —s, every Sunday.

dindon [dẽdɔ̃], m., turkey; *patte de* —, see *patte*.

diner [dine], to dine.

dîner [dine], m., dinner; à —, to or at dinner.

dire [di:r], § 193, to say, tell, recite; *c'est à* —, that is (to say); *dis-moi un peu*, just tell me; *vouloir* —, to mean.

dire [di:r], m., saying, maxim.

directeur [direktø:r], m., director, manager.

dirent [di:r], 3 pl. p. def. *dire*.

diriger [dirize], § 156, to direct, guide.

dis [di], 2 sg. indic. or impv. *dire*.

disais [dize], 1 sg. impf. indic. *dire*.

disait [dize], 3 sg. impf. indic. *dire*.

disant [dizã], pres. part. *dire*.

discipliner [disipline], to discipline.

discours [diskur], m., discourse, speech.

discrètement [diskretmã], discreetly, circumspectly, cautiously.

disons [dizɔ̃], 1 pl. pres. indic. *dire*.

disparaître [dispare:tr], § 188, to disappear, vanish.

disposition [dispozisjɔ̃], f., disposition, tendency, habit; disposal.

distance [distã:s], f., distance; à —, at a distance.

distribuer [distribue], to distribute, deal out, portion out.

distribution [distribysjɔ̃], f., distribution.
dit [di], 3 sg. pres. indic., 3 sg. past def., and p. part. of *dire*.
dites [dit], 2 pl. pres. indic. and 2 pl. impv. *dire*; *vous* — ?... , what did you say?
divertir [divɛrti:r], to divert, amuse; *se* —, to divert one's self, amuse one's self.
divin [divɛ̃], divine.
diviser [divize], to divide.
division [divizjɔ̃], f., division.
dix [dis], ten.
dix-huit [diz ɔ̃it], eighteen.
dix-neuvième [diz nœvjẽm], nineteenth.
docile [dɔsil], docile, tractable, quiet.
docteur [dɔktœ:r], m., doctor.
doigt [dwa], m., finger; toe.
dois [dwa], 1 and 2 sg. pres. indic. *devoir*.
dollar [dɔla:r], m., dollar.
dominer [dɔmine], to rule, prevail over, rise above.
dommage [dɔma:s], m., damage, pity.
don [dɔ̃], m., gift, power, knack.
donc [dɔ̃], then, therefore, consequently.
donner [done], to give; bear (of trees); — *à souper*, to give a supper; *se* —, to give to each other.
dont [dɔ̃], of whom, of (from, etc.) which, whose, with which, etc., whence.
Dore [dɔ:r], f., name of a river in central France.
doré [dɔre], gilt.
dormir [dɔrmi:r], § 166, to sleep.
dos [do], m., back.
double [dubl], double.
doubler [duble], to double; line (clothes).
doucement [dusmɔ̃], gently, softly, quietly, kindly.
douleur [dulœ:r], f., pain, grief, sorrow.
douloureusement [dulurøzmɔ̃], sadly.

doute [dut], m., doubt; *sans* —, no doubt, doubtless.
douter (se) [sə dute], to be suspicious; *se* — *de*, to suspect.
doux [du], sweet; soft, gentle, kindly.
douzaine [duze:n], f., dozen.
douze [duiz], twelve.
drame [dram], m., drama.
drap [dra], m., cloth.
drapeau [drapo], m., flag, banner.
dresser [drese], to erect, set up; *se* —, to rise upright, rear.
droit [drwa], straight, right; upright, erect.
droit [drwa], m., right; *être en* — *de*, to have a right to.
droite [drwat], f., right hand, right, right side; *à* —, *de* —, to or on the right (hand).
drôle [dro:l], comical, amusing.
drôle [dro:l], m., rogue, rascal.
du [dy], contr. of *de + le*.
ducat [dyka], m., ducat.
duel [dʁel], m., duel.
Dumas [dymɔ], Alexandre Dumas, French dramatist and novelist, b. 1803, d. 1870.
Dunkerque [dɔ̃kerk], a French seaport, Dunkirk.
duquel [dykel], contr. of *de + lequel*.
dur [dy:r], hard, harsh.
durant [dyrɔ̃], during.
durer [dyre], to last, continue, endure.

E.

eau [o], f., water.
éblouissant [ebluisɔ̃], dazzling.
éblouissement [ebluismɔ̃], m., dazzling.
ébranler (s') [s ebrɔ̃le], to begin to move (intr.).
écaille [ekɔ̃:j], f., scale (of fish, etc.).
écarquillé [ekarkije], p. part., wide open (of eyes).
écarter (s') [s ekarte], to go away (from, *de*), ramble, stray.

échange [eʃɑ̃ʒ], m., exchange;
en — de, in exchange for.

échapper (s') [s eʃapə], m., to escape.

éclabousser [eklabuse], to splash, spatter.

éclair [ekle:r], m., lightning, flash of lightning; *il fait des —s*, it lightens.

éclat [ekla], m., burst, outburst.

éclater [eklate], to burst out, burst forth, sound out (suddenly and loudly), break out.

éclore [eklɔ:r], § 183, to hatch; *éclos*, p. part., hatched.

école [ekɔl], f., school; *maison d'—*, school-house.

écolier [ekɔlje], m., school-boy, pupil.

écorcher [ekɔʁe], to skin, flay, gall, rub the skin off.

écouter [ekute], to listen, listen to, hear.

écraser [ekraze], to crush, overwhelm.

écrier (s') [s ekrie], to cry out, exclaim.

écrire [ekri:r], § 194, to write.

écrit [ekri], p. part. *écrire*.

écriture [ekrity:r], f., writing.

écrivit [ekrivi], 3 sg. past def. *écrire*.

écueil [ekœ:j], m., reef, rock.

écuelle [ekœl], f., porringer, milk-pail.

écume [ekym], f., foam.

écureuil [ekyœ:j], m., squirrel.

édifice [edifis], m., edifice, building.

éducation [edykasyɔ̃], f., education, training.

effet [efe], m., effect; *en —*, in effect, indeed, in fact.

effleurer [eflœre], to skim (over), touch (lightly).

effort [efɔ:r], m., effort, endeavour; force, might; *tenter un dernier —*, to make a final effort.

effrayer [efreje], § 157, to frighten, terrify, alarm; *s'—*, to be frightened, fear.

effréné [efrene], unbridled, uncontrollable.

effroyable [efrɔjabl], frightful, horrible.

effroyablement [efrɔjabləmɑ̃], frightfully, terribly, dreadfully.

égal [egal], equal.

également [egalmɑ̃], equally, in like manner, also.

égarer (s') [s egare], to lose one's way.

église [egliz], f., church.

égorger [egɔʁe], § 156, to cut the throat of, butcher, slaughter.

égyptien [ezipsjɛ], Egyptian.

eh! [e], ah!, well!; — *bien!*, well!, well then!, well now!

élan [elɑ̃], m., impulse.

élancer (s') [s elɑ̃se], § 156, to bound, rush, dash, precipitate one's self.

élément [elemɑ̃], m., element.

éléphant [elefɑ̃], m., elephant.

élève [eleiv], m., f., pupil, scholar.

élever [elve], § 158, to raise, raise up, lift up, exalt; rear, bring up; *s'—*, to rise, exalt one's self, be lifted up, be exalted.

élite [elit], choice, pick; *d'—*, selected, picked.

elle [el], she, it, her.

éloigné [elwape], distant.

éloigner (s') [s elwape], to go away, disappear in the distance.

éloquent [elokɑ̃], eloquent.

embarras [ɑ̃barɑ], m., embarrassment.

embarquer (s') [s ɑ̃barke], intr., to embark.

embaumer [ɑ̃bome], to perfume.

emblème [ɑ̃ble:m], m., emblem.

embrasser [ɑ̃brase], to embrace, clasp, kiss; *s'—*, to embrace one another, kiss one another.

embrasure [ɑ̃brazy:r], f., embrasure, recess (of window, etc.).

embrouiller (s'), [s ɑ̃bruje], to become confused, get puzzled.

émervillé [emerveje], p. part., astonished.

emmener [ɑ̃mne], § 158, to lead or take away.

émotion [emosjɔ̃], f., emotion, feeling.

empêcher [âpɛʃe], to hinder, prevent (from, *de*).

empereur [âprœ:r], m., emperor.

empire [âpi:r], m., empire.

emplette [âplet], f., purchase; *aller faire des* —, to go shopping.

emporter [âporte], to carry away, carry off, take away.

empressement [âpresmâ], m., eagerness.

en [â], in, into; at; of; as a, like a; *en* + pres. part., in, while, whilst, by (or untranslated); — *âge de*, of an age to; — *route*, on the way; — *argent*, of silver; — *quoi?*, of what (material)?

en [â], pron. and adv., of (from, out of, for, by, etc.) it or them; of him, of her, some of it, some of them; some, any.

enchanter [âjâte], to enchant, charm, delight; *enchanté*, delighted.

encore [âkœ:r], yet, still, again, more, still more, moreover, besides, also, now, only; — *un*, another, one more; — *si*, even if.

encorné [âkôrne], see under *autrement*.

encouragement [âkuraʒmâ], m., encouragement.

encre [â:kr], f., ink; *à l'—*, with ink.

encrier [âkrie], m., inkstand.

endormir (s') [s âdormi:r], § 166, to go to sleep, fall asleep; *endormi*, asleep.

endroit [âdrwâ], m., place, spot.

enfant [âfâ], m. f., child, son, daughter; boy, girl, offspring.

enfermer [âferme], to shut up, lock up.

enfin [âfê], at last, finally, in fine, in short.

enfonce [âfôse], § 156, to sink, push down, plunge; *s'—*, to bury one's self, plunge.

engager [âgaze], § 156, to pledge, engage; *s'—*, to promise, pledge one's self.

enguirlander [âgirlâde], to wreath, encircle.

enjamber [âʒâbe], to step over one's leg over.

enlever [âlve], § 158, to carry away, carry off.

ennemi [enmi], m., enemy, foe.

ennemi [enmi], hostile; of the enemy.

ennui [ânqi], m., weariness, ennui, tedium, vexation, annoyance.

ennuyer (s') [s ânqije], § 157, to be wearied, grow weary, find it tiresome.

ennuyeux [ânqijø], tiresome, annoying.

énorme [enorm], enormous, very large, very great.

enragé [âraʒe], mad, enraged, desperate.

enroué [ârwe], hoarse.

enseigner [âsepe], to teach.

ensemble [âsâ:bl], together, all together.

ensevelir [âsœvli:r], to bury, swallow up.

ensuite [âsqit], afterwards, then, thereupon, after that.

entendre [âtâ:dr], § 210, to hear; *cela s'entend*, that is evident; of course.

enthousiasme [âtuzjasm], m., enthusiasm.

entier [âtje], entire, whole; *tout* —, wholly.

entièrement [âtjermâ], entirely, wholly.

entourer [âtûre], to surround.

entraîner [âtrene], to carry away, drag away.

entre [â:tr], between, among, amongst.

entrée [âtre], f., entrance, beginning; *entrée* (a term in cookery); *billet d'—*, ticket (of admission).

entremets [âtrø mɛ], side-dish, entremets.

entrer [âtre], to enter, go in, come in; — *dans*, enter.

numérer [enymere], § 158, to enu-

number. **envahir** [dvai:r], to invade, attack.

envelopper [dvlope], to envelop, wrap up, muffle; surround.

envers [dvér], towards.

envie [dvi], f., envy, desire, inclination; *avoir — de*, to feel like, wish or desire to.

environner [dvirone], to surround, environ.

envoler (s') [s dvole], to fly away, take to flight.

envoyer [dvwaje], § 157, to send.

épais [epe], thick, close together; *colonne épaisse*, see *colonne*.

épargner [eparne], to save, economize.

épars [epa:r], scattered.

épaule [epo:l], f., shoulder.

épée [epe], f., sword; — *de chevet*, sword kept under the pillow for defence in case of attack by night, a thing which one constantly uses, a "stand by."

épeler [epel], § 158, to spell.

épervier [epervje], m., hawk.

épi [epi], m., ear (of corn).

épingle [epē:gl], f., pin.

épopée [epope], f., epic poem, epic.

époque [epok], f., epoch, period, time.

épouser [epuze], to marry (tr.), take in marriage, wed.

épouvantable [epuvōtabl], frightful, dreadful, terrible.

épuiser (s) [s epuize], to be or become exhausted, waste away.

équestre [ekestr], equestrian, of a horse.

équilibre [ekilibr], m., equilibrium, balance.

équité [ekite], f., equity, justice.

érable [erabl], m., maple.

erreur [erœ:r], f., error, mistake.

es [ε], 2 sg. pres. indic. *être*.

escadre [eskadr], f., squadron, fleet; *chef d'—*, rear-admiral.

escadron [eskadrō], m., squadron (milit.).

escalader [eskalade], to scale, climb.

escalier [eskalje], m., stairs.

esclave [esklō:v], m. f., slave; *tomber —*, to fall into slavery, become a slave.

espace [espo:s], m., space.

espèce [espes], f., species, kind.

espérance [esperō:s], f., hope.

espérer [espere], § 158, to hope, hope for, expect.

espoir [espwa:r], m., hope, expectation.

esprit [espri], m., spirit, mind, wit;

Saint-Esprit, Holy Ghost.

essayer [eseje], § 157, to try, attempt; try on.

essoufflé [esufe], p. part., out of breath, breathless.

est [ε], 3 sg. pres. indic. *être*;

— *-ce que?*, is it (the case) that? (a statement prefixed by *est-ce que?* becomes interrogative);

n'est-ce pas?, lit., is it not (so)? (variously rendered to suit the context).

estrade [estrad], f., stage, platform.

et [ε], and.

étable [etabl], f., stable, byre.

était [ete], 3 sg. impf. indic. *être*.

étaient [ete], 3 pl. impf. indic. *être*.

étaler [etale], to spread out, display.

étant [etō], pres. part. *être*.

état [eta], m., state; condition; *homme d'État*, statesman; *en —*

de, in a condition to.

États-Unis [etaz yni], m., pl., United States.

été [ete], m., summer; *en —*, in summer.

éteindre [etē:dr], § 190, to extinguish; *s'—*, to be extinguished,

die away, go out or disappear (of a light, etc.).

éteignirent [etepni:r], 3 pl. past def. *éteindre*.

étendard [etōda:r], m., standard, banner.

étendre [etō:dr], § 210, to stretch,

extend, stretch out; *s'*—, to stretch one's self out, lie down.

éternel [eternel], eternal.

éternité [eternite], *f.*, eternity.

êtes [ɛ:t], 2 pl. pres. indic. *être*.

étiquette [etiket], *f.*, etiquette.

étoile [etwal], *f.*, star.

étonner [etone], to astonish, surprise; *s'*—, to be astonished, surprised (at, *de*).

étouffer [etufe], to suffocate, choke, smother, stifle.

étourdi [eturdi], *m.*, madcap.

être [ɛ:tr], § 154, to be; — *à*, to belong to: *J'en étais là de mes réflexions*, I had gone thus far in my reflexions; *nous sommes cinq*, there are five of us.

étrenne [etren], *f.*, New Year's gift.

étroitement [etrwatmō], narrowly, closely.

étudier [etydje], to study.

eu [y], past *p.* *avoir*.

eûmes [ym], 1 pl. past def. *avoir*.

eurent [y:r], 3 pl. past def. *avoir*.

Europe [ærop], *f.*, Europe.

européen [æropɛ], European.

eus [y], 1 sg. past def. *avoir*.

eusse [ys], 1 sg. impf. subj. *avoir*.

eut [y], 3 sg. past def. *avoir*.

eût [y], 3 sg. impf. subj. *avoir*.

eûtes [yt], 2 pl. p. def., *avoir*.

eux [ø], they, them.

eux-mêmes [ø me:m], they themselves, themselves.

évanouir (s') [s evanwi:r], to vanish; *évanoui*, *p. part.*, vanished, vanishing.

éveil [evei:j], *m.*, awakening, watch; *en* —, on one's guard, on the watch.

événement [evenmō], *m.*, event.

éventail [evūta:j], *m.*, fan.

éventualité [evūtqalite], *f.*, contingency.

évidemment [evidamō], evidently.

exagérer [egzaʒere], § 156, to exaggerate.

examiner [egzamine], to examine.

excepté [ekseptɛ], except.

excès [ekse], *m.*, excess.

excessif [eksesif], excessive.

exciter [eksite], to excite.

exclamation [esklamosjō], *f.*, exclamation.

excuser [eksksyze], to excuse.

exemple [egzōpl], *m.*, example, pattern; copy, copy-slip, headline; *par* —, for instance, for example; you don't say so!, dear me!

exercice [egzersis], *m.*, exercise; *faire l'*—, to drill (milit.).

exhaler (s') [s egzale], to be exhaled, be breathed forth.

exilé [egzile], *m.*, exile.

exister [egziste], to exist.

expirer [ekspire], to expire, die.

explication [eksplikasjō], *f.*, explanation.

expliquer [eksplike], to explain.

exploit [eksplwa], *m.*, exploit, achievement.

exprimer [eksprime], to express.

extase [eksta:z], *f.*, ecstasy, rapture.

exténuer [ekstenqe], to extenuate, enfeeble, weaken, reduce.

extermination [eksterminosjō], *f.*, extermination.

extraordinaire [ekstraordine:r], extraordinary, unusual.

extrémité [ekstremitɛ], *f.*, extremity; — *de gauche*, extreme left.

F.

fable [fabl], *f.*, fable, story.

façade [fasad], *f.*, front, façade.

face [fas], *f.*, face; *en* —, opposite, on the other side; *en* — *de*, opposite to, facing, before, face to face with, in the presence of: — *à* —, face to face, opposite (each other).

fâcher [faʃɛ], to vex, displease; *fâché*, sorry, angry.

fâcheux [faʃø], vexatious, annoying.

facile [fasil], easy.

facilement [fasilmō], easily.

façon [fasō], *f.*, fashion, way,

- manner; outline, sketch; *de — à ce que*, in such a way or manner that; *de la même —*, in the same way.
- facteur** [faktœ:r], m., post-man, letter-carrier.
- faction** [faksjɔ̃], f., *être de —*, to be on duty.
- factotum** [faktotɔ̃], m., factotum.
- fade** [fad], insipid, tasteless.
- faible** [fœ:bl], weak, feeble.
- faiblesse** [fœbles], f., weakness.
- faim** [fɛ̃], f., hunger; *avoir —*, to be hungry.
- faire** [fœ:r], § 195, to do, make, act, cause (+ infin., to do or be done), produce, occasion, give, form; say, reply, exclaim, cry, remark; *faire faire*, to have made, cause to be made; — *vivre*, to keep alive, support; — *le tour de*, to go round; — *le mort*, to pretend to be dead; — *plaisir*, to give pleasure; — *peur à*, to frighten; — *secourses*, to make one's rounds; — *attention*, to pay attention; — *sortir*, to put out, expel; — *la cour*, pay court; — *l'exercice*, to drill (milit.); — *la classe*, to give a lesson, teach; *cela ne fait rien*, that makes no difference; — *fête à*, to welcome, hail with joy; *ce qui fait que le dindon a l'air de*, etc., which makes the turkey seem to, etc.; — *les malles*, to pack the trunks; — *voir*, to show; — *mal à*, to pain, hurt; — *un pas*, to take a step; — *bonne chère*, to provide good cheer, provide a good spread; *fais donc*, do (so) then, do (it your own way) then, all right; *je ferais conscience de*, I should scruple to, I should think it a sin to; — *une question*, to ask a question; *il fait beau (chaud, etc.)*, it is fine (hot, etc.).
- faire (se)** [sə fœ:r], § 195, to make one's self, render one's self, make to or for one's self; to be done; to become; to take place; to be; *se — rare*, to decrease, become scanty; *il se faisait un grand tapage*, there was a great uproar; *se — à*, to adapt one's self to.
- fais** [fɛ], 1 sg. pres. indic. *faire*.
- faisaient** [fœzɛ], 3 pl. impf. indic. *faire*.
- faisais** [fœzɛ], 1 sg. impf. *faire*.
- faisait** [fœzɛ], 3 sg. impf. *faire*.
- faisant** [fœzɔ̃], pres. part. *faire*.
- faisan** [fœzɔ̃], m., pheasant.
- faisons** [fœzɔ̃], 1 pl. pres. indic. *faire*.
- fait** [fet], m., fact, event; *tout à — [tut a fɛ]*, altogether, entirely, quite.
- fait** [fɛ], 3 sg. pres. indic. *faire*.
- fait** [fɛ], p. part. *faire*; *bien — de sa personne*, handsome.
- faites** [fet], 2 pl. pres. indic. and impv. *faire*.
- fallait** [falɛ], 3 sg. impf. indic. *falloir*.
- falloir** [falwa:r], § 218, impers. vb., to be necessary, have to; *il faut* + infin., one (etc.) must, one has to; *il fallait que*, it was necessary that (he, etc.), he was obliged to or had to; *il lui faut*, he needs, must have; *il faut manger*, one must eat; *il avait fallu*, he had been obliged.
- fallut** [faly], 3 sg. past def. *falloir*.
- fameux** [famø], famous, celebrated.
- famille** [fami:j], f., family.
- fanfare** [fɔ̃fa:r], f., flourish of trumpets, brass-band.
- fantôme** [fãto:m], m., phantom, shadow, ghost.
- fardeau** [fardo], m., burden, load.
- farine** [fari:n], f., flour.
- farouche** [faruʃ], wild, fierce.
- fasse** [fas], 3 sg. pres. subj. *faire*.
- fatal** [fatal], fatal.
- fatalité** [fatalite], f., fatality.
- fatigue** [fati:g], f., fatigue.
- fatigué** [fatige], tired.
- fatiguer** [fatige], to fatigue, weary, tire; *se —*, to fatigue one's self, etc.

faucher [foʃe], to mow, reap.
faucheur [foʃœ:r], m., mower, reaper.
faudra [fodra], 3 sg. fut. *faillir*.
faut [fo], 3 sg. pres. indic. *faillir*.
faute [fo:t], f., fault, mistake.
faux-col [fo kol], m., collar.
fêler [fele], to crack (glass, etc.).
femme [fam], f., woman, wife.
fendre [fô:dr], § 210, to split, cleave; break; *se* —, intr., to burst (asunder), break.
fenêtre [fêne:tr], f., window.
fer [fe:r], m., iron; *en* —, iron (adj.), of iron; — *battu*, wrought iron; *chemin de* —, railway; — *à cheval*, horse-shoe.
fera [føra], 3 sg. fut. *faire*.
fèrait [føre], 3 sg. condit. *faire*.
ferez [føre], 2 pl. fut. *faire*.
feriez [førje], 2 pl. condit. *faire*.
ferme [ferme], firm(ly), hard.
fermer [ferme], to shut (up), close; lock; — *à double tour*, to double-lock.
féroce [feros], fierce, ferocious, wild; *bête* —, wild beast.
ferrant [ferã], that shoes horses; *maréchal* —, blacksmith, horse-shoer.
ferons [førõ], 1 pl. fut. *faire*.
fête [fe:t], f., holiday, festival; festivity, feast, merry-making; *être en* —, to be in festivity, hold a celebration; *faire* — *à*, to welcome, hail with joy; *Fête-dieu*, Corpus Christi day; *jour de* —, holiday.
feu [fø], m., fire.
feuillage [føja:ʒ], m., foliage, leaves.
feuille [føe:j], f., leaf.
février [fevrie], m., February.
fidèlement [fidelmõ], faithfully.
fiel [fjel], m., gall, bitterness.
fier [fje:r], proud.
fièrement [fjermõ], proudly.
fierté [fjerte], f., pride.
figure [figy:r], f., face, countenance.
fil [fil], m., thread; — *de fer*, wire.

filature [filaty:r], f., spinning-mill.
file [fil], f., row, file.
filie [fi:j], f., girl, daughter.
fillette [fijet], f., little girl.
fils [fis], m., son.
fin [fẽ], f., end; *à la* —, finally, at last.
fin [fẽ], fine, delicate, sweet; minute.
finir [fini:r], to finish, conclude, end; *il finit par lui demander*, he asked him finally; *c'est fini*, it's all over.
firer [fi:r], 3 pl. p. def. *faire*.
fis [fi], 1 sg. p. def. *faire*.
fit [fi], 3 sg. p. def. *faire*.
fit [fi], 3 sg. impf. subj. *faire*.
fites [fit], 2 pl. p. def. *faire*.
fixement [fiksmõ], fixedly.
fixer [fikse], to fix, fasten; gaze (steadily) at.
flanc [flã], m., flank, side, womb.
flatter [flate], to flatter.
fleur [flœ:r], f., flower; *en* —, in flower, blooming.
fleuve [flœ:v], m., river.
flot [flo], m., wave, billow.
flotte [flot], f., fleet.
flotter [flote], to float, wave.
foi [fwo], f., faith; *ma* —, faith!
foire [fwa:r], f., fair (market).
fois [fwa], f., time (repeated occasion); *tant de* —, so many times, so often; *une* —, *deux* —, once, twice; *encore une* —, once more.
folie [fõli], f., madness, folly; *à la* —, madly, to distraction.
folle [fol], f., madwoman, madcap, giddy creature.
folle [fõl], f. of *fou*; *être* — *de*, to be passionately fond of, dote on.
follement [fõlmõ], madly, extravagantly, exceedingly.
fond [fõ], m., bottom, depth, abyss; crown (of hat); *au* — *de*, at or in the bottom of, at the back of, in the depth(s) of; *faire* — *sur*, to set store by, depend upon.
fondre [fõ:dr], § 210, to melt.
font [fõ], 3 pl. pres. indic. *faire*.
fonte [fõ:t], f., holster.

forçat [forsa], m., galley-slave, convict.
force [fors], f., force, strength, might; *de toute sa* —, with all one's might; *à — de mangeaille*, by dint of gorging.
force [fors], adv., much, many, a great many.
forcer [forsa], § 156, to force, oblige (to, *de*).
forêt [før], f., forest.
forgeron [føʒəʁɔ̃], m., blacksmith.
forme [form], f., form, shape.
former [forme], to form; muster.
formidable [formidabl], formidable, frightful.
fort [fø:r], strong, powerful; big, thick; clever.
fort [fø:r], much, very, very much; loud, loudly; *m'a — servi*, has been of great service to me.
fortune [fortyn], f., fortune, good luck; *chercher* —, to seek one's fortune, see what one can find.
fosse [fo:s], f., pit, grave.
fossé [fose], m., ditch, moat.
fou [fu], mad, foolish, extremely or excessively fond (of, *de*).
fouace [fwas], f., hearth-cake.
fouet [fwe], m., whip.
fougueux [fugø], spirited, fiery.
foule [fu:l], f., crowd.
fourchette [furyet], f., fork.
fourmi [furm], f., ant.
fournir [furni:r], to furnish, provide.
fouurré [fure], furry; *bonnet* —, fur-lined cap.
fourrer (se) [sø fure], to thrust one's self (into, *dans*), creep (into, *dans*).
fourrure [fury:r], f., fur.
foyer [fwaje], m., hearth.
frac [frak], m., dress-coat.
fraichir [fre:i:r], intr., to freshen.
frais, fraîche [fre, fre:ʃ], cool, fresh; *faire* —, to be cool (of weather, temperature).
franc [frã], m., franc (a coin worth about 20 cents).
France [frã:s], f., France.

français [frãse], adj., French; m., Frenchman; *le* —, French (the language); *en* —, in French; *parler* —, to speak French.
franchir [frãʃi:r], to pass, leap over, cross.
François [frãswa], m., Francis.
Franklin (Benjamin) [bẽʒamẽ frãklẽ], Benjamin Franklin, American statesman and philosopher, b. 1706, d. 1790.
Frankt [frants], n. pr. m., Frank.
frappement [frapmã], m., striking, stroke; — *des sabots*, trampling of hoofs.
frapper [frape], to strike, knock, rap.
fraternel [fraternel], brotherly, fraternal.
frayeur [frejœ:r], f., fright, fear.
Frédéric le Grand [frederik lə grã], Frederic the Great, King of Prussia, b. 1712, d. 1786.
frégate [fregat], f., frigate.
frère [frœ:r], m., brother.
friction [frikʃjõ], f., friction, rubbing.
froid [frwa], adj., cold; *froid*, m., cold.
frissement [frwasmã], m., clashing.
frôler [frole], to graze, touch lightly (in passing).
front [frõ], m., forehead, brow; front, van; *changement de* —, change of front, transformation.
frotter [frote], to rub.
frugalité [frygalite], f., frugality.
fruit [fruʃ], m., fruit.
fruitier [fruitje], fruit-bearing; *arbre* —, fruit-tree.
fuir [fui:r], § 170, to flee, fly, run away, escape.
fumée [fyme], f., smoke.
fumer [fyme], to smoke, reek.
furent [fy:r], 3 pl. p. def. of *être*.
furie [fyri], f., fury, rage.
furieux [furyjø], furious, fierce.
fusil [fuzi], m., gun, musket.
fussent [fys], 3 pl. imp. subj. *être*.
fut [fy], 3 sg. past def. *être*.

fût [fy], 3 sg. impf. subj. *être* ; — *de la compagnie*, should join the company ; *que ce — joli*, in order that it should be pretty (*pour* being understood with *que*).

G.

gages [ga:ʒ], m. pl., wages.
gagner [gɔne], to gain, win, earn, obtain ; reach ; seize, come over ; flee to, take refuge in.
gai [ge], gay, merry, cheerful.
gaîté [gete], f., gayety, mirth, glee.
galerie [galri], f., gallery.
galop [galo], m., gallop.
galopade [galopad], f., galloping, rushing.
gambader [gɔbade], to gambol, frisk or skip about.
gant [gɔ̃], m., glove.
gantier [gɔ̃tje], m., glover.
garçon [garsɔ̃], m., boy.
garde [gard], m., guard, keeper.
garde [gard], f., defence, guard ; *tomber en —*, to assume the defensive.
garder [garde], to keep, preserve, have in store.
garde-robe [gard rob], f., wardrobe.
gare [ga:r], f., station.
garenne [garen], f., warren ; *lapin de —*, wild rabbit.
garnir [garni:r], to adorn, ornament.
gâté [gate], spoiled, decayed (of teeth).
gâter [gate], to spoil.
gauche [go:ʃ], adj., left.
gauche [go:ʃ], f., left-hand, left, left-side ; *à (la) —*, *de —*, to or on the left (hand).
Gauthier (Théophile) [teɔfil gotje], French writer, b. 1811, d. 1872.
gazon [gozɔ̃], m., turf, grass, green-sward.
géant [ʒeɔ̃], gigantic.
geler [ʒele], § 158, to freeze ; *gelé*, frozen.

gémissement [ʒemismɔ̃], m., groan (ing), moan(ing).
gendarme [ʒɔdarm], m., dragoon.
gendre [ʒɔ:dr], m., son-in-law.
gêner [ʒene], to impede, restrain, incommode, be in the way of, disturb ; *se —*, to put one's self to inconvenience, to hesitate.
général [ʒeneral], general ; m., general ; *en —*, in general, generally.
générosité [ʒenerozite], f., generosity.
genêt [ʒene], m., broom (bot.).
génie [ʒeni], m., genius.
genou [ʒənu], m., knee.
gens [ʒɔ̃], m. f. pl., people ; — *de la cour*, courtiers.
gentil [ʒɔ̃ti], pretty, nice.
géographie [ʒeografi], f., geography.
gerfaut [ʒerfo], m., gyrfalcon.
germer [ʒerme], to sprout.
geste [ʒest], m., gesture, sign.
gibier [ʒibje], m., game (the product of the chase).
gilet [ʒile], m., waistcoat, vest.
giraumont [ʒiromɔ̃], m., pumpkin.
glace [glas], f., ice ; ice-cream.
glissade [glisad], f., slide ; *faire des —s*, to go sliding (on the ice).
glisser [glise], to slip, slide.
gloire [glwa:r], f., glory.
glorieux [glɔrjɔ̃], glorious, proud, elated.
go [go] ; *tout de —*, unceremoniously, without hesitation.
gonfler (se) [sɔ̃ ɡɔ̃fle], to swell (up), be swollen.
gouailleur [ɡwajœ:r], m., joker, one fond of teasing or chaffing.
gouffre [ɡufr], m., gulf, abyss.
gourmande [ɡurmɔ̃d], f., glutton, gourmand.
goût [gu], m., taste ; *de bon —*, in good taste.
goûter [gute], m., lunch.
goûter [gute], to taste, enjoy.
goutte [gut], f., drop ; — *à —*, drop by drop.

gouttière [gutje:r], f., gutter (of a roof), "eave-trough."
gouverner [guverne], to govern, rule, control, guide.
grâce [grɑ:s], f., grace, favour; pardon.
gracieux [grasjø], gracious, kindly.
grain [grɛ̃], m., grain, corn.
graine [grɛ:n], f., seed.
grammaire [grame:r], f., grammar.
grand [grɑ̃], great, large, tall, grand; long.
grand'chose [grɑ̃ ʃo:z], much.
grandir [grɑ̃di:r], to grow, grow large, grow up; increase.
grand-père [grɑ̃ pɛ:r], m., grand-father.
grange [grɑ̃:s], f., barn.
gras [grɑ], fat; *mardi* —, Shrove-Tuesday.
grave [gra:v], grave, serious, solemn.
gravement [gravmɑ̃], gravely, seriously.
graver [grave], to engrave.
gravitation [gravitosjɑ̃], f., gravitation.
gré [gre], m., will, wish, liking, pleasure; *prendre en — de*, to take a fancy to; *à son —*, to one's taste.
grelot [grɛlɔ], m., bell (spherical), sleigh-bell.
grillage [grija:s], m., grating, wire-work; — *aux affiches*, bulletin-board (covered with a wire net-work as a protection).
grimper [grɛpe], to climb.
grincement [grɛsmɑ̃], m., scratching (sound of pens on paper).
gris [gri], gray, dark-coloured; *pain —*, black bread, coarse bread, etc.
gronder [grɑ̃de], to chide, scold; grumble, rumble (of thunder).
gros [gro], large, big, great; heavy; *le cœur —*, with a heavy heart.
grossissement [grosismɑ̃], m., increase, growing.
groupe [grup], m., group, mass.

guère [gɛ:r], but little, not much; *ne . . . —*, hardly . . . at all.
guérir [geri:r], to cure.
guerre [gɛ:r], f., war.
guet-apens [get apɑ̃], m., ambuscade.
guide [gid], m., guide.
guise [gi:z], f., manner, way, fancy; *à sa —*, at will, as one likes.

H.

[h aspirate is indicated thus: 'h.]

'ha! 'ha! [ɑ, ɑ], ha! ha!
habile [abil], able, clever.
habiller [abiʒe], to dress.
habit [abi], m., garment, dress, apparel, garb; coat; pl., clothes, apparel, costume.
habitant [abitɑ̃], m., inhabitant, resident.
habiter [abite], to inhabit, live in.
habitude [abityd], f., habit, custom; *d'* —, ordinarily, usually.
habituer [abitye], to accustom; habituate; *s'* —, to accustom one's self, get used (to, d).
'hacher [aʃe], to chop, hack, cut to pieces, mince.
'haie [ɛ], f., hedge.
'haine [ɛ:n], f., hatred.
haleine [als:n], f., breath; *prendre —*, to take breath, recover one's breath.
'hanneton [antɑ̃], m., may-bug, cockchafer.
harmonie [armoni], f., harmony.
'haricot [ariko], m., kidney-bean; stew of mutton and turnips.
'Harpagon [arpagɑ̃], Harpagon, a miser, the chief personage in Molière's "l'Avare".
'hasard [aza:r], m., chance; *par —*, by chance, perchance.
'hâte [ɑ:t], f., haste; *en —*, in haste.
'hâter (se) [sə ɑte], to hasten, hurry.
'hausser (se) [se ɔse], to raise one's self, rise; *se — sur la pointe des pieds*, to stand upon tiptoe.

'haut [o], m., height; top, upper part, summit; *en* —, up stairs.

'haut [o], high; loud.

'haut [o], adv., loud.

'haye! [hæ:j], interj., indicating surprise.

'hé! [e], hoy!, halloo!

hélas! [elə:s], alas!

Hélène [elɛ:n], f., Helen.

Henri [ɑ̃ʁi], m., Henry.

herbe [ɛʁb], f., grass, herb(s).

héritage [erita:s], m., heritage, inheritance.

hésiter [ezite], to hesitate.

'hêtre [ɛitr], m., beech.

heure [œr], f., hour; time; *quelle — est-il?*, what o'clock is it?; *à — heure?*, at what o'clock?; at what hour?; *à neuf —s*, at nine o'clock; *tout à l'—*, not long ago, just now, a little ago; *de bonne —*, early, betimes, in good time.

heureusement [œʁœzmɑ̃], happily, luckily, fortunately.

heureux [œʁø], happy.

hier [jɛ:r], yesterday; — *soir*, yesterday evening.

hippanthrope [ipɑ̃tʁɔp], m., a fabulous monster half man half horse, centaur.

hirondelle [irɔ̃dɛl], f., swallow.

histoire [istwa:r], f., history, story.

hiver [ive:r], m., winter; *en* —, in winter.

homme [ɔm], m., man; — *d'État*, statesman.

homme-cheval [ɔm ʃəval], m., centaur.

honnêtement [ɔnetmɑ̃], honestly, honourably, decently.

honneur [ɔnœ:r], m., honour.

'honte [ʃ:t], f., shame; *avoir* —, to be ashamed.

horizon [ɔrizɔ̃], m., horizon.

horloge [ɔʁlɔ:s], f., clock.

horrible [ɔʁibl], horrible.

'hors de [ɔ:r də], outside of, except, apart from.

'hortibus [ɔrtibys], the erroneous

Latin form which the boy in the story dreamt that he wrote in his exercise instead of the form *hortis*.

hôte [ɔ:t], m., guest.

hostilité [ɔstilitɛ], f., hostility, attack.

Hôtel-Dieu [ɔtel djø], m., hospital.

hôtel de ville [ɔtel də vil], m., town-hall.

'houblon [ublɔ̃], m., hop, hop-vine.

'houppelande [uplɑ̃:d], f., big coat, great-coat.

Hugo (Victor) [vikto:r ygo], French writer, b. 1802, d. 1885.

huile [ɥil], f., oil.

'huit [ɥit], eight.

humain [ymɛ̃], human.

humeur [ymœ:r], f., humour.

humide [ymid], damp, wet.

'hurlement [yrləmɑ̃], m., howl, howling.

'hurler [yrlɛ], to howl, roar, bellow.

hydre [idr], f., hydra.

I.

ici [isi], here; *ici-bas*, here below.

idée [ide], f., idea.

ignoble [iɲobl], mean, base.

ignorance [iɲɔ̃:s], f., ignorance.

ignorer [iɲɔʁɛ], to be ignorant of, not to know.

il [il], he, it; — *en vint plusieurs*, there came several.

île [il], f., island.

ils [il], they.

illusion [ilyzjɔ̃], f., illusion.

immédiat [imedja], immediate.

immense [imɑ̃:s], immense.

immobile [imɔbil], motionless.

impatience [ɛpasjɔ̃:s], f., impatience.

impatienter (s') [s ɛpasjɔ̃te], to become impatient.

impertinent [ɛpɛrtinɑ̃], impertinent, stupid.

imperturbable [ɛpɛtyrbabl], imperturbable.

impétuosité [ɛpetuɔzite], f., impetuosity.

important [ɛpɔrtɑ̃], important.

importer [ɛ̃porte], to be of consequence; *n'importe*, no matter; *n'importe quel autre*, any other.
impossibilité [ɛ̃posibilite], f., impossibility.
impossible [ɛ̃posibl], impossible.
impression [ɛ̃presjɔ̃], f., impression.
imprévoyance [ɛ̃prevwajɔ̃:s], f., want of foresight.
imprimer [ɛ̃prime], to print.
impuissant [ɛ̃puisɔ̃], powerless.
impur [ɛ̃py:r], impure.
inattendu [inatɔ̃dy], unexpected.
incendie [ɛ̃sɔ̃di], m., burning, fire.
incliner [ɛ̃kline], to incline, bend; *s'*—, to bow.
inconnu [ɛ̃kɔny], unknown.
inconstant [ɛ̃kɔstɔ̃], variable, wavering.
inconvenient [ɛ̃kɔvenjɔ̃], m., disadvantage.
incorruptible [ɛ̃kɔrɥptibl], incorruptible.
indépendant [ɛ̃depɔ̃dɔ̃], independent.
indicible [ɛ̃disibl], unspeakable.
indiquer [ɛ̃dike], to indicate.
indistinctement [ɛ̃distɛ̃ktɔ̃mɔ̃], without distinction.
individu [ɛ̃dividy], m., individual.
inexorable [ɛ̃negɔ̃rabl], inexorable.
infanterie [ɛ̃fɔ̃tri], f., infantry.
infini [ɛ̃fini], infinite.
infini [ɛ̃fini], m., infinite.
infiniment [ɛ̃finimɔ̃], infinitely, very much.
infirmerie [ɛ̃firmɔ̃ri], f., infirmary, sick-ward.
infirmière [ɛ̃firmje:r], f., nurse.
influent [ɛ̃flyɔ̃], influential.
informer (s') [s ɛ̃forme], to inquire.
injuste [ɛ̃syst], unjust.
injustice [ɛ̃systis], f., injustice.
inquiéter [ɛ̃kjete], § 158, to disquiet, trouble; *s'*—, to be anxious.
inquiétude [ɛ̃kjetyd], f., anxiety.
insecte [ɛ̃sekt], m., insect.
inspection [ɛ̃speksjɔ̃], f., inspection.

instant [ɛ̃stɔ̃], m., instant, moment; *à l'*—, immediately.
instruction [ɛ̃stryksjɔ̃], f., instruction, education.
instruit [ɛ̃strɥi], informed, educated.
instrument [ɛ̃strymɔ̃], m., instrument.
intact [ɛ̃takt], intact, whole.
intelligent [ɛ̃telizɔ̃], intelligent.
intendant [ɛ̃tɔ̃dɔ̃], m., steward.
intention [ɛ̃tɔ̃sjɔ̃], f., intention; *avoir l'*—, to intend.
intéressant [ɛ̃teresɔ̃], interesting.
intéresser [ɛ̃terese], to interest.
intérêt [ɛ̃tere], m., interest.
intérieurement [ɛ̃terjeɔ̃rmɔ̃], inwardly.
interlocuteur [ɛ̃terlɔ̃kytɔ̃:r], m., interlocutor.
interroger [ɛ̃terɔ̃ʒe], § 156, to question.
intervalle [ɛ̃terval], m., interval.
introduire [ɛ̃trodɥi:r], § 185, to introduce.
inutile [ɛ̃nytil], useless.
invisible [ɛ̃vizibl], invisible, unseen.
invitation [ɛ̃vitasjɔ̃], f., invitation.
inviter [ɛ̃vite], to invite, beg.
invulnérable [ɛ̃vylnɛrabl], invulnerable.
irai [ire], 1 sg. fut. *aller*.
irrésistible [ɛ̃rezistibl], irresistible.
irriter [ɛ̃rite], to irritate, excite.
issue [isy], f., issue, outlet.

J.

jabot [ʒabo], m., frill.
Jacques [ʒa:k], James.
jamais [ʒame], ever, never; *ne...* —, never; *pour* —, for ever.
jambe [ʒɔ̃:b], f., leg.
janvier [ʒɔ̃vje], m., January.
jardin [ʒardɛ̃], m., garden.
jaunissant [ʒonisɔ̃], turning yellow.
je [ʒə], I.
Jean [ʒə̃], John.
Jéricho [ʒeriko], Jericho.
Jérusalem [ʒeryzalem], Jerusalem.

Jésus-Christ [ʒezy kri], Jesus Christ.

jeter [ʒete], § 158, to throw, cast, utter; *se* —, to fall upon, rush.

jeu [ʒø], m., play, game, motion.

jeudi [ʒødi], m., Thursday.

jeune [ʒœn], young.

jeûne [ʒø:n], m., fasting.

jeunesse [ʒœnes], f., youth.

joie [ʒwa], f., joy.

joli [ʒoli], pretty, nice, fine.

joue [ʒu], f., cheek; *coucher en* —, to aim at.

jouer [ʒwe], to play.

jouet [ʒwe], m., toy.

jouir [ʒwir], to enjoy; — *de*, to enjoy.

jour [ʒu:r], m., day, light; — *de fête*, holiday; *le — de l'An*, New Year's day.

journal [ʒurnal], m., newspaper.

journée [ʒurne], f., day; *toute la* —, all day long.

joyeux [ʒwaʒø], joyous, glad.

juge [ʒyʒ], m., judge.

juif [ʒyif], m., Jew.

juillet [ʒyije], m., July.

jusque (à) [ʒysk (a)], to, even, as far as, until; — *à ce que*, till; — *ici*, till now; — *là*, till then.

justement [ʒystəmə], precisely.

justice [ʒystis], f., justice.

K.

Kellermann [kelerman], a general under Napoleon, b. 1770, d. 1835.

Keyser [keze:r], a general under Napoleon.

L.

là [la], there; *celui-là*, that one, the former; *ce sont — ses adieux*, those are its farewells.

là-bas [la ba], yonder.

labourer [labure], to plough, dig.

laboureur [laburœ:r], m., husbandman.

lac [lak], m., lake.

laceron [lasœrɔ̃], m., sow-thistle.

là dedans [la dødā], in it, therein.

là-dessus [la dɛs], upon it, thereupon, on top of that.

La Fontaine [la fɔtɛ:n], a celebrated French writer, b. 1621, d. 1695.

là-haut [la o], up there, up high.

laisser [lese], to leave, bequeath, let, let have; *me — faire*, to leave it to me; *se — traire*, to allow herself to be milked; — *tomber*, to let fall, drop.

lait [le], m., milk.

laitue [lety], f., lettuce.

Lamartine [lamartin], French writer, b. 1791, d. 1869.

Lamennais [lamne], French writer, b. 1782, d. 1854.

lance [lãs], f., lance.

lancer [lɔse], § 156, to fling, throw.

lancier [lɔsje], m., lancer.

langue [lã:g], f., tongue, language.

languir [lɔgɪ:r], to languish, pine away; *se —*, ditto.

lapereau [lapro], m., young rabbit.

lapin [lapɛ], m., rabbit.

large [larʒ], wide, broad.

larme [larn], f., tear; *rire aux —s*, to laugh till the tears come.

las [la], weary.

latin [latɛ], Latin.

laurier [lorje], m., laurel.

laver [lave], to wash.

le, la, l', les [lə, la, l, le], the.

le, la, l', les [lə, la, l, le], him, her, it, them.

leçon [lɛsɔ̃], f., lesson.

lecture [lektɥ:r], f., reading.

Lefebvre - Desnouettes [ləfe:vʁ denwet], a French general under Napoleon, b. 1773, d. 1822.

léger [lese], light, slight.

légion [lezjɔ̃], f., legion.

Legouvè [ləuve], French writer, b. 1807.

legs [le], m., legacy.

légume [legym], m., vegetable.

lendemain [lɔdmɛ̃], m., next day, day after, the morrow.

lentement [lɔtmɑ̃], slowly.

lequel, laquelle [ləkɛl, lakɛl], who, whom, which.

lessive [lesi:v], f., large washing.
lettre [letʁ], f., letter.
leur [lœ:r], poss., their; *le* —, theirs.
leur [lœ:r], pers., to them, them.
lever [ləve], § 158, to raise; *se* —, to rise.
lever [ləve], m., rising; — *du soleil*, sun-rise.
lévite [levit], m., Levite.
lévite [levit], f., frock-coat.
lèvre [lœ:vr], f., lip.
lévrier [levrie], m., greyhound.
liberté [liberte], f., liberty.
libre [libr], free.
lie [li], f., lees, dregs.
lieu [ljø], m., place; *au* — *de*, instead of; *avoir* —, to take place.
lieue [ljø], f., league.
ligne [lin], f., line.
lingerie [lɛ̃ʁi], f., linen-room.
lion [ljɔ̃], m., lion.
lire [li:r], § 197, to read.
lisière [lizje:r], f., edge.
lit [li], m., bed.
litière [litje:r], f., litter, straw; *être sur la* —, said of a person very ill in bed.
livre [li:vr], m., book.
livrer [livre], to give up.
local [ləkal], local.
loi [lwa], f., law.
loin [lwɛ̃], far, far off; *de* —, in the distance; *plus* —, farther off, farther on.
long [lɔ̃], long; *le* — *de*, along; *tout au* —, at full length.
longe [lɔ̃:ʒ], f., tether; loin.
longtemps [lɔ̃tɑ̃], long, a long while.
Lorraine [lɔrɛ:n], f., Lorraine.
lorsque [lɔrskø], when.
lot [lo], m., lot, portion.
Louis-Philippe [lwi filip], king of France from 1830 to 1848.
Louis XIV [lwi katɔʁz], king of France from 1643 to 1715.
Louis XV [lwi kɛ:z], king of France from 1715 to 1774.
Louis XVI [lwi sɛ:z], king of France from 1774 to 1793.

loup [lu], m., wolf.
lourd [lu:r], heavy; close, sultry (of weather).
lourdement [lurdmɑ̃], heavily.
Loti [loti], *nom de plume* of Julien Viaud, b. 1850.
Louvre [lu:vr], m., Louvre.
Luc [lyk], Luke.
lueur [lœ:r], f., gleam.
lui [lɥi], him, to him, to her, it, himself; he; — *-même*, himself; à — *seul*, by himself, alone.
luisant [lɥizɑ̃], shining, glossy.
lumière [lymjɛ:r], f., light.
lundi [lɑ̃di], m., Monday.
lune [lyn], f., moon; *clair de* —, moonlight.
lunettes [lynet], f., spectacles.
lut [ly], 3 sg. p. def. *lire*.
Lyon [ljɔ̃], m., Lyons.

M.

M. [məsjø], abbreviation of *Monsieur*.
madame [madam], f., madam, Mrs.
Madeleine [madle:n], f., Magdalen.
mademoiselle [madmwazɛl], f., miss.
magasin [magazɛ̃], m., shop, store.
magnifique [majɛ̃fik], magnificent, splendid.
mai [mɛ], m., May.
maigrir [megri:r], to become lean.
main [mɛ̃], f., hand; à *la* —, in his (your, etc.) hand; *battre des* —s, to clap hands.
maintenant [mɛ̃tɑ̃], now.
maintenir [mɛ̃tni:r], § 177, to hold fast.
maire [mɛ:r], m., mayor.
mairie [meri], f., mayor's office.
mais [mɛ], but.
maison [mezɔ̃], f., house, home; à *la* —, at home.
maisonnette [mezɔ̃net], f., cottage, little house.
maître [mɛ:tr], m., master.
maîtresse [metres], f., mistress; adj., superior.
majesté [majɛste], f., majesty.
majorité [majɔrite], f., majority.

mal [mal], m., evil, ill; *faire* — à, to hurt, be sore, ache; — *aux dents*, toothache.

mal [mal], badly, ill, wrong.

malade [malad], sick, ill, sore; *le* —, the sick one, the patient.

maladresse [maladresa], f., clumsiness.

mâle [mo:l], male, strong.

malgré [malgre], in spite of.

malheur [malœ:r], m., misfortune, unhappiness.

malheureusement [malœrøzmũ], unhappily.

malheureux [malœrø], unhappy; m., poor creature.

malin [malẽ], cunning.

malle [mal], f., trunk.

manche [mã:ʃ], f., sleeve.

manchette [mãʃet], f., cuff.

manchon [mãʃõ], m., muff.

mangeaille [mãʒa:iʃ], f., food, eating.

manger [mãʒe], § 156, to eat, wear away.

manière [manje:r], f., manner, way; *de* — *que*, so that.

manœuvrer [manœvre], to manoeuvre.

manquer [mõke], to fail, be lacking, miss; — *la classe*, to run away from school, play truant.

maquis [maki], m., thicket.

marchand [marʃõ], m., merchant, shop-keeper.

marche [marʃ], f., march, walk, progress, speed.

marché [marʃe], m., market; à *bon* —, cheap.

marcher [marʃe], to march, walk, go.

mardi [mardi], m., Tuesday; *le* — *gras*, Shrove-Tuesday.

maréchal ferrant [mareʃal ferõ], blacksmith, horse-shoer.

marée [mare], f., tide.

Marie [mari], f., Mary.

marin [marẽ], m., sailor, seaman.

marine [marin], f., marine, navy; — *militaire*, royal navy.

marquer [marke], to mark, show.

marquis [marki], m., marquis; *monsieur le* —, the marquis.

marron [morõ], m., chestnut.

mars [mars], m., March.

Marseillaise [marsɛje:z], f., the French national air.

marteau [marto], m., hammer.

masqué [maske], masked.

masse [mas], f., mass.

matelot [matlo], m., sailor.

matériel [materjel], material.

matin [matẽ], m., morning; *le* —, in the morning.

maudit [modi], cursed.

maure [mœ:r], m., Moor.

mauvais [mõve], bad, ill, evil.

maux [mo], see *mal*.

maxime [maksim], f., maxim.

me [mø], me, to me, for me.

méchamment [mefamũ], maliciously.

méchant [mefã], bad, cross.

mécontent [mekõtũ], dissatisfied, disused.

mécontentement [mekõtũtmãm], m., dissatisfaction.

médecin [medsɛ], m., doctor.

médiocre [medjõkr], mediocre, poor.

meilleur [mejœ:r], better, best.

mêler [mele], to mingle; *se* — *de*, to be mingled with, to meddle with.

mélodieux [melõdjø], melodious.

membre [mã:br], m., member.

même [mæ:m], same, even, self, very; *de* —, the same; *de* — *que*, as well as.

mémoire [memwa:r], f., memory.

menace [menas], f., menace, threat.

menacer [mənase], § 156, to menace, threaten.

mener [møne], § 158, to lead, conduct, take, drive.

mentir [mõtĩ:r], § 166, to lie.

menu [møny], small, fine.

mépris [mepri], m., scorn.

méprise [mepri:z], f., mistake.

mer [mœ:r], f., sea; *en* —, at sea.

merci [mersi], m., thanks, thank you.

mercredi [mɛrkʁedi], m., Wednesday.

mère [mɛ:r], f., mother.

mérite [mɛrit], m., merit, worth.

mériter [mɛrite], to deserve.

merle [mɛrl], m., blackbird.

merveille [mɛrvɛ:j], f., marvel, wonder; *à* —, wonderfully.

merveilleux [mɛrvɛ:jø], wonderful.

messe [mɛs], f., mass (eccles.).

messieurs [mɛsjø], pl. of *monsieur*.

mesure [mɛzy:r], f., measure.

mesurer [mɛzyre], to measure.

métairie [mɛteri], f., small farm.

métier [mɛtje], m., trade.

mettre [mɛtr], § 198, to put, place, put on; *le* — *à la porte*, to turn him out of doors; — *de côté*, to lay aside; — *en éveil*, to warn; *se* —, to set one's self, begin; *se* — *à table*, to sit down to dinner, etc.; *se* — *en colère*, to get angry.

meunier [mønje], m., miller.

meurs [mœ:r], 1 sg. pres. indic. *mourir*.

meurt [mœ:r], 3 sg. pres. indic. *mourir*.

meurtrir [mœrtʁi:r], to bruise.

meurtrissure [mœrtʁisʁi:r], f., bruise.

midi [midi], m., noon.

miel [mjɛl], m., honey.

mien [mjɛ], mine; *le* —, mine.

miette [mjɛt], f., crumb.

mieux [mjø], better.

Milhaud [mijo], a French general under Napoleon, b. 1776, d. 1833.

milieu [miljø], m., middle, midst; *au beau* —, in the very midst.

militaire [milite:r], military.

mille [mil], a thousand.

million [miljɔ], m., million.

mince [mɛ:s], thin.

mine [min], f., looks.

minuit [minɥi], m., midnight.

minute [minyɥt], f., minute.

miracle [mira:kl], m., miracle.

mis [mi], 1 sg. p. def. and p. part. *mettre*.

misérable [mizerabl], miserable, wretched.

misère [mizɛ:r], f., misery, trouble, distress.

miséricorde [mizerikɔrd], f., pity, mercy.

mit [mi], 3 sg. p. def. *mettre*.

mitraille [mitʁa:j], f., grapeshot.

mobile [mɔbil], mobile, changeable, variable.

modeste [mɔdest], modest.

modiste [mɔdist], f., milliner.

moi [mwa], me, to me; I; — *même*, (I) myself.

moindre [mwɛ:dr], less, least.

moineau [mwano], m., sparrow.

moins [mwɛ], less, least; *pour le* —, at the least; *du* —, at least.

mois [mwa], m., month.

moisson [mwaso], f., harvest.

moissonner [mwasonɛ], to reap.

moissonneur [mwasonɛ:r], m., reaper.

moitié [mwatje], f., half; *à* —, half.

Molière [mɔljɛ:r], French dramatist, b. 1622, d. 1673.

molle [mɔl], f. of *mou*.

moment [mɔmɑ̃], m., moment; *du* — *où*, since; *au* — *où*, when, at the moment when.

mon, ma, mes [mɔ, ma, me], my.

monde [mɔ:d], m., world, people; *tout le* —, everybody.

monnaie [mɔne], f., coin, money.

monosyllabe [mɔnosilab], m., monosyllable.

monotone [mɔnɔtɔn], monotonous.

monsieur [mɔsjø], m., sir, gentleman, the gentleman, my lord, Mr.

monstre [mɔ:stʁ], m., monster.

mont [mɔ], m., mountain.

montagne [mɔtɑ̃], f., mountain.

monter [mɔte], to mount, go up, ascend, rise, get into (of vehicles).

montre [mɔ:tr], f., watch.

Montréal [mɔreal], m., Montreal.

montrer [mɔtʁɛ], to show; *se* —, to show one's self.

monture [mɔty:r], f., beast (for riding).

monument [mɔnymɑ̃], m., monument.

moquer (se) [sə mɔke], to laugh at, make sport of, despise.

moral [mɔral], moral.

morale [mɔral], f., moral.

morceau [mɔrsɔ], m., bit, piece.

mordre [mɔdr], § 210, to bite, eat away.

mort [mɔ:r], f., death.

mort [mɔ:r], p. part. *mourir*, dead; *le* —, the dead one.

mortel [mɔrtel], deadly.

Moskowa, Moskwa [mɔskɔva, mɔskva], f., river on which Moscow is built.

mot [mo], m., word.

mou [mu], soft.

mouche [muʃ], f., fly.

moucheron [muʃrɔ], m., gnat.

mouchoir [muʃwa:r], m., handkerchief.

moujik [muzik], m., Russian peasant, labourer.

moulin [mulɛ̃], m., mill.

mourant [murɔ̃], m., dying person.

mourir [muri:r], § 174, to die, perish; *il est mort*, he died; — *de faim*, to die with hunger, starve (to death).

mousquetaire [muskɛtɛ:r], m., musketeer, guardsman.

mousqueterie [musketri], f., musketry.

moustache [mustaʃ], f., moustache.

mouvement [muvmɔ̃], m., movement; *premier* —, first impulse.

mouvoir [muvwa:r], § 219, to move.

moyen [mwajɛ̃], m., means, way; *le — de le faire?*, how shall we do it?

muet [mɥɛ], mute, dumb.

mugir [myzi:r], to bellow.

muguet [myge], m., lily of the valley.

multiplier [mytiple], to multiply.

mur [my:r], m., wall.

mûr [myr], ripe.

muraille [myra:j], f., wall.

Murat [myra], famous general under Napoleon, born 1771, executed Oct. 13th, 1815.

mûrir [myri:r], to ripen.

murmure [myrmy:r], m., murmur.

musique [myzik], f., music, band (military).

Musset (de) [də mysɛ], French poet, b. 1810, d. 1857.

mutuellement [mytɥɛlmɔ̃], mutually.

myope [mjɔp], short-sighted.

mystérieux [misterjɥ], mysterious.

N.

naissance [nɛsɔ:s], f., birth.

naitre [nɛ:tr], § 200, to be born; *il est né*, he was born.

Napoléon [napolɛ̃], Napoleon Bonaparte (1769-1821), born in Corsica, became Emperor of the French, 1804, died in St. Helena.

nappe [nap], f., table-cloth.

narine [narin], f., nostril.

national [nasjonal], national.

nature [naty:r], f., nature.

naturel [natyrel], natural.

naturel [natyrel], m., nature, temper.

naturellement [natyrelmɔ̃], naturally.

Navarre [nava:r], f., ancient kingdom in the south of France.

navet [nave], m., turnip.

navire [navi:r], m., ship.

ne [nə], no, not; *ne ... pas*, no, not; *ne ... ni ... ni*, neither ... nor; *ne ... rien*, nothing; *ne ... que*, only; untranslated after comparatives.

né [nɛ], p. part. *naitre*.

néanmoins [nɛdmwɛ̃], nevertheless.

nécessaire [nɛsɛsɛ:r], necessary.

nécessité [nɛsɛsite], f., necessity.

nectar [nektar], m., nectar.

neige [nɛ:ʒ], f., snow.

nettoyer [netwajɛ], § 157, to clean.

neuf [nœf], nine.

neuf [nœf], new.

neuvième [nœvjɛm], ninth.

neveu [nœvø], m., nephew, descendant.

Ney [nɛ], a very distinguished general under Napoleon, born 1769, executed December 7th, 1815.

nez [ne], m., nose; *se rire au* —, to laugh at one's self; *faire (envoyer) un pied de* — à, to put one's fingers to one's nose at, to make grimaces at, to laugh at.
ni [ni], neither, nor; *ne . . . ni . . . ni*, neither . . . nor.

niaiserie [njezri], f., nonsense.

nid [ni], m., nest.

Noël [noel], m. or f., Christmas; *le jour de* —, Christmas day.

noir [nwa:r], black, dark.

noisette [nwozet], f., hazel-nut.

nom [nôm], m., name.

nombre [nô:br], m., number.

nombreux [nô:brø], numerous.

nommer [nôme], to name, call, appoint; *se* —, to be named, called.

non [nô], no, not; *ni moi* — *plus*, nor I either; *les miens n'ont que moi* — *plus*, mine also have no one but me; — *pas que*, not that.

nord [nô:r], m., north.

nos [no], pl. of *notre*.

nos [nos], Russian for 'nose.'

notaire [notê:r], m., notary.

notre, **nos** [notr, no], our.

nôtre (le) [lô notr], ours.

Notre-Dame [notr dam], f., church in Paris.

nourrir [nuri:r], to nourish, feed, bring up.

nourriture [nurity:r], f., food, nurture.

nous [nu], we, us, to us.

nouveau [nuvo], new; *de* —, again.

nouveauté [nuvote], f., novelty; *magasin de nouveautés*, dry-goods store.

Nouvelle-Calédonie [nuvel kale-doni], f., New Caledonia, a French penal settlement.

Nouvelle-Orléans [nuvel orleã], f., New Orleans.

nouvelles [nuvel], f. plu., news.

nouvellement [nuvelmã], newly.

novembre [novã:br], m., November.

noyer [nwaje], m., walnut-tree.

noyer [nwaje], § 157, to drown;

noyé de brume, hidden in mist; *se* —, to drown.

nu [ny], naked, bare.

nuage [nqa:ʒ], m., cloud.

nuit [nui], f., night; *cette* —, last night.

nul [nyl], no, no one.

numérique [nymèrik], numerical.

O.

obélisque [obelisk], m., obelisk.

objecter [objekte], to object.

objet [objɛ], m., object.

obligeance [oblizã:s], f., kindness.

obliger [oblize], § 156, to force; *vous nous obligez de*, you will oblige us by.

obscurité [opskyrite], f., darkness.

obséder [opsede], § 158, to beset.

observer [opsèrve], to observe; *faire* — à, to observe to.

obstacle [opstakl], m., obstacle.

obtenir [optani:r], § 177, to obtain.

occasion [okazjã], f., opportunity.

occuper [okype], to occupy.

œil, pl. **yeux** [œ:j, jø], m., eye.

œillet [œje], m., pink, carnation.

office [ôfis], m., office, duty.

officier [ôfisje], m., officer.

offrir [ôfri:r], § 176, to offer.

ogre [ogr], m., ogre.

oh ! [o], oh !

oie [wa], f., goose.

oignon [ɔpã], m., onion.

oiseau [wazo], m., bird.

Olympe [olẽ:p], m., Olympus.

ombre [õ:br], f., shade, shadow, obscurity; à l'— (de), under or in the shadow (of).

on [õ], one, they, we, you, people, some one.

oncle [õ:kl], m., uncle.

ondoyer [õdwaje], § 157, to undulate, float.

onduler [õdyle], to undulate.

ont [õ], 3 pl. pres. indic. *avoir*.

onze [õ:z], eleven.

opinion [opinjã], f., opinion.

oppression [opresjã], f., oppression.

or [o:r], m., gold; à —, gold(en).

or [ɔ:r], now, but; — *ça*, come now.
orage [ora:ʒ], m., storm.
orageux [oraʒø], stormy, agitated.
orateur [oratoe:r], m., orator.
ordinaire [ordine:r], ordinary;
d'—, usually.
ordinairement [ordinermô], ordinarily.
ordinal [ordinal], ordinal.
ordonnance [ordonâ:s], f., prescription.
ordonner [ordone], to order, prescribe.
ordre [ordr], m., order.
oreille [ore:j], f., ear.
orgie [orʒi], f., orgy.
orgueil [orgœ:j], m., pride.
origine [orizin], f., origin.
orme [orm], m., elm.
orner [orne], to adorn, decorate.
orphelin [orfelɛ], m., orphan.
orphique [orfik], Orphic.
ortolan [ortolô], m., ortolan.
oser [oze], to dare.
ôter [ote], to take off, take out, remove.
ou [u], or; *ou...ou*, either...or;
 — *bien*, or.
où [u], where, when, in which,
 on which; *d'*—, whence, from
 which, on which.
oublier [ublie], to forget.
ouest [west], m., west.
oui [wi], yes.
outre [utr], beyond; *en* —, in ad-
 dition; *passer* —, to pass by
 without noticing.
ouvert [uve:r], p. part. *ouvrir*,
 open.
ouvrage [uvra:ʒ], m., work.
ouvre [u:vr], 3 sg. pres. indic.
ouvrir.
ouvrir [uvri:r], § 176, to open;
d'—, to open.

P.

page [pa:ʒ], m., page.
page [pa:ʒ], f., page.
paille [pɑ:i], f., straw; *chapeau de*
 —, straw hat.
pain [pɑ̃], m., bread.

paire [pe:r], f., pair.
paix [pe], f., peace.
palais [pale], m., palace, building;
 — *de justice*, court-house.
pâle [pɑ:l], pale.
pâlir [poli:r], to grow pale.
pâlisant [palisô], turning *prêle*,
 waning.
palme [palm], f., palm; — *s aca-*
démiques (p. 421), wreath of
 palm leaves used as an orna-
 mental design on the certifi-
 cates granted to prize-winners
 at school.
papier [papje], m., paper.
Pâques [pa:k], m., Easter; *lundi*
de —, Easter Monday.
par [par], by, through; — *où*, by
 what place, by which, through
 which; — *exemple*, for example,
 (interj.) dear me!; — *ma foi*,
 upon my word; — *dela*, beyond,
 — *une nuit*, on a night; — *là*,
 by that place.
paraître [para:f], m., *paraph*, flourish
 (added to one's signature).
paraître [para:tr], § 188, to appear.
à ce qu'il paraît, *paraît-il*, as it
 appears.
parce que [pars kə], because.
par-ci par-là [par si par la], here
 and there.
par-dessus [par desy], above,
 higher than, over; — *(le) bord*,
 overboard.
pardon [pardô], m., pardon; excuse
 me, I beg your pardon.
pareil [pare:j], like, similar, equal.
parent [parô], m., parent, relative.
parfaitement [parfetmô], com-
 pletely.
parfum [parfœ], m., perfume.
parfumé [parfyme], perfumed,
 sweet.
parier [parje], to wager, bet.
Paris [pari], m., Paris.
parisien [parizjɛ], Parisian.
parler [parle], to speak, talk; —
français, to speak French.
parmi [parmi], amongst.
parole [parol], f., word.

paroxysme [paroksism], m., climax.
part [pa:r], f., part, share; *de sa* —, from him; *nulle* —, nowhere.

partage [parta:ʒ], m., share.

partager [partaʒe], § 156, to share; give a share to; *être mal partagé*, to have a bad share.

partance [partɑ:s], f., setting sail; *en* —, on the point of sailing.

parterre [partɛ:r], m., parterre, pit (theatre).

participe [partisip], m., participle.

particulier [partikylje], m., private individual.

particulièrement [partikyljermɑ], especially.

partie [parti], f., part.

partir [partir], § 166, to leave, depart, go away, be off, start; *à — de*, from, beginning with.

partout [partu], everywhere.

parut [pary], 3 sg. p. def. *paraître*.

parvenir [parvɛni:r], § 178, to arrive, succeed.

pas [pa], m., step, pace, footstep.

pas [pa], no, not; *ne . . .* —, no, not; — *un (ne)*, not one; — *de*, no, not, none; *non* —, not; *n'est ce — ?*, shall we not?; etc., etc.

passage [pasa:ʒ], m., passage, crossing.

passant [pasɑ], m., passer-by.

passer [pa:s], f., pass, channel.

passé [pase], past, gone, over, last.

passer [pase], to pass, pass on, go by, put on; spend (time); *il passa sa langue sur*, he ran his tongue over; — *devant*, to pass, go past; — *chez*, to call on; *se* —, to take place, happen; *se — de*, to do without.

passereau [pasro], m., sparrow.

passion [pasjɔ], f., passion.

pasteur [paste:r], m., pastor.

pâté [pate], m., pastry, pie; *chair à —*, mince-meat.

patience [pasjɑ:s], f., patience.

patiner [patine], to skate.

pâtir [pati:r], to suffer.

patois [patwa], m., dialect.

patrie [patri], f., native land.

patrimoine [patrimwan], m., inheritance.

patriotique [patriotik], patriotic.

patte [pat], f., paw, foot; — *s de derrière*, hind-feet; — *s de devant*, fore-feet; — *de dindon*, turkey's foot.

pauvre [po:vr], poor, paltry.

pauvrette [povret], f., poor creature.

pavé [pave], m., pavement.

payer [peje], § 157, to pay, pay for.

pays [pei], m., country, locality.

paysan [peizɑ], m., peasant.

peau [po], f., skin.

pécaire ! [pekai:r], dear, dear !

pêcher [peʃe], to fish; *aller* —, to go fishing.

peigne [peɲ], m., comb.

peindre [pɛ:dr], § 190, to paint.

peine [pe:n], f., pain, difficulty, trouble, sorrow; *à —*, hardly; *ce n'est pas la —*, it is not worth while; *faire de la — à*, to pain; **peinture** [pɛty:r], f., paint, painting.
pêle-mêle [pel mɛl], pell-mell; m., confusion.

pencher [pɑʃe], to incline, bend.

pendant [pɑ̃dɑ], during; — *que*, whilst.

pendre [pɑ:dr], § 210, to hang.

pensée [pāse], f., thought.

penser [pāse], to think; *vous pensez si*, imagine whether; — *à*, to think of.

pensionnaire [pāsjɔne:r], m. and f., boarder.

pente [pɑ:t], f., slope.

Pentecôte [pātko:t], f., Whitsun tide; *lundi de la —*, Whit-Monday, Whitsun Monday.

percer [perse], § 156, to pierce.

percher [perʃe], to perch.

perdre [perdr], § 210, to lose, ruin.

perdreau [perdro], m., young partridge.

perdrix [perdri], f., partridge.

père [pe:r], m., father.

péril [peril], m., peril.

période [perjød], f., period, sentence.
périr [peri:r], to perish.
perle [perl], f., pearl.
permettre [permetr], § 198, to permit; *se* —, to take the liberty; *permis*, permitted.
permission [permisjō], f., permission.
Perrault [pero], French writer, b. 1628, d. 1703.
personnage [persona:z], m., personage, character.
personne [persøn], f., person; pl. people.
personne [persøn], m., anybody, nobody; *ne... —*, not any one, no one, nobody.
personnel [persønɛl], personal.
perspective [perspekti:v], f., prospect.
perte [pert], f., loss.
pesant [pezā], heavy.
pesanteur [pezōte:r], f., weight.
peser [peze], § 158, to weigh, be heavy, oppress.
petit [peti], small, little; m., little one, young one.
petit-fils [peti fis], m., grandson.
peu [pø], m., little; also as adverb, little; — *à* —, little by little; *dis-moi un —*, tell me now; *si — de chose*, so little.
peuple [pœpl], m., people, nation.
peur [pœ:r], f., fear; *lui faire —*, to frighten him; *avoir —*, to be afraid; *avoir grand' —*, to be in great fear; *de — que... ne*, for fear lest.
peut [pø], 3 ag. pres. indic. *pouvoir*.
peut-être (que) [pøt ɛ:tr kə], perhaps.
philanthropie [filātrɔpi], f., philanthropy.
phrase [fraz], f., phrase, sentence.
pic [pik], m., peak; *à —*, perpendicular.
piéd [pje], m., foot; *à —*, on foot; *de — en cap*, from head to foot.
pierre [pje:r], f., stone.

piétinement [pjetinmō], m., stamping.
pieu [pjø], m., stake.
pieusement [pjøzmō], piously.
pigeon [piʒō], m., pigeon.
pigeonneau [piʒono], m., young pigeon.
pile [pil], f., pile.
piler [pile], to pound (as in a mortar).
pipe [pip], f., pipe.
pique-nique [pik nik], m., picnic.
pistolet [pistole], m., pistol; — *d'arçon*, holster-pistol; *tirer un coup de —*, to fire a pistol.
pitchou [pitʃu], dialectal for *petit*.
pitié [pitje], f., pity.
place [plas], f., place, post, square, seat, room, position.
plaidoyer [pledwaje], m., pleading.
plaie [ple], f., wound.
plaindre [plē:dr], § 190, to pity; *se —*, to complain.
plaine [plē:n], f., plain.
plaire [ple:r], § 201, to please; *s'il vous platt, s'il te platt*, if you please.
plaisanterie [plezātri], f., pleasantry, joke.
plaisir [plezi:r], m., pleasure; *faire —*, to give pleasure.
plan [plā], m., plan.
plancher [plā:ʃ], m., floor.
plante [plā:t], f., plant.
planter [plāte], to plant.
plat [pla], flat.
plateau [plato], m., plateau, upland.
plein [plē], full; *en — air*, in the open air.
pléthore [pleto:r], f., plethora.
pleurer [ple:re], to weep.
pleuvoir [plœvwa:r], § 220, to rain, come thick.
plier [plie], to bend.
plisser [plise], to plait.
plonger [plōʒe], § 156, to plunge, dive, dip.
ployer [plwaje], § 157, to bend.
plu [ply], p. part. *pleuvoir*.
pluie [plqi], f., rain.
plume [plym], f., feather, pen.
plumet [plyme], m., plume.

plus [ply], more; — *de*, more, no more; *le* —, the more, the most; — *de* (with numerals), more than; *ne... —*, no more, no longer; *d'autant — que*, the more so as; *de —*, additional; *n'être — que*, to be no longer anything but; *ne... pas non —*, not... either.

plusieurs [plyzjœ:r], several, many.

plutôt [plyto], rather.

poche [pɔʃ], f., pocket.

poêle [pwa:l], m., stove.

poète [pœ:t], m., poet.

poids [pwa], m., weight.

poignée [pwaɲe], f., handful.

poil [pwal], m., hair.

poing [pwɛ̃], m., fist; *se battre à coups de —*, to box with one another.

point [pwɛ̃], m., point; *être sur le — de*, to be at the point of; — *du jour*, daybreak.

point [pwɛ̃], no, not; *ne... — de*, not any, no.

pointe [pwɛ̃t], f., point; *sur la — des pieds*, on tiptoe.

poire [pwa:r], f., pear.

poirier [pwarje], m., pear-tree.

pois [pwa], m., pea.

poitrail [pwatru:j], m., breast (of horse).

poitrine [pwatrin], f., breast, lungs.

polir [pɔli:r], to polish.

polype [pɔlip], m., polyp.

pomme [pɔm], f., apple; — *de terre*, potato.

pommier [pɔmje], m., apple-tree.

pompier [pɔpje], m., fireman.

pont [pɔ̃], m., bridge.

pont-levis [pɔ̃ lvi], m., draw-bridge.

Pont-Neuf [pɔ̃ nœf], m., bridge over the Seine in Paris.

populaire [pɔpylɛ:r], popular.

port [pɔ:r], m., port.

portail [pɔrtɛ:j], m., portal.

porte [pɔrt], f., door, gate; — *à —*, next door.

porte-plume [port plym], m., pen-holder.

porter [pɔrtɛ], to bear, carry, take, wear, put; *se — (bien)*, to be (well); *bien portant*, in good health, well; *comment vous portez-vous?*, how are you?

portière [pɔrtje:r], f., coach-door.

posé [poze], staid, sober.

poser [poze], to place, lay, set.

posséder [posede], § 158, to possess, own.

possession [posesjɔ̃], f., possession.

possible [posibl], possible.

pot [pɔ], m., pot.

potage [pɔta:ʒ], m., soup; *grande —*, first-rate soups.

poularde [pularɔ̃], f., fat pullet.

poulet [pule], m., chicken.

poumon [pumɔ̃], m., lung.

pour [pur], for, in order to, to; — *que*, in order that; — *ainsi dire*, so to speak.

pourboire [purbwa:r], m., gratuity, 'tip.'

pourpre [purpr], m., purple.

pourquoi [purkwa], why; *c'est —*, therefore, so, hence, that is why.

pourrai [pure], 1 sg. fut., *pouvoir*.

poursuivre [pursui:vɛr], § 206, to pursue, continue.

pourtant [purtɑ̃] however, still.

pouvoir [puvwa:r], § 224, to provide.

pourvu que [purvy kə], provided that, I hope that.

pousser [puse], to push, grow.

poussière [pusje:r], f., dust.

Pouvillon (Émile) [emil puvijɔ̃], French writer, b. 1840.

pouvoir [puvwa:r], § 221, to be able, can, may; *il se peut*, it may be; *il ne se peut rien*, nothing can be; *on pourrait dire*, one might say.

pouvoir [puvwa:r], m., power.

pré [pre], m., meadow.

précepte [presept], m., precept.

précieux [presjɔ̃], precious, valuable.

- précipiter** [sə presipite], to rush, dart, hasten.
précis [presi], precise, exact.
précision [presizjɔ̃], f., precision.
prédicateur [predikatœʁ], m., preacher.
préférer [prefere], § 158, to prefer.
préjudiciable [prezydisjabl], prejudicial.
premier [prəmje], first, former; *marcher le —*, to walk ahead.
prendre [prɑ̃:dr], § 202, to take, catch, assume, seize, suppose, reckon; — *exemple sur quelqu'un*, to take example by any one.
préparer [prepare], to prepare; *se —*, to be prepared.
près [pre], near by; — *de*, near, nearly; *à peu —*, almost, nearly.
présent [prezɑ̃], m., present; *à —*, now.
présenter [prezɑ̃te], to present; *se —*, to present one's self.
presque [presk], nearly, hardly, almost.
pressé [prese], in haste.
presser [prese], to press; *se —*, to be in haste.
prêt [pre], ready.
prétendre [pretɑ̃:dr], § 210, to claim, assert.
prêter [prete], to lend.
prêtre [pre:tr], m., priest.
preuve [prœ:v], f., proof.
prévenir [prevni:r], § 178, to warn.
prévoir [prevwa:r], § 224, to foresee.
prier [prie], to pray, pray to, beg, ask; *je t'en prie*, I beg of you.
prière [pri:ʁ], f., prayer, request.
prince [prɛ:s], m., prince.
princesse [prɛ:sɛs], f., princess.
principal [prɛsipal], adj. and n. m., principal.
principe [prɛsip], m., principle.
printemps [prɛtɑ̃], m., spring; *au —*, in spring.
pris [pri], 1 sg. p. def. and p. part. *prendre*.
pri [pri], 3 sg. p. def. *prendre*.
- prise** [pri:z], f., taking, capture.
prison [prizɔ̃], f., prison.
privé [prive], private.
prix [pri], m., price, prize.
probablement [probabləmɑ̃], probably.
prochain [prɔʃɛ̃], next.
prochain [prɔʃɛ̃], m., neighbour, fellow-creature.
procurer [sə prokyre], to procure.
procureur [prokyrœ:ʁ], m., solicitor.
prodige [prɔdi:ʒ], m., miracle, prodigy.
produire [prɔdwi:r], § 185, to produce.
professeur [profesœ:ʁ], m., professor, teacher.
profession [profesjɔ̃], f., profession, calling.
profiter [profite], to profit, avail one's self.
profond [profɔ̃], profound, deep; — *de deux toises*, two fathoms deep.
proie [prwa], f., prey.
projectile [prɔʃektɪ], m., projectile.
promenade [promnad], f., walk, walking, drive; *aller à la —*, to go for a walk.
promener [promne], § 158, to carry about, drive about; *se — à pied* (*en voiture, en bateau, etc.*), to take a walk (go for a drive, go for a sail, etc.); *se — en bicyclette*, to ride a bicycle.
propos [propɔ], m., discourse, purpose; *à —*, seasonable, fit; *by the way*; *à — de*, with respect to.
proposer [propoze], to propose.
protéger [pʁoteʒe], § 156, to protect.
proverbe [pʁɔverb], m., proverb.
providence [pʁovidɑ̃:s], f., Providence.
prudence [pʁydɑ̃:s], f., prudence.
prudent [pʁydɑ̃], prudent.
prune [pʁyn], f., plum.
prunier [pʁynje], m., plum-tree.
Prusse [pʁys], f., Prussia.

prussien [prysjɛ̃], m., Prussian.
pu [py], p. part. *pouvoir*.
public [pyblik], public.
puéril [pjeril], puerile, childish.
puérilité [pjerilite], f., childishness.
puis [pɥi], 1 sg. pres. indic. *pouvoir*.
puis [pɥi], then.
puissance [pɥisɑ̃s], f., power, force.
puissant [pɥisɑ̃], powerful.
puits [pɥi], m., well.
punir [pyniʁ], to punish.
punition [pynisjɔ̃], f., punishment.
pupitre [pypitʁ], m., desk.
pur [pyʁ], pure.
put [py], 3 sg. p. def. *pouvoir*.

Q.

quai [kɛ], m., quay.
qualité [kalite], f., quality, rank.
quand [kɑ̃], when; *depuis* — ?, how long?
quant à [kɑ̃t a], as to, as for.
quarante [karɑ̃t], forty.
quart [kaʁ], m., quarter.
quatre [katʁ], four.
quatre-vingts [katʁ vɛ̃], eighty;
quatre-vingt-dix-sept, ninety-seven.
que [kɛ], pron., whom, which, that, what; *qu'est-ce qui*?, what?; *qu'est-ce — c'est* — ?, what is?; *ce* —, that which, what, which; *qu'est-ce qu'il y a*?, what is there?; *qu'as-tu*?, what is the matter with you?; *c'est là* —, it is there that, that is where.
que [kɛ], conj., that, used as a substitute for other conjunctions like *tandis* —, *lorsque*, *quand*, *si*, etc.; when, than, as, till, let (with subjunctive).
que [kɛ], adv., how, how much, how many, what (a); *ne... —*, only, but; *ne...rien* —, nothing but; *qu'elle est jolie*!, how pretty she is!; — *cela est bien dit*!, how well said that is!

Québec [kebɛk], m., Quebec.
quel [kɛl], what, which: who.
quelconque [kɛlkɔ̃k], whatever.
quelque [kɛlkɔ̃], some, few; — *chose*, something.
quelquefois [kɛlkɛfwa], sometimes.
quelqu'un, **quelques-uns** [kɛlk ɔ̃, kɛlkɔ̃ ɔ̃], some one, some.
querir [kɛʁiʁ], § 162, to fetch; *aller* —, to go and bring.
question [kestjɔ̃], f., question.
quête [kɛt], f., collection.
qui [ki], who, which, that, whom; *à* —, whose; *ce* —, what.
quinze [kɛ̃z], fifteen.
quittance [kitɑ̃s], f., receipt.
quitter [kite], to quit, leave, lay aside.
quoi [kwa], what; *à* — *bon*, what use; *en* — ?, of what (material)?
quoique [kwakɔ̃], although.

R.

race [ras], f., race, breed.
raconter [rakɔ̃tɛ], to relate, tell.
rade [rad], f., roadstead.
raison [rezɔ̃], f., reason, sense; *avoir* —, to be (in the) right.
ralentir [ralɑ̃tiʁ], to slacken.
ramasser [ramɑ̃sɛ], to pick up.
ramener [ramne], § 158, to bring back, bring home again.
rang [rɑ̃], m., row, rank.
rangée [rɑ̃ʒɛ], f., row.
ranger [rɑ̃ʒɛ], § 158, to range, put in place.
rapide [rapid], swift.
rappeler (se) [sə raple], § 158, to remember.
rapporter [raporte], to bring back; produce, yield.
rare [raʁ], rare, scanty.
rassasier [rasazjɛ], to satiate, satisfy.
rassembler [rasɑ̃blɛ], to assemble.
rat [ʁa], m., rat.
ratrapper [ratrape], to overtake.
ravi [ravi], charmed, delighted.
ravin [ravɛ̃], m., ravine.
raviser (se) [sə ravize], to change one's mind.

ravissement [ravismō], m., rapture, delight.

rayon [rejō], m., ray.

réalité [realite], f., reality.

recevoir [rəsevwa:r], § 213, to receive.

récidive [residi:v], f., repetition of an offence.

récit [resi], m., story.

réciter [resite], to recite.

recommencer [rəkomōse], § 156, to begin again.

récompense [rəköpā:s], f., recompense.

récompenser [rəköpāse], to recompense, reward.

reconnaissance [rəkonēsā:s], f., gratitude.

reconnaître [rəkonē:tr], § 188, to recognize.

reconnu [rəkony], recognized.

recourber [rəkurbe], to bend round.

recouvert [rəkuvēr], p. part. *recouvrir*.

recouvrir [rəkuvri:r], § 176, to cover, cover again.

recueillir [rəköji:r], § 165, to gather.

reculer [rəkyle], to fall back.

reçut [rəsy], 3 sg. p. def. *recevoir*.

redingote [rədēgot], f., frock-coat, overcoat.

redoubler [rəduble], to redouble, increase.

redoutable [rədutabl], formidable, terrible.

redoute [rədut], f., redoubt.

redresser (se) [sə rədrese], to stand erect again.

réel [reel], real.

réformer (se) [sə rəferme], to close again.

réfléchir [refleji:r], to reflect.

réflexion [refleksjō], f., reflection.

refus [rəfy], m., refusal.

refuser [rəfyze], to refuse.

regard [rəga:r], m., look, glance, eye.

regarder [rəgarde], to look at, look.

règle [re:gl], f., rule, ruler.

régler [regle], § 158, to regulate, arrange.

régne [re:n], m., reign.

régner [re:ne], § 158, to reign, rule.

regret [rəgre], m., regret.

regretter [rəgrete], to regret.

régulier [regylje], regular.

Régulus [regyls], m., Regulus.

reine [re:n], f., queen.

reins [rē], m. pl., loins, back.

rejeter [rəste], § 158, to throw back; *se* —, to be thrown back.

rejoindre [rəzwēidr], § 190, to rejoin.

réjouir (se) [sə rəzwi:r], to rejoice, be glad.

relever [rəleve], § 158, to heighten, raise, lift up.

religieusement [relisjəzmō], religiously.

religieux [relisjō], religious.

reluire [rəluir], § 185, to shine, glitter.

remarquer [rəmarke], to remark, notice.

remercier [rəmersje], to thank.

remettre [rəmetr], § 198, to restore, put off, put back, put on again; *se* —, to recover, begin again; *remis*, recovered; *se* — *en route*, to set out again.

remplir [rəpli:r], to fill.

remporter [rəporte], to take away.

remue-ménage [rəmy mena:ʒ], m., hubbub.

remuer [rəmye], to move, stir.

Renaude [renod], f., proper name.

rencontre [rəkö:tr], f., meeting; *aller à leur* —, to go to meet them.

rencontrer [rəkötre], to meet.

rendre [rū:dr], § 210, to render, give back, make; *se* —, to go, proceed; surrender.

rentrer [rūtre], to return, return home.

reparaître [rəpara:tr], § 188, to reappear.

repas [rəpa], m., meal.

repasser [rəpase], to repass, pass again.

repêcher [rəpɛʃe], to fish up again.
répéter [rəpete], § 158, to repeat.
répliquer [replike], to reply.
répondre [rəpɔ̃dr], § 210, to answer.
réponse [rəpɔ̃s], f., reply.
repos [rəpo], m., repose, peace.
reposer [rəpoze], to repose, rest;
se —, to rest; *se — sur*, to depend on.
reprendre [rəprɑ̃dr], § 202, to take again, reply; — *haleine*, to recover one's breath.
représenter [rəprezɑ̃te], to represent.
reprit [rəpri], 3 sg. p. def. *repren-dre*.
reproche [rəprɔʃ], m., reproach.
reprocher [rəprɔʃe], to reproach.
réquisition [rekizisjɔ̃], f., requisition, levying.
réserver [rezerve], to reserve.
résistance [rezistɑ̃s], f., resistance.
résister [reziste], to resist.
respect [respe], m., respect.
respecter [respekte], to respect.
respectueusement [respektɥøz-mɑ̃], respectfully.
respectueux [respektɥø], respectful.
ressembler [rəsəbl̃]; — *à*, to resemble.
restaurant [restɔrɑ̃], m., restaurant.
reste [rest], m., rest, remainder;
du —, *au reste*, besides, moreover.
rester [reste], to remain, stay; *en — là*, to stop there, get no further.
retard [rəta:r], m., delay; *être en —*, to be late.
retarder [rətarde], to delay.
retenir [rətni:r], § 177, to keep back, restrain.
retirer [rətire], to pull out; *se —*, to retire.
retour [rətu:r], m., return; *être de —*, to have returned, be back.
retourner [rəturne], to go back,

return, turn up, turn over; *se —*, to turn round.
retraite [rətre], f., retreat.
retrouver [rətruve], to find again;
se —, to be met with again.
réussir [reysi:r], to succeed.
rêve [rɛiv], m., dream.
réveiller [revɛje], to waken; *se —*, to waken.
révéler [revele], § 158, to reveal.
revenir [rəvni:r], § 178, to come back; *revenu*, (having) returned.
rêver [reve], to dream.
révérence [reverɑ̃s], f., bow, courtesy; *lui faire la —*, to pay him one's respects.
revêtir [rəveti:r], § 179, to put on.
réveur [revœ:r], thoughtful, pensive.
revoir [rəvwa:r], § 224, to see again.
révolution [revolɥsjɔ̃], f., revolution.
revolver [revolve:r], m., revolver.
ricaner [rikane], to sneer.
riche [riʃ], rich.
richement [riʃmɑ̃], richly.
ride [rid], f., wrinkle.
rider [ride], to wrinkle.
ridicule [ridikyl], m., ridiculousness; *tourner en —*, to ridicule.
rien [rjɛ̃], anything, nothing; *ne ... —*, not anything, nothing;
je n'en sais —, I do not know.
rire [ri:r], § 204, to laugh, smile.
rire [ri:r], m., laughter.
ris de veau [ri də vo], m., sweetbread.
risquer [riske], to run the risk of.
rivière [rivje:r], f., river.
Rivoli [rivoli], street in Paris.
robe [rɔb], f., robe, dress, frock, gown.
roche [rɔʃ], f., rock.
rocher [rɔʃe], m., rock.
roi [rwa], m., king; *le jour des Rois*, Twelfth-day, Epiphany.
roitelet [rwatle], m., wren.
roman [romɑ̃], m., novel.
rompre [rɔ̃:pr], to break.
rond [rɔ̃], round.

ronde [rɔ̃d], f., round hand.
 ronger [rɔ̃ʒe], § 156, to gnaw.
 rosace [rozase], f., rose-window.
 rose [ro:z], f., rose.
 rose [ro:z], rosy.
 roseau [rozɔ], m., reed.
 rôti [ro], m., roast.
 rouble [rubl], m., rouble.
 roucouler [rukule], to coo.
 Rouen [rwā], m., Rouen.
 rouge [ru:ʒ], red.
 rouge-gorge [ruʒ gɔʁʒ], m., robin.
 Rouget de l'Isle [ruʒ də l il],
 French writer, b. 1760, d. 1836.
 rouleau [rulo], m., roll.
 rouler [rule], to roll.
 roulier [rulje], m., carter.
 route [rut], f., route, way, course;
en —, on the way; *être en —*, to
 be on the way, be off.
 roux [ru], reddish brown.
 royaume [rwajɔ:m], m., kingdom,
 realm.
 ruban [rybā], m., ribbon.
 rue [ry], f., street.
 rugueux [rygø], wrinkled, rough.
 ruisselant [ruislā], streaming.
 rumeur [rymø:r], f., noise.
 ruse [ry:z], f., wile, trick.
 russe [rys], Russian.

S.

Saar [sɔ:r], f., Saar (a river of
 Alsatia).
 sable [sɔ:bl], m., sand.
 sabot [sabo], m., sabot, shoe, hoof.
 sabre [sɔ:br], m., sabre.
 sac [sak], m., sack, bag, satchel.
 sachant [səʃā], pres. part. *savoir*.
 sacré [sakre], sacred, holy.
 sage [sa:ʒ], wise.
 saint [sɛ], sacred, holy; m., saint.
 Sainte-Chapelle [sɛtə ʃapel], f., a
 church in Paris.
 Saint-Esprit [sɛt espri], m., Holy
 Ghost.
 Saint-Louis [sɛ lwi], Louis IX.
 King of France from 1226 to
 1270.
 Saint-Petersbourg [sɛ petersbu:r],
 St. Petersburg.

sais [se], 1 sg. pres. indic. *savoir*.
 saisir [sezi:r], to seize.
 saison [sezɔ], f., season.
 sait [se], 3 sg. pres. indic. *savoir*.
 salade [salad], f., salad.
 salle [sal], f., hall, room; — *de*
classe, class-room; — *à manger*,
 dining-room.
 salon [salɔ], m., drawing-room.
 saluer [salø], to salute, bow to,
 bow.
 salut [saly], m., safety; hail!
 Samaritain [samaritɛ], m., Sama-
 ritan.
 samedi [samdi], m., Saturday.
 sang [sā], m., blood.
 sanglant [sāglā], bloody.
 sans [sā], without, were it not for;
 — *que*, without.
 santé [sôte], f., health.
 sapin [sapɛ], m., fir.
 saule [so:l], m., willow.
 saut [so], m., leap.
 sauter [sote], to leap, jump.
 sautiller [sotije], to hop.
 sauvage [sova:ʒ], wild.
 sauver [sove], to save.
 savamment [savamā], skilfully.
 savoir [savwa:r], § 222, to know,
 know how; — *le français*, to
 know French; *aucun homme ne*
saurait, no man can; *un jour*
qu'il sut, one day when he
 learned.
 savoir [savwa:r], m., knowledge.
 savon [savɔ], m., soap.
 savoureux [savurø], savoury,
 sweet.
 scélérat [selera], m., scoundrel.
 scène [sɛ:n], f., scene.
 scierie [siri], f., saw-mill.
 scruter [skryte], to scrutinize.
 se [sə], one's self, to one's self,
 himself, herself, etc.
 sec [sek], dry.
 sécher (se) [sə seʃe], § 158, to dry
 one's self.
 second [sægɔ], second.
 seconde [sægɔ:d], f., second.
 secouer [søkwe], to shake, disturb.
 secourir [søkuri:r], § 164, to succour.

secours [səku:r], m., help; *au* — / help!
secret [səkrɛ], m., secret.
Seguin [səgɛ̃], a pr. name.
seigneur [sɛ̃nœ:r], m., lord.
Seine [sɛ:n], f., Seine (river).
semaine [sɛmɛ:n], f., week.
semblable [sɔ̃blabl], similar, like.
semblant [sɔ̃blɑ̃], m., appearance;
faire — de, to pretend.
sembler [sɔ̃blɛ], to seem.
semer [səme], § 158, to sow.
sens [sɑ̃:s], m., sense, direction, way.
sentence [sɑ̃tɑ̃:s], f., maxim.
sentier [sɑ̃tje], m., path.
sentiment [sɑ̃timɑ̃], m., sentiment, feeling, sense.
sentir [sɑ̃ti:r], § 166, to feel, smell;
— bon, to smell sweet; *se —*, to feel one's self, feel.
séparer [səpəre], to separate.
sept [sɛt], seven.
septembre [sɛptɑ̃:br], m., September.
septième [sɛtjem], seventh.
serai [sɛrɛ], 1 sg. fut. *être*.
serge [sɛrʒ], f., serge.
série [sɛri], f., series.
sérieux [sɛrjø], serious, grave.
sermon [sɛrmɑ̃], m., sermon.
serre [sɛ:r], f., talon.
serrer [sɛrɛ], to press, grasp, clasp, hold tight, crowd together.
service [sɛrvis], m., service.
serviette [sɛrvjet], f., towel, napkin.
servir [sɛrvi:r], § 166, to serve, be of service, be of use; — *à quelque chose*, to be of some use.
seul [sœ:j], m., threshold.
seul [sœl], alone, single.
seulement [sœlmɑ̃], only, but, even, merely.
sève [sɛ:v], f., sap.
sévérité [sɛvɛrite], f., severity.
si [si], if, whether.
si [si], so, however; — *rapide que*, however swift.
siècle [sjɛkl], m., century.
sien (le) [lə sɛ̃], his, hers, its;
les —s, his own.

siffler [siflɛ], to whistle, hiss, sing.
sifflet [siflɛ], m., whistle.
signe [sɛ̃], m., sign; *faire —*, to beckon.
signifier [sinifje], to mean.
silence [silɑ̃:s], m., silence.
silencieux [silɑ̃sjø], silent.
sillage [sija:ʒ], m., wake (of ship).
sillon [sijɔ̃], m., furrow.
simple [sɛ:pl], simple, plain, mere.
sire [si:r], m., sire.
situé [sitɥe], situated, placed.
six [sis], six.
sixième [sizjem], sixth.
société [sɔsjete], f., society.
sœur [sœ:r], f., sister.
soi [swa], one's self, himself.
soie [swa], f., silk.
soif [swaf], f., thirst; *avoir —*, to be thirsty.
soigner [swaɲe], to care for.
soin [swɛ̃], m., care; *avoir —*, to take care.
soir [swa:r], m., evening; *le —*, in the evening; *hier —*, last evening.
soirée [sware], f., evening.
sois [swa], 1 sg. pres. subj. and 2 sg. impv. *être*.
soit [swa], 3 sg. pres. subj. *être*;
soit !, be it so!
soixante [swasɑ̃:t], sixty; — *-dix*, seventy.
soldat [solda], m., soldier.
soleil [solɛ:j], m., sun; (p. 419) Catherine-wheel.
solennel [solɑnɛl], solemn.
solide [solid], solid, strong, perfect.
solitaire [solitɛ:r], solitary, lonely.
solitude [solityd], f., solitude.
solliciter [solisite], to entreat.
solliciteur [solisite:r], m., petitioner.
sollicitude [solisityd], f., solicitude.
sombre [sɔ̃:br], gloomy.
somme [som], f., sum.
sommeil [sɔmɛ:j], m., sleep.
sommeiller [sɔmeje], to doze.
sommes [som], 1 pl. pres. ind. *être*.
son [sɔ̃], m., sound.
son [sɔ̃], m., bran.
son, sa, ses [sɔ̃, sa, se], his, her, its.

songe [sɔ̃ʒ], m., dream.
songer [sɔ̃ʒe], § 156, to think.
sonner [sɔ̃ne], to sound, ring, strike.
sonnette [sonet], f., little bell.
sont [sɔ̃], 3 pl. pres. ind. *être*.
sorcier [sɔ̃sje], m., magician.
sorte [sort], f., sort; *de — que*, so that.
sortie [sorti], f., going out, getting out.
sortir [sorti:r], § 166, to come out, go out, stick out, arise; *faire —*, to put out, force out.
sot [so], foolish, stupid.
sottise [soti:z], f., foolish action.
sou [su], m., sou, halfpenny, cent.
souci [susi], m., care, anxiety.
souffle [suf], m., breathing.
souffler [sufle], to blow.
souffrance [sufɾɑ:s], f., suffering.
souffrant [sufɾɑ̃], poorly, unwell.
souffrir [sufɾi:r], § 176, to suffer; *faire —*, to cause pain, pain.
soufi [su], drunk, intoxicated.
soulager [sulaʒe], § 156, to relieve.
soulever [sulve], § 158, to raise, lift up; *se —*, to raise one's self.
soulier [sulje], m., shoe.
souligner [sulipe], to underline.
souper [supe], m. supper.
souper [supe], to sup.
souplesse [suples], f., suppleness.
sourire [suri:r], m., smile.
souris [suri], f., mouse.
sous [su], under, in the reign of, in.
sous-officier [suz ofisje], m., non-commissioned officer.
sous-préfet [su pɾefe], m., *sous-préfet*, important official in municipal administration.
soutenir [sutni:r], § 177, to sustain.
soutien [sutjɛ̃], m., support.
souvenance [suvnɑ:s], f., recollection.
souvenir [suvni:r], m., recollection.
souvenir (se) [sə suvni:r], § 178, to remember; *je me souviens (de), il me souvient (de)*, I remember.

souvent [suvɑ̃], often.
soyez [swaje], 2 pl. pres. subj. and impv. *être*.
soyons [swajɔ̃], 1 pl. pres. subj. and impv. *être*.
spectacle [spektakl], m., spectacle, play, theatre.
splendide [splɛdid], splendid.
statue [staty], f., statue.
Strasbourg [strazbu:r], m., Strasbourg.
stupéfaction [stypɛfaksjɔ̃], f., astonishment.
stupéfait [stypɛfe], astonished.
subitement [subitmɑ̃], suddenly.
sublime [syblim], sublime.
suc [syk], m., juice, sap.
succéder [syksede], § 158; — *a*, to succeed.
suffire [syfi:r], § 187, to suffice.
suiv [sqi], 1 sg. pres. indic. *être*, and *suivre*.
suite [sɥit], f., continuation; *tout de —*, immediately; *par la —*, subsequently.
suivant [sqivɑ̃], prep., according to, following; adj., following.
suivre [sqi:vɾ], § 206, to follow; — *des yeux*, to look after, watch.
sujet [syʒe], m., subject, cause.
Sully-Prudhomme [syli pɾydom], French writer, b. 1839.
superbe [syperb], splendid.
supérieur [syperjœ:r], superior.
supplication [syplikasjɔ̃], f., entreaty.
supplier [syplie], to entreat.
suprême [sypre:m], supreme, crowning.
sur [syɾ], on, upon, over, about.
sûr [sy:r], sure.
surcharge [syɾʃaɾʒ], f., excess of burden.
surface [syɾfas], f., surface.
surgir [syɾʒi:r], to arise, spring up.
surplus [syɾply], m., surplus.
surprendre [syɾpɾɑ̃:dr], § 202, to surprise, overtake.
surprise [syɾpɾi:z], f., surprise.
surtout [syɾtu], above all, especially, particularly.

survenir [syrvəni:r], § 178, to come up.

sus [sy], 1 sg. p. def. *savoir*.

symétrique [simetrik], symmetrical.

T.

tabac [taba], m., tobacco.

table [tabl], f., table.

tableau [tablo], m., picture, blackboard; — *noir*, blackboard.

tacher [taʃe], to stain.

tâcher [taʃe], to try, endeavour.

tailleur [tojœ:r], m., tailor.

taire (se) [sə te:r], § 201, to be silent, become silent.

talus [taly], m., slope.

tandis que [tôdis kə], whilst.

tant [tô], so, so many, so much; — *de fois*, so often; — *que*, as much as, as long as; — *mieux*, so much the better.

tante [tô:t], f., aunt.

tantôt [tôto], presently, soon, just now, sometimes, now...at another time.

tapage [tapa:s], m., noise, racket.

taper [tape], to strike.

tapissier [tapisje], m., upholsterer.

tard [tai:r], late; *plus* —, later.

tâter [tote], to feel.

te [tə], thee, to thee, you, to you.

tel [tel], such, like, so; *un* —, such a one.

tellement [telmô], so, so much.

tempête [tôpɛ:t], f., tempest.

temps [tâ], m., time, weather; *avec le* —, in time; *de* — *en* —, from time to time; *dans le* — *que*, whilst; *en même* —, at the same time; *par le* — *qu'il fait*, in such weather as it is; *faire beau* —, to be fine weather; *mauvais* —, bad weather; *quel* — *fait-il*?, what sort of weather is it?

tendon [tândō], m., sinew.

tendre [tâ:dr], tender, loving.

tendre [tâ:dr], § 210, to hold out, stretch.

tendrement [tôdrəmô], affectionately.

tendresse [tôdres], f., affection.

tenir [təni:r], § 177, to hold, have, hold on, hold out, keep, resist; be anxious, insist on; be contained in, find room in; *il ne tiendra qu'à vous que*, it will be your own fault if; — *bon*, to stand fast; *tiens!*, *tenez!*, now then!, here!, look!; *se* —, to hold one's self, stay, stand.

tenter [tôte], to attempt, tempt.

tenture [tôty:r], f., hangings.

terrain [terɛ], m., ground.

terre [te:r], f., earth, ground, land; *par* —, *à* —, on the ground; *la* — *sainte*, the Holy Land.

terre-neuve [ter nœ:v], m., Newfoundland dog.

terrible [teribl], terrible.

tête [tɛ:t], f., head.

texte [tekst], m., text.

textuellement [tekstœlmô], word for word.

théâtre [teɑ:tr], m., theatre; *Théâtre-Français*, the most famous theatre of Paris.

théière [teje:r], f., teapot.

thème [te:m], m., exercise in translating from French into another language; — *latin*, Latin prose.

Thomas [tômo], m., Thomas.

tibia [tibja], m., tibia.

tien (le) [lə tjɛ], thine, yours.

Tiennet [tjene], dim. of *Étienne*, Stephen.

tiens [tjɛ], 1 sg. pres. indic. and 2 sg. impv. of *tenir*.

tiers [tje:r], m., third part.

tige [ti:s], f., stem.

timide [timid], timid.

tins [tɛ], 1 sg. p. def. *tenir*.

tirer [tire], to draw, pull, deduce, shoot; — *la langue*, to put out the tongue.

Titan [titô], m., Titan.

toi [twa], thee, thou, you.

toilette [twalet], f., toilet, dress; *faire sa* —, to dress; *table de* —, dressing-table.

toise [twa:z], f., fathom.
 toit [twa], m., roof.
 toiture [twaty:r], f., roofing, roof.
 tombeau [tãbo], m., tomb, grave.
 tomber [tãbe], to fall.
 ton, ta, tes [tã, ta, te], thy, your.
 ton [tã], m., tone, voice.
 tonnerre [tõne:r], m., thunder;
coup de —, peal of thunder.
 torrent [torã], m., torrent.
 tort [to:r], m., wrong; *avoir* —, to be (in the) wrong.
 tôt [to], soon; *plus* —, sooner.
 toucher [tuʃe], to touch; — *à*, to be near, approach; *n'y touchez pas*, do not touch it, hands off.
 toujours [tuʒu:r], always, still, at all events; *disait* —, kept saying; *pour* —, for ever.
 tour [tu:r], f., tower.
 tour [tu:r], m., turn, trick, feat;
fermer à double —, to lock fast;
à son —, in his (her, its) turn;
faire le — *de*, to go round.
 tourner [turne], to turn.
 tourte [turt], f., pie.
 Tourville [turvil], a celebrated French naval officer, born 1642, died 1701.
 Toussaint [tusɛ], f., All-saints' Day.
 tout, tous [tu, tu(s)], all, any, every, everything; quite; — *le monde*, everybody; — *le jour*, *toute la journée*, the whole day; — *les jours*, every day; *toutes (les) deux*, both; — *les années*, every year; — *à fait*, altogether; — *à l'heure*, a little ago; — *ce que*, all that, whatever; — *de même*, all the same; — *à coup*, suddenly; *rien du* —, nothing at all; *le* —, the whole; — *à leur furie*, intent on their fury.
 tracer [trase], § 156, to trace.
 tradition [tradisjã], f., tradition.
 tragique [trasik], tragical.
 train [trɛ], m., train, noise; *en* — *de*, busy at; — *de derrière*, hind-quarters.

traineau [treno], m., sleigh; *se promener en* —, to take a sleigh-ride.
 trainer [trene], to drag, draw.
 traire [tre:r], § 208, to milk.
 trait [tre], m., trait, feature, action.
 traiter [trete], to treat, entertain; — *de*, to call.
 traître [tre:tr], m., traitor, scoundrel.
 tramway [tramwe], m., tramway, street-car.
 tranche [trã:ʃ], f., slice, edge (of book).
 tranquille [trãkil], quiet, calm, easy in mind; *soyez* —, don't be uneasy, don't worry.
 tranquillement [trãkilmã], calmly.
 transformateur [trãsfõrme], to transform.
 transport [trãspo:r], m., transport-snip.
 transporter [trãspõrte], to convey, bring.
 travail [trava:j], m., work, labour.
 travailler [trava:je], to work.
 travers [trave:r], m., breadth; *à* —, through, across; *en* — *de*, across.
 traversée [traverse], f., voyage.
 traverser [traverse], to traverse, cross, go through; — *en courant*, to run across.
 treize [tre:z], thirteen.
 tremblement [trãblãmã], m., trembling; — *de terre*, earthquake.
 trembler [trãble], to tremble.
 trente [trã:t], thirty.
 très [tre], very, very much.
 trésor [trezõ:r], m., treasure.
 tressaillir [tresajir], to give a start.
 trêve [tre:v], f., truce.
 tricorne [trikorn], m., three-cornered hat.
 tringle [trẽ:gl], f., rod.
 triomphal [triãfal], triumphal.
 triomphe [triãf], m., triumph.
 triste [trist], sad.
 tristement [tristmã], sadly.
 tristesse [tristes], f., sadness.
 trois [trwa], three.

troisième [trwɔzjɛm], third.
trompe [trɔ̃p], f., horn.
tromper [trɔ̃pe], to deceive; *se* —, to be mistaken.
trompette [trɔ̃pet], f., trumpet.
trop [trɔ̃], too, too much, too many.
trop-plein [trɔ̃ plɛ̃], m., overflow.
trot [tro], m., trot; *grand* —, fast trot.
troubler [truble], to disturb.
troupeau [trupo], m., flock.
trouver [truve], to find; *aller* —, to go to; *se* —, to find one's self, be, feel.
truite [truit], f., trout.
tu [ty], thou, you.
tuer [tɥe], to kill.
tue-tête [ty tɛ:t]; *à* —, as loud as possible.
tuile [tɥil], f., tile.
tuileries [tɥilri], f. pl., Tuileries (once a royal palace).
tulipe [tylip], f., tulip.
tumulte [tymɥlt], m., tumult.
tyrannie [tirani], f., tyranny.

U.

un [ɑ̃], one, a, an; *l'* —, one; *l'* — (*et l'autre*), both; *les uns les autres*, one another.
unir [yni:r], to unite, join; *unissez-vous les uns aux autres*, join yourselves together.
univers [ynivɛ:r], m., universe.
universel [ynivɛrsɛl], universal.
usage [yzɑ:ʒ], m., use.
utile [ytil], useful.
utilité [ytilite], f., utility, use.

V.

va [va], 3 sg. pres. indic. and 2 sg. impv. *aller*.
vacances [vakɑ̃:s], f. pl., holidays.
vache [va], f., cow.
vagabondage [vagabɔ̃da:ʒ], m., vagrancy.
vague [vag], f., wave.
vain [vɛ̃], vain; *en* —, in vain.
vaincre [vɛ̃:kr], § 209, to conquer.
vaincu [vɛ̃ky], vanquished (one).
vainement [vɛnmɑ̃], vainly.

vainqueur [vɛ̃kœ:r], m., victor, winner.
vais [ve], 1 sg. pres. indic. *aller*.
vaisseau [veso], m., ship.
vaisselle [vesɛl], f., dishes.
Valère [vale:r], the name of a suitor for the hand of Harpagon's daughter, who enters his service as steward, and is anxious to ingratiate himself into the favour of Harpagon.
valet [vale], m., servant.
valeur [vale:r], f., value.
vallée [vale], f., valley.
vallon [valɔ̃], m., dale, valley.
valoir [valwa:r], § 223, to be worth; — *mieux*, to be better; — *la peine*, to be worth the trouble (while).
vas [va], 2 sg. pres. indic. *aller*.
vase [vɑ:z], m., vase, vessel.
vaste [vast], vast, mighty.
voudrai [vodre], 1 sg. fut. *valoir*.
vaut [vo], 3 sg. pres. indic. *valoir*.
vautour [votu:r], m., vulture.
vautrer (*se*) [sə votre], to wallow.
veau [vo], m., calf, veal.
vécu [veky], p. part. *vivre*.
veiller [veje], to watch (over, *à* or *sur*).
vendre [vɑ̃:dr], § 210, to sell.
vendredi [vɑ̃drɛdi], m., Friday; — *saint*, Good Friday.
vengeur [vɑ̃ʒœ:r], avenging.
venir [vəni:r], § 178, to come; *vint à passer*, happened to go by; — *de*, to have just; *on venait de lui donner*, they had just given him; *il venait voir*, he came to see; *lui — à l'esprit*, to occur to him.
vent [vɑ̃], m., wind; *il fait du* —, it is windy.
ventre [vɑ̃tr], m., belly; — *à terre*, at full speed.
ver [vɛ:r], m., worm.
verdure [verdy:r], f., verdure, green, greenness.
verger [verʒɛ], m., orchard.
véritable [veritabl], true, real.
véritablement [veritablɛmɑ̃], truly, really.

vérité [verite], f., truth.
verrai [vere], 1 sg. fut. *voir*.
vers [ve:r], towards, about.
Versailles [versɑ:j], m., a city of about 50,000 inhabitants, situated about twelve miles south-west of Paris. It contains the great *château* which was the chief residence of Louis XIV.
verser [verse], to pour out.
verset [verse], m., *verse* (Bible, etc.).
vert [ve:r], green.
verveine [vervein], f., verbena.
veste [vest], f., jacket.
vestibule [vestibyl], m., vestibule, hall.
vêtement [vetmɑ], m., clothes, suit.
vêtir [veti:r], § 179, to clothe.
veulent [vœil], 3 pl. pres. ind. *vouloir*.
veut [vø], 3 sg. pres. ind. *vouloir*.
veux [vø], 1 sg. pres. ind. *vouloir*.
viande [vjɑ:d], f., meat.
victime [viktim], f., victim.
victoire [viktwa:r], f., victory.
vide [vid], empty.
vider [vide], to empty.
vie [vi], f., life, living.
vieil [vjɛ:j], see *vieux*.
vieillard [vjɛja:r], m., old man.
viendrai [vjɛdre], 1 sg. fut. *venir*.
viens [vjɛ], 1 sg. pres. ind. and 2 sg. impv. *venir*.
vierge [vjɛrʒ], f., virgin; *la sainte Vierge*, the Virgin Mary.
vieux, **vieil**, **vieille** [vjø, vjɛ:j, vjɛ:j], old, aged; *un vieux*, an old man, an old fellow.
vignette [vinɛt], f., vignette, ornamental design.
vigoureux [vigurø], vigorous.
village [vila:ʒ], m., village.
ville [vil], f., town, city; *en* —, down town.
vin [vɛ], m., wine.
vingt [vɛ̃], twenty; — *-huit*, twenty-eight.
vint [vɛ̃], 3 sg. p. def. *venir*.
vint [vɛ̃], 3 sg. impf. subj. *venir*.
violet [vjøle], violet.

Virgile [virsil], m., Virgil (Vergil).
vis [vi], 1 sg. p. def. *voir*.
vision [vizjɔ̃], f., vision.
visite [vizit], f., visit.
visiter [vizite], to visit.
vit [vi], 3 sg. p. def. *voir*.
vitalité [vitalite], f., vitality.
vite [vit], quick, quickly.
vivant [vivɑ̃], living.
vivre [vi:vʁ], § 211, to live; *faire* —, to maintain; *vive!*, long live!, hurrah for!
vœu [vø], m., vow, wish.
voici [vwasi], see here, here is, here are; *nous* —, here we are.
voilà [vwala], behold, there is, there are, that is; — *que*, behold, lo; — *ce que c'est*, that's how things go; *en* — *un*, that's one; *la* —, here (there) it is! *nous* —, here we are!
voile [vwal], f., sail.
voiler [vwale], to veil.
voir [vwai:r], § 224, to see; *lui* — *faire des tours*, to see him play tricks; *faire* —, to show; *se* —, to be seen.
voisin [vwazɛ̃], neighbouring; m., neighbour.
voisinage [vwazina:ʒ], m., neighbourhood, vicinity.
voiture [vwaty:r], f., carriage, car; *en* —, in a carriage; *se promener en* —, to take a drive.
voix [vwa], f., voice.
vol [vøl], m., theft, robbery.
volaille [vøla:j], f., poultry.
voler [vøle], to fly.
voler [vøle], to steal, rob.
volet [vøle], m., shutter.
voleur [vølø:r], m., thief, robber; *au* —!, stop thief!
volière [vøljɛ:r], f., pigeon-house.
volonté [vølɔ̃te], f., will.
volubilité [vølybilitɛ], f., volubility.
volume [vølym], m., volume.
vont [vɔ̃], 3 pl. pres. indic., *aller*.
votre, **vos** [votr, vo], your.
vôtre (le) [lə vɔtr], yours.
voudrai [vudre], 1 sg. fut. *vouloir*.
vouloir [vulwa:r], § 225, to will,

wish, want; *en* — *à*, to be angry with; *je voudrais* (*bien*), I should like; — *dire*, to mean; *aurait voulu*, would have liked.
vous [vu], you, to you, yourself, yourselves.
voyage [vwaja:ʒ], m., journey, voyage; *bon* — *!*, a pleasant journey!; *compagnon de* —, fellow-traveller.
voyager [vwajaʒe], §156, to travel.
voyageur [vwajaʒœ:r], m., traveller.
vrai [vre], true, real.
vraiment [vrœmɑ̃], really.
vraisemblablement [vresɑ̃blablɑ̃mɑ̃], probably.
vu [vy], p. part. *voir*.
vue [vy], f., sight, view.

W.

Waterloo [vaterlo or waterlo], Waterloo.
Wathier [vatje], name of a French officer.
Wellington [velɛŋtɔ̃], the Duke of Wellington.

Y.

y [i], there, in it, to it, at it, on it, of it; *il* — *a*, there is, there are; *il* — *en a*, there is (are) some.
yeux [jø], plur. of *œil*, eyes.
Yves [i:v], name of a sailor friend of Loti, mentioned in several of his works, such as *Mon frère Yves*.

Z.

zébré [zebre], striped.
zéphire, zéphyre [zefi:r], zephyr.

ENGLISH-FRENCH.

[h aspirate is indicated thus : 'h.]

A.

a, an, un, m., une, f.; — *franc*
— *dozen*, un franc la douzaine;
not another, ne...pas (point)
d'autre.

abandon, abandonner.

abbess, abbesse, f.

ability, capacité, f., talent, m.

able; *be* —, pouvoir.

about, de, autour de, environ, sur;
— *three o'clock*, vers (les) trois
heures; — *it*, en; *be* —, s'agir
de, être sur le point de; *he has*
this good thing — *him*, il a cela
de bon; *set* —, se mettre à.

above, au-dessus de.

abroad, à l'étranger.

absence, absence, f.

absent, absent.

abundant, abondant.

accept, accepter.

accession, accession, f.

accident, accident, m.

accidental, accidentel.

accompany, accompagner.

according to, selon.

account; *on* — *of*, à cause de.

ache; *have head* —, avoir mal à la
tête; *my head* — *s*, j'ai mal à la
tête.

acquaintance, connaissance, f.

acquire, acquérir.

act, agir.

action, action, f., trait, m.

actor, acteur, m., comédien, m.

add, ajouter.

address, adresser.

adjective, adjectif, m.

admire, admirer.

admission, entrée, f.

admit, admettre.

adorn, faire l'ornement de.

advance, avancer.

advanced, avancé.

advantage; *take* — *of*, abuser de.

advice, avis, m., conseil, m.

advise, conseiller.

affair, affaire, f.

afraid; *to be* — (*of*), avoir peur
(de), craindre; — *of*, effrayé de;
be much —, avoir grand peur,
avoir bien peur.

after, prep. and adv., après; *ten*
minutes — *five*, cinq heures dix
(minutes).

after, conj., après que.

afternoon, après-midi, m. and f.

afterwards, ensuite, puis, après.

again, encore, encore une fois, de
nouveau.

against, contre.

age, âge, m.; *to be twenty years of*
—, avoir vingt ans.

ago, il y a.

agreeable, agréable.

ahead; *walk* —, marcher le pre-
mier.

Ajaccio, Ajaccio.

alas!, hélas!

Albert, Albert.

all, tout; — *that (which)*, tout ce
qui; *not at* —, pas du tout;
— *passions*, toutes les passions.

allow, laisser, permettre.

almost, presque.

alone, seul.

along, par; *as they went* —,
chemin faisant.

already, déjà.

Alsatia, Alsace, f.

also, aussi.

although, bien que, quoique.

always, toujours.

ambassador, ambassadeur, m.

ambition, ambition, f.

America, Amérique, f.

American, américain.

amiable, aimable.

among, parmi, entre, chez.
amongst, parmi, entre, chez.
amuse, amuser; — *one's self*, s'amuser.
amusement, amusement, m.
amusing, amusant.
ancestors, ancêtres, m. pl.; aïeux, m. pl.
ancient, ancien, antique.
and, et; *to go — visit*, aller visiter.
angry; — *at*, — *with*, fâché de (contre); *be —, get —*, se fâcher.
animal, animal, m.
another, un autre, encore un.
answer, n., réponse, f.
answer, v., répondre.
ant, fourmi, f.
antechamber, antichambre, f.
antiquity, antiquité, f.
anxious; *be —*, tenir à.
any; de + def. art.; de; en; aucun, quelconque, tout; *I haven't —*, je n'en ai pas; *have you —?*, en avez-vous?; *don't give him —*, ne lui en donnez pas; — *thing* (with neg.), rien; — *one* (with neg.), personne.
anybody, **anyone**, quelqu'un; *not ... —*, ne ... personne.
any one, see **anybody**.
anything, quelque chose, m.; *not ... —*, ne ... rien; — *good*, quelque chose de bon; *not ... — good*, ne ... rien de bon.
anywhere; *not ... —*, ne ... nulle part.
apiece, chacun, la pièce.
appear, paraître, sembler, comparaître.
appetite, appétit, m.
applaud, applaudir.
apple, pomme, f.
apple-tree, pommier, m.
appoint, nommer.
approach, n., approche, f.
approach, v., approcher, s'approcher de.
approbation, approbation, f.
approve, trouver bon.
April, avril, m.
Arab, Arabe, m.

are; see **be**; *here is* (or *are*), voici; *there is* (or *are*), voilà.
argument, argument, m.
Ariosto, Arioste, m.
arise, s'élever, naître.
arithmetic, arithmétique, f.
arm, bras, m.
army, armée, f.
around, autour de; *she looks — her*, elle regarde autour d'elle; *go — the city*, faire le tour de la ville.
arouse, exciter.
arrange, arranger.
arrival, arrivée, f.
arrive, arriver.
art, art, m.
article, article, m.; — *of dress*, article de toilette.
artist, artiste, m.
as, comme; aussi, si; pendant que, en; — ... —, aussi ... que; *not — ... —*, pas aussi ... que, pas si ... que; *not so ... —*, pas aussi ... que, pas si ... que, moins ... que; — *much money —*, autant d'argent que; — *long —*, tant que; — *soon —*, aussitôt que; — *if*, comme si; — *well —*, aussi bien que; — *to*, quant à.
ascend, monter (sur).
ashamed; *be —*, avoir honte; *feel —*, avoir honte.
ask, demander, prier; — *for*, demander; — *him for it*, le lui demander; — *one's self*, se demander.
asleep, endormi; *be —*, être endormi, dormir; *we have been —*, nous avons dormi; *fall —*, s'endormir.
ass, âne, m.
assail, assaillir.
assist, aider.
associate, s'associer.
assure, assurer.
astonish, étonner.
astonishment, étonnement, m.
at, à, chez, de; — (*the house, shop, office, etc., of*), chez; — *the hatter's*, chez le chapelier; —

my father's, chez mon père ; — *home*, chez moi, chez toi, etc. ; — *my house*, chez moi ; — *our house*, chez nous ; — *daybreak*, dès le point du jour.
attack, attaquer.
attend, assister à.
attention, attention, f. ; *pay* —, *give* —, faire attention.
attentively, attentivement.
attract, attirer.
auburn, châtain.
audience, assistance, f., assistants, m. pl.
August, août, m.
Augustus, Auguste, m.
aunt, tante, f.
author, auteur, m.
autumn, automne, m. ; *in* —, en automne.
avenue, avenue, f.
avidity, avidité, f.
avoid, éviter.
await, attendre.
awake, intr., se réveiller.
away ; *go* —, partir, s'en aller ; *take* —, ôter ; *far* —, loin, loin d'ici ; *run* —, se sauver.
axe, 'hache, f.

B.

back, dos, m. ; *be* —, être de retour ; *give* —, rendre ; *come* —, revenir ; *go* —, retourner ; *bring* —, ramener.
bad, mauvais, méchant.
badly, mal ; *hurt* (*very*) —, faire (beaucoup de) mal à.
Bæda, Bède.
bag, sac, m.
bake, cuire.
baker, boulanger, m.
ball, bal, m.
banana, banane, f.
banish, bannir.
bank, bord, m. ; *on the* —, au bord.
banker, banquier, m.
banking-house, maison (f.) de banque.
barefoot, nu-pieds, les pieds nus.
bareheaded, découvert.

bargain, marché, m.
barn, grange, f.
bask, se chauffer.
basket, panier, m.
Bastille, Bastille, f.
battle, bataille, f.
be, être ; y avoir ; — (*of health*), se porter, aller ; — *about to*, aller, être sur le point de, devoir ; — *born*, naître ; — (*of weather*), faire ; — (*of age*), avoir ; — (*of time*), y avoir ; — *afraid*, avoir peur ; *here is* (*are*), voici ; *there is* (*are*), voilà, il y a ; *is he finishing?*, finit-il ? ; *is he not?*, etc., n'est-ce pas ? ; *how are you?*, comment vous portez-vous ? ; comment allez-vous ? ; comment ça va-t-il ? ; comment ça va ? : *I am well*, je me porte bien, ça va bien, etc. ; *I am to do it*, je dois le faire ; *I am going to do it*, je vais le faire ; *it is fine*, il fait beau ; *is it?*, vraiment ? ; *he is ten years old*, il a dix ans ; *a house to — sold*, une maison à vendre.

bear, n., ours, m.
bear, v. (*of fruit trees*), donner.
beard, barbe, f.
beast, animal, m. ; (p. 118) mon-ture, f.
beat, battre.
beautiful, beau.
beauty, beauté, f.
because, parce que.
become, devenir, se faire ; — (*suit*), seoir ; *what has — of her?*, qu'est-elle devenue ?
bed ; *go to* —, se coucher ; *be in* —, être au lit, être couché.
bedroom, chambre (f.) à coucher.
bee, 'hêtre, m.
before, prep., devant (*of place*) ; avant (*of time*) ; avant de + inf. ; — *the judge*, par devant le juge.
before, conj., avant que.
before, adv., auparavant.
beg ; *I — your pardon*, pardon.
beg, prier, mendier.

beggar, mendiant, m.
begin, commencer, se mettre à.
beginning, commencement, m.
behave, se comporter.
behead, décapiter.
behind, derrière.
believe, croire; *it is believed*, on croit.
bell, cloche, f.; *little* — (*spherical*), grelot; *sleigh* —, grelot, m.
belong; — *to*, être à, appartenir à.
below; *here* —, ici-bas.
bend, courber.
benefactor, bienfaiteur, m.
benediction, bénédiction, f.
beside, à côté de.
besides, d'ailleurs.
best, adj., le meilleur.
best, adv., le mieux.
better, adj., meilleur.
better, adv., mieux; *be* —, *be worth more*, valoir mieux; *be* — (*of health*), se porter mieux, aller mieux; *like* —, *prefer*, aimer mieux.
between, entre.
bid; — *good-bye to*, dire adieu à.
big, grand, gros.
bind up, bander.
bird, oiseau, m.
birthday, fête, f., anniversaire (m.) de ma (sa) naissance.
bite, mordre.
bitterly, amèrement.
black, noir.
black-board, tableau noir, m.
blacksmith, maréchal ferrant, m.
blade, brin, m.
blind, aveugle.
blond, blond.
blow, n., coup, m.; — *with a stick*, coup de bâton.
blow, v., souffler.
blue, bleu.
blunt, brusque.
blush, rougir.
board, bord, m.; *on* — *of*, à bord de.
body, corps, m.
boil, bouillir.
bold, hardi.
bonbon, bonbon, m.

book, livre, m.
born; *to be* —, naître; *he was* —, il est né.
both, tous (les) deux, l'un et l'autre; — ... *and*, et ... et.
bother!, peste de!
bottom, fond, m.; *at the* — *of*, au fond de.
Boston, Boston, m.
bow; — *to*, saluer.
box, boîte, f.
boy, enfant, garçon, m.; *my* —, mon enfant, m.
branch, branche, f.
brave, courageux, brave.
bread, pain, m.
break, casser, rompre; — *out*, éclater; — *one's arm*, se casser le bras; — *off*, casser, ôter; — *up*, se dissoudre.
breakfast, déjeuner, m.
breathe, respirer.
brick, brique, f.; — *house*, maison (f.) en briques.
bridge, pont, m.
bring, apporter; (*carry*) transporter; (*lead*) amener; — *back*, ramener; — *down*, descendre; — *up* (*rear*) élever; — *up*, ramener à la surface.
Britain, see **Great Britain**.
brother, frère, m.
brush, n., brosse, f.
brush, v., brosser.
build, bâtir.
building, édifice, m.
bun, briochette, f.
burden, fardeau, m.
burn, brûler.
burst, éclat, m.
bury, enterrer.
business, commerce, m., affaires, f. pl.; *on* —, pour affaires; *go into* —, se mettre dans les affaires, se mettre en commerce.
busy, occupé (de); *be* — *doing anything*, *be* — *at anything*, être en train de faire quelque chose, être à faire quelque chose.
but, mais; *nothing* —, ne ... rien ... que.

butter, beurre, m.

buy, acheter.

by, par, de, sur, à, en; — *rubbing*, en frottant; — *the way*, à propos; *go* —, passer; — *sight*, de vue; *taller* — *an inch*, plus grand d'un pouce; *six feet* — *seven*, six pieds sur sept; — *my watch*, à ma montre; — *what he says*, à ce qu'il dit; *loved* —, aimé de.

C.

cabbage, chou, m.

Cædmon, Cedmon.

café, café, m.

cage, cage, f.

Cain, Cain.

call, appeler; faire venir; — *a meeting*, convoquer une assemblée; *he called*, s'appeler.

camel, chameau, m.

can, pouvoir, savoir; *he* — *not*, il ne peut pas, il ne sait pas; *I could*, je pourrais, je pouvais; *I could have*, j'aurais pu.

Canada, Canada, m.; *in or to* —, au Canada.

Canadian, canadien.

cane, canne, f.

cannon-shot, coup (m.) de canon, m.

capital, n., capitale, f.

capital, adj., capital.

captain, capitaine, m.

caravan, caravane, f.

card, carte, f.

care; — *for*, soigner; *take* — *of*, avoir soin de, soigner; *take* —, prendre garde.

carefully, soigneusement.

careless, négligent.

caress, caresse, f.

carnival, carnaval, m.

carpenter, charpentier, m.

carriage, voiture, f.

carrot, carotte, f.

carry, porter; — *off*, emporter; — *the day*, l'emporter.

case, cas, m.; *in* — (*that*), au cas que.

cat, chat, m.

catch, attraper; — (*a*) *cold*, s'enrhumer.

catholic, catholique.

cattle, bétail, m. s., bestiaux, m. pl.

cause, n., cause, f.

cause, v., causer; exciter; — *to*, faire.

cavalry, cavalerie, f.

cease, cesser.

celebrate, célébrer.

celebrated, célèbre.

celebration, fête, f.

cent, sou, m.

centime, centime, m.

century, siècle, m.

certain, certain.

chair, chaise, f.

chance, 'hasard, m.

change, monnaie, f.

chapter, chapitre, m.

charge, charge, f.

charitable, charitable.

charm, charmer.

charming, charmant.

charmingly, à ravir.

chase, chasser, poursuivre.

chat, causer.

cheap, (à) bon marché, peu coûteux; *cheaper*, à meilleur marché, moins cher.

cherry, cerise, f.

cherry-tree, cerisier, m.

chicken, poulet, m.

chief, n., chef, m.

chief, adj., principal.

child, enfant, m. and f.

chimney, cheminée, f.

China, Chine, f.

chopper, bûcheron, m.

Christian, chrétien.

Christopher, Christophe.

church, église, f.; *at* (*to*) —, à l'église.

city, ville, f.; *in the* —, à la ville, en ville.

city-hall, hôtel (m.) de ville.

clad, see *clothe*.

claimant, prétendant, m.

class, classe, f.

class-room, classe, f.

clean, nettoyer.

clearly, clairement.

clever, habile, fort.

cleverly, habilement.
climb, grimper.
clock, horloge, f.
close, fermer, clore.
cloth; *table* —, nappe, f.
clothe, vêtir.
clothes, vêtements, m. pl., habits, m. pl.
clothes-press, armoire, f.
clumsy; *be so* — *as to*, avoir la maladresse de; — *fellow*, maladroit, m.
coat, habit, m.
cock, coq, m.
coffee, café, m.
cold, adj., froid; n., froid, m.; *be* — (*of living beings*), avoir froid; *be* — (*of weather*), faire froid; *I have* — *hands*, *my hands are* —, j'ai froid aux mains; *catch* (a) —, s'enrhumer.
collect, ramasser.
collection, quête, f.; *take up the* —, faire la quête.
college, collège, m.
colossal, colossal.
Columbus, Colomb.
comb, peigne, m.
come, venir, arriver; — *again*, revenir; — *back*, — *home*, revenir; — *to see*, — *and see*, venir voir; — *down*, descendre; — *up*, monter, arriver; — *in*, entrer; — *out*, sortir; *come!*, voyons!, allons!
comfortable, commode; *be* —, faire bon.
command, commander.
commandment, commandement, m.; *the ten* —s, les dix commandements, le décalogue.
commence, commencer.
commit, commettre.
companion, compagnon, m., compagnie, f.; *travelling* —, compagnon de voyage.
company, compagnie, f.
compartment, compartiment, m.
compassion, compassion, f.
complain, se plaindre.
complete, complet.

complicated, compliqué.
compliment, compliment, m.
comprise, comprendre.
comrade, camarade, m.
conceal, cacher.
concert, concert, m.
conclude, conclure.
condemn, condamner.
condition, condition, f.
confectioner, confiseur, m.
confess, avouer.
confidence, confiance, f.
confound, confondre.
conquer, conquérir, vaincre.
conscience, conscience, f.
consecrate, bénir.
consent, consentir.
consider, considérer.
construct, construire.
contain, contenir.
continually, sans cesse.
continue, continuer.
contract, contrat, m.
contrary; *on the* —, au contraire.
convenient, commode.
cook, cuisinier, m., -ère, f.
cool, frais; *it is* — (*of weather*), il fait frais.
coolly, tranquillement.
copper, sou, m.
copy, exemplaire, m., copie, f.
coral, corail, m.
corkscrew, tire-bouchon, m.
costs, frais, m. pl.
cost, coûter.
country, pays, m.; — (*native land*), patrie, f.; — (*as opposed to town*), campagne, f.; *in the* —, à la campagne.
county-town, chef-lieu, m.
couple, couple, m. and f.
courage, courage, m.; *take* —, prendre courage.
court, cour, f.
courtier, courtisan, m.
cousin, cousin, m.; cousine, f.
cover, couvrir; *covered with*, couvert de.
cow, vache, f.
Cracow, Cracovie, f.
crawl, se traîner.

create, créer.
creature, créature, f.
crime, crime, m.
criminal, criminel, m.
critic, critique, m.
Crœsus, Crésus.
crops, récolte, f.
cross, adj., méchant.
cross, v., traverser.
crowd, foule, f.
crown, couronne, f.
crumb, miette, f.
cry, pleurer, crier; — *out*, crier.
cup, tasse, f., coupe, f.: **cupboard**,
cure, guérir. [armoire, f.]
curiosity, curiosité, f.
curse, maudire.
custom, coutume, f.
cut, couper; *have one's hair* —, se
 faire couper les cheveux.

D.

daily, tous les jours.
dance, danser.
danger, danger, m.
dangerous, dangereux.
dark, noir; *be* —, faire noir, faire
 obscur.
date (*time*), date, f.
date (*fruit*), datte, f.
daughter, fille, f.
day, jour, m., journée, f.; *every*
 —, tous les jours, chaque jour;
in those —s, à cette époque;
what — *of the month is it to-day?*,
 quel jour du mois sommes-nous
 aujourd'hui?, etc.; *the* — *after*
to-morrow, après-demain; *the* —
before yesterday, avant-hier; *all*
(long), toute la journée, tout
 le jour; *from* — *to* —, de jour
 en jour; *be* — (*day/light*), faire
 jour.
daybreak, point (m.) du jour; *at*
(since) —, dès le point du jour.
dead, mort.
deaf-mute, sourd-muet.
deal; *a great* —, *a good* —, beau-
 coup.
dear, cher; *not so* —, pas si cher,
 moins cher.

death, mort, f.; *be at the point of*
 —, être sur le point de mourir;
put to —, mettre à mort.
debt, dette, f.
decapitate, décapiter.
decayed, gâté.
deceive, tromper.
declare, déclarer.
decline, déchoir.
decorate, orner.
defect, défaut, m.
dejection, abattement, m.
delay, différer.
delicacy, délicatesse, f.
delight; — *in*, se plaire à.
delighted, enchanté.
delightful, charmant.
deliverance, délivrance, f.
delve, bêcher.
dentist, dentiste, m.
deny, nier.
depart, s'en aller, partir.
depend; — *on*, dépendre de.
describe, décrire.
desert, désert, m.
deserve, mériter.
desire, désirer, vouloir.
despair, désespérer.
dessert, dessert, m.
destroy, détruire.
determine, déterminer, résoudre.
devour, dévorer.
dial, cadran, m.
diameter, diamètre, m.
die, mourir; — *away*, se mourir.
difference, différence, f.; *that*
makes no —, cela ne fait rien.
different, différent.
difficult, difficile.
difficulty, difficulté, f.
dig, creuser, bêcher.
diminish, diminuer.
dine, dîner.
dining-room, salle (f.) à manger.
dinner, dîner, m.
direct, adj., droit.
direct, v., diriger.
disagreeable, désagréable.
disappear, disparaître.
discover, découvrir.
discuss, discuter.

discussion, discussion, f.
dishes, vaisselle, f.
disobliging, désobligeant.
disperse, se disperser, se séparer.
displease, déplaire.
dispute, n., différend, m.
dispute, v., se disputer.
dissatisfied, mécontent.
distinction, distinction, f.
distinguished, distingué.
distract, distraire.
disturb, déranger.
dive, plonger.
divide, diviser ; partager.
do, faire ; — (*of health*), se porter, etc. ; — *without*, se passer de ; — *you like?*, aimez-vous? ; *did he speak?*, a-t-il parlé? ; *he does not speak*, il ne parle pas ; *he works, does he not?*, il travaille, n'est-ce pas? ; — *not (don't) speak*, ne parlez pas.
doctor, médecin, m., docteur, m.
doctrine, doctrine, f.
dog, chien, m.
dollar, dollar, m., piastre, f. ; a — *a dozen*, un dollar la douzaine.
door, porte, f. ; *next* —, à côté.
doubt, n., doute, m. ; *no* —, sans doute
doubt, v., douter.
down ; — *stairs*, en bas ; *come* —, *go* — (*stairs*), descendre, aller en bas ; *bring* —, descendre ; — *town*, en ville ; *bent* —, courbé ; *sit* —, s'asseoir ; *lie* —, se coucher.
dozen, douzaine, f.
Dr., docteur, m.
dramatic, dramatique.
draw, tirer ; tracer ; — *near*, s'approcher (de).
drawing, dessin, m.
dream, songe, m., rêve, m.
dress, n., robe, f. ; toilette, f.
dress, v., habiller ; se mettre ; s'habiller ; *be* — *ed*, être mis.
dress-maker, couturière, f.
drink, boire.
drive ; *go for a* —, *be out for a* —, se promener en voiture.
drive, v., conduire, mener, mouvoir, chasser ; — *away*, chasser.

drop, laisser tomber.
drown, se noyer.
dry, sec.
dry-goods store, magasin (m.) de nouveautés.
ducat, ducat, m.
duke, duc, m.
dupe, dupe, f.
during, pendant.
duty, devoir, m.
dwel, demeurer.

E.

each, chaque, tout.
each one, chacun.
each other, reflex. pron. pl., nous, vous, se ; indef., l'un l'autre.
eagerly, avec empressement.
ear, oreille, f. ; — *-ache*, mal aux oreilles ; — (*of corn*), épi, m.
early, de bonne heure.
earn, gagner.
earth, terre, f.
easily, facilement.
easy, facile.
eat, manger.
economical, économe.
educated, instruit.
education, éducation, f. ; *receive a good* —, faire de bonnes études.
eight, huit.
eighty, quatre-vingt(s).
either, ou ; *nor* . . . —, ni . . . non plus ; *he hasn't any* —, il n'en a pas non plus.
eldest, aîné.
elect, élire.
elephant, éléphant, m.
eleven, onze.
elm, orme, m.
else, autre ; *not . . . anything* —. *nothing* —, ne . . . rien autre.
elsewhere, autre part, ailleurs.
emblem, emblème, m.
embrasure, embrasure, f.
emperor, empereur, m.
employ ; *admit into his* —, admettre chez lui.
empty, vide.
enclose, clore, enclorre.
enclosed, ci-inclus.

encourage, encourager.
end, n., fin, f. ; *come to a bad —*, finir mal.
end, v., finir, se terminer.
enemy, ennemi, m.
engage, s'engager.
England, Angleterre, f.
English, anglais ; — *man*, Anglais, m. ; — *(the language)*, l'anglais, m., anglais, m.
enjoy, jouir de ; — *one's self*, s'amuser.
enough, assez (de) ; *not —*, pas assez ; *kind —*, assez bon.
enter, entrer (dans).
enterprise, entreprise, f.
equal, *be — (to)*, égal.
equivalent, équivalent.
error, erreur, f.
escape, éviter, échapper ; *have a narrow —*, l'échapper belle.
estate, propriété, f., biens, m. pl.
Europe, Europe, f.
European, européen.
even, même ; — *if*, — *though*, quand même.
evening, soir, m., soirée, f. ; *in the —*, le soir ; *last —*, yesterday —, hier (au) soir.
ever, jamais.
every, tout, chaque ; — *Sunday*, tous les dimanches ; — *thing which*, tout ce qui ; — *other day*, tous les deux jours.
everybody, tout le monde, m.
everyone, chacun.
everywhere, partout.
evil, mal ; — *doing*, mal faire, m.
exactly, exactement, précisément.
examine, examiner.
example, exemple, m. ; *for —*, par exemple.
excavation, excavation, f.
exclaim, s'écrier.
excuse, excuser. [thème, m.
exercise, devoir, m., exercice, m.
exercise-book, cahier, m.
exhibit, exposer.
expect, attendre, s'attendre, compter, espérer.
expense, dépense, f., dépens, m. pl.

explain, expliquer.
extract, arracher.
eye, œil, m., plur., yeux.

F.

façade, façade, f.
face, figure, f., visage, m. ; *shut the door in one's —*, fermer la porte au nez à quelqu'un.
fact, fait, m.
fail, faillir ; *to — in*, manquer à.
fairy, fée, f. ; — *story*, conte de fée(s).
faithful, fidèle.
fall, tomber ; — *due*, échoir ; — *out*, se brouiller ; — *asleep*, s'endormir.
familiarity, familiarité, f.
familiarly, familièrement.
family, famille, f.
famous, fameux.
far, adv., loin ; — *from*, loin que, loin de ; — *away*, loin, loin d'ici ; *farther off*, plus loin ; *farther on*, plus loin ; *as — as*, jusqu'à ; *how — is it ?*, combien y a-t-il ?
farmer, paysan, m., fermier, m., cultivateur, m.
farmhouse, ferme, f.
farm-servant, valet (m.) de ferme.
fashion, mode, f.
fast, vite.
fastidious, difficile.
fate, destin, m.
father, père, m.
favour, faveur, f.
favourite, favori, m.
fear, n., crainte, f., peur, f. ; *for — that*, de crainte que ; *for — of*, de crainte de.
fear, v., craindre, avoir peur.
feast, festin, m., banquet, m.
feed, nourrir.
feel, tâter ; sentir ; — *hungry*, sentir la faim, avoir faim.
feeling, sentiment, m.
fell, abattre.
fellow, garçon, m. ; *my good —*, mon ami ; *the brave little —s*, les petits bonshommes ; *the clumsy —*, le maladroit.

fence, clôture, f.
fetch, aller chercher.
few, peu, peu de, quelques ; *a* —, quelques-uns ; *but* —, ne... guère, ne... que peu.
field, champ, m.
fifteen, quinze.
fifteenth, quinzième, quinze.
fifth, cinquième, cinq.
fifty, cinquante.
fight, combattre.
fill, remplir.
finally, enfin, à la fin ; — *do*, finir par faire.
find, trouver ; *be found*, se trouver ; — *out*, découvrir.
fine, beau ; *it is* — (*weather*), il fait beau (temps).
fine-looking, beau, élégant.
finger, doigt, m.
finish, finir.
fire, feu, m.
first, adj., premier.
first, adv., d'abord ; *at* —, d'abord ; *for the* — *time*, pour la première fois.
fish, n., poisson, m.
fish, v., pêcher.
fit, aller à ; *my suit* — *s me well*, mon complet me va bien.
fitting, convenable.
five, cinq.
flatter, flatter.
flattering, flatteur.
flee, fuir, s'enfuir.
fleet, flotte, f.
Florida, Floride, f.
flour, farine, f.
flower, fleur, f. ; *in* —, en fleurs.
fluently, couramment.
fly, voler ; — *away*, s'envoler.
foggy ; *be* —, faire du brouillard.
folded, croisé.
foliage, feuillage, m.
follow, suivre.
following, suivant.
folly, folie, f.
fond ; *be* — *of*, aimer.
food, nourriture, f.
foolish, fou.
foot, pied, m. ; *on* —, à pied ;

tread under —, fouler aux pieds.
for, prep., pour, pendant, de, contre, par ; — *a moment*, un moment ; — (*during*), pendant ; *set out* —, partir pour ; — (*since*), depuis ; — *a long time*, — *a week*, depuis longtemps, depuis une semaine ; — *me*, pour moi ; — *it*, en ; *trade* —, échanger pour (contre) ; *I am sorry* — *it*, j'en suis fâché.
for, conj., car.
forbid, défendre.
force, n., force, f.
force, v., forcer.
foreign, étranger ; *in* — *countries*, à l'étranger.
forest, forêt, f.
forget, oublier.
fork, fourchette, f.
form, former.
former ; *the* —, celui-là.
fortnight, quinzaine, f., quinze jours, m. pl.
fortunate, heureux.
fortune, fortune, f. ; *good* —, bonheur, m. ; *make one's* —, faire fortune.
forty, quarante.
four, quatre.
fourteenth, quatorzième, quatorze.
fourth, quatrième, quatre.
fox, renard, m.
franc, franc, m.
France, France, f. ; *in* —, *to* —, en France.
Francis, François, m., Francis, m.
Frederick the Great, Frédéric le Grand.
free, libre.
freeze, geler.
French, adj., français ; — (*the language*), le français, français ; — *man*, Français, m. ; — *teacher*, professeur (m.) de français.
Friday, vendredi, m.
friend, ami, m. ; amie, f.
friendly, aimable.
friendship, amitié, f.
frog, grenouille, f.

from, de, à, à partir de, dans, d'après, depuis ; — *day to day*, de jour en jour ; — *it*, en ; — *nature*, d'après nature ; *drink* — *a glass*, boire dans un verre ; *take* — *the table*, prendre sur la table.

front ; *in* — *of*, devant.

fruit, fruit, m.

frying-pan, poêle, f.

fulfil, accomplir.

full, plein.

furnish, fournir.

G.

gallery, galerie, f.

garden, jardin, m.

Gascon, Gascon, m.

gate, porte, f.

gather, cueillir.

gay, gai.

general, général, m.

generally, en général, générale-ment, ordinairement.

generous, généreux.

gentleman, monsieur, m.

George, Georges.

German, allemand.

get, prendre ; avoir ; obtenir ; *go*

and —, aller chercher, aller

trouver ; — *up*, *rise*, se lever ;

— *up on*, monter sur ; — (*be-*

come), devenir ; — *made*, *have*

made, faire faire ; — *married*, se

marier ; — *angry*, se fâcher ;

— *on*, avancer.

ghost, revenant, m.

gird on, ceindre.

girl, fille, f., enfant, f.

give, donner ; — *away*, donner ;

— *back*, rendre.

glad ; — *at*, *of*, content de, charmé de.

glory, gloire, f.

glove, gant, m.

go, aller ; se rendre ; — *away*, s'en

aller, partir ; — *in*, *into*, entrer

dans ; — *out*, sortir ; — *with*,

accompagner, aller avec ; — *by*,

— *past*, passer (devant) ; — *up*

(*stairs*), aller en haut, monter ;

— *down* (*stairs*), aller en bas,

descendre ; — *and see*, aller voir ;

— *around the city*, faire le tour

de la ville ; — *to bed*, se coucher ;

— *for a row, sail, etc.*, se pro-

mener en bateau ; — (*out*) *for a*

walk, aller se promener (à pied),

aller faire une promenade (à

pied) ; — *for a drive*, se pro-

mener en voiture ; — *for a ride*,

se promener à cheval ; — *for*, —

after, — *and get*, aller chercher ;

— *back* (*again*), retourner ; —

down town, aller en ville ; —

home, aller chez soi, rentrer ; —

on, continuer (à), aller en ; — *to*

sleep, s'endormir ; — *to France*,

aller en France, partir pour la

France.

God, Dieu ; *gods*, dieux, m. pl.

gold, or, m. ; adj. (*of gold*), d'or, en or.

golden, d'or.

good, bon, brave ; *my* — *fellow*,

mon ami, m. ; *be so* — *as to*, *be*

— *enough to*, voulez-vous bien,

ayez la bonté de, veuillez.

good, bien, m. ; *do* —, faire du bien.

good-bye, adieu, au revoir.

goodness, bonté, f.

goods, marchandises, f. pl.

goose, oie, f.

gooseberry-bush, groseillier, m.

government, gouvernement, m.

grace, grâce, f.

grain, grain, m.

grammar, grammaire, f.

grandfather, grand-père, m., aïeul, m.

grandmamma, grand'mère, f.

grandmother, grand'mère, f.

grandson, petit-fils, m.

grass, herbe, f.

gravely, gravement.

great, grand, gros ; — *deal*, beau-

coup.

Great Britain, Grande-Bretagne, f.

Greek, grec.

green, vert.

grind, moudre.

ground, terre, f. ; (*up*) *on the* —, à terre, par terre.

grow, croître ; — *larger*, grandir.

grudge (*have a*), en vouloir.

guard, garde, m.

gun, fusil, m.

H.

hair, cheveux, m. pl.

half, demi, moitié, f. ; — *an hour*, une demi-heure, f. ; *half-past eight*, huit heures et demie.

half, adv., à demi.

hall, vestibule, m. ; salle, f.

hand, main, f. ; *shake hands with*, donner la main à ; *on the right* —, à droite ; *on the left* —, à gauche ; — (*of a clock*), aiguille, f.

handkerchief, mouchoir, m.

hang, pendre.

happen, arriver ; venir à.

happily, heureusement.

happy, heureux, content.

hard ; *work* —, travailler ferme.

hardly, à peine.

harm, faire mal à.

harp, 'harpe, f.

harvest, moisson, f.

hasten, se hâter, se dépêcher ; — *into presence of*, accourir auprès de.

hat, chapeau, m.

hate, 'haïr.

hatred, 'haine, f.

hatter, chapelier, m.

have, avoir ; obtenir ; — (*as auxiliary*), avoir, être ; *I — to be there*, il faut que j'y sois ; — *him go*, faites-le partir ; — (*cause to be*), faire ; *I am having a house built*, je fais bâtir une maison ; — *done*, faire faire ; — *one's hair cut*, se faire couper les cheveux ; — *just*, venir de ; — *to do with*, avoir affaire à ; *he has spoken*, *has he not ?*, il a parlé, n'est-ce pas ? ; — *to*, être obligé de.

Havre, le Havre.

hay, foin, m.

hazel-nut, noisette, f.

he, il, lui ; ce ; — *who*, celui qui ; — *himself*, lui-même.

head, tête, f. ; maître, m.

headache ; *have* —, avoir mal à la tête.

heal, guérir.

health, santé, f.

hear, entendre ; — *from*, recevoir des nouvelles de ; *I — from him*, je reçois de ses nouvelles ; — *of*, entendre parler de.

heart, cœur, m.

heat, chaleur, f.

heavy, lourd.

hedge, 'haie, f.

Helena ; *St.* —, Sainte-Hélène.

help, aider.

hen, poule, f.

hence, aussi, donc.

Henry, Henri, m.

her, adj., son, sa, ses ; lui... le (à elle).

her, pers. pron., la, elle ; *to* —, lui, à elle ; — *own*, le sien, à elle.

here, ici, y ; — *below*, ici-bas ; — *is*, — *are*, voici.

hero, 'héros, m.

hers, le sien, à elle.

herself, se, elle-même.

hide, cacher.

high, 'haut ; — *price*, grand prix, m., tant.

hill, colline, f.

him, le, lui ; *to, for* —, lui ; — *who*, celui qui.

himself, se, soi, lui, lui-même ; *to* —, en lui-même ; *he* —, lui-même.

hind, adj., de derrière.

hinder, empêcher.

his, adj., son, sa, ses ; lui... le (à lui).

his, pron., le sien, à lui ; — *own*, le sien.

history, histoire, f.

hither ; — *and thither*, ça et là.

hold, tenir ; — *out*, tendre.

hole, trou, m.

holiday, jour (m.) de fête ; — *s*, vacances, f. pl.

holy, bénit.

home ; (*at*) —, chez moi, chez toi,

etc., à la maison ; *go* —, aller chez moi, chez toi, etc., aller à la maison.

honest, honnête, loyal, probe.

honesty, loyauté, f., probité, f.

honour, n., honneur, m.

honour, v., honorer.

hope, n., espérance, f.

hope, v., espérer.

horse, cheval, m.

horseback ; *on* —, à cheval.

horseshoe, fer (m.) à cheval.

hot ; chaud, brûlant ; *it is* —, il fait chaud.

hour, heure, f.

house, maison, f. ; *at (to) our* —, chez nous ; *at whose* —?, chez qui? ; *at Mr. B's* (—), chez Monsieur B ; *in the* —, à la maison, dans la maison.

how, comment, comme, combien ;

— *!*, comme !, que ! ; — *much*,

— *many*, combien ; — *much!*, —

many!, combien (de) !, que de ! ;

— *long have you been here?*, depuis quand êtes-vous ici? ; —

happy she is!, qu'elle est heureuse ! ; — *old is he?*, quel âge a-t-il? ; — *is he?*, comment se

porte-t-il? ; comment va-t-il?

however, cependant ; — *good*,

quelque bon que ; — *that may*

be, quoi qu'il en soit ; — *little*,

pour peu que.

howl, n., cri, m. ; *give a* —, pousser

un cri.

howl, v., pousser un cri.

humble, humble.

hundred ; *a (one)* —, cent.

hunger, faim, f.

hungry ; *be (feel)* —, avoir faim.

hunt, chasser.

hunting, chasse, f.

hurrah for!, vive(nt) !

hurry ; — *up*, se dépêcher ; *be in*

a —, être pressé.

hurt, faire mal à ; — *one's self*, se

faire mal.

husband mari, m.

husbandman, laboureur, m.

hymn, cantique, m.

I.

I, je, moi.

ice, glace, f.

idea, idée, f.

idle, paresseux.

idleness, paresse, f.

if, si.

ignorant, ignorant ; *be — of*, ignorer.

ill, n., mal, m.

ill, adj., malade.

ill, adv., mal.

ill-fortune, malheur, m.

ill-treat, maltraiter.

illuminate, illuminer.

image, image, f.

imagine, s'imaginer.

immediately, tout de suite.

impatient, impatient.

important, important.

impossible, impossible.

in, dans, à, en, de, sur ; — *it*, y ;

— (*after superlative*), de ; — *the*

reign of, sous ; *be —*, y être,

être chez soi ; — *the evening*, le

soir ; *one — ten*, un sur dix ; —

the west, à l'ouest.

inch, pouce, m.

income, revenu, m.

increase, augmenter.

incur, courir.

indeed !, vraiment !

indisposed, souffrant.

individual, individu, m.

influence, n., influence, f.

influence, v., influencer.

inhabitant, habitant, m.

injustice, injustice, f.

ink, encre, f.

inkstand, encrier, m.

inn, auberge, f.

innkeeper, aubergiste, m.

insect, insecte, m.

instead of, au lieu de.

institution, institution, f.

instrument, instrument, m.

insult, dire des injures à, insulter.

intelligent, intelligent.

intend, avoir (l')intention.

intention, intention, f.

inter, enterrer.

interest, intérêt, m. ; *take — in*, prendre intérêt à, s'occuper de.

interest, intéresser.

interesting, intéressant.

interview ; (*private*) —, tête-à-tête, m.

intimate, intime.

into, dans, en ; — *it*, y, là dedans ; *fall — the sea*, tomber à la mer ; — *his presence*, auprès de lui.

introduce, présenter.

invention, invention, f.

invite, inviter.

iron, fer, m. ; — (*adj.*) de fer.

is, see **be** ; *here —, here are*, voici ; *here he —*, le voici.

island, île, f.

it, il, elle, ce ; le, la ; cela ; *in —, y*, dedans ; *of —, for —*, en ; *to —, y* ; — *is you*, c'est vous ; — *is they*, ce sont eux, c'est eux ; *think of —*, y penser.

Italian, italien.

Italy, Italie, f.

its, son, sa, ses ; en...le.

itself, se, soi ; lui-même ; même.

J.

January, janvier, m.

Japan, Japon, m.

Jericho, Jéricho.

Jerusalem, Jérusalem.

John, Jean.

joke, plaisanter.

journey, voyage, m. ; *set out again on a —*, se remettre en route.

joyful, joyeux.

judge, juge, m. ; *be a good — of*, se connaître à (en).

judge, juger.

July, juillet, m.

jump, sauter ; — *over*, sauter par-dessus.

Jupiter, Jupiter.

just, *adj.*, juste, précis.

just, *adv.*, justement, donc ; — *look*, regardez donc ; *to have —*, venir de, ne faire que de ; — *then*, à ce moment ; — *as*, au moment où.

justice, justice, f.

K.

keep, garder, tenir ; — *on*, aller en.

kernel, amande, f.

key, clef, f.

kick out, mettre à la porte.

kill, tuer, faire mourir.

kind, n., espèce, f., sorte, f. ; *what — of weather is it?*, quel temps fait-il ?

kind, *adj.*, bon ; — *to*, bon pour ; *be so — as, be — enough to*, vouloir bien ; *it is — of him to*, c'est bon à lui de.

kindly, bien.

kindness, bonté, f. ; *have the — to*, vouloir bien, avoir la bonté de.

king, roi, m.

kingdom, royaume, m. ; *United —*, Royaume-Uni, m.

kiss, embrasser, baiser.

kitchen, cuisine, f.

knee, genou, m. ; *fall on one's —s*, tomber à genoux.

knife, couteau, m., canif, m.

knight, chevalier, m.

knock, frapper ; *there is a —*, on frappe.

know, savoir, connaître ; — *how*, savoir.

knowledge, science, f., connaissances, f. pl.

L.

labour, travail, m., labeur, m.

lady, dame, f. ; *young —*, demoiselle, f., jeune dame, f.

lake, lac, m.

lamb, agneau, m.

lamp, lampe, f.

lamp-shade, abat-jour, m.

land, terre, f.

landlord, aubergiste, m.

language, langue, f. ; — (*of animals, etc.*), langage, m.

large, grand, gros ; *grow —*, grandir.

last, *adj.*, dernier, passé ; — *year*, l'année dernière, l'année passée ;

—*evening*, hier (au) soir; —*night*, cette nuit; *at* —, enfin, à la fin.
last, v., durer.
late, tard, en retard; *he is* —, il est en retard; *he* — *for*, manquer; *it is* —, il est tard; *it is getting* —, il se fait tard; *later on*, plus tard.
lately, dernièrement.
Latin, latin.
latter; *the* —, celui-ci.
laud, louer.
laugh, rire; — *at*, rire de, se moquer de.
laughter, rire, m.
law, loi, f.
law-suit, procès, m.
lazy, paresseux.
lead, mener, conduire.
leaf, feuille, f.
leap, sauter.
learn, apprendre, savoir.
learned; — *man*, savant, m.
leathern, de cuir.
leave, tr., quitter, laisser.
leave, intr., partir.
left, gauche; *on the* — (*hand*), à (la) gauche; *I have none* —, je n'en ai plus.
leg, jambe, f.
lend, prêter.
less, moins; — *than two*, moins de deux.
lesson, leçon, f.
lest, que... ne, de peur que... ne.
let, laisser, permettre; — *us go*, allons; — *him finish*, qu'il finisse; — *him be glad*, qu'il soit content; — *in*, laisser entrer.
letter, lettre, f.
Levite, lévite, m.
liberal, libéral.
liberty, liberté, f.
library, bibliothèque, f.
lie (*speak falsely*), mentir; — (*buried*), gésir; — *down*, se coucher.
life, vie, f.
light, n., lumière, f.
light; — *auburn hair*, cheveux châtain clair.

like, v., aimer; vouloir, désirer; — *better*, aimer mieux; — *to*, aimer à; *I should* — (*very much*), j'aimerais (bien), je voudrais (bien); *I should* — *you to do it*, je voudrais que vous le fassiez (fissiez); — *it in*, se plaire à; *I should* — *to have done it*, j'aurais voulu le faire.
like, prep., comme; *anything* — *that*, quelque chose de pareil, ne... rien de pareil.
lily of the valley, muguet, m.
line, ligne, f.
listen (*to*), écouter.
little, adj., petit; —, adv., peu; *a* —, un peu (de); *however* —, pour peu que; *a* — *ago*, il y a quelques moments; — *by* —, peu à peu.
live, demeurer, vivre; — *in*, demeurer à, dans, etc., habiter; — *on*, vivre de; *long* —!, vive(nt)!
living, vivant; — *is dear*, il fait cher vivre; *not a* — *soul*, ne... âme vivante.
log, bûche, f.
London, Londres.
long, v., tarder; *I* — *to*, il me tarde de; *be* — *in*, tarder à.
long, adj. or adv., long, longtemps; *have you been here* —?, y a-t-il longtemps que vous êtes ici?; *a* — *time*, *a* — *while*, longtemps; *how* —?, depuis quand?; *as* — *as*, tant que; *I have not seen them for a* — *time*, il y a longtemps que je ne les ai vus; *a* — *way off*, loin.
longer; *no* —, ne... plus.
look, regarder; — *at*, regarder; — *around*, regarder autour; — *out of the window*, regarder par la fenêtre; — *for*, chercher; —, intr., avoir l'air, sembler, paraître; *get a good* — *at*, bien voir.
look out, prendre garde; — *of the window*, regarder par la fenêtre.
lose, perdre; — *sight of*, perdre de vue.

loss, perte, f.
loud, adv., fort, haut.
Louis, Louis, m.
love, n., amour, m. f., affection, f., tendresse, f.; *my first* —, mes premières amours.
love, v., aimer.
luck; *good* —, fortune, f.
lunch, v., déjeuner.
lunch, n., goûter, m., déjeuner, m.

M.

machine, machine, f.
madam, madame, f. pl. mesdames.
magnificent, magnifique.
maid, bonne, f.; — *of all work*, bonne à tout faire.
majority, majorité, f.
make, faire, rendre; *be made*, se faire; — *use*, se servir.
man, homme, m.; *old* —, vieillard, m., — (*soldier*), soldat, m.; *the — who*, a — *who*, celui qui; *young men*, jeunes gens.
manner, manière, f.
many; *very* —, a *great* —, beaucoup (de); *so* —, tant (de); — *a*, maint; *as* —, autant (de); *how* —?, combien (de)?, *many*, beaucoup de personnes.
maple, n., érable, m.; adj., d'érable.
March, mars, m.
march, marcher.
mark, marque, f.
market, marché, m.; *to*, at (*the*) —, au marché.
marry; (*give in marriage*, *unite in marriage*), marier; — (*take in marriage*), épouser, se marier à (avec); — (*be married*, *get married*), se marier.
Marseilles, Marseille, f.
Mary, Marie.
mass, messe, f.
master, maître, m.
masterpiece, chef-d'œuvre, m.
matter; *what is the — with you?*, qu'avez-vous?; *what is the —?*, qu'y a-t-il?, de quoi s'agit-il?; *no —*, *that does not* —, n'importe.

maxim, maxime, f.
May, mai, m.
may, pouvoir; *that — be*, cela se peut; *it — be*, il se peut; *I might have*, j'aurais pu; — *it please*, qu'il plaise.
me, me, moi; *to*, *for* —, me, moi; *for* —, pour moi; *with* —, avec moi.
mean, vouloir dire.
meat, viande, f.
medicine, médecine, f.
meet, rencontrer; se réunir.
meeting, assemblée, f.; *call a —*, convoquer une assemblée.
melt, fondre.
member; — *of Parliament*, député, m.
memorandum, mémoire, m.
memory, mémoire, f.
mention; *don't — it*, il n'y a pas de quoi.
merchant, marchand, m.
Mercury, Mercure.
mere, simple.
merely, seulement, rien que.
merit, mérite, m.
method, méthode, f.
metre, mètre, m.
Michaelmas, la Saint-Michel.
middle, milieu, m.
midnight, minuit, m.
midst, milieu, m.; *into the —*, au milieu.
midsummer night's dream, songe (m.) d'une nuit d'été.
mild; *be* —, faire doux.
mile, mille, m.
military, militaire.
milk, n., lait, m.
milk, v., traire.
mill, moulin, m.
millier, meunier, m.
milliner, modiste, f.
mind, âme, f.
mine, le mien; à moi; *a friend of —*, un de mes amis; — *and thine*, le mien et le tien.
minister, ministre, m.
minute, minute, f.; *five —s to five*, cinq heures moins cinq (minutes), quatre heures cinquante-cinq.

miser, avare, m.
misery, misère, f.
misfortune, malheur, m.
Miss, mademoiselle, f.
miss, manquer.
mistake; *make a* —, se tromper.
mistaken; *be* —, se tromper.
modern, moderne.
modest, modeste.
moment, moment, m.; *this* —, à l'instant.
monarch, monarque, m.
monastery, monastère, m.
Monday, lundi, m.
money, argent, m.
monk, moine, m.
month, mois, m.; *what day of the — is it?* (see § 427, 2); *in the — of May*, au mois de mai.
Montreal, Montréal, m.
moon, lune, f.
moonlight, clair (m.) de lune.
more, plus (de), encore, davantage; *have you any — money?*, avez-vous encore de l'argent?; *I have no —, I have not any —*, je n'en ai plus; — *money than*, plus d'argent que; *I have some —*, j'en ai encore; *no —, ne... plus*; — *than twenty times*, plus de vingt fois; *it is worth —*, il vaut mieux; — *than one*, plus d'un.
morning, matin, m.; *good —*, bon jour; *in the —*, le matin.
morrow, lendemain, m.
mortification, mortification, f.
most, très, bien, fort; *the —*, le plus; — *people*, la plupart des gens.
mother, mère, f.
mount, montagne, f.
mountain, montagne, f.
mouth, bouche, f.
move, mouvoir, émouvoir, remuer; se remuer.
Mr., monsieur, m.
much, beaucoup (de), bien, très, grand'chose; *very —*, beaucoup; *as — as*, autant que; *so —*, tant, tellement; *how —?*, combien (de)?; *too —*, trop; *as —*, au-

tant (de); *pay twice as —*, payer deux fois plus cher; *give too —*, payer trop cher.
mud, vase, f., boue, f.
museum, musée, m.
music, musique, f.
must, falloir, devoir; *I — go*, il me faut partir, il faut que je parte; *he — have done it*, il a dû le faire.
my, mon, ma, mes; *me* (dat.)... le; *I wash — face*, je me lave la figure; — *own*, le mien, à moi.
myself, me, moi, moi-même.
mysterious, mystérieux.

N.

nail, clou, m.
naked, nu.
name, n., nom, m.
name, v. appeler; *be named*, s'appeler; *what is the — of?*, comment s'appelle?
nap, somme, m.
Napoleon, Napoléon.
narrow, étroit; *have a — escape*, l'échapper belle.
nation, nation, f.
national, national.
native, natif.
natural, naturel.
nature, nature, f.
naughty, méchant.
near, près de; — *by*, tout près; *be — falling*, penser tomber.
nearly, près de, presque.
necessary, nécessaire; *be —*, être nécessaire, falloir.
neck, cou, m.
need, n., besoin, m.
need, v., avoir besoin de, falloir; *what does he —?*, que lui faut-il?, de quoi a-t-il besoin?
needless, inutile.
neglect, négliger.
negro, nègre, m.
neighbour, voisin, m., voisine, f.
neighbouring, voisin.
neither, ni l'un ni l'autre... ne; — ... *nor*, (ne...) ni... ni.
nest, nid, m.

never, ne ... jamais ; — *can any one*, on (personne) ne peut jamais.

nevertheless, cependant.

new, nouveau, neuf.

New Orleans, la Nouvelle - Orléans, f.

news, nouvelle(s), f. ; *what is the — ?*, qu'y a-t-il de nouveau ?

newly-married couple, nouveaux mariés.

newspaper, journal, m.

New-Year's Day, le jour de l'An.

next, adj., prochain, premier ; — *year*, l'année prochaine ; *the — day*, le lendemain ; — *time*, la prochaine fois ; — *door*, à côté ; *the — one*, celui à côté ; — *morning*, le lendemain matin.

next, adv., après, ensuite ; *the very — day*, dès demain, dès le lendemain.

nice, joli, gentil.

night, nuit, f. ; *all —*, (de) toute la nuit ; *last —*, hier soir, cette nuit.

nine, neuf.

nineteen, dix-neuf.

ninety, quatre-vingt-dix.

ninety-two, quatre-vingt-douze.

no, non, ne ... pas, aucun ; — *man*, — *one*, personne, aucun ; — *longer*, — *more*, ne ... plus.

noble, noble.

nobleman, noble, m., gentilhomme, m.

nobody, ne ... personne ; — *at all*, ne ... qui que ce soit (fût).

noise, bruit, in.

none, pas, nul ; *I have —*, je n'en ai pas ; *there are —*, il n'y en a pas ; *have — left*, n'en avoir plus.

nonsense !, allons donc !

noon, midi, m.

nor, ni, et ne ... pas ; — *I either*, ni moi non plus.

Normandy, Normandie, f.

north, nord, m., du nord ; — *wind*, bise, f., vent (m.) du nord.

North America, l'Amérique (f.) du Nord.

nose, nez, m.

not, ne ... pas (point), non ; *is he — ?*, n'est-ce pas ? ; — *for me*, (non) pas pour moi ; — *that*, non (pas) que ; — *one*, (ne ...) pas un ; — *at all*, pas du tout ; — *very long afterwards*, pas longtemps après.

note, billet, m.

nothing, (ne ...) rien ; *that is — to him*, cela ne lui fait rien ; — *good*, (ne ...) rien de bon ; — *at all*, rien du tout, ne ... quoi que ce soit (fût) ; *do — but*, ne faire que.

notice, apercevoir, s'apercevoir.

novel, roman, m.

November, novembre, m.

now, maintenant, à présent, déjà ; tiens ! ; *not to have —*, n'avoir plus ; — *and then*, de temps en temps.

number, nombre, m., numéro, m., compte, m.

numerous, nombreux.

nut, noisette, f.

O.

oak, chêne, m.

obelisk, obélisque, m.

obey, obéir (à).

oblige, obliger, forcer.

obliging, obligeant.

observe, observer, remarquer.

occasion, occasion, f.

occasionally, de temps en temps.

occupied, occupé.

occur (*of ideas*), venir à qq. à l'esprit.

o'clock, heure(s), f. ; *at four —*, à quatre heures.

October, octobre, m.

of, de ; — *it*, — *them*, en, y.

offend, offenser, déplaire à.

office, bureau, m.

often, souvent ; *how —*, combien de fois.

oh !, oh !

oil, huile, f.

old (*in years*), vieux, âgé ; (*former*), ancien ; *how — are you ?*, quel

âge avez-vous?; *be five years* —, avoir cinq ans, être âgé de cinq ans; — *man*, vieillard, m.
on, sur, à, de, en; — *the right*, à (la) droite; — *business*, pour affaires; — *this side*, de ce côté; often omitted with time expressions, e.g., — *the sixth*, le six.
once, une fois, autrefois; *at* —, tout de suite.
one, num., un, une.
one, indef. pron., on, vous (obj.); — *must eat*, il faut manger; *no* —, personne (*with* ne); *the white* —s, les blancs; *an iron* —, un en fer; *a small* —, un petit; *the* — *who*, celui qui; *that* —, celui-là; *I am* — *too*, je le suis aussi; — *of my friends*, a doctor, un docteur de mes amis.
one's, son; le.
one's self, se, soi.
only, ne ... que, seulement; *not* —, non seulement; — (*one*), seul.
open, adj., ouvert; *wide* —, grand(e) ouvert(e).
open, v., ouvrir; s'ouvrir, éclore.
opium, opium, m.
opportune, opportun.
opportunity, occasion, f.
or, ou; ni (*after* sans); *no* ... —, ne ... ni ... ni.
orator, orateur, m.
orchard, verger, m.
order, n., ordre, m.; *in* — *to*, pour, afin de; *in* — *that*, pour que, afin que.
order, give orders, ordonner; — (*send for*), faire venir.
organize, organiser.
other, autre; —s, d'autres; *many* —s, bien d'autres; *people give each* —, on se donne; *write to each* —, s'écrire; *every* — *day*, tous les deux jours.
ought, devoir; *he* — *to do it*, il devrait le faire; *he* — *to have done it*, il aurait dû le faire.
our, notre, nos; *at* — *house*, chez nous.

ours, le nôtre.
ourselves, nous, nous-mêmes.
out; *come* —, *go* —, sortir; *be* —, être sorti; — *of the window*, par la fenêtre.
outburst, éclat, m.
outside, hors de.
over, sur, par, par-dessus; *be all* — *with*, en être fait de.
owe, devoir.
own, adj., propre; *my* —, le mien; *of his* —, à lui.
own, v., posséder.

P.

page, page, m.
pain, peine, f., douleur, f.
paint, peindre.
painter, peintre, m.
painting, peinture, f., tableau, m.
pair, paire, f.
palace, palais, m., château, m.
paper, papier, m.
pardon, n., pardon, m.; *I beg your* —, pardon.
pardon, v., pardonner qqch. à qqn.
parent, parent, m.
Paris, Paris, m.; *in* —, à Paris; *in* — *itself*, dans Paris (même).
Parisian, parisien.
parliament, parlement, m.; Chambre (f.) des députés; *member of* —, député, m.
parlour, salon, m.
parrot, perroquet, m.
part, n., partie, f., part, f., région, f.; *play a* —, jouer un rôle; *on our* —, de notre part.
part, v.; — *with* (*from*), se séparer de.
participle, participe, m.
partner, associé, m.
pass, go past, passer (devant, près de); — *through*, traverser; — *by on the other side*, passer outre.
passion, passion, f.
past, n., passé, m.
past, adj., passé; et; *at half* — *one*, à une heure et demie.

pastor, pasteur, m.
paternal, paternel.
patience, patience, f.
patient, malade, m. f.
pay, pay for, payer; — *too much* for it, le payer trop cher; — *attention*, faire attention.
payment, paiement, m.
peace, paix, f.
peach, pêche, f.
pear, poire, f.
pearl, perle, f.
pear-tree, poirier, m.
peasant, paysan, m.
pebble, caillou, m.
peck at, becqueter.
peel, peler.
peep of day, point (m.) du jour.
pen, plume, f.
pencil, crayon, m.
pen-holder, porte-plume, m.
penknife, canif, m.
penny, deux sous, m.
people, peuple, m., on, gens, m. f., monde, m., personnes, f.; *few* —, peu de gens (monde. personnes); *most* —, la plupart des gens.
perceive, apercevoir, s'apercevoir de.
perhaps, peut-être.
peril, péril, m.
permission, permission, f.
permit, permettre (à); *we are permitted to*, il nous est permis de.
persist, persister.
person, personne, f.
persuade, persuader.
petition, pétition, f.
Philadelphia, Philadelphie, f.
phrase, phrase, f.
physician, médecin, m.
pick up, ramasser.
picnic, pique-nique, m.
picture, tableau, m., peinture, f.: — *gallery*, galerie (f.) de peintures.
piece, morceau, m.
pin, épingle, f.
pipe, pipe, f.
pitifully, à faire pitié.
pity, pitié, f.; *it's a* —, c'est dommage; *what a* —, quel dommage;

which is a great —, (ce) qui est bien dommage.
place, n., endroit, m., lieu, m., place, f.; *take* —, avoir lieu; *it is my* — *to*, c'est à moi de.
place, v., mettre, placer.
plain, plaine, f.
plainly, franchement.
plan, plan, m.
plant, n., plante, f.
plant, v., planter.
plate, assiette, f.
play, jouer; — *at (games)*, jouer à; — *on (instruments)*, jouer de.
pleasant, agréable, aimable.
please, plaire à; *if you* —, s'il vous plaît; *as we* —, comme il nous plaira.
pleased, content.
pleasure, plaisir, m.; *give* —, faire plaisir.
plough, labourer.
plum, prune, f.
plum-tree, prunier, m.
pocket, poche, f.
poem, poème, m., vers, m. pl.
poet, poète, m.
poetry, poésie, f., vers, m. pl.
point, point, m.; *at the* — *of*, sur le point de.
Poland, Pologne, f.
Pole, Polonais, m.
police, police, f.
polite, poli.
political, politique.
pond, étang, m.
poodle, caniche, m.
poor, pauvre, mauvais.
population, population, f.
portion, part, f.
portrait, portrait, m.
position, place, f.; *put in a* — *to*, mettre à même de.
possession, possession, f.
possible, possible.
post, post-office, poste, f.; *put in the* —, mettre à la poste.
postage-stamp, timbre-poste, m.
potato, pomme de terre, f.
poultry, volaille, f.; — *yard*, basse-cour, f.

pound, livre, f.
 pour, verser.
 powerful, puissant, fort.
 practise, mettre en pratique.
 praise, louer.
 pray, prier, prier Dieu.
 precious, précieux.
 precise, précis.
 precisely, précisément; *at two o'clock* —, à deux heures précises.
 prefer, préférer, aimer mieux.
 prepare, préparer.
 prescribe, prescrire, ordonner.
 presence, présence, f.; *into his* —, auprès de lui.
 present, n., cadeau, m.
 present, adj., présent; *at* —, à présent; *be* — *at*, être présent à, assister à.
 present (with), v., présenter.
 preserve, conserver, confire.
 president, monsieur le président.
 pretend, faire semblant de.
 pretended, prétendu.
 pretty, adj., joli.
 pretty, adv., assez.
 prevail over, l'emporter sur.
 prevent, empêcher.
 price, prix, m.; *at what* —, à quel prix, (à) combien.
 priest, prêtre, m.
 prince, prince, m.
 principle, principe, m.
 private interview, tête à tête, m.
 probable, probable.
 probably, probablement.
 procession, cortège, m.
 produce, produire.
 product, produit, m.
 progress, progrès, m.
 promenade, promenade, f.
 promise, n., promesse, f.
 promise, v., promettre.
 pronounce, prononcer, donner.
 proof, preuve, f.
 property, propriété, f., biens, m. pl.
 prophet, prophète, m.
 propose, proposer.
 prosperous, florissant.

protect, protéger.
 proud, fier, orgueilleux.
 proudly, fièrement.
 prove, prouver, démontrer.
 provide with, fournir à.
 province, province, f.
 prudence, prudence, f.
 prudent, prudent.
 public, public; — *works*, les travaux (m.) publics; *the* —, le public.
 punish, punir.
 pupil, élève, m. f.
 purchase, emplette, f., achat, m.
 purpose, but, m., intention, f.; *on* —, exprès; *with the* —, dans le but.
 purse, porte-monnaie, m.
 pursue, poursuivre.
 put, mettre, attacher; — *on* (*clothing*), mettre; — *out* (*fire, etc.*), éteindre; — *out* (*of doors*), mettre à la porte; — *to death*, mettre à mort.

Q.

quality, qualité, f.
 quantity, quantité, f.
 quarrel, dispute, f.
 quarter, quart, m.; *in a* — *of an hour*, dans un quart d'heure; *a* — *past one*, une heure et quart; *a* — *to one*, une heure moins (un) quart.
 Quebec, Québec, m.
 queen, reine, f.
 question, question, f.
 quickly, vite.
 quiet, tranquille.
 quietly, tranquillement.
 quite, tout, tout à fait.

R.

race, race, f.
 railway, railroad, chemin (m.) de fer.
 rain, n., pluie, f.
 rain, v., pleuvoir.
 rainy, pluvieux; *in* — *weather*, quand il pleut, quand le temps est à la pluie.

raise, lever, élever, relever.
 rare, rare.
 rarely, rarement ; il est rare que.
 rat, rat, m.
 rather, assez ; plutôt.
 reach, arriver à (chez), atteindre.
 read, lire.
 reading, lecture, f. ; *amuse yourself* —, vous amuser à lire.
 ready, prêt.
 really, réellement, vraiment.
 reappear, paraître.
 rear-admiral, chef (m.) d'escadre.
 reason, raison, f.
 reasonable, raisonnable.
 receive, recevoir ; *received*, reçu, eut ; *received a good education*, fit de bonnes études.
 recite, réciter.
 recognize, reconnaître.
 recompense, n., récompense, f.
 recompense, v., récompenser.
 red, rouge.
 refuge, refuge, m. ; *take* —, se réfugier.
 regret, n., regret, m.
 regret, v., regretter.
 regular, régulier, vrai.
 reign, n., règne, m.
 reign, v., régner.
 rejoice at, se réjouir de.
 rejoin, rejoindre.
 relate, raconter.
 relative, parent, m.
 relic, reste, m.
 religion, religion, f.
 remain, rester.
 remains, restes, m. pl.
 remarkable, remarquable.
 remember, se souvenir de ; se rappeler, retenir ; — *me to them*, rappelez-moi à leur bon souvenir.
 render, rendre.
 repeat, répéter.
 reply, n., réponse, f. ; *make a* —, répondre.
 reply, v., répondre.
 repose, repos, m.
 represent, représenter.
 republic, république, f.
 reputation, renommée, f.

resemble, ressembler à.
 resolve, résoudre, décider.
 resort ; *have* —, avoir recours, m.
 respect, n., respect, m.
 respect, v., respecter.
 respectable, respectable, honorable.
 respectfully, respectueusement.
 rest (the), les autres.
 rest, v., se reposer.
 restaurant, restaurant, m.
 retain, garder.
 retire, se retirer.
 return, n., retour, m. ; *on my* —, à mon retour.
 return, v., revenir, retourner (*go back*) ; — *home*, rentrer (chez soi).
 reveal, révéler.
 revolution, révolution, f.
 revolver, revolver, m.
 reward, n., récompense, f.
 reward, v., récompenser.
 ribbon, ruban, m.
 rich, riche.
 riches, richesse, f.
 rid ; *be* — *of*, *get* — *of*, se débarrasser de.
 ride ; *go for a* —, *be out for a* —, se promener à cheval.
 right, n., droit, m. ; *be (in the)* —, avoir raison ; *all* —!, à la bonne heure !
 right, adj., droit ; *on the* — *hand*, *to the* —, à (la) droite.
 ring, sonner.
 ripe, mûr.
 ripen, mûrir.
 rise (up), se lever.
 rival, rival.
 river, fleuve, m., rivière, f.
 road, route, f., chemin, m. ; *on the* —, en route.
 roar, rugir, crier.
 robber, voleur.
 Robert, Robert.
 robin, rouge-gorge, m.
 rock, rocher, m.
 roll, n., rouleau, m.
 roll, v., rouler.
 room, salle, f. ; chambre, f. ; *in his* —, dans sa chambre, chez lui.

rose, rose, f.
Rouen, Rouen, m.
round, rond; *to go* —, faire le tour de.
row; *go for a* — se promener en bateau.
rub, frotter, se frotter; — *out*, faire sortir.
ruin, perdre.
ruler, règle, f.
rumour, on dit, m.
run, courir; — *away*, se sauver; — *over*, parcourir.
rush, se précipiter, s'élancer, accourir.
Russia, Russie, f.
Russian, russe.
rustle, bruire.

S.

sad, triste.
saddle, v., seller.
safety, sûreté, f.
sail, faire voile; *go for a* —, se promener en bateau.
sailor, marin, m., matelot, m.
saint, saint, m.; *All Saints' Day*, la Toussaint.
sale, vente, f.; *for* —, à vendre.
salute, saluer.
Samaritan, Samaritain, m.
same, même.
sand, sable, m.
satisfied, satisfait, content.
Saturday, samedi, m.
save, sauver, conserver, (*money*) épargner.
Saxon, saxon.
say, dire; *it is said*, on dit; — *no*, dire que non; — *yes*, dire que oui (si); — *to each other*, — *to one's self*, se dire; *let us* — *no more about it*, n'en parlons plus; *how old would you — that man is?*, quel âge donneriez-vous à cet homme?; — *again*, redire.
scarce, **scarcely**, à peine; — *any*, très peu de.
scene, vue, f.
scholar, savant, m.
school, école, f.; *at (to)* —, à l'école.

school-boy, écolier, m., collégien, m.
school-fellow, camarade (m.) d'école.
science, science, f.; *man of* —, savant, m.
scientific man, savant, m.
Scotland, Écosse, f.
scoundrel, coquin, m., scélérat, m.
scratch, gratter.
scream, crier.
sculptor, sculpteur, m.
sea, mer, f.
seaport, port (m.) de mer.
search, **make a search**, chercher.
season, saison, f.
seat, banc, m.
seated, assis.
second, second, deuxième.
see, voir; — *again*, revoir.
seed, graine, f.
seek, chercher.
seem, sembler.
seize, saisir.
self, même, se; *enjoy one's* —, s'amuser.
selfish, égoïste.
sell, v. tr., vendre; v. intr., se vendre.
send, envoyer; — *for*, envoyer chercher, faire appeler, faire venir; — *up stairs*, faire monter.
sense, sens, m.
sensible, sensé, raisonnable.
sentence, sentence, f., (*gram.*) phrase, f., locution, f.
September, septembre, m.
serge, sergé, f.
seriously, sérieusement.
sermon, sermon, m.
servant, valet, m., domestique, m.
f., servante, f., bonne, f.
service, service, m.
set, mettre; — *a high value upon*, attacher une grande valeur à; — *about*, se mettre à.
set out, partir.
settle, régler.
seven, sept.
seventeen, dix-sept.
seventy, soixante-dix.
seventy-five, soixante-quinze.

several, plusieurs.
 severe, sévère.
 sew, coudre.
 sewing-machine, machine (f.) à coudre.
 shade, ombre, f.
 shake, secouer ; — *hands*, se donner la main, se serrer la main.
 shall, devoir ; — *I go?*, dois-je aller? ; *irai-je?* ; *we — go*, nous irons ; *what — I sing?*, que voulez-vous que je chante?
 shame, honte, f. ; *it is a —*, c'est honteux.
 she, elle, ce.
 shell, coquille, f.
 shelter, abriter.
 shepherd, berger, m.
 ship, vaisseau, m., navire, m.
 shoe, soulier, m.
 shoemaker, cordonnier, m., marchand (m.) de chaussures.
 shop, magasin, m., boutique, f. ; *to go shopping*, aller faire des emplettes.
 shop-keeper, marchand, m.
 shore, bord, m. ; *on the lake —*, au bord du lac.
 short, court, petit ; *in —*, bref ; *be — of*, manquer de.
 shortly, bientôt.
 shot, coup, m.
 should ; *you — do it*, vous devriez le faire ; *if we — be there*, si nous y étions ; *I — be glad if he were here*, je serais content s'il était ici ; *I — like you to do it*, je voudrais que vous le fassiez.
 shoulder, épaule, f.
 shout, crier.
 show, n., spectacle, m.
 show, v., montrer, faire voir ; — *itself*, se montrer ; — *in*, faire entrer ; — *up stairs*, faire monter.
 shut, fermer.
 side, côté, m. ; *on this —*, de ce côté.
 sight, spectacle, m., vue, f. ; *at — of that*, à cette vue ; *lose — of*, perdre de vue ; *by —*, de vue.

sign, signer.
 silent, muet, silencieux ; *be (become) —*, se taire.
 silk, soie, f.
 silver, n., argent, m.
 silver, adj., d'argent, en argent.
 sin, péché, m.
 since, prep., depuis.
 since, conj., depuis que, puisque, que ; *it is two months — I saw him*, il y a deux mois que je ne l'ai vu.
 sing, chanter.
 single, seul.
 sir, monsieur, m.
 sire, sire, m.
 sister, sœur, f.
 sit, s'asseoir, être assis ; — *down to dinner*, se mettre à table.
 sitting, assis.
 situated, situé.
 six, six.
 sixteen, seize.
 sixty, soixante.
 skate, patiner ; *go —ing*, (aller) patiner.
 skill, habileté, f., adresse, f.
 skin, peau, f.
 sky, ciel, m.
 slander, médire (de).
 slave, esclave, m. f.
 sleep, dormir ; *go to —*, s'endormir.
 sleigh, traîneau, m. ; *go for a —-ride*, (aller) se promener en traîneau, faire une promenade en traîneau.
 sleigh-bell, grelot, m.
 slip, glisser, s'échapper.
 slippery ; *be —*, faire glissant.
 slow, lent.
 small, petit.
 smell, sentir.
 smile, sourire.
 smoke, n., fumée, f.
 smoke, v., fumer.
 snatch, arracher.
 snow, n., neige, f.
 snow, v., neiger.
 so, si, ainsi, par conséquent, aussi, c'est pourquoi ; — *many*, — *much*,

- tant(de), tellement; *not* — ... *as*,
 ne... pas si... que; *I think* —, je
 le crois; *I am* —, je le suis; —
as to, afin de, de manière à; —
that, afin que, de sorte que; —
well, si bien, tant; *will you be* —
kind as to, veuillez, voulez-vous
 bien.
so-called, soi-disant, prétendu.
soft, mou.
soldier, soldat, m., militaire, m.
solve, résoudre.
some, adj., du, de la, des; quel-
 que(s); *for* — *time*, pendant
 quelque temps.
some, pron., en, quelqu'un, quel-
 ques-uns; — *of it*, en; *I have*
 —, j'en ai.
somebody, **some one**, quelqu'un,
 on.
something, quelque chose, m.; —
good, quelque chose de bon; —
strange and mysterious, je ne sais
 quoi de mystérieux.
sometimes, quelquefois.
son, fils, m.
song, chanson, f., chant, m.
soon, bientôt; *as* — *as*, aussitôt
 que.
sooner, plus tôt.
sore; *have a* — *hand*, avoir mal à
 la main.
sore, adv., fort.
sorrow, douleur, f., chagrin, m.
sorry, fâché, désolé; *be* — *for*,
 regretter.
sort, sorte, f., espèce, f.; *what* —
of weather?, quel temps?
soul, âme, f.
sound, son, m.
soup, potage, m.
South America, Amérique (f.) du
 Sud.
southern, méridional.
sow, semer.
speak, parler; *French is spoken*,
 on parle français; *so to* —, pour
 ainsi dire.
speech, discours, m.
spend, (time) passer, (money) dé-
 penser.
spirited, fougueux.
splendid, magnifique.
spoil, intr., se gâter.
spoon, cuiller, f.
sport, jeu, m.; *make* — *of*, se
 moquer de.
spot, endroit, m.
spring, n., printemps, m.; *in* —,
 au printemps.
spring, v., sourdre.
sprout, germer.
square, place, f.
stable, (*for horses*) écurie, f., (*for*
cattle) étable, f.
stair(s), escalier, m.; *up* — *s*, en
 haut; *down* — *s*, en bas; *go*
down — *s*, descendre.
stake, pieu, m.; *be at* —, y aller
 de.
stand, être debout, se tenir, se
 trouver.
start, (*with fear*, etc.) tressaillir;
(set out) partir; — *off*, partir.
starvation, faim, f.
starve, mourir de faim.
statesman, homme d'État.
station (*railway*), gare, f.
statue, statue, f.
stay, rester, s'arrêter; — *in*, res-
 ter à la maison, rester chez soi.
steal, voler, dérober.
steam, vapeur, f.
steam-boat, **steamer**, bateau (m.)
 à vapeur, vapeur, m.
steam-engine, machine (f.) à
 vapeur.
step, n., pas, m.
step, v., marcher.
sterling, sterling (invar.).
St. Helena, Sainte-Hélène, f.
stick, bâton, m.
stick out, sortir.
still, encore, toujours.
stir, remuer, bouger.
stone, pierre, f.
stoop, se baisser.
stop, s'arrêter.
store, magasin, m.
stork, cigogne, f.
storm, orage, m.
story, histoire, f., conte, m.

stove, poêle, m.
 straight, droit.
 strange, étrange.
 stratagem, stratagème, m.
 straw, paille, f.; *a* — *hat*, un chapeau de paille.
 street, rue, f.; *from one* — *to another*, de rue en rue.
 street-cars, tramway, m.
 strength, force, f.
 striking part, sonnerie, f.
 strip, dépouiller.
 stroke, coup, m.
 strong, fort.
 struggle, n., lutte, f.
 struggle, v., lutter.
 study, n., étude, f.
 study, v., étudier, apprendre.
 stupid, sot.
 style, style, m., manière, f.; *in (the) French* —, à la française.
 subdue, subjuguier.
 subject, sujet, m.
 submit, se soumettre.
 succeed, succéder à; réussir.
 success, succès, m.
 such, tel; — *a*, un tel; — *a foolish man*, un homme si bête.
 suffer, souffrir, subir.
 suffice, suffire.
 sufficient, suffisant; *be* —, suffire.
 sugar, sucre, m.
 suit, n., vêtement (m.) complet.
 suit, v., convenir.
 sum, somme, f.
 summer, été, m.; *in* —, en été.
 sun, soleil, m.; *the* — *is shining*, il fait du soleil.
 Sunday, dimanche, m.
 sunset, coucher (m.) du soleil.
 superfluous, superflu, de trop.
 support, soutenir.
 sure, sûr.
 surgeon, médecin, m., chirurgien, m.
 surprise, surprendre.
 surprised, surpris, étonné.
 suspect, soupçonner, se douter.
 swallow, hirondelle, f.
 swear, jurer.
 Swedish, suédois.

sweet, doux; *smell* —, sentir bon.
 swim, nager.
 Swiss, suisse.
 Switzerland, Suisse, f.
 sword, épée, f.

T.

table, table, f.
 tail, queue, f.
 tailor, tailleur, m.
 take, prendre, porter, emporter, mener, conduire; — *after*, tenir de; — *a walk*, (aller) se promener, faire une promenade; — *up the collection*, faire la quête; — *place*, avoir lieu; — *advantage of*, abuser de; — *care of*, avoir soin de; — *interest in*, s'intéresser à, s'occuper de; — *away*, ôter, emporter; — *care not to*, prendre garde de; — *a journey*, faire un voyage; — *off*, ôter; — *up*, monter.
 talk, parler.
 tall, grand, haut.
 Tasso, Tasse.
 taste, goût, m.
 tea, thé, m.
 teach, enseigner, apprendre.
 teacher, professeur, m., maître, m.
 tea-pot, théière, f.
 tear, n., larme, f.
 tear, v., déchirer.
 Te Deum, Te Deum, m.
 tell, raconter, dire, annoncer; — (*understand*) comprendre, savoir.
 tempt, tenter.
 ten, dix.
 terrify, épouvanter.
 text, texte, m.
 than, que, de (before numerals).
 thank, remercier; (*no*) *I* — *you*, je vous remercie.
 thanks, remerciements, m.; (*no*) —, merci.
 that, dem. adj., ce, cet, cette; ce...là.
 that, dem. pron. ce, cela, celui; *all* —, tout cela; — *is*, voilà, voilà qui, c'est, celui-là est; *is* — *the house*?, est-ce là la maison?

that, rel. pron. qui, que, lequel ;
all —, tout ce qui (que).
that, conj., que.
the, le, la, les ; — *richer one is*,
 plus on est riche ; — *less one*
has of them, moins on en a.
theatre, théâtre, m.
their, adj., leur, leurs.
theirs, pron., le leur.
them, les, leur, eux, elles ; *of* —,
 d'eux, en ; *to* —, à eux, leur, y.
themselves, se, eux, eux-mêmes.
then, alors, ensuite, puis.
there, là, y ; — *is (are)*, voilà, il y
 a ; — *it is*, le (la) voilà ; — *will*
be rain, il pleuvra ; — *is a*
knock, on frappe ; — *happens*,
 il arrive ; *if — ever was*, s'il en
 fut jamais ; — *he comes* !, le
 voilà qui vient !
thereupon, là-dessus.
these, adj., ces ; ces... -ci.
these, pron., ceux, ceux-ci ; —
are, ce sont ; — *books of yours*,
 vos livres que voici.
they, ils, elles, on, ce ; *there* —
are, les voilà ; *it is* —, ce sont
 eux.
thief, voleur, m.
thine, le tien.
thing, chose, f., affaire, f. ; *this*
good —, cela de bon.
think, penser, croire, songer ; *what*
are you —ing of (about)?, à quoi
 pensez-vous ? ; *one would* —, on
 croirait ; *what I — of him*, son
 fait.
third, troisième, trois.
thirsty ; *be* —, avoir soif, f. ; *be*
very —, avoir bien soif, mourir
 de soif.
thirteen, treize.
thirty, trente.
this, adj., ce, cet, cette ; ce...
 -ci.
this, pron., ce, ceci, celui(-ci) ; —
one, celui-ci ; — *book of mine*,
 mon livre que voici.
thither, là.
those, adj., ces, ces... -là.
those, pron., ceux(-là) ; *all* —, tous

ceux ; — *who*, ceux qui ; — *are*,
 voilà.
thou, tu, toi.
though, bien que, quoique.
thought, pensée, f.
thoughtless, étourdi.
thousand, mille, mil.
threaten, menacer.
three, trois.
thresh, battre.
throne, trône, m.
through, par, à travers, au trav-
 ers de.
throw, jeter.
Thursday, jeudi, m.
thus, ainsi.
thy, ton, ta, tes.
ticket, billet, m.
till, prep., jusqu'à, avant.
till, conj., jusqu'à ce que, que.
time, temps, m., fois, f., époque,
 f., moment, m. ; *some* —, quel-
 que temps ; *in the — of*, sous ;
at that —, dans ce temps-là, à
 cette époque, à ce moment ; *a*
long —, longtemps ; *next* —, la
 prochaine fois ; *what — is it?*,
 quelle heure est-il ? ; *many a* —,
 bien des fois ; *have — to*, avoir
 le temps de ; *I have not* —, je
 n'ai pas le temps ; *be — to*, être
 temps de (que) ; *most of the* —,
 la plupart du temps ; *at a —*
when, à une époque où ; *cost*
three —s as much, coûter trois
 fois plus cher ; *have a good* —,
 s'amuser bien ; *every — that*,
 toutes les fois que, chaque fois
 que ; *this long* —, depuis si long-
 temps.
tire, fatiguer, ennuyer ; *be (get)*
tired (of being), s'ennuyer.
tired, fatigué, ennuyé.
tiresome, ennuyeux.
to, à, chez, de, pour, en, jusqu'à,
 envers ; *at five minutes — three*,
 à trois heures moins cinq.
to-day, aujourd'hui.
toe, orteil, m., doigt, m. ; *step on*
one's —s, vous marcher sur le
 pied.

together, ensemble.
toilet, toilette, f.
to-morrow, demain ; *day after* —, après demain.
too, aussi ; trop ; — *much*, — *many*, trop.
tooth, dent, f.
toothache, mal (m.) aux dents.
tooth-pick, cure-dent, m.
top, haut, m.
touch, toucher (à).
tour, tour, m.
towards, vers, envers.
tower, tour, f.
town, ville, f. ; *in* —, *down* —, en ville ; *to* —, à la ville.
toy, jouet, m.
trace, tracer.
trade, changer.
train, train, m.
translate, traduire.
travel, n., voyage, m.
travel, v., voyager ; — *over*, parcourir ; *travelling companion*, compagnon (m.) de voyage.
traveller, voyageur, m.
tread under foot, fouler aux pieds.
treasure, trésor, m.
treat, traiter.
treatment, traitement, m.
treaty, traité, m.
tree, arbre, m.
tremble, trembler.
trifling, insignifiant.
trinket, babiole, f.
troops, troupes, f. pl.
trouble, peine, f.
troupe, troupe, f.
true, vrai, fidèle.
trunk, malle, f.
trust, n., confiance, f.
trust, v., avoir confiance en, se fier à.
truth, vérité, f.
try, tâcher ; — *and save*, tâcher de conserver.
try on, essayer.
Tuesday, mardi, m.
tulip, tulipe, f.
turn, n., tour, m. ; *in* —, tour à tour.
turn, v., tourner ; — *round*, se

retourner ; — *out of*, chasser de ; — *out of doors*, mettre à la porte.
twelve, douze ; — (*o'clock*), midi, m., minuit, m.
twenty, vingt.
twenty-five, vingt-cinq.
twice, deux fois.
two, deux.

U.

uncle, oncle, m.
under, sous, au-dessous de.
undergo, subir.
understand, comprendre ; *I can* — *nothing of it*, je n'y comprends rien.
undertake, entreprendre.
unfortunate, malheureux.
unhappy, malheureux.
United Kingdom, Royaume-Uni, m.
United States, États-Unis, m. ; *in the* —, aux États-Unis.
unknown, inconnu.
unless, à moins que ... ne.
until, jusqu'à ce que, que.
up, en haut ; *to be* —, être levé ; *get* —, se lever, *come* —, monter ; — *to*, jusqu'à.
upholsterer, tapissier, m.
upon, sur.
upright, droit.
up stairs, en haut.
us, nous.
use, n., usage, m. ; *make* — *of*, se servir de, employer ; *be of some* —, être de quelque utilité ; *have* — *for*, avoir besoin de.
use, v., se servir de, employer.
used, accoutumé ; *be* — *to*, avoir coutume de ; — *to is* often expressed by the imperfect indicative.
useful, utile.
useless, inutile ; *be* —, ne valoir rien ; *it is* — *for you to say so*, vous avez beau dire.
usual, usuel, accoutumé, ordinaire.
usually, ordinairement.
utter, proférer, articuler.

V.

vain, vain ; *in* —, en vain.
valuable, précieux.
value, valeur, f. ; *be of* —, valoir.
vast, vaste.
vegetable, légume, m.
verbal, verbal.
verse, vers, m., verset, m.
very, très, bien, fort, beaucoup ;
 — *much*, beaucoup, bien, très ;
that — evening, le soir même.
vest, gilet, m.
vice, vice, m.
Victoria, Victoria.
victory, victoire, f.
view, vue, f.
vigour, vigueur, f.
village, village, m.
violent, violent.
violin, violon, m.
virtue, vertu, f.
virtuous, vertueux.
visible, visible.
visit, visiter, faire (une) visite à,
 rendre visite à.
voice, voix, f.
volley, volée, f.
volume, volume, m., tome, m.

W.

wag, remuer.
wages, gages, m. pl.
wait, *wait for*, attendre.
wake, **waken**, éveiller, réveiller,
 se réveiller.
Wales, le pays de Galles.
walk, n., promenade, f. ; *go for a*
 —, *take a* —, (aller) se promener ;
 faire une promenade.
walk, v., *marcher*, se promener ;
 — *in*, entrer.
walking, *marcher*, m. ; *be good* —,
 faire beau (bon) marcher.
walnut, noix, f.
walnut-tree, noyer, m.
wander, s'égarer, s'écarter.
want, avoir besoin, vouloir, dési-
 rer, demander, manquer (de) ;
you are wanted, on vous de-
 mande.

warm, adj., chaud, chaleureux ;
be — (*of living beings*), avoir
 chaud ; *be* — (*of weather*), faire
 chaud.

warm, v., chauffer.

wash, laver.

watch, n., montre, f.

watch, v., suivre des yeux, veiller.

water, n., eau, f.

water, v., abreuver ; *make his*
mouth —, lui faire venir l'eau
 à la bouche.

wave, vague, f.

way, route, f., chemin, m. ; ma-
 nière, f., moyen, m. ; *on the* —,
 en route, chemin faisant ; *by the*
 —, à propos ; *a long — off*, bien
 loin ; *lose one's* —, s'égarer ; *in*
that —, de cette manière-là ; *in*
such a —, de telle sorte ; *have*
one's —, faire à sa tête ; *which* —,
the —, par où.

we, nous, on.

weak, faible.

weakness, faiblesse, f.

wear, porter.

weather, temps, m. ; *what kind of*
 — *is it* ?, quel temps fait-il ? ; *it*
is fine —, il fait beau (temps) ;
the — is warm, il fait chaud.

Wednesday, mercredi, m.

week, semaine, f., huit jours, m.,
 pl. ; *a — from to-day*, d'aujour-
 d'hui en huit ; *two — s from to-day*,
 d'aujourd'hui en quinze ; *from*
 — *to* —, de semaine en semaine.

weep, pleurer.

weigh, peser.

welcome, accueillir ; *be* —, être le
 bienvenu.

well, n., puits, m.

well, adv., bien, eh bien, très ; *so*
 —, si bien ; *very* —, très bien, eh
 bien ; *be — off*, avoir de quoi
 vivre, être à son aise ; *be* —, se
 porter bien ; *do* —, faire le bien ;
as — as, aussi bien que.

well-bred, bien élevé.

well-known, bien connu.

were, past tense of *be* ; *if you —*
to go there, si vous y alliez ; *if*

he — *to say*, s'il disait ; — *it only*, ne fût-ce que.
west, ouest, m.
what, adj., quel ; — *o'clock is it?*, quelle heure est-il ?
what, pron., que, quoi, ce qui, ce que, ce à quoi, ce dont, qu'est-ce que ?, qu'est-ce qui ?, qu'est-ce que c'est que ?, ce que c'est que ; *by* — *he says*, à ce qu'il dit ; *not to know* — *to do*, ne savoir que faire ; — *is that to him?*, qu'est-ce que cela lui fait ?
whatever, tout ce qui (que), quoi que, quel que, qui que, quelconque.
wheat, blé, m. ; — *field*, champ (m.) de blé.
when, quand, lorsque, que, à quelle heure ; *hardly* ... —, à peine ... que ; — *you will*, quand vous voudrez.
whenever, quand, lorsque, toutes les fois que.
where, où ; *from* —, d'où.
whether, si, que, soit que ; — ... *or*, (soit) que ... ou (que).
which, adj., quel.
which, pron., qui, que, lequel ; *of* —, dont, duquel ; *at* —, où, auquel ; *in* —, où, dans lequel ; *from* —, dont, duquel.
while, prep., en.
while, **whilst**, conj., pendant que, tandis que, tant que.
while ; *a long* —, longtemps.
whistle, n., sifflet, m.
whistle, v., siffler.
white, blanc.
who, qui, quel, lequel.
whoever, qui que, qui que ce soit, quiconque.
whole, tout ; *the* — *evening*, toute la soirée ; *the* — *year*, toute l'année.
whom, qui, que, lequel ; *of* —, dont, de qui, duquel.
whose, à qui, de qui, dont, duquel ; *at* — *house*, chez qui.
why, pourquoi.
wicked, méchant.

wide, large ; — **open**, grand(e) ouvert(e).
widow, veuve, f.
wife, femme, f., épouse, f.
will, vouloir ; *he* — *come*, il viendra ; — *you come?*, voulez-vous venir ? — *you kindly?*, voulez-vous bien ?
William, Guillaume.
willing ; *be* —, vouloir.
willingly, volontiers.
win, remporter, gagner.
wind, n., vent, m.
wind, v., remonter.
window, fenêtre, f. ; *out of the* —, par la fenêtre.
windy ; *be* —, faire du vent.
wine, vin, m.
wing, aile, f.
winter, hiver, m.
wipe, essuyer.
wisdom, sagesse, f.
wise, sage.
wish, désirer, vouloir ; *as you* —, comme vous voudrez ; *when(ever)* *you* —, quand vous voudrez ; *if you* —, si vous voulez ; *I* — *you were here*, je voudrais que vous fussiez ici.
with, avec, chez, à, de, envers, par ; *go (be)* —, accompagner ; *the man* — *the big nose*, l'homme au gros nez.
withdraw, se retirer.
within, dans, au bout de.
without, prep., sans ; — ... *and (or)*, sans ... ni ; *do* —, se passer de.
without, conj., sans que (with subj.).
woman, femme, f.
wonder, s'étonner, se demander.
wont ; *be* —, avoir coutume de.
wood(s), bois, m.
wood-chopper, **woodman**, bûcheron, m.
word, mot, m., parole, f. ; *send* —, faire savoir.
work, n., travail, m., ouvrage, m., œuvre, m. f.
work, v., travailler.

workman, ouvrier, m.
world, monde, m.
worse, plus mauvais, pire, pis, plus malade; *which is* —, qui pis est.
worth; *be* —, valoir; *feel his own* —, sentir ce qu'il vaut; — *the trouble (while)*, valoir la peine.
worthy, digne, brave.
would, past tense of *will*; *if you were here you — do it*, si vous étiez ici vous le feriez; *he — not do it*, il ne voulait pas le faire; — *to God!*, plutôt à Dieu!; — *you be kind enough to*, veuillez, voulez-vous bien, voudriez-vous bien; *I — as soon...as*, j'aimerais autant...que de; **would** is also often expressed by the impf. indic.
would-be, soi-disant, prétendu.
wound, n., blessure, f., plaie, f.
wound, v., blesser.
wreath, couronne, f.
wrecked; *be* —, faire naufrage.
wretch, misérable.
write, écrire; — *to each other*, s'écrire.

wrong, mal, m.; *be (in the) —*, avoir tort; *do —*, faire le mal; *take the — road*, se tromper de chemin.

wrong-doing, mal faire, m.

Y.

yard, cour, f.; (*measure*) mètre, m.
year, année, f., an, m.; *last —*, l'année dernière, l'année passée; *in the — 1860*, l'an 1860; *20 francs a —*, 20 francs par an.
yes, oui, si; — *you have*, si, si.
yesterday, hier.
yet, encore, cependant; déjà; *not —*, pas encore.
yield, céder.
yonder, là-bas; *over —*, là-bas.
you, vous, tu, te, toi.
young, jeune.
your, votre, vos, ton, ta, tes.
yours, le vôtre, le tien; à vous, à toi.
yourself, vqus, te, toi, vous-même, toi-même.
youth, jeunesse, f.

INDEX.

A.

à (prep.), of indir. obj., §362, 2, §451, 1; verb + **à** = Eng. tran., §296, 2; idiomatic with verbs, §296, 4, with names of countries, §333, 3, obs.; denoting possession after *être*, §377, 1; in prepositional phrases, §432; repetition, §434; = 'concerning,' 'of,' §436, 2; of 'place,' 'time,' §439, 1, §444, 2; of 'motion towards,' §451, 2; = 'with' (characteristic), §454, 4. abbreviations, §461. 'about,' §436. accent, accent marks, §5; stress, §7. acute accent, §2, 1. adjective, §§336-358, see also possessive adj., demonstr. adj., interrog. adj., indef. adj., numeral; fem., §§336-337; plur., §§338-339; agreement, §§340-344; as adv., §410, §343, 1; nouns as adjs., §344; comparison, §§345-349; position, §§350-353; with *à*, §355; with *de*, §356; with *en*, §357; with *envers*, §358. adverb, §§408-420; list, §408; in *-ment* from adjs., §409; adjs. as advs., §410; adverbial locutions, §411; comparison, §412; position §413; negatives, §§414-419; distinctions in use, §420; numeral advs., §426.

après que, + subj., §455, §271, 2. 'after,' §437. *agir*, impers., §251, 1, obs. *aïeul*, plur., §309. *ail*, plur., §309. *aimer*, + *à*, + *de*, without prep., §281, 1. *aller*, + infin., §230, 8; impers., §252, 1, obs.; *s'en aller*, §247. *allez*, special force, §267, b. *allons*, special force, §267, b. alphabet, §4; names of letters, §4. *âme qui vive*, with *ne*, §415, 2, c. *âme vivante*, with *ne*, §415, 2, c. *à moins que*, with *ne*, §419, 1. 'among,' §438. *amour*, gender, §304, 3, b. 'and,' untranslated, §456, 2; = *ni*, §457, 2. apostrophe, §5, 5, §19. apposition, use of art., §330, 4. *approuvé*, §289, a. *après*, §437. *après*, + infin., §282, 4. *après-midi*, gender, §304, 3, a. *arriver*, impers., §252, 1, obs. article, §§315-335, see also def. art. and indef. art.; agreement and repetition, §318; use with nouns, §§319-335; omission, §330; in apposition, §330, 4; unclassified examples, §331; with proper names, §§332-335. 'at,' §439.

attendant; en - que, + subj., §455, §271, 1. *attendu*, §289, a. *au*, = *à + le*, §317. *aucun(e)*, §403, 3; use, §406, 1; with *ne*, §415. *aucunement*, with *ne*, §415. *au-dessus de*, §448, 1. *au-dessous de*, §453, 2. *aussi*, in comparison (adj.), §345; (adv.), §412. *autant*, §120, 2. *automne*, gender, §304, 3, a. *autour de*, §436, 1. *autre*, §403, 3; use, §406, 2; with *ne*, §419, 3, n. *autrement*, with *ne*, §419, 3, n. *autrui*, §403, 2; use, §405, 1. *aux*, = *à + les*, §317. auxiliary verbs, use §§227-229; modal aux., §230, 5, n. *avant*, §440, 2. *avant que*, with *ne*, §419, 1, b; *avant que*, + subj., §455, §271, 1. *avec*, §454, 1, 3. *avoir*, conjugn., §154; used to form comp. tenses, §227, §229; *y avoir*, §250; *il y a* and *voilà*, §250, 3; *avoir besoin*, etc. (without art.), §330, 1; *avoir l'air*, agreement of adj. with, §343, 4, c, denoting dimension, §428, obs. 3; denoting age, §430.

B.

beaucoup, + *de*, agreement of verb, §232, 2, a, b; with partitive, §325, 1, d; re-

placed by *plusieurs*, §406, 4; comparison, §412, 2; not modified, §412, 2, a.
 'before,' §440.
bel, §337, 1, (3).
bestiaux, §308, 4, n.
détail, plur., §308, 4, n.
bien, with partitive, §325, 1, b; irreg. comparison, §412, 2.
bien que, +subj., §455, §271, 4.
bon, comparison, §346; +à or *pour*, §355, §355, a, §358, a.
bouger, with *ne* alone, §418, 4.
bout; *au — de*, §437, 2.
brin, with *ne*, §415, 2, b.
 'by,' §441; of 'dimension,' §428, a.

C.

c, §5, 4.
c, §378, 2, obs.
ça, for *cela*, §388, *e*, *f*; distinguished from *ça* and *çà* !, §388, *f*, n.
ça, *çà* !, distinguished from *ça*, §388, *f*, n.
capitals, use, §21.
cardinals, §421, §427; in dates, etc., §427; for ordinals, §427.
cas; *au — où*, +indio. or subj., §455, §271, 3; *au — que*, +subj., §455, §271, 3; *dans le — où*, +indio. or subj., §455, §271, 3; *en — que*, +subj., §455, §271, 3.
case relations, of nouns, §313; of conjunctive pers. pron., §362.
ce (adj.), §378, 1; use, §380.
ce (pron.), §378, 2; agreement of verb with, §232, 3; use, §§383-387; +être, §383, §384; *c'est* and *il est*, §384; +a relat., §385; in phrases, §386; *ce semble*, §386, a; pleonastic, §387;

ce n'est pas que + subj., §455.
ceci, §378, 2; use, §388.
cedilla, §5, 4.
cela, §378, 2; use, §388; replaced by *là*, §388, *d*.
celui, §378, 2; use, §381.
celui-ci, §378, 2; use, §382.
celui-là, §378, 2; use, §352; replacing *celui*, §381, *b*.
cent(s), §421, *b*, *c*, *d*, *e*.
-cer, verbs in, §156.
certain, §403, 1; use, §404, 1.
certifié, §289, a.
cesser, with *ne* alone, §418, 4.
ce, for *ce*, §378, 1, obs.
chacun, §403, 2; use, §405, 2.
chaque, §403, 1; use, §404, 2.
chez, §439, 2, §451, 2, §454, 2.
-ci, §380.
ciel, plur., §309.
ci-inclus, §289, *b*.
ci-joint, §289, *b*.
 circumflex accent, §5, 3.
civil, +à l'égard de, §358, a.
collationné, §289, a.
collectives, §423.
combien, agreement, §232, 2, *b*.
comme, for *que* in comparison, §345, *b*.
 comparison, of adjs., §§345-349; of advs., §412; irreg. (adj.), §346; irreg. (adv.), §412, 2; remarks, §349; followed by *ne*, §419, 3.
 comparative, see comparison.
 complement, predicative, §295; prepositional, §276; composite, §298.
 compound adjs. plur., §343, 2.
 compound nouns, plur., §311.
 compound tenses, formation, §§227-229; sequence of subj., §273, 3; in cond. sent., §275, a.
compris (*y*), *non*—, §239, a.

'concerning,' §436, 2.
condition; à la — *que*, +indio. or subj., §455, §271, 3, c.
 conditional sentences, §274, §275; use of mood and tense in, §275.
 conditional, tense, §265, in cond. sent., §275.
 conditional anterior, tense, §266; replaced by plup. subj., §272, 3; replaced by impf. indic. in 'result' clause, §274, c.
 conjunction, §§455-459; list, §455; with indic., subj., indic. or subj., see list, §455; use of certain, §§456-459; distinctions, §459.
 conjunctive pron., §359 and n.; use, §§362-371.
 consonants, pron., §16-17; final, pron., §18.
couple, gender, §304, 3, e.
craindre, with *ne*, §419, 2.
crainte; *de — que* ... *ne*, +subj., §455, §271, 2.

D.

d'abord, §426, a.
dans, §444, 1, 3; with names of countries, §333, 3, obs.
 dates, §427.
 dative, of pers. pron., §362, 2; ethical, §362, n.
davantage, §420, 3.
de, as partitive sign, §§323-325; agent after passive, §240, §356, §441, 1; verb + *de* = Eng. transitive, §296, 1; idiomatic with verbs, §296, 4; with names of countries, §333, 2; *de* = 'in,' after superl., §347, 2; denoting 'by how much,' after superl., §349, 2; pleonastic after interrog., §391, n.; of 'dimension,' §428, obs. 1, §430, obs. 3; in prepositional phrases, §432; repetition, §434; *de*

= 'by' (measure), §441, 8 ;
de = 'from,' §443, 1 ; of
 'place' (after superl.),
 §444, 4 ; *de* = 'of,' §445, 1 ;
de = 'with,' §454, 6 ; =
 'concerning,' 'of,' §436, 2.
de ce que, constr. §269, 4, b.
décider, + *à*, + *de*, §281, 2.
défier, + *à*, + *de*, §281, 3.
 definite article, forms, §316 ;
 contractions, §317 ; agree-
 ment and repetition, §318,
 §347, a ; with general noun,
 §321 ; with partitive noun,
 §323 ; in titles, §327 ; for
 possessive adj., §328 ; dis-
 tributively, §329 ; omis-
 sion, §330, §333, 4 ; un-
 classified examples, §331 ;
 with names of persons,
 §332 ; with names of coun-
 tries, §333 ; with names of
 cities, etc., §334 ; with
 names of mountains and
 rivers, §335 ; in superla-
 tive, §§347-349 ; replacing
 demonstr. adj., §380, b ;
 in fractions, §424, b.
délice, gender, §304, 2, c.
demi, agreement, §343, 4,
 a ; in compounds, §311, 2,
 a, §343, 4, a ; in fractions,
 §424, a.
 demonstrative adjective,
 forms, §378, 1 ; agreement,
 §379 ; repetition, §379, a ;
 use, §380 ; replaced by
 def. art., §380, b.
 demonstrative pronoun,
 forms, §378, 2 ; agreement,
 §379 ; use, §§381-388.
 demonstratives, see demon-
 str. adj. and demonstr.
 pron.
depuis, §443, 3 ; with *ne*,
 §419, 6 ; — *que*, distinguish-
 ed from *putaque*, §459, 3.
dernier, + subj., §270, 8 ;
 + *à* + infin., §279, 3, a.
des, = *de + les*, §317.

dès, §443, 3.
descendre, + *à*, + dir. infin.,
 §281, 4.
désobéir, passive use, §241, 1.
 determinatives, position,
 §353.
déterminer, + *à*, + *de*, §281, 5.
deuxième, for *second*, §422, b.
devant, §440, 1.
devoir, + infin., §230, 2 ; +
de + infin., §278, 6, a.
 diæresis, §4, 7.
différents, §403, 1 ; use,
 §404, 3.
 diphthongization, absent in
 French, §1, 6.
dire, + *de*, + dir. infin., §281,
 6.
 direct obj., §293.
 disjunctive pron., §359 and
 n. ; use, §372 ; avoided,
 §372, 6, n.
divers, §403, 1 ; use, §404, 3.
donner, conjugation, §153.
dont, §395 ; use, §398.
double, as adv., §425, a.
du, = *de + le*, §317.
dû, agreement, §292, 4, b.
dur, + *pour*, §358, a.
durant, position, §433, b.

EE.

'either,' 'nor —,' 'not —,'
 §457, 3.
-eler, verbs in, §158, 2.
 elision, §19.
 elliptical tense forms, §256.
empêcher, with *ne*, §419, 1.
empreser(s), + *à*, + *de*, §281,
 7.
en (pron. adv.), §360 ; use,
 §367, §372, 6, n. ; position,
 §370.
en (prep.), in gerunds, §286,
 3 ; agreement of past
 part., §292, 3, a ; with
 names of countries (no
 art.), §333, 2 ; repetition,
 §434 ; of 'place,' 'time,'
 §439, 1, §444, 2, 3 ; of

'material', §445, 2 ; of
 'motion towards', §451, 2.
encore que, + subj., §455,
 §271, 4.
encore un, §406, 2, a.
en premier lieu, §426, a.
ensuite, §426, a.
entendre, + infin., constr. of
 obj., §293, 2, b.
entendu, §289, a, §292, 4, a.
entre, §438, 1, 2.
d'entre, after superl., §347, 2.
envers, §451, 3.
environ, §436, 4.
es, = *en les*, §317, n. 2.
-esse, fem. ending, §306, 2.
est-ce que, use of, §236, 4.
et (conj.), use of, §456.
été, invar., §239, obs.
-eter, verbs in, §158.
 ethical dative, §362, n.
être, §154 ; forming comp.
 tenses, §228, §229 ; form-
 ing passive, §239 ; form-
 ing reflexive comp. tenses,
 §242 ; as impers. verb,
 §250, 2 ; + *à* + infin., §279,
 5 and 6, b ; + *à*, + *à* . . . *de*,
 + *à* . . . *à*, §281, 8.
eu, past part., agreement,
 §292, 4, d.
-eur, fem. of, §337, 2, (2).
éviter, with *ne*, §419, 1.
excepté, §289, a.

FF.

fâché, + *contre*, §356, a.
façon ; *de — que*, + indic. or
 subj., §455, §271, 2, a.
faire, + infin., §230, 6 ; + *de*
 + infin., §278, 6, b ; of
 weather, etc., §249, 2 ;
 + infin., constr. of obj.,
 §293, a ; passive force of
 trans. infin. after, §241, 3.
fait (past part.), agreement,
 §292, 4, c.
falloir, 251.
fatiguer(se), + *à*, + *de*, §281, 9.
 feminine, see gender.

feu, §343, 4, b.
finir, conjugation, §153; + *a*,
 + *de*, §281, 10.
fois (*une fois*, etc.), §425, 2.
fol, §337, 1, (3).
 'for', §442.
force, agreement, §232, 2, a.
fort, + *sur*, §357, a.
foudre, gender, §304, 3, h.
fractions, §424.
franc de port, §343, 4, a.
 'from', §443.
future, §263; in condit. sen-
 tence, §275; replaced by
pres., §257, 4, 5; replaced
 by condit., §265, 3.
future anterior, §264; re-
 placed by past indef.,
 §259, 3.

G.

garde-, in compounds, §311,
 5, a.
 gender, of nouns, §300-306;
 by meaning, §303; by
 endings, §302; by deriva-
 tion, §301; double, §304;
 of compounds, §305; for-
 mation of fem., §306,
 §336, §337; of adjs., §336,
 §337.
general noun, §321; and
 partitive, §326.
gens, gender, §304, 3, j.
gent, plur., §308, 5.
gerund, §286, 3; English,
 §287, 2.
goutte, with *ne*, §415, 2, b.
grave accent, §5, 2.
guère, with *ne*, §415.

H.

haïr, + *de* + infin., §279, 6, c.
haut, for *hauteur*, §428,
 obs. 4.
homme qui vive, with *ne*,
 §415, 2, c.
 'however', §404, 5, b and n.
hymne, gender, §304, 3, d.
hyphen, use, §5, 6.

I.

ignorant, + *sur*, §357, a.
ignorer, + negative, constr.
 after, §269, 5, d.
il (impers.), agreement,
 §232, 4, §381, d; as sub-
 ject of impers. verb, §248,
 §252, 2, §253; *il y a*, §250,
 3; *il est*, §250, 2, §383, 1,
 a, b; *il faut*, §251; *il*
s'en faut, §251, 5; distin-
 guished from *ce*, §384, 1;
il est vrai, §384, 1, a;
il semble, §386, a; *il s'en*
faut, with *ne*, §419, 5; *il*
y a, with *ne*, §419, 6.
imperative, §267; retention
 of -s in 2 sg. before *y* or
en, §153, §159, 4; in condit.
 sentence, §275; replaced
 by fut., §263, 4.
imperfect, (indic.), §258; in
 narrative, examples of,
 §261; in condit. sentence,
 §275; replacing plupf. or
 condit. ant. in condit. sen-
 tence, §275, c; (subj.),
 §273, 2 and 4, e; for perf.
 subj., §273, 4, a.
impersonal verbs, §§248-253;
 verbs used impersonally,
 §252; *de* + infin. as logical
 subj. of, §280, 1.
importe (*qu'*), §232, 4, a.
 'in', §444.
indefinite article, forms,
 §315; agreement and re-
 petition, §318; use, §320;
 omission, §330; unclassi-
 fied examples, §331; with
 names of persons, §332, 3.
indefinite adj., forms, §403,
 1-3, §407, 1; use, §404,
 §406, §407; position in
 negation, §416.
indefinite pron., forms, §403,
 2, 3, §407, 2; use, §405,
 §406, §407; position in
 negation, §416, §416, b.

indefinites, see *indef. adj.*
 and *pron.*

indicative mood, §254, see
 also the various tenses;
 in conditions, §275, obs.

indirect discourse, mood of,
 §254, n. 1; tense of, §258, 5.

indirect obj., §233, 2, §294,
 §362, 2, §451, 1.

indulgent, + *pour* or *a*,
 §358, a.

-ine, fem. ending, §306, 3.

infinitive mood, §§276-285;
 without prep., §278, re-
 ference list, §278, 6; with

a, §279, reference list,
 §279, 6; with *de*, §290,

reference list, §280, 6;
 historical, §280, 4; dis-
 tinctions, §281; with

other preps., §282; for
 subordinate clause, §283;

with passive force, §284;
 for Eng.-ing, §285, §287, 3.

interjection, §460.

interrogation, word order,
 §236; indirect, §238.

interrogative adj., forms,
 §389, 1; agreement, §390;

use, §391, §392, 1, b, 2.

interrogative locutions, §394

interrogative pron., forms,
 §389, 2; agreement, §390;

use, §392, 393.

interrogatives, see *interrog.*
adj. and *pron.*

'into', §444.

intransitive verbs, §294.

inversions, rhetorical, §287.

irregular verbs, §§156-226;
 list of, §226; in -er, §§156-

161; in -cer, -ger, §156; in
 -yer, §157; with stem-

vowel *e* (*é*), §158; in -eler,
 -eter, §158; in -ir, §§162-

179; in -re, §§180-211; in
 -oir, §§212-225; in -andre,

-endre, -erdre, -ondre-
 -ordre, §210.

-issime, superl. ending,
 §348, a.

J.

jamaïs, with *ne*, §415.
je soussigné, §372, 2, n.
jumelle, §337 1, (3).
jurér, +*de*, +dir. infin., §281, 11.
jusqu'à, §451, 4; *jusqu'à ce que*, +indic. or subj., §455, §271, 1.

L.

-là, §380.
laissé, §292, 4, a.
laisser, +infin., §230, 7; +*de*+infin., §278, 6, c; +*à*, +*de*, +dir. infin., §281, 12; constr. of obj., §293, b.
large, for *largeur*, §428, obs. 4.
lasser (se), +*à*, +*de*, §281, 13.
le (la, les), see def. art. and pers. pron.; predicative, §364; pleonastic, §365; = 'one,' 'so,' §365, b.
length, see quantity.
lequel, §389, 2; use, §391.
lequel, §395; use, §400.
'less'; 'less and less,' §345, d; 'the less,' §345, d; 'less than' (adv. of quantity), §412, b.
liaison, §18.
linking, see *liaison*.
lip-rounding, §1, 4.
loin que, +subj., §455, §271, 5.
long, for *longueur*, §428, obs. 4.
lorsque, distinguished from *quand*, §459, 1.
Fun, §406, 7, (1), a.
Fun l'autre, §406, 7, (2).

M.

maint, §403, 1; use, §404, 4.
mal, irreg. comparison, §412, 2.
malgré que, +subj., §455, §271, 4.

ma mie, §374, n.
m'amour, §374, n.
manière, de — que, +indic. or subj., §455, §271, 2, a.
manquer, +*à*, +*de*, §281, 14.
masculine, see gender.
mauvais, irreg. comparison, §346.
meilleur, §346.
même, §403, 3; use, §406, 3.
mie, with *ne*, §415, 2, b.
mien, etc., for *le mien*, §377, 2.
mieux, §412, 2.
mil, in dates, §421, c.
mille, §421, e.
'mine,' etc., translated, §377, 1.
moi, for *me*, §370, 3, obs. 1.
moindre, §346.
moins, §412, 2; in comparison (adj.), §345, (adv.), §412; *moins de*, 412, 1, b; *à moins que...ne*, +subj., §455, §271, 3, — +*de deux*, agreement of, §232, 2, c.
mol, §337, 1, (3).
mon, for *ma*, §374, 1, obs. 1; in address, §376, 4.
mood, see the various moods; of subordinate clause, §254, n. 2.
'more'; 'more and more,' §345, d; 'the more,' §345, d; 'more than,' (adv. of quantity), §412, b.
mot, with *ne*, §415, 2, b.
multiplicatives, §425.

N.

narrow, of sounds, §1, 3.
n'avoir garde, §418, 5.
ne(n'), §§415-419; with *pas*, *point*, etc., §415; position, §416; omission, §417; alone as negative, §418; pleonastic, §419; *ne...que*, position, §416,

c; *ne...ni*, position, §416, d; *ne...que* and *seulement*, §420, 4.
negation, §§414-419; see also *ne*, *non*, *pas*, etc.
'neither...nor,' translated §416, d, §457, 3.
ni, use, §233, b, §457, 1; with *ne*, §415; *ni...ne*, position, §416, d.
n'importe, §418, 5.
nombre, +*de*, agreement with verb, §232, 2, a.
non (pas point), §414; *que non*, §420, 1, a.
nonante, §421, n.
nonobstant que, +subj., §455, §271, 4.
non (pas) que, +subj., §455, §271, 5.
'nor'; — 'either,' §457, 3.
'not'; — 'either,' §457, 3.
noun, §§300-314; gender, §§300-306, §§336-337; number, §§307-312; case relation, §313; agreement, §314; as adj., §343, 3, §344, §352, 2, (3).
nous, for *je*, §361, a; pleonastic, §372, 5, a; *nous autres*, §406, 2, c.
nouvel, §337, 1, (3).
nu, agreement, §343, 4, a.
nul, §403, 3, §337, 1, (2), b; use, §406, 1; with *ne*, §415.
nullement, with *ne*, §415.
number, of nouns, §§307-312; general rule, §307; exceptions, §308; double plur., §309; foreign nouns, §310; comp. nouns, §311; plur. of proper nouns, §312; of adjs., §§338-339.
numerals, §§421-430; cardinals, §421; ordinals, §422; collectives, §423; fractions, §424; multiplicatives, §425; adverb, §426; remarks on use, §§427-430; in dates, titles,

etc., §427; for dimension, §428; for time of day, §429; for age, §430.

O.

obéir, in passive, §241, 1.
 object, dir. and indir., §293;
 position, §297.
obliger, +*a*, +*de*, §281, 15.
occuper(s), +*a*, +*de*, §281, 16.
octante, §421, n.
œil, plur. of, §309.
œuvre, gender, §304, 3, i.
 'of,' §445; 'a friend of mine,' etc., §377, 3.
on (*l'on*), §403, 2; use, §405, 3; replacing passive, §241, 2, a.
 'on,' §446.
 'once' ('twice,' etc.), §425, 2.
 'one,' = *le*, §365, b.
 'only,' translated, §420, 4.
 'or,' = *ni*, §457, 2.
 ordinals, §422.
orge, gender, §304, 3, g.
osé, agreement, §292, 4, b.
oser+infin., §230, 5; with *ne* alone, §418, 4.
 'others,' §§405-406, 2, b.
où (rel. pron.), §395; use, §399, §398, b.
oui, §420, 1; *que oui*, §420, 1, a.
oui, §289, a.
ouir, +infin., constr. of obj., §293, b.
 'out of,' §447.
 'over,' §448.
 'own,' translated, §376, 3, §377, 4.

P.

pal, plur., §309.
paquet(s), gender, §304, 3, f.
par, §441, 1, 2, §443, 2, §448, 2, §449, 1, 2; agent after passive, §240; +infin., §282, 1; of price, §329, a.

par-dessus, §448, 2.
paraître, *il paraît*, constr. after, §269, 5, b.
pardonner, in passive, §241, 1.
parler français, etc., §321, a.
parmi, §438, 1.
 participles, §§286-292; pres., §286; Eng. forms in -ing, §287; past, §§288-292; as adjs., position, §352, 1, (3).
partir; *à partir de*, §443, 3.
 partitive noun, §§322-326;
 partitive and general noun, §326.
pas, with *ne*, §415; position, §416; without verb, §417, a; without *ne* (fam.), §415, n, 2.
passé, §289, a.
 passive voice, formation, §239; agreement of past part., §239 and obs.; agent after, §240; limitations and substitutes, §241; replaced by *on*, etc., §405, 3, a.
 past anterior, §262.
 past definite, §260; in narrative, examples, §261; replaced by impf., §258, 8; in 'if' clauses, §275, f.
 past indefinite, §259; in narrative, examples, §261; subjunctive sequence after, §273, 4, a.
 past participle, agreement in passive, §239 and obs.; without aux., §289; as prep., §289, a; with *être*, §290, §244, 2; with *avoir*, §291; invar. after imper. *être*, §290, a; remarks, §292.
pas un, §403, 3; use, §406, 1; with *ne*, §415.
payé, §289, a.
pendant que, distinguished from *tandis que*, §459, 2.
penser, +*a*, +dir.infin., §281, 17.

perfect subj., §273, 3; for plupf., §273, 4, c; replaced by impf. subj., §273, 4, b.
 periphrastic forms, in conjugation, §255, §287, 1.
 personal pronouns, §§359-373; forms, §359; agreement, §361; case relations and use of conjunctives, §362; reflexives, §366; position of subject, §§235-238; position of objects, §369; omission of obj., §371; disjunctives, use of, §372; in address, §373.
personne, §403, 2; use of, §405, 4; with *ne*, §415; gender, §405, 4, n.
petit, irreg. comparison, §346.
peu, irreg. comparison, §412, 2.
peu, +*de*, §232, 2, a, b; with partitive, §325, 1, d.
peur; *de—que... ne*, + subj., §455, §271, 2.
peut-être que, constr., §269, 5, n.; no inversion, §237, 3.
 phonetic transcription, example of, p. 12.
pire, §346.
pis, §412, 2.
plein, when invar., §348, 4, a.
plupart, agreement of verb, §232, 2, a, b; with partitive, §325, 1, c.
 pluperfect (indic.), §262; replaced by plupf. subj., §272, 3; replaced by impf. indic., §275, c; (subj.), §273, §272; replaced by perf. subj., §273, 4, c; replacing plupf. indic. or cond. ant., §272, 3; sequence, §273, 3, 4, a; replacing plupf. indic. in 'if' clause or 'result' clause, §275, b.
 plural, see number.
plus, §412, 2; in compari-

son (adj.), §345, (adv.), §412; —*de*, §412, 1, b; with *ne*, §415; *plus* and *davan-*
tage, §420, 3; — *d'un*,
agreement, §232, 2, c.
plusieurs, §403, 3; use, §406,
4.
plus tôt, with *ne*, §419, 3, n.
plutôt, with *ne*, §419, 3, n.
point, with *ne*, §415, and n.
1; position, §416.
possessive adj., forms, §374,
1; agreement, §375; re-
petition, §375, a; use,
§376; def. art. for, §323,
§376, 1; *en*, + def. art. for,
§367, 2, (2), §376, 2.
possessive pron., forms, §374,
2; agreement, §375; use,
§377.
possessives, see poss. adj.
and poss. pron.
pour, §442, 1, 2, 3; + infin.,
§282, 2; — *que* + subj., §455,
§271, 2; — *peu que* + subj.,
§455, §271, 4; — ... *que*,
constr., §404, 5, n.
pourvu que, + subj., §455,
§271, 3.
pouvoir, + infin., §230, 3;
impers., §252, 1, obs.;
with *ne* alone, §418, 4.
predicate noun, omission of
art., §330, 3.
predicative complement,
§295, §330, 3.
premier, in dates, etc., §427;
§330, 4, a; + subj., §270,
3; + d + infin., §279, 3, a.
prendre garde, + *a*, + *de*,
§281, 18.
preposition, §§431-454; list
of simple, §431; position,
§433; locutions, §432; re-
petition, §434; idiomatic
distinctions, §§435-454.
prepositional complement,
§296.
près; — *de*, §436, 4; *à peu* —,
§436.

present, indic., §257; as
historical past, examples,
§261; replaced by *impt.*,
§253, 5; in cond. sen-
tences, §275.
present participle, §286.
present subj., §273.
prétendre, + *a*, + *dir.* infin.,
§281, 19.
prier, + *a*, + *de*, §281, 20.
primary tenses, see princi-
pal parts.
primo(*secundo*, etc.), §426, a.
principal parts, formation
of tenses from, §159.
pronominal advs., §360.
pronoun, §§359-407, see also
personal, possessive, etc.
pronunciation, §§1-19; of
vowels, §§9-15; of conso-
nants, §§16-17.
proper nouns, plur., §312;
use of art. with, §§332-
335.
propre, §376, 3.
pu, agreement, §292, 4, b.
puis, §426, a.
puisque, distinguished from
depuis que, §459, 3.
punctuation, §20.

Q.

qualifier de, §330, 3, b.
quand, distinguished from
lorsque, §459, 1.
quand (même), cond. after,
§265, 6, §275, c; some-
times takes subj., §271, 4,
c; + indic. or subj., §455,
§271, 4, c.
quantité, + *de*, agreement
of verb, §232, 2, a.
quantity, of vowels, §3.
quart, §422, n, 1.
quatre-vingt(s), §421, b.
que *f*, §389, 2; use, §393.
que *l*, §393, 1, b.
que (relat.), §395; use, §397;
in inversions (emphatic),
§397, 2, n., §385, a, n.;

past part. invar. after,
§292, 5.
que (conj.), cond. after,
§265, 6; replacing other
conjs., §271, 6, §458, 2;
= 'than,' 'as,' in com-
parison, §345, §412; with
ne, §415; for *à moins que*,
§419, 1; + indic. or subj.,
§455, §269, §271, 6, §458;
not omitted, §458, 3.
quel *l*, §389, 1; use, §391,
§392, 2.
quel *l*, §391, a.
quelconque, §407; with *ne*,
§415, 2, a.
quel que, + subj. of *être*,
§407.
quelque, §403, 1; use, §404,
5; as adv., §404, 5, a.
quelque chose, §403, 2; use,
§405, 6.
quelque . . . que, + subj.,
§407.
quelqu'un, §403, 2; use,
§405, 5.
qu'est-ce qui *l*, §393, 2.
question, direct, §236; in-
direct, §236.
qui *l*, §389, 2; use, §392;
replaced by *quel*, §391, b,
§392, b.
qui, §395; use, §397, re-
placing *celui qui*, *les uns*
... *les autres*, *ce qui*, §397,
1, a, b; *qui que*, + subj.
of *être*, §407; *qui que ce*
soit, §407; *qui que ce soit*
+ *ne*, §415, 2, a.
quiconque, §407.
quint, §422, n, 2.
quinze-vingt(s), §421, n.
quoi *l*, §389, 2; use, §393.
quoi, §395; use, §401; —
que ... + subj., §407; —
que ce soit, §407; with *ne*,
§415, 2, a.
quoique, + subj., §455, §271,
4.

R.

reciprocal verbs, §243.
 reflexive pers. pron., §366.
 reflexive verb, formation
 of comp. tenses, §242;
 with reciprocal force, §243;
 agreement of past part.,
 §244; omission of reflex.
 obj., §245; comparison
 with Eng., §246; replac-
 ing passive, §241, 2, b.
refuser, +d, +de, §281, 21.
 relative pron., forms, §395;
 agreement, §396; use,
 §§397-402; remarks, §402;
 not omitted, §402, 1; re-
 lative clause for Eng. -ing,
 §287, 3; indef. relat., §407.
résoudre, +d, +de, §281, 22.
rien, §403, 2; use, 405, 4;
 with *ne*, §415.
rompre, conjugation, §153.
 rounding (lip-), §1, 4.

S.

sache, irreg. use, §272, 2.
sans, +infin., §282, 3; —
doute que, constr., §269,
 5, n.; — *que*, +subj.,
 §455, §271, 5.
savoir +infin., §230, 4; with
ne alone §418, 4.
se, reflex. pron., §366, 1.
sembler; *il semble*, constr.
 after, §269, 5, b, 6, c.
 semi-vowel sounds, §16, 1,
 2, 3.
s'en aller, conjugation,
 §247.
s'en falloir, §251, 5.
septante, §421, n.
 sequence, of subj. tenses,
 §273.
seul, +subj., §270, 3; +d
 +infin., §279, 3, a.
seulement, §420, 4.
sévère, +à l'égard de, §358, a.
 'should,' distinctions, §265,
 1, b.
si, elision of i, §19; subjunctive

after, §275, b; re-
 placed by *que* +subj.,
 §271, 6; in conditionalsen-
 tence, §274; omission,
 §275, d; *si* (= 'whether')
 +fut. or cond., §275, g;
 for *aussi*, §345, a, §412, a;
 +indic. or subj., §455,
 §271, 3, a; — *bien que*,
 +indic. or subj., §455,
 §271, 4; — *peu que*, +in-
 dic. or subj., §455, §271,
 4; *si* ... (*que*), constr.,
 §404, 5, n.
si (= 'yes'), *si fait*, §420, 1;
que si, §420, 1, a.
six-vingt(s), §421, n.
 'so,' = *le*, §365, b.
soi, reflex. pron., §366, 2.
soi-disant, §286, 2, n. 2.
soit que ... *soit que* (*ou que*),
 +subj., §455, §271, 4.
son, for *sa*, §374, 1, obs. 1;
 for indef., §375, b.
sorte; *de (telle) — que*, +in-
 dic. or subj., §455, §271,
 2, a; *en — que*, +indic. or
 subj., §455, §271, 2, a.
 sounds of French, descrip-
 tion of, §§9-17.
sous, §453, 1.
 stress, §7.
 subjunctive, §§268-273; in
 subordinate clause, §§268-
 271; in noun clause, §269;
 in adjectival clause, §270;
 in adverbial clause, §271;
 in principal clause, §272;
 as imperative, §272, 1 a;
 tense sequence, §273.
 'such,' §406, 5 and n.
suffire, +*pour* +infin., §279,
 6, a.
 superlative (adjs.), §§347-
 349, (advs.), §412, 3; rela-
 tive, §347; absolute, §348;
 remarks, §349.
supposant; *en — que*, +
 subj., §455, §271, 3.

supposé, §289, a; — *que*, +
 subj., §455, §271, 3.
sur, = 'with,' 'about (the
 person),' §436, 3; = 'by
 (relative dimension), §441,
 3; = 'on,' 'upon,' §446;
 of 'motion above,' §448,
 2.
 syllabication, §6.

T.

-t-, inserted in interrog.,
 §236, 1, a.
tandis que, distinguished
 from *pendant que*, §459, 2.
tant, §420, 2.
tel, §403, 3; use, §406, 5.
tellement ... *que*, +indio.
 or subj., §455, §271, 2, a.
témoin, §344, a.
 tenses, formation of comp.,
 §155, §§227-229; formation
 from principal parts, §159;
 of indic., §§255-266; peri-
 phrastic Eng., §255; ellip-
 tical Eng., §256; in nar-
 ration, §§258-261; tense
 sequence of subj., §273.
-teur, fem. of, §337, 2, (3).
 'through,' §449.
tiers, §422, n. 1.
 'till,' §450.
 time, how expressed, §249,
 1, §429.
 'to,' §451.
toi, for *te*, §370, 3, obs. 1.
ton, for *ta*, §374, 1, obs. 1.
tous (les) deux, §406, 6, b.
tout, §403, 3; use, §406, 6;
 as adv. (variable), §406, 6,
 a; with *gens*, §304, 3, j.
tout ... *que*, constr., §404,
 5, b, n.
tout-puissant, §406, 6, a, n.
 'towards,' §452.
traiter de, §330, 3, b.
 transitive verbs, §293, §294,
 n.; in Fr. = Eng. verb +
 prep., §296, 3.
travail, plur., §308.

travers; *à*—, *au*—*de*, §449, 1.

trembler, +*à*, +*de*, §281, 23.

tu = 'you,' 'thou,' in address, §373, 1, 2.

U.

un, see indef. art.

un (adj. pron.), §403, 3; use of, §406, 7.

un (num.), §421, a.

'under,' §453.

'underneath,' §453.

unique, +subj., §270, 3.

'until,' §450.

'upon,' §446.

V.

va, special force, §267, b.

valoir, impers., §252, 1, obs.

venir de + infin., §230, 9; +*à*, +*de*, +dir. infin., §281, 24.

verb, §§153-299; regular conjugations, §153; auxiliaries, §154; use of auxs., §§227-229; irreg. verbs, §§156-226; formation of comp. tenses, §155, §§227-229; phrases, §230; agree-

ment with subject, §§231-234; position of subject, §§235-238; passive voice, §§239-241; reflexives, §§242-247; impersonals, §§248-253; moods and tenses, §§254-292; indicative, §§254-266; imperative, §267; subjunctive, §§268-273; infinitive, §§276-285; participles, §§286-292; government, §§293-299.

vers, §436, 4, §451, 3.

vieil, §337, 1, (3).

voici, position of pers. pron. obj., §369, 2, n. 2, §433, a.

voilà, distinguished from *il y a*, §250, 3; position of pers. pron. obj. §369, 2, n. 2, §433, a; with *ne*, §419, 6.

voir, +infin., constr. of obj., §293, 2, b.

votre (*vos*), for politeness, §376, 5.

vouloir, +infin., §230, 1.

voulu, agreement, §292, 4, b.

vous, agreement, §361, b, §239, obs., 2, §244, 2, n. 2,

§340, b; replacing *on*, §405, 3, c; — *autres*, §406, 2, c; pleonastic, §372, 5, a; in address, §373.

vowels, pron., §§9-15.

semi-vowels, §16.

voyons, special force, §267, b.

vu, §289, a, §292, 4, a.

W.

'what?', as subject, §393, 2.
'what' (= 'that which'), §401, 2.

'whatever,' §407.

'whose?', §392, 2.

wide, definition of, §1, 3.

'will,' distinctions, §263, 1, a.

'with,' §454.

'would,' distinctions, §265, 1, b.

Y.

y, pron. adv., §360.

y, +*avoir*, §250.

y (pron. adv.), §360; use, §368, §372, 6, n.; position, §369, 3, (2).

-yer, verbs in, §157.

APPENDIX.

The following are the deviations permitted by the decree of the French Minister of Public Instruction referred to in the note opposite page 1 of this volume:—

- § 232, 2. Verb may agree with plur. complement of **de**.
§ 232, 2, c. **Plus d'un**, when followed by a plur. complement, may have verb in sing. or plur.
§ 232, 3. Either **est** or **sont** may be used before a plur. subst. or a plur. pron. in 3rd pers.
§ 233, b, c, e, f. Verb may be either sing. or plur. in such cases.
§ 236, 1. The hyphen may be omitted (cf. § 29).
§ 289, a, b. Agreement optional in either position.
§ 292, 4, and 4, a. Past part. may, in all such cases, be invariable.
§ 304, 1, and 3, a. **Enfant** and **automne**, masc. or fem.
§ 304, 3, b, c. **Amour** and **orgue**, masc. in sing., and masc. or fem. in plur.
§ 304, 3, d. **Hymne**, masc. or fem. in all senses.
§ 304, 3, g, j. Any adj. agreeing with **gens** or **orge** may be fem.
§ 304, 3, f. **Pâques** may be fem., either as a date or as a church festival.
§ 310. Such nouns, if fully naturalized, may have plur. in **-s**, e.g., **déficits**, **exéats**.
§ 311. All compound nouns may be written without hyphen.
§ 312. Any proper noun preceded by a plur. art. may take the plur. sign.
§ 324, 1. **Du**, **de la**, **des** may be used before adj. + noun. (cf. § 59, 2, 3).
§ 332, 2. A mistake in this usage is not to be counted an error.
§ 341, 1, b. Adj. may be masc. plur., no matter which noun is nearest.
§ 342. Phrases like **l'histoire ancienne et la moderne** may omit the second art.
§ 343, 1, a. **Fort** may agree like an adj.
§ 343, 2. Compound adjs., e.g., **nouveau-né**, **court-vêtu**, etc., may be written as one word, and may form fem. and plur. by the general rule.
§ 343, 4, a, b. **Nu**, **demi**, **feu**, may agree when preceding their subst.
§ 343, 4, a. **Franc**, agreement optional when preceding.
§ 343, 4, c. Adj. may agree either with the subst. fem. or with **air**.
§ 348. The def. art. may agree.
§ 376, 6. The object possessed may be either sing. or plur.
§ 405, 2, a, c. Either **son** or **leur** may be used indifferently.
§ 406, 1, b. The plur. of **aucun** may be used.
§ 406, 3 (2). Hyphen may be omitted.
§ 419, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5. **Ne** may be omitted in all such cases.
§ 421, obs. 1. The hyphen may be omitted (cf. § 138, obs. 1).
§ 421, b. **Vingt** and **cent** may take **-s** even before numeral (cf. § 140).
§ 421, c. **Mille** or **mil** may be used (cf. § 144).

To avoid fine, this book should be returned on
or before the date last stamped below

SON-9-40

--	--	--

